
This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

<https://books.google.com>



PROPERTY OF

*The
University of
Michigan
Libraries*

1817

ALERE SCIENTIA VERITAS



Burton
Volume 1,
pp. ~~269-292~~
vol. 1
pp. 269-292

T R A V E L S .

INTO THE

INTERIOR OF SOUTHERN AFRICA,

IN THE YEARS 1797 AND 1798.

AN
ACCOUNT
OF
TRAVELS
INTO THE
INTERIOR OF SOUTHERN AFRICA,
IN THE YEARS 1797 AND 1798:

INCLUDING
CURSORY OBSERVATIONS
ON THE
GEOLOGY AND GEOGRAPHY OF THE SOUTHERN PART OF THAT CONTINENT;
THE NATURAL HISTORY OF SUCH OBJECTS AS OCCURRED IN THE
ANIMAL, VEGETABLE, AND MINERAL KINGDOMS;
AND
SKETCHES OF THE PHYSICAL AND MORAL CHARACTERS OF THE VARIOUS
TRIBES OF INHABITANTS SURROUNDING THE SETTLEMENT OF THE
CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

TO WHICH IS ANNEXED,
A DESCRIPTION OF THE PRESENT STATE, POPULATION, AND PRODUCE OF
THAT EXTENSIVE COLONY;
*WITH A MAP CONSTRUCTED ENTIRELY FROM ACTUAL OBSERVATIONS
MADE IN THE COURSE OF THE TRAVELS.*

By **JOHN BARROW**,
LATE SECRETARY TO THE EARL OF MACARTNEY, AND AUDITOR-GENERAL OF
PUBLIC ACCOUNTS, AT THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

LONDON:
Printed by A. Strahan, Printers-Street,
FOR T. CADELL JUN. AND W. DAVIES, IN THE STRAND.
1801.

J
756
12
10

1051-2

Reprinted from a copy in the collections of
The New York Public Library
Astor, Lenox and Tilden Foundations

Landmarks in Anthropology, a series of reprints in cultural anthropology
General Editor: Weston La Barre

First reprinting, 1968, Johnson Reprint Corporation

Printed in the United States of America

763313-013

TO

THE RIGHT HONORABLE

HENRY DUNDAS,

ONE OF HIS MAJESTY'S PRINCIPAL SECRETARIES OF STATE,

UNDER WHOSE AUSPICES, THE EXTENSIVE AND IMPORTANT COLONY

OF THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE

WAS ACQUIRED AND ANNEXED TO THE BRITISH EMPIRE,

BY WHICH OUR POLITICAL AND COMMERCIAL INTERESTS IN THE EAST-INDIES
HAVE BEEN SECURED AND PROMOTED;

THESE SKETCHES,

ARE RESPECTFULLY INSCRIBED,

BY

HIS MOST FAITHFUL

AND OBLIGED HUMBLE SERVANT,

JOHN BARROW.

CONTENTS.

CHAP. I.

	PAGE
<i>A General View of the Colony of The Cape, and a more particular Description of the Promontory called The Cape of Good Hope</i> - - - - -	I

CHAP. II.

<i>Sketches on a journey from The Cape of Good Hope, across the Karroo, or Arid Desert, to the Drosdy of Graaff Reynet</i> -	55
--	----

CHAP. III.

<i>Sketches on a journey into the Country of the Kaffers</i> - -	110
--	-----

CHAP. IV.

<i>Sketches on a journey into the Country of the Bosjesmans</i> -	234
---	-----

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

	PAGE
<i>Sketches on a journey from Graaff Reynet along the sea-coast to the Cape</i> - - - - -	327

CHAP. VI.

<i>Sketches on a journey into the Country of the Namaaquas</i>	- 357
--	-------

TRAVELS

INTO THE

INTERIOR OF SOUTHERN AFRICA.

CHAP. I.

A General View of the Colony of The Cape, and a more particular Description of the Promontory called The Cape of Good Hope.

BY the capture of the Cape of Good Hope and of Ceylon, the British language is now heard at the southern extremities of the four great continents or quarters of the globe. Three of these have submitted to the power of its arms; and the spirit of commerce and adventurous industry has directed the attention of its enterprising subjects to the fourth, on the small island of Staaten, at the extreme point of South America, where a kind of settlement has been formed for carrying on the southern whale-fishery. Of these extreme points the Cape of Good Hope cannot be considered as the least important, either with regard to its geographical situation, as favorable for carrying on a speedy
B intercourse

intercourse with every part of the civilized world ; or to its intrinsic value, as capable of supplying many articles of general consumption to the mother-country ; or as a port solely for the numerous and valuable fleets of the East-India Company to refresh at ; to assemble in time of war for convoy ; to re-establish the health of their sickly troops, worn down by the debilitating effects of exposure to a warm climate ; and to season, in the mild and moderate temperature of Southern Africa, such of those from Europe as may be destined for service in the warmer climate of their Indian settlements.

In the early voyages undertaken by the British merchants trading to the East Indies, the Cape was always made the general rendezvous and place of refreshment ; and it was then considered of such importance that a formal possession was taken of it by two commanders of the Company's ships in the year 1620, in the name of King James of Great Britain, a period of thirty years antecedent to the establishment of the colony by the United Provinces. The particulars of this transaction are entered at full length on the records of the East-India Company ; and, as the reasoning then upon it will more strongly apply at this time, it may not be amiss to insert an extract from them.

“ James, by the grace of God, king of Great Britain, France,
 “ and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, &c. : Know all men, by
 “ the present publication hereof, that according to our bounden
 “ duties to our Sovereign Lord the King, James, by the Grace
 “ of God, King of Great Britain, &c. and the State ;

“ We,

“ We, Andrew Shillinge and Humphrey Fitzherbert, chief
 “ commanders of the two fleets at present bound for Surat and
 “ Bantam, &c. upon a good consideration, and by a consult-
 “ ation holden on shore, the first of July 1620, of both fleets, on
 “ the coast of Africa, in the bay of Saldania aforesaid, for and
 “ in the name of the said high and mighty Prince James, and
 “ for and in the name of the whole continent near adjoining, so
 “ far to be extended as that at present no Christian prince nor
 “ potentate have any fort or garrison for plantation within the
 “ limits aforesaid; and our Sovereign Lord the King to be
 “ thereunto entitled Lord or Prince, or by any other name or
 “ title whatsoever that shall seem best unto his gracious wisdom.

“ Dated, proclaimed, executed, and subscribed in the Bay
 “ of Saldania, the third day of July 1620.

(Signed) “ HUMPHREY FITZHERBERT,
 “ ANDREW SHILLINGE.”

EXTRACT.

“ Notwithstanding all which, may it please your worships to
 “ be certified, that we whose names are hereunto subscribed,
 “ tending his Majesty's supremacy and sovereignty more than
 “ our own safetys; and falling into the consideration of the
 “ conveniency of this bay of Saldania, by us so called, situate
 “ and being in the latitude of 34° or thereabout South lati-
 “ tude, for the better prosecution of your trade to the East
 “ Indies, upon a full and general consultation holden on shore

“ by both your fleets, now bound for Surat and Bantam, the
“ first day of July in the year of our Lord 1620, have fully
“ agreed to take possession of the said bay of Saldania for and
“ in the name of our sovereign lord the King, James by the
“ grace of God, &c. and for and in the name of the whole
“ continent near adjoining, so far to be extended as that no
“ Christian prince or potentate have at present any fort or gar-
“ rison for plantation within the limits aforesaid, as by a deed
“ published, executed and subscribed in the said bay of Sal-
“ dania the third day of July 1620, herewith sent your
“ worships, more plainly may appear; which deed was pub-
“ lished with great solemnity before the English and the
“ Dutch; who seemed likewise much to approve the same.
“ And in token of possession, taken as aforesaid, and for a
“ memorial hereafter, we have placed a heap of stones on a hill
“ lying West-south-west from the road in the said bay, and
“ call it by the name of King James his Mount. The main
“ and principle reasons which induced us to do this without
“ order were many. First, at our arrival in the Bay we found
“ nine great ships of the States ready to set sail for Bantam,
“ who declared to us plainly that the States did mean to make
“ a plantation here the next year, and that they had taken a
“ view of the bay, and made a road already in the country
“ some thirty or forty miles, &c. meaning, as we suppose, and
“ it is not to be doubted, to make us hereafter pay for our water
“ and anchorage towards defraying their intended plantation.
“ Likewise this great country, if it were well discovered, would
“ be kept in subjection with a few men and little charge, con-
“ sidering how the inhabitants are but naked men and without
“ a leader

“ a leader or policy. We also thought to entitle the King’s
“ Majesty thereto by this weak means than to let it fall for
“ want of prevention, into the hands of the States, knowing
“ very well that his Majesty is able to maintain his title by his
“ word against the States, and by his power against any other
“ prince or potentate whatsoever ; and better it is that the
“ Dutch, or any other nation whatsoever should be his subjects
“ in this place, than that his subjects should be subject to them
“ or any other. To which may be added the practice of all
“ men of all times and in all places in the like cause, entitling
“ their sovereigns to be governors where no government is
“ already instituted. Many more particulars might be alledged,
“ as the certain refreshing of your fleets quickly acquired out
“ of your own means by plantation, and to be hoped for from
“ the Blacks when there is a government established to keep
“ them in awe. The whale fishery besides persuades us that
“ it would be profitable to defray part of your charge. The
“ fruitfulness of the soil, together with the temper of the air,
“ assures us that the Blacks, with the time, will come in, for
“ their ease, and of necessity. Time will, no doubt, make
“ them your servants, and by serving you they will become
“ hereafter (we hope) the servants of God.”

No further notice seems to have been taken by the British government of this possession, at that time ; nor does it appear that any kind of interference or contravention was made by it when the Dutch East India Company sent out Van Riebeck, in order to form a settlement there in the year 1650. Till this period the English, the Portuguese and the Dutch had indiscriminately refreshed their crews at the Cape. The Portuguese, who

who were the first discoverers of the Southern extremity of the continent of Africa, at least in modern times, established no settlement nearer to it than the Banks of Rio Infanté, now the Great Fish River and boundary of the Colony to the Eastward, which is nearly six hundred miles from the Cape of Good Hope; and this they soon abandoned for want of shelter for their shipping, which they afterwards found, farther to the Eastward, in the bay of De la Goa, still in their possession. At length, however, from the very favourable representations of Van Riebeck, then a surgeon of one of the Dutch ships, the East India Company came to a resolution to colonize the Cape; and since the first establishment to the present war, a period of near 180 years, it continued in their hands. The progress of the population and the extent of territory have been tolerably rapid. The former, like some of the provinces of North America, has nearly doubled itself in every twenty years. It was first settled in 1650 by a hundred male persons, to whom were shortly afterwards sent out, from the houses of industry in Holland, about an equal number of females; and the present population exceeds twenty thousand whites: many of these, however, have since been imported from Europe.

The difficulties that for a time impeded the extension of the settlement were principally occasioned by the number of wild beasts of various kinds that swarmed in every part of the country. In the private journal of the founder of the colony it is noticed, that lions and leopards, wolves and hyænas, committed nightly depredations, for some time after the first establishment, under the walls of the fort. The opposition of the native Hot-tentots

tentots seems to have given them little interruption. They soon discovered the predominant passion of this weak and peaceable people for spirituous liquors, and that a bottle of brandy was a passport through every horde. With this and tobacco, iron, and a few paltry trinkets, they purchased a part of the country and of their stock of cattle, and then took the rest by force. A cask of brandy was the price of a whole district; and nine inches in length of an iron hoop the purchase of a fat ox. Deprived, by their passion for intoxicating liquors and baubles, of the only means of existence, the numbers of the natives began rapidly to decline; and the encroachments of the settlers were in proportion to the diminution of the obstacles. Finding it unnecessary to limit the extent of their possessions, the policy of the Government kept pace with the propensity of its subjects to spread themselves wide over the country. It foresaw that a spirit of industry, if encouraged in a mild and temperate climate, and on a fertile soil, might one day produce a society impatient of the shackles imposed on it by the parent state. It knew, that to supply to its subjects the wants of life without the toil of labour or the anxiety of care; to keep them in ignorance, and to prevent a ready intercourse with each other, were the most likely means to counteract such a spirit. It granted lands, therefore, on yearly leases, at the small fixed rent of twenty-four rixdollars, (not five pounds sterling,) in any part of the country. A law was also passed, that the nearest distance from house to house was to be three miles, so that each farm consisted of more than five thousand acres of land, and consequently was rented at the rate of something less than a farthing an acre. From a scarcity of water, it frequently happened that many farms

farms were at twice that distance from each other. No land was granted in property except in the vicinity of the Cape. As the Dutch advanced, the natives retired ; and those that remained with their herds among the new settlers were soon reduced to the necessity of becoming their servants.

No permanent limits to the colony were ever fixed under the Dutch government. The pastoral life that the peasantry of the remote districts at all times adopted, required a great extent of country to feed their numerous herds ; and the imbecility and easy temper of the adjacent tribes of natives favored their avaricious views ; and the government was either unwilling, or thought itself unable, to restrain them. Having no kind of chart nor survey, except of such districts as were contiguous to the Cape, it possessed a very limited and imperfect knowledge of the geography of the remoter parts, collected chiefly from the reports of the peasantry, fallacious often, through ignorance or design, or of those who had made excursions for their profit or pleasure, or from expeditions sent out by order and at the expence of government ; and the object of these, it would appear, was with the view rather of carrying on a lucrative trade with the bordering tribes of natives, than to supply useful information respecting the colony. Attended with the parade of a military guard, surgeons, land-surveyors, burghers with waggons, oxen, horses, and Hottentots without number, not one of them has furnished a single sketch even towards assisting the knowledge of the geography of the country. The only persons who appear to have travelled with no other view than that of acquiring useful information, were the governor Van Pletten-

Plettenberg and the late colonel Gordon. These two gentlemen fixed, upon the spot, the boundaries of the colony, as they now stand, to the eastward. To complete the line of demarcation, through the heart of the country to the western shore, was one of the objects of the several journeys that supplied the materials of the following pages. The chart that accompanies them was undertaken and executed by the order of the earl of Macartney in the years 1797 and 1798, when these journeys were made. It was constructed entirely from actual observations of latitude and of bearings, estimation of distances, and frequent angular interfections of remarkable points and objects.

From this chart it appears that the extent and dimensions of the territory composing the colony of the Cape of Good Hope, now permanently fixed, are as follows :

Length from west to east.

Cape Point to Kaffer Land,	-	-	580 miles.
River Kouffie to Zuureberg,	-	-	520 —

Breadth from south to north.

River Kouffie to Cape Point,	-	-	315 —
Nieuwveldt Mountains to Plettenberg's Bay,			160 —
Mouth of the Tush-river to Plettenberg's baaken,			225 —

which gives a parallelogram whose mean length is 550, and mean breadth 233, English miles, comprehending an area of 128,150 square miles. This great extent of country, deducting the population of Cape Town, is peopled by about 15,000

c

white

white inhabitants, so that each individual might possess eight and a half square miles of ground. A very great portion, however, of this territory may be considered as an unprofitable waste, unfit for any sort of culture, or even to be employed as pasture for the support of cattle. Level plains, consisting of a hard impenetrable surface of clay, thinly sprinkled over with chrystallized sand, condemned to perpetual drought, and producing only a few straggling tufts of acrid, saline, and succulent plants, and chains of vast mountains that are either totally naked, or clothed in parts with four grasses only, or such plants as are noxious to animal life, compose at least one half of the colony of the Cape. These chains of mountains and the interjacent plains are extended generally in the direction of east and west, except indeed that particular range which, beginning at False Bay, opposite to the Cape Point, stretches to the northward along the western coast as far as the mouth of Olifant's river, which is about 210 miles.

The first great chain of mountains that runs east and west encloses, between it and the southern coast, an irregular belt of land from twenty to sixty miles in width, indented by several bays, covered with a deep and fertile soil, intersected by numerous streamlets, well clothed with grass and small arboreous or frutescent plants, well wooded in many parts with forest-trees, supplied with frequent rains, and enjoying, on account of its proximity to the sea, a more mild and equable temperature than the more remote and interior parts of the colony.

The next great chain is the Zevarte Berg or Black Mountain. This is considerably more lofty and rugged than the first, and
consists

consists in many instances of double and sometimes treble ranges. The belt enclosed between it and the first chain is about the mean width of that between the first and the sea; of a surface very varied, composed in some parts of barren hills, in others of naked arid plains of clay, known to the natives, and also to the colonists, by the name of *Karoo*; and in others of choice patches of well watered and fertile grounds. The general surface of this belt has a considerable elevation above that of the first; the temperature is less uniform; and from the nature of the soil, as well as the difficulty of access over the mountains, which are passable only in few places, this district is much less valuable than the other.

The third range of mountains is the *Nieuwveldt's Gebergte*, which, with the second, grasps the Great *Karoo* or arid desert, uninhabited by a human creature. This desert, making the third step or terrace of Southern Africa, is greatly elevated above the second; is near 300 miles in length from east to west, and eighty in breadth; is scarcely ever moistened by a shower of rain; exhibits a surface of clay, thinly sprinkled over with sand, out of which a few shrivelled and parched plants here and there meet the eye, faintly extending their half withered fibres along the ground, and struggling, as it were, to preserve their existence against the excessive heat of one season of the year and the severe frosts of the other.

The country likewise ascends from the western coast towards the interior in successive terraces, of which the most elevated, called the *Roggeveld*, falls in with the last-mentioned chain of

mountains, the Nieuwveldt. The whole tract of country to the northward of the Cape is much more sandy, barren, and thinly inhabited, than to the eastward, in which direction it increases in beauty and fertility with the distance.

Such is the general outline of the territory that is comprehended under the name of the Cape of Good Hope. It is divided into four districts, over each of which is placed a civil magistrate called a *Landroft*, who, with six *Hemraaden*, or a council of country burghers, is vested with powers to regulate the police of his district, superintend the affairs of government, adjust litigations, and determine petty causes. Their decisions, however, are subject to an appeal to the Court of Justice in Cape Town. The four districts are; that of the Cape; of Stellenbosch and Drakensteen; of Zwellendam; and of Graaff Reynet; and they were successively colonized in the order here mentioned.

The Cape district is chiefly composed of that mountainous peninsula whose southern extremity was first called by Portuguese navigators *Cabo dos Tormentos*, or, Cape of Storms, on account of the very tempestuous weather often and long experienced by them in their attempts to double it, which, when effected, they changed to that of *Cape of Good Hope*. The Table Mountain, flanked by the Devil's Hill on the east, and the Lion's Head on the west, forms the northern extremity of the same peninsula. The length from north to south is about 36, and breadth 8, miles. It is composed, properly speaking, of one mountain, broken indeed into several masses more or less connected

connected by inferior gorges. Some of these masses have horizontal summits; others peaked or cone-shaped; some consist of naked fragments of rock; others are clothed with verdure. This peninsula is connected with the continent by a low flat isthmus, with few irregularities of surface, except such as are made by ridges of sand that seem to have been adventitiously brought thither by the strong south-east winds from the shores of False Bay, a large arm of the sea enclosed between the Cape Promontory and a chain of high mountains on the continent to the eastward of it.

False Bay, and Table Bay, the one washing the southern, and the other the northern, shore of the isthmus, are the usual places of resort for shipping trading to, or calling for refreshments at, the Cape of Good Hope. During the summer season, when the south-east winds are predominant, which may be reckoned in general from September till May, Table Bay affords the most secure shelter; and Simon's Bay, a cove or indent on the western shore of False Bay, for the rest of the year, when the northerly and north-westerly winds are strongest. In neither of them is there any sort of security or convenience for heaving down and repairing shipping, nor do they appear to admit of any contrivance for such purposes at a moderate expence. The latitude of Table Bay is $33^{\circ} 55'$ south: longitude $18^{\circ} 30'$ east. Of Simon's Bay the latitude is $34^{\circ} 9'$ south, and longitude $18^{\circ} 32'$ east.

There are also two small bays on the west side of the peninsula, one called *Hout* or Wood Bay, and the other Chapman's

man's Bay. The latter is exposed to the west and north-west, but the former is sheltered from all winds. The confined anchorage, which is said to admit of, at the utmost, ten ships only, and the eddy winds from the surrounding high mountains, which make it difficult for ships to enter and get out, are the objections that have been stated against the use of Hout Bay.

All these bays, the passes of the mountains, and indeed every part of the peninsula, are capable of being maintained, if properly garrisoned, against any attack that will probably be ever made against them. Most of the works, batteries, and lines, have undergone a complete repair, with many improvements; and others have been judiciously added, by the British engineers. The pass at the foot of Müisenberg, a steep high mountain, washed by False Bay, and the only road of communication between Simon's Bay and the Cape, may now be considered as impregnable, though the Dutch suffered themselves very easily to be driven out of it. It is the Thermopylæ of the Cape; and from the several breastworks, lately constructed along the heights, a *chosen band* of three hundred rifle men ought to stop the progress of an army.

Cape Town, the capital, and indeed the only assemblage of houses that deserves the name of a town in the colony, is pleasantly situated at the head of Table Bay, on a sloping plain that rises with an easy ascent to the feet of the Devil's Hill, the Table Mountain, and the Lion's Head, before mentioned; the last, stretching to the northward, in a long unbroken hill of moderate height, is King James's Mount, (the Lion's Rump of
the

the Dutch,) and affords shelter against the westerly winds to ships in Table Bay. It most completely commands every part of the town and the castle to the north-east of it : and this, with the Amsterdam and Chavonne batteries, command the anchorage in the bay. The town, consisting of about eleven hundred houses, built with regularity and kept in neat order, is disposed into straight and parallel streets, intersecting each other at right angles. Many of the streets are open and airy, with canals of water running through them, walled in, and planted on each side with oaks ; others are narrow and ill paved. Three or four squares give an openness to the town. In one is held the public market ; another is the common resort of the peasantry with their waggons from the remote districts of the colony ; and a third, near the shore of the bay, and between the town and the castle, serves as a parade for exercising the troops. This is an open, airy and extensive plain, perfectly level, composed of a bed of firm clay, covered with small hard gravel. It is surrounded by canals, or ditches, that receive the waters of the town and convey them into the bay. Two of its sides are completely built up with large and handsome houses. The barracks, originally intended for an hospital, for corn magazines, and wine cellars, is a large, well-designed, regular building, which, with its two wings, occupies part of one of the sides of the great square. The upper part of this building is sufficiently spacious to contain 4000 men. The castle affords barracks for 1000 men, and lodgings for all the officers of one regiment ; magazines for artillery stores and ammunition ; and most of the public offices of government are within its walls. The other public buildings are a Calvinist and a Lutheran

a Lutheran church : a guard-house, in which the Burgher Senate, or the council of burghers, meet for transacting business relative to the interior police of the town : a large building in which the government slaves, to the number of 330, are lodged : the court of justice, where civil and criminal causes are heard and determined. The basis of all the proceedings of this court is the Roman or civil law, tempered or corrected by local circumstances and unforeseen occurrences, as the nature of the cases may seem to require, and which are generally provided for in the code drawn up under the name of "Statutes of India," for the supreme court of Batavia and the other inferior settlements of the Dutch East India Company. A full court is composed of seven judges, by a majority of whose votes all causes are decided ; subject, however, to an appeal to a court composed of the governor and lieutenant-governor, and from their decision to the King in council. The fiscal, or chief acting magistrate, is also the public accuser and attorney-general to prosecute, in all criminal cases, for the sovereign. The judges are none of them professional men, but are chosen out of the burghers of the town.

The Lombard Bank, to which is committed the management of a capital of about 600,000 rix dollars, lent by the old government in paper money to the subjects on mortgages of their lands and houses, or on moveable property, at an interest of 5 per cent. is within the walls of the castle ; as is also the *Weeskammer* or Chamber for administering the affairs of orphans. The population of the town is estimated at about 6000 whites, inclusive of the military, and twelve thousand slaves.

Between

Between the town and Table Mountain are scattered over the plain a number of neat houses surrounded by plantations and gardens. Of these the largest and nearest to the town is that in which the government house is erected. It is in length near 1000 yards, and contains about forty acres of rich land divided into almost as many squares by oak hedges. The public walk runs up the middle, is well shaded by an avenue of oak trees, and enclosed on each side by a hedge of cut myrtles. The Dutch of late years had entirely neglected this excellent piece of ground; but the spirit of improvement that has always actuated the minds of the English in all their possessions abroad, will no doubt shew itself at this place, and convert the public garden into a place not only ornamental to the town but useful to the country. A part of it, in fact, has already been appropriated, by order of the Earl of Macartney, for the reception of scarce and curious native plants, and for the trial of such Asiatic and European productions as may seem most likely to be cultivated with benefit to the colony.

Among the foreign productions that might be introduced, and in all probability cultivated with success at the Cape of Good Hope, may be reckoned the different varieties of the cotton plant. Many of these have been already tried, and found to succeed extremely well in the light sandy soil that generally prevails in the country. Two species of indigo grow wild in several parts of the colony; and the cultivated plant of India is now on trial. Different species of the cactus, the plant on which the cochineal insect feeds, grow just as well here as on the opposite continent. The tea-plant has long

D

been

been in the country, but totally neglected. It is a hardy shrub, which when once planted is not easily eradicated; and the soil, the climate, and general face of the country, bear a strong analogy to those provinces of China to which it is indigenous. Three years ago a small coffee plant was brought from the island of Bourbon, and is now in full berry, and promises to succeed remarkably well; the sugar cane equally so. Flax will give two crops in the year; and hemp, called by the hottentots *Dacha*, is produced in great quantities; not, however, for the purpose of being manufactured into cordage or cloth, but merely for the sake of the leaflets, flowers, and young seeds which are used by the slaves and hottentots as a succedaneum for tobacco. The dwarf mulberry grows here as well as in China; but the common silk worm is not in the colony. Several species of wild moths, however, spin their cocoons among the shrubby plants of Africa. Among these there is one species, nearly as large as the Atlas, and answers to the description of the *Paphia* of Fabricius, which feeds upon the *Protea argentea*, the witteboom or silver tree of the Dutch, and might probably be turned to some account by cultivation. Dr. Roxburgh is of opinion that it is precisely the same insect which spins the strong silk known in India by the name of Tussach. The palma christi, from the seed of which is expressed the castor oil, and the aloe, whose juice produces the well known drug of that name, are natives of the country, and are met with almost everywhere in great plenty; as is also the cape olive, so like in habit and appearance to the cultivated plant of Europe, that there can be little doubt as to the success of the latter; it is the more astonishing that this tree has not been introduced, since no vegetable

getable oil, fit for culinary uses, has yet been discovered in the colony. For this purpose the sesamum would prove an useful grain. In most of the sandy flats are found in great abundance two varieties of the *Myrica cerifera*, or wax plant, from the berries of which is procurable, by simple boiling, a firm pure wax; and the honey bee is every where wild on the heathy sides of the hills; but the culture of the plant and of the insect have hitherto been equally neglected.

Timber of all kinds for building is an exceeding scarce and expensive article at the Cape, yet little pains have yet been taken to rear it near the town. Avenues of oak trees, plantations of the white poplar, and of the stone pine, are to be seen near most of the country houses not very distant from the Cape, and have been found to thrive most rapidly; but the timber they produce is generally shaken and unsound. The oak that has been introduced into the colony appears to be that variety of the *Quercus Robur* known in England by the name of *Durmast* oak, much of which grows in the New Forest, and is but of little estimation among ship builders. It is distinguished by the acorns growing in clusters, and each having a long foot stalk. The larch, whose growth in Europe is rapid, and yet the timber as good or better than any of the pine tribe, would be an acquisition and an ornament to the present naked hills of the Cape; and the beech would no doubt thrive in those places where the poplar does so well.

Of native plants, that which is the most cultivated, in the vicinity of the town, is the silver tree abovementioned. Whole

woods of it stretch along the feet of the eastern side of the Table Mountain, planted solely for fuel. The *Conocarpa*, another species of Protea, the Kreupel boom of the Dutch, is also planted along the sides of the hills: its bark is employed in tanning leather, and the branches for fire wood. The *grandiflora*, *speciosa* & *mellifera*, different species of the same genus, grow every where in wild luxuriance and are collected for fuel, as are also the larger kinds of *Ericas* or heaths, *phyllicas*, *Brunias*, *polygalas*, the *Olea Capensis*, *Euclea racemosa*, *Sophora*, and many other arboreous plants that grow in great abundance both on the hills of the peninsula, and on the sandy isthmus that connects it with the continent. The article of fuel is so scarce that a small cart load of these plants sells in the town from five to seven dollars, or twenty to eight-and-twenty shillings. In most families a slave is kept expressly for collecting fire wood. He goes out in the morning, ascends the steep mountains of the peninsula, where waggons cannot approach, and returns at night with two small bundles of faggots, the produce of six or eight hours hard labour, swinging at the two ends of a bamboo carried across the shoulder. Some families have two and even three slaves, whose sole employment consists in climbing the mountains in search of fuel. The expence of a few faggots, whether thus collected or purchased by the load, for preparing victuals only, as the kitchen alone has any fire place, amounts, in a moderate family, to forty or fifty pounds a-year.

The addition to the inhabitants of five thousand troops, and a large fleet stationed at the Cape, has increased the demand for

for fuel to such a degree, that serious apprehensions have been entertained of some deficiency shortly happening in the supply of this necessary article. Under this idea the attention of the English has been, for some time past, directed towards finding out a substitute for wood. The appearance of all the mountains in Southern Africa, being particularly favorable to the supposition that fossil coal might be found in the bowels of most of those inferior hills connected with, and interposed between them and the sea, His Excellency the Earl of Macartney, well knowing how valuable an acquisition such a discovery would prove to the colony, directed a search to be made. Boring rods were prepared, and men from the regiments, who had laboured in the collieries of England, were selected to make the experiment. *Wynberg*, a tongue of land projecting from the Table Mountain, was the spot fixed on, and the rods were put down there through hard clay, pipe-clay, iron-stone and sand-stone, in successive strata, to the depth of twenty-three feet. The operation of boring was then discontinued by the discovery of actual coal coming out, as miners express it, to day, along the banks of a deep rivulet flowing out of the Tygerberg, a hill that terminates the isthmus to the eastward. The stratum of coaly matter appeared to lie nearly horizontal. Immediately above it was pipe-clay and white sand-stone; and it rested on a bed of indurated clay. It ran from ten inches to two feet in thickness; differed in its nature in different parts: in some places were dug out large ligneous blocks in which the traces of the bark, knots and grain were distinctly visible; and in the very middle of these were imbedded pieces of iron pyrites, running through them in crooked veins, or lying in irregular lumps.

lumps. Other parts of the stratum consisted of laminated coal of the nature of turf, such as by naturalists would be called Lithanthrax, and pieces occurred that seemed to differ in nothing from that species known in England by the name of Bovey coal. The ligneous part burned with a clear flame, without much smell, and left a residuum of light white ashes like those of dried wood. The more compact earthy and stoney parts burned less clear, gave out a sulphureous smell, and left behind a slaty caulk, that soon contracted on the surface a deep brown ochraceous crust. The borer being put down in several places in hopes of meeting with the main bed of coal, the general result was as follows :

In the bed of the rivulet :

	Feet.
Coal - - - - -	2
Blue soapy rock - - - - -	5
White soapy rock - - - - -	22
Grey sand-stone with clay - - - - -	21
Sand-stone of chocolate brown - - - - -	14
Bluish soapy clay - - - - -	31
Striated sand, red and white, containing clay - - - - -	33
	128

Here the operation was discontinued for the present.

Most of the European, and several of the tropical, fruits have already been introduced into the colony, and cultivated with success. In every month of the year the table may be supplied with

with at least ten different sorts of fruit, green and dry. Oranges of two kinds, the common China and the small Mandarin, figs, grapes and guavas, are all very good; peaches and apricots not bad. These, when in season, are sold at the rate of one shilling for 100. Apples, pears, pomgranates, quinces and medlars, thrive well and bear plentifully, but are not very good. Few indeed are at the pains of grafting even the trees, but suffer them to grow up from the seed. Plums and cherries that are produced in the colony are of an indifferent quality. Gooseberries and currants are said to have been tried, but without success. The nectarine has not yet been introduced. Raspberries are tolerably good, but scarce: and strawberries are brought to market every month of the year. There are no filberts nor common hazel nuts, but almonds, walnuts and chefnuts, all of good quality, are plentiful, as are also mulberries of a large size and excellent flavour.

The market is likewise tolerably well supplied with most of the European vegetables for the table, from the farms that lie scattered along the eastern side of the peninsula, in number about forty or fifty. On some of these farms are vineyards also of considerable extent, producing, besides the supply of the market with green and ripe grapes and prepared raisins, about seven hundred leaguers or pipes of wine a-year, each containing 154 gallons. Of these from fifty to a hundred consist of a sweet luscious wine, well known in England by the name of *Constantia*, the produce of two farms lying close under the
mountains

mountains about mid-way between the two bays. The grape is the Muscatel, and the rich quality of the wine is in part owing to the situation and soil, and partly to the care taken in the manufacture. No fruit but such as is full ripe, no stalks are suffered to go under the press, precautions seldom taken by the other farmers of the Cape.

The vineyards, gardens and fruiteries are divided into small squares, and inclosed by cut hedges of oaks, quince trees, or myrtles, to break off the south-east winds of summer, which, from their strength and dryness, are found to be deleterious to vegetation; but the grain is raised on open grounds. The produce of this article on the peninsula is confined chiefly to barley which, in this country, is preferred to oats for feeding horses. None of the common flat-eared barley has yet been introduced, but that hexangular kind only is known, which in some parts of England is called *beer*, and in others *big*. Corn is generally cultivated beyond the isthmus and along the western coast, within the great north and south chain of mountains. The remote districts beyond these furnish a supply of horses, sheep, and horned cattle.

The natural productions of the Cape Peninsula, in the vegetable kingdom, are perhaps more numerous, varied, and elegant, than on any other spot of equal extent in the whole world. Of these, by the indefatigable labors of Mr. Masson, his Majesty's botanic garden at Kew exhibits a choice collection; but many are still wanting to complete it. Few countries can
boast

boast of so great a variety of the bulbous rooted plants as Southern Africa. In the month of September, at the close of the rainy season, the plains at the feet of the Table Mountain and on the west shore of Table Bay, called now the Green Point, exhibit a beautiful appearance. As in England the humble daisy, in the spring of the year, decorates the green sod, so at the Cape, in the same season, the whole surface is enlivened with the large Othonna, so like the daisy as to be distinguished only by a Botanist, springing up in myriads out of a verdant carpet, not however of grass, but composed generally of the low creeping *Trifolium melilotos*. The *Oxalis cernua* and others of the same genus, varying through every tint of color from brilliant red, purple, violet, yellow, down to snowy whiteness, and the *Hypoxis stellata* or star flower with its regular radiated corolla, some of golden yellow, some of a clear un-fullied white, and others containing in each flower, white, violet, and deep green, are equally numerous, and infinitely more beautiful. Whilst these are involving the petals of their showy flowrets at the setting of the sun, the modest *Ixia Cinnamomea*, of which are two varieties, one called here the Cinnamon, and the other the evening, flower, that has remained closed up in its brown calyx and invisible during the day, now expands its small white blossoms, and scents the air, throughout the night, with its fragrant odours. The tribe of *Ixias* are numerous and extremely elegant; but none more singular than that species which bears a long upright spike of pale green flowers. The *Iris*, the *Moræa*, *Antholiza*, and *Gladiolus*, each furnish a great variety of species not less elegant nor graceful than the *Ixia*. The *Gladiolus*, which is here called *Africaner*,

is uncommonly beautiful with its tall waving spike of striped flowers, and has also a fragrant smell *. That species of a deep crimson is still more elegant. Of those genera which botanists have distinguished by the name of the liliaceous class, many are exceedingly grand and beautiful, particularly the *Amaryllis*, of which there are several species. The sides of the hills are finely scented with the family of *Geraniums*; the different species of which, exhibiting such variety of foliage, once started an idea that this tribe of plants alone might imitate in their leaves every genus of the vegetable world.

The frutescent, or shrubby plants, that grow in wild luxuriance, some on the hills, others in the deep chasms of the mountains, and others on the sandy isthmus, furnish an endless variety for the labors of the botanist. Of the numbers of this class of naturalists, who have visited the Cape, none have returned to Europe without having added to his collection plants that were not described nor known. The eye of a stranger is immediately caught by the extensive plantations of the *Protea Argentea*, whose silver colored leaves, of the soft texture of fatten, gives it a distinguished appearance among the deep foliage of the oak, and still deeper hue of the stone pine. It is singular enough that though the numerous species of *Protea* be indiscriminately produced on almost every hill of the colony, the silver tree should be confined to the feet of the

* A small yellow *Iris* furnishes a root for the table, in size and taste not unlike a chestnut. These small roots are called *Uyntjis* by the colonists, and that of the *Aponegeton distachion*, which is also eaten, *water uyntjes*.

Table

Table Mountain alone, a circumstance that led to the supposition of its not being indigenous to the Cape : it has never yet, however, been discovered in any other part of the world. The tribe of heaths are uncommonly elegant and beautiful : they are met with equally numerous and flourishing on the stoney hills and sandy plains ; yet, unless raised from seed, are with difficulty transplanted into gardens. Little inferior to the heaths are the several species of the genera to which botanists have given the names of *Polygala*, *Brunia*, *Diosma*, *Borbonia*, *Cliffortia*, and *Asparagus* ; to which might be added a vast variety of others, to be enumerated only in a work professedly written on the subject.

The peninsula of the Cape affords but a narrow field for the inquiries of the Zoologist. The wooded kloofs or clefts in the mountains still give shelter to the few remaining troops of wolves and hyenas that not many years ago were very troublesome to the town. The latter, indeed, generally shuns the habitations of men ; but the former, even yet, sometimes extends his nightly prowl to the very skirts of the town, enticed by the dead cattle and offals from slaughter-houses that are shamefully suffered to be left or thrown even at the sides of the public roads. In the caverns of the Table Mountain, and indeed in almost every mountain of the colony, is found in considerable number a small dusky-colored animal about the size of a rabbit, with short ears and no tail, called here the Das, and described in the *Systema Naturæ* of *Linnaeus* under the name of *Hyrax Capensis*, and by Pennant under that of Cape Cavy. The flesh is used for the table, but is black, dry, and of an indifferent

flavour. One species of Antelope, called here the Griefbok or grizzled deer, frequents the thickets of the hills, and does no small injury at nights to the infant shoots of the vine; and another species of the name of Düiker or Diver, from the manner of its plunging and concealing itself among the bushes, is not uncommonly met with on the sandy isthmus. Neither of these animals appear as yet to have been described in any systematic work, though very common in every part of the colony, and often mentioned by travellers. The color of the Düiker is wholly of a dusky brown; is about three feet in length and two and a half in height: the male has horns streight, black, nearly parallel, but diverging a little towards the points, four inches long, and annulated close to the base. The female has no horns; length of the ears seven inches; of the tail, five inches. The *sinus lacrymalis*, or subocular indent, which most of the antelopes have, is in this species so conspicuous that the Dutch say it carries the gall-bladder under the eye. The Greifbok is of a grizzled or greyish color, the ground bright brown interspersed with silver hairs; length two feet nine inches; height one foot nine inches; ears five inches, black and naked; tail two inches; the *sinus lacrymalis* very distinct. The male has horns four inches long, streight, smooth, tapering to a point, black: the female has no horns. The Steenbok, once the most numerous of the antelope tribe that inhabited the peninsula, is now nearly extirpated from this part of Africa, though equally abundant with the other two beyond the isthmus. This animal is the *Antelope Grimmea* of Pallas, and the Guinea antelope of Pennant. The horses of the Cape are not indigenous, but were first introduced from Java, and since that, at various times,

times, from different parts of the world. The grizzled and the black spaniard first brought hither, about twenty years ago, from South America, where the breed now runs wild over that extensive country, are the horses that are most esteemed for their beauty, their gentleness, and service. Though small, and often very ill-fed, they are capable of sustaining a great degree of hard labor. Heavy waggons, however, are chiefly drawn by oxen. These are all indigenous, except the breed from a few European cattle that have lately been introduced. The Cape ox is distinguished by its long legs, high shoulders, and large horns.

The larger kinds of birds that hover round the summit of the Table Mountain are vultures, eagles, kites, and crows, that assist the wolves in cleansing the country near the town of a nuisance that is tacitly permitted by the police. Ducks, teals, and snipes are met with in the winter season about the pools and periodical lakes on the isthmus. Turtle doves, a thrush called the Sprew, and the Fiscal bird, the *Lanius Collaris*, frequent the gardens near the town.

The market is constantly supplied with a variety of sea-fish that are caught in the bay, and every where along the coast. The *Roman*, a deep rose-coloured perch, is considered as the best fish in the colony, but is never caught except in False-bay, and on the coast to the eastward of it *. Next to the Roman are the

* It has one back fin with twelve spines, and divided tail; a silver band along each side of the back fin, turning down to the belly, and a blue arched line over the upper mandible connecting the two eyes.

red and the white *Steenbrassens*, or Stone-breems, two species, or perhaps varieties only, of perches. They are taken from one to thirty pounds in weight. Of the same genus there are several other species, and all of them tolerably good. One of these called the Cabeljau, with the root of the pectoral fins black, tail undivided, and one back fin, grows to the weight of forty pounds: another, called the Hottentot's fish, from its dirty brown color, with one back fin, and tail bifid, commonly runs about four pounds: another perch, called the Silver-fish, has one back fin, and tail bifid; ground of a rose-colored tinge, with five longitudinal silver bands on each side, described probably as the *perca striata*: and a fourth species, called the *Stompneus*, with one back fin and tail bifid, is distinguished by six transverse bands of black and white spots down each side. The *Harder*, a species of *Clupea*, not unlike the common herring, is considered as a good fish; and the *Klip* or rock-fish, the *Blennius viviparus*, makes no bad fry*. The *Elst*, the *Scomber trachurus*, schad or horse mackrell, has a good flavour, but is reckoned to be unwholesome food, and on that account seldom eaten. The *Scomber Scomber*, common mackrell, sometimes makes its appearance after bad weather in large shoals in the bay. The *Springer* is esteemed for the thick fat coating that lines the cavity of the abdomen. The *Speering*, a species of *Antherina*, is a small transparent fish with a broad band, resembling a plate of silver, on each side. The *Knorbaen*, a species of *Trigla*, or Gurnard, with two strong spines on the fore part of

* Another *Blennius*, called the King Rock-fish, is sometimes caught with the former, to which, from its shape and resemblance to the *Murana* of the ancients, naturalists have given the specific name of *Murenoides*.

each

each eye, and two on the cover of the gills, is not a bad fish; nor is the common Sole inferior here to that in Europe. Dolphins are sometimes caught in the bay after a gale of wind. That singular species of Ray fish, the electrical torpedo, is well known to the fishermen by the frequent strokes they receive from treading on the small young ones that are often thrown upon the beach in the winter season. Another species is used for the table and eaten by the English under the name of Skate. There is also in some of the rivers of the country an electrical *Silurus*, but it is not eaten; and the *Bagre*, a second species of *Silurus*, commonly caught in the bay, is considered as poisonous*. A species of bray-fish and different sorts of crabs are plentiful and tolerably good. Muscles of various kinds, and oysters, abound on the sea-coast; the former of a high, strong flavour, but the latter fully as good as those of Europe; they are, however, not to be procured in quantities near the Cape. A species of *Asterias* or Star-fish, and the paper *Nautilus*, are sometimes sent from hence to Europe to be placed in the cabinets of the curious; as is also that singular little animal called by naturalists the *Syngnathus Hippocampus*, and sometimes sea-horse.

Few shells or marine productions are met with on this part of the coast of Africa that would be considered as rare by the naturalist. Small corallines, madrepores, sponges, and other productions of marine animals, are frequently thrown up on

* The *Scorpena Cupensis*, called here *Jacob Evertson*, is a firm, dry fish, but not very commonly used.

the

the shores of the bays, but such only as are commonly known. The shells that mostly abound are of the univalve tribe. The *patella* genus is the most plentiful; and that large, beautiful, pearly shell, the *Haliotis Midæ*, is very common. *Cypræa*, *Volutes*, and *Cones* are also abundant. All these are collected on the coast near the Cape, and burnt into lime, there being no limestone on the whole peninsula, and none worth the labor of getting, and the expenditure of fuel necessary for burning it, in any part of the colony.

During the winter season whales are very plentiful in all the bays of Southern Africa, and give to the fishermen a much easier opportunity of taking them than in the open sea. They are smaller and less valuable than those of the same kind in the northern seas, but sufficiently so to have engaged the attention of a Company lately established here for carrying on a fishery in Table Bay. They run in general from fifty to sixty feet in length, and produce from six to ten tons of oil each: The bone of such small fish is not very valuable. It is remarked that all those which have yet been caught were females; and it is supposed that they resort to the bays as places of shelter to deposit their young. Seals were once plentiful on the rocky islands of False bay, as is still that curious animal the penguin, forming the link of connection between the feathered and the finny tribe.

Insects of almost every description abound in the summer months, and particularly a species of locust which infests the gardens, devouring, if not kept under, every green thing that comes

comes in its way. Musquitoes are less troublesome here than in most warm climates, nor does their bite cause much inflammation; but a small sand fly, so minute as scarcely to be visible, is a great torment to those who may have occasion to cross among the shrubbery of the sandy isthmus. Lizards of various kinds, among which is the cameleon, are very abundant; and small land-turtles are every where crawling about in the high roads and on the naked plains. Scorpions, scolopendras, and large black spiders, are among the noxious insects of the Cape; and almost all the snakes of the country are venomous.

The first appearance of so stupendous a mass of naked rock as the Table Mountain cannot fail to arrest, for a time, the attention of the most indifferent observer of nature from all inferior objects, and must particularly interest that of the mineralogist. As a description of this mountain will, with few variations, answer to that of almost all the great ranges in Southern Africa, it may not perhaps be thought too tedious to enter into a detail of its form, dimensions, and constituent parts.

The name of *Table Land* is given by seamen to every hill or mountain whose summit presents to the eye of the observer a line parallel to the horizon. The north front of the Table Mountain, directly facing the town, is a horizontal line, or very nearly so, of about two miles in length. The bold face, that rises almost at right angles to meet this line, is supported, as it were, by a number of projecting buttresses that rise out of the plain, and fall in with the front a little higher than midway from the base. These, and the division of the front, by two

F

great

great chafms, into three parts, a curtain flanked by two bastions, the first retiring and the others projecting, give to it the appearance of the ruined walls of some gigantic fortrefs. These walls rise above the level of Table Bay to the height of 3582 feet, as determined by Captain Bridges of the royal engineers, from a measured base and angles taken with a good theodolite. The east side, which runs off at right angles to the front, is still bolder, and has one point higher by several feet. The west side, along the sea-shore, is rent into deep chafms, and worn away into a number of pointed masses. In advancing to the southward about four miles, the mountain descends in steps or terraces, the lowest of which communicates by gorges with the chain that extends the whole length of the peninsula. The two wings of the front, one the Devil's Mountain, and the other the Lion's Head, make in fact, with the Table, but one mountain. The depredations of time and the force of torrents having carried away the looser and less compact parts, have disunited their summits, but they are still joined at a very considerable elevation above the common base. The height of the first is 3315, and of the latter 2160 feet. The Devil's Mountain is broken into irregular points; but the upper part of the Lion's Head is a solid mass of stone, rounded and fashioned like a work of art, and resembling very much, from some points of view, the dome of St. Paul's placed upon a high cone-shaped hill.

These three mountains are composed of a multitude of rocky strata piled on each other in large tabular masses. Their exact horizontal position denote the origin of the mass to be nep-tunian and not volcanic; and that since its first formation no
convulsion

convulsion of the earth has happened in this part of Africa sufficient to have disturbed the nice arrangement of its parts. The strata of these postdeluvian ruins, not being placed in the order of their specific gravity, might lead to the conclusion that they were deposited in successive periods of time, were it not for the circumstance of their lying close upon each other without any intermediate veins of earthy or other extraneous materials. The stratification of the Cape peninsula, and indeed of the whole colony, is arranged in the following order :

The shores of Table Bay, and the substratum of the plain on which the town is built, compose a bed of a blue compact schistus, generally placed in parallel ridges in the direction of north-west and south-east, but frequently interrupted by large masses of a hard flinty rock of the same color, belonging to that class of aggregated stones proposed by Mr. Kirwan to be called granitelles. Fine blue flags, with whitish streaks, are procured from Robben Island, in the mouth of Table Bay, which are used for steps, and for paving the terraces in front of most of the houses.

Upon the schistus lies a body of strong clay colored with iron from a pale yellow to deep red, and abounding with brown foliated mica. Embedded in the clay are immense blocks of granite so loosely cemented together that the constituent parts are easily separable by the hand. The mica, the sand, and indeed the whole bed of clay, seem to have been formed from the decomposition of the granite. Between the Lion's Head and the sea are vast masses of these aggregated

stones entirely exposed. Most of them are rent and falling asunder from their own weight: others are completely hollowed out so as to be nothing more than a crust or shell; and they have almost invariably a small aperture on that side of the stone which faces the bottom of the hill or the sea-shore. Such excavated blocks of coarse granite are very common on the hills of Africa, and are frequently inhabited by runaway slaves.

Resting on the granite and clay is the first horizontal stratum of the Table Mountain, commencing at about five hundred feet above the level of the sea. It is siliceous sand-stone of a dirty yellow color. Above this is a deep brown sand-stone, containing calciform ores of iron, and veins of hematite running through the solid rock. Upon this rests a mass, of about a thousand feet in height, of a whitish-grey shining granular quartz, mouldering away in many places by exposure to the weather, and in others passing into sand-stone. The summit of the mountain has entirely undergone the transition into sand-stone; and the skeletons of the rocks, that have hitherto resisted the ravages of time, are surrounded by myriads of oval-shaped and rounded pebbles of semitransparent quartz that were once embedded in them. Those pebbles having acquired their rounded form by friction when the matrix, in which they are still found buried, had not assumed the form and consistence of stone; and the situation of this stratified matrix on blocks of primæval granite, clearly point out a grand revolution to have taken place on the surface of the globe we inhabit. No organized remains, however, of the Old World, such as shells buried

in

in the rock, petrefactions of fishes, or impressions of plants, appear on the sides of the Table Mountain, as has been asserted.

To those whom mere curiosity, or the more laudable desire of acquiring information, may tempt to make a visit to the summit of the Table Mountain, the best and readiest access will be found directly up the face next to the town. The ascent lies through a deep chasm that divides the curtain from the left bastion. The length of this ravine is about three-fourths of a mile; the perpendicular cheeks at the foot more than a thousand feet high, and the angle of ascent about forty-five degrees. The entrance into this deep chasm is grand and awful. The two sides, distant at the lower part about eighty yards from each other, converge within a few feet at the portal, which opens upon the summit, forming two lines of natural perspective. On passing this portal, a plain of very considerable extent spreads out, exhibiting a dreary waste and an insipid tameness, after quitting the bold and romantic scenery of the chasm. And the adventurer may perhaps feel strongly disposed to ask himself if such be all the gratification he is to receive for having undergone so great a fatigue in the ascent. The mind, however, will soon be relieved at the recollection of the great command given by the elevation; and the eye, leaving the immediate scenery, will wander with delight round the whole circumference of the horizon. On approaching the verge of the mountain—

“ How fearful

“ And dizzy 'tis to cast one's eyes so low!

• • • • •

“ The

" The fishermen that walk upon the beach
 " Appear like mice ; and yon tall anchoring bark
 " Diminish'd to her cock. • • •
 • • • " The murmuring surge,
 " That on the unnumber'd idle pebbles chafes,
 " Cannot be heard so high."

All the objects on the plain below are, in fact, dwindled away to the eye of the spectator into littleness and insignificance. The flat-roofed houses of Cape Town, disposed into formal clumps, appear like those paper fabrics which children are accustomed to make with cards. The shrubbery on the sandy isthmus looks like dots, and the farms and their enclosures as so many lines, and the more-finished parts of a plan drawn on paper.

On the swampy parts of the flat summit, between the masses of rock, are growing several sorts of handsome shrubs. The *Cenæa mucronata*, a tall, elegant, frutescent plant, is peculiar to this situation ; as is also that species of heath called the *Phyodes*, which, with its clusters of white flowers glazed with a glutinous coating, exhibits in the sunshine a very beautiful appearance. Many other heaths, common also on the plains, seemed to thrive equally well on this elevated situation as in a milder temperature. The air on the summit, in the clear weather of winter, and in the shade, is generally about fifteen degrees of Fahrenheit's scale lower than in Cape Town. In the summer season the difference is much greater, when that well-known appearance of the fleecy cloud, not inaptly called the *Table Cloth*, envelopes the summit of the mountain.

A single

A single glance at the topography of the Cape and the adjacent country will be sufficient to explain the cause of this phenomenon which has so much the appearance of singularity. The mountainous peninsula is connected with a still more mountainous continent, on which the great ranges run parallel to, and at no great distance from, the sea-coast. In the heat of the summer season, when the south-east monsoon blows strong at sea, the water taken up by evaporation is borne in the air to the continental mountains, where, being condensed, it rests on their summits in the form of a thick cloud. This cloud, and a low dense bank of fog on the sea, are the precursors of a similar, but lighter, fleece on the Table Mountain, and of a strong gale of wind in Cape Town from the south-east. These effects may be thus accounted for: The condensed air on the summit of the mountains of the continent rushes, by its superior gravity, towards the more rarified atmosphere over the isthmus, and the vapor it contains is there taken up and held invisible or in transparent solution. From hence it is carried by the south-east wind towards the Table and its neighbouring mountains, where, by condensation from decreased temperature and concussion, the air is no longer capable of holding the vapor with which it was loaded, but is obliged to let it go. The atmosphere on the summit of the mountain becomes turbid, the cloud is shortly formed, and, hurried by the wind over the verge of the precipice in large fleecy volumes, rolls down the steep sides towards the plain, threatening momentarily to deluge the town. No sooner, however, does it arrive, in its descent, at the point of temperature equal to that of the atmosphere in which it has floated over the isthmus, than it is once more taken up and
“ vanishes

“ vanishes into air—to thin air.” Every other part of the hemisphere shews a clear blue sky undisturbed by a single vapor.

Though it has been usual to consider the year at the Cape as consisting of two periods, called the good and the bad moon, yet, as these are neither regular in their returns, nor certain in their continuance, the division into four seasons, as in Europe, should appear to be much more proper. The spring, reckoned from the beginning of September to that of December, is the most agreeable season. The summer, from December to March, is the hottest. The autumn, from March to June, is variable weather, generally fine, and the latter part very pleasant. And the winter, from June to September, though in general pleasant, is frequently very stormy, rainy, and cold. The two most powerful winds are the north-west and south-east. The first generally commences towards the end of May, and blows occasionally till the end of August, and sometimes through the month of September. The south-east predominates the rest of the year, and, when the cloud shews itself on the mountain, blows in squalls with great violence. In the midst of one of these storms the appearance of the heavenly bodies, as observed by the Abbé de la Caille, is strange and terrible: “ The stars look larger, and seem to dance; the moon “ has an undulating tremor; and the planets have a sort of “ beard like comets.” Effects such as these are not confined to the Cape alone, but are, in many parts of the world, among the terrific accompaniments of a storm, and are probably occasioned by looking at the objects through a medium that

that is loaded with vapor, and moving along with great velocity.

The approach of winter is first observed by the south-east winds becoming less frequent, less violent, and blowing *clear*, or without the fleecy cloud upon the mountain. Dews then begin to fall very heavy, and thick fogs hang in the mornings about the hills. The north-west winds feel raw and cold, and increase at length to a storm, with heavy rain, thunder, and lightning, continuing generally for two or three days. When the weather brightens up, the mountains on the continent appear with their tops buried in snow: the Table has also a sprinkling of snow or hail about the summit. At such times the thermometer, about sun-rise, stands in the town at 40° , and will probably ascend, towards the middle of the day, to 70° , making a variation in temperature of 30 degrees in the course of five or six hours. The general standard, however, for the three winter months may be reckoned from 50° at sun-rise to 60° at noon; and in the very middle of summer it varies from 70° to 90° , but generally rests for days together at 83° or 84° . It has been known to exceed 100° in Cape Town; but instances of so high a degree of temperature have been very rare. The heat of summer is seldom oppressive. The mornings are sometimes close and sultry, but the nights are always cool. The south-east breeze usually springs up towards the middle of the day, and dies away in the evening. When these winds blow with violence, and the cloud appears on the mountain, their greatest strength is when the sun has passed the meridian about 30 degrees, and they continue in squalls till midnight.

night. From November to April a shower of rain scarcely ever falls.

The barometer stands higher in the clear cold days of winter than in the settled serene weather of summer. The height of the column of mercury varies, in the former season, from 29,46 to 30,35 inches, one point indicating a storm with rain, thunder, and lightning; and the other, settled fair weather. The changeable point is about 29,95 or 30 inches. The greatest range being only 89 hundred parts of an inch, the slightest alteration in the state of the barometer is sure to indicate a change of weather. The range of the mercury, in the summer season, is still less, being scarcely ever above 30,10, or below 29,74 inches. The south-east gales of wind seldom occasion a change of more than 15 hundred parts of an inch. Happy for the inhabitants of Cape Town that by these winds a constant circulation of the air is kept up during the summer months, without which the reflected heat from the naked front of the Table Mountain would make the town insupportable.

Most of the fatal diseases that prevail among the natives should appear to proceed rather from their habits of life than from any real unhealthiness in the climate. Nothing could afford a stronger proof of this conclusion than the circumstance of there not having been one sick man in the general military hospital for several months, and not more than a hundred in the regimental hospitals out of five thousand troops; and these, according to the reports of the surgeons, were complaints generally brought on by too free an use of the wines and spirituous
liquors

liquors of the country, of which their pay enables them to procure an excess. The sudden change of temperature, especially from heat to cold, may perhaps be one of the causes of consumptive complaints which are very frequent in all classes and ages. But the common disease to which those of the middle age are subject, is the dropsy. A confined and sedentary life; eating to excess, twice and commonly thrice a-day, of animal food swimming in fat, or made up into high-seasoned dishes; drinking raw ardent spirits; smoking tobacco; and, when satiated with indulging the sensual appetite, retiring in the middle of the day to sleep; seldom using any kind of exercise, and never such as might require bodily exertion,—are the usual habits in which a native of the Cape is educated. An apoplexy or a scirrhus liver are the consequences of such intemperance. The former is seldom attended with immediate dissolution on account of the languid state of the constitution; but it generally terminates in a dropsy, which shortly proves fatal. The diseases to which children are most subject are eruptions of different kinds, and sore throats. Neither the small-pox nor the measles are endemic; the former has made its appearance but twice or thrice since the establishment of the Colony, but the latter has found its way much more frequently. Great caution has always been used by the government against their being introduced by foreign ships calling at the Cape. Instances of longevity are very rare, few exceeding the period of sixty years. The mortality in Cape Town, taken on the average in the last eight years, has been about two and a half in a hundred among the white inhabitants, and under three in a hundred among the slaves. Those in the latter condition, who live in the

town, are in general well fed, well clothed, not much exposed to the weather, nor put to hard labor. Others in the country, whose principal food consists of black sandy bread, and the offals of butchers' meat, who labor from morning to night in the field, and those also who follow the arduous and daily task of gathering wood on the exposed sides of the mountains, or in the hot sands, are subject to bilious fevers of which they seldom recover.

Few die by the hands of justice. In the last eight years 110 have been sentenced to death, 33 of whom were publicly executed, and these were chiefly slaves. The rest were condemned to labor during life at the public works. The confession of a crime, where strong and concurring evidence could not be produced, was sometimes extorted by the torture; and breaking on the wheel was a capital punishment. These were said to be seldom put in practice; yet at the time they were abolished, by order of His Majesty, the Court of Justice urged the necessity of their continuance, as proper engines of terror for preventing the commission of capital crimes, which, they thought, simple strangling with a cord would be insufficient to effect. Contrary, however, to the opinion of the Court of Justice, there have been fewer executions, since the abolition of the rack and torture, than had taken place in an equal period for many years before: So much so, indeed, that one of the public executioners made an application for a pension in lieu of the emoluments he used to receive for the breaking of legs and arms. The fate of the other hangman was singular enough: On hearing that the abolition of the rack and torture was likely to

to take place, he waited upon the chief magistrate to know from him whether it was the fashion among the English to break on the wheel. A few days after this he was found hanging in his room. It was thought that the fear of starving, for want of employment, on account of his having held such an odious office, had operated so powerfully on his mind as to have led him to the perpetration of self-murder. Under the idea of conveying terror into the minds of the multitude, the place of execution is erected close to the side of the great avenue leading into the town. The first object that presents itself to a stranger, after passing the Castle, is a large gallows flanked by wheels and engines of death—objects not well adapted for impressing any very favorable opinion either of the humanity of the people or the lenity of their laws. Though the custom of most European nations may have sanctioned public punishments, as warnings against the commission of crimes, the constant exposure of the instruments of death can have little share in producing this effect. The human mind, by long habit, becomes reconciled to objects that, for a time, might have created disgust and dismay; and nothing is more likely to happen than that the unreflecting part of the multitude should turn into a source of ridicule, when made too familiar to them, what was intended to convey the sensation of terror.

There is, perhaps, no part of the world, out of Europe, where the introduction of slavery was less necessary than at the Cape of Good Hope. Nor would it ever have found its way into this angle of Africa, had the same spirit of Batavian industry, which

which raised a wealthy and populous republic out of the sea, impressed the minds of those who first formed the settlement. A temperate climate, a fertile soil, a mild and peaceable race of natives, were advantages that few infant colonies have possessed; and, as they still exist, may one day yet be turned to account. To encourage the native Hottentots in useful labor, by giving them an interest in the produce of that labor; to make them experience the comforts of civilized life, and to feel they have a place and a value in society, which the miserable policy of the Dutch government denied to them, would be the sure means of diminishing and, in time, of entirely removing the necessity of slavery. Few negroes, in fact, have been imported since the capture, and those few by accident, or by special permission: and as the increased demand for colonial produce has required a proportional increase of labor, they now bear most extravagant prices. From one hundred to four hundred pounds sterling is daily paid for a slave in Cape Town; yet it is not unusual to find from twenty to thirty in one house. Some of these, indeed, are artificers, and are hired out at certain rates for the day, week, or month. The most active and docile, but the most dangerous, slaves, are the Malays. They are faithful, honest, and industrious; but so impatient of injury, and so capricious, that the slightest provocation will sometimes drive them into fits of phrenzy, during the continuance of which it would be unsafe to come within their reach. The revengeful spirit of a Malay was strongly marked by an occurrence which happened a short time ago. Conceiving that he not only had served his master sufficiently long, and with great fidelity, but had also paid him several sums of money, he was tempted to demand

demand his liberty, and met with a refusal. The following morning the Malay murdered his fellow-slave. On being taken and brought up for examination before a commission of the Court of Justice, he acknowledged that the boy he had murdered was his friend; but he had considered that the most effectual way to be revenged of his master was, not by taking away his life, but by robbing him of the value of a thousand rixdollars, by the loss of the boy, and another thousand by bringing himself, in so doing, to the gallows, the recollection of which would prey upon his avaricious mind for the remainder of his life.

The effects that a state of slavery invariably produces on the minds and habits of a people, born and educated in the midst of it, are not less felt at the Cape than in the warmer climates. Among the upper ranks it is the custom for every child to have its slave, whose sole employment is to humour its caprices, and to drag it about from place to place lest it should too soon discover for what purposes nature had bestowed on it legs and arms. Even the lower class of people object to their children going out as servants, or being bound as apprentices to learn the useful trades, which, in their contracted ideas, would be considered as condemning them to perform the work of slaves.

The education of youth has hitherto been very much neglected. The government never hit upon any successful plan for the establishment of public schools; and the individual had no other ambition but that of qualifying his sons, by writing and accounts, to become servants of the Company. This body
of

of merchants had a number of persons in their employ who were very ill paid. Their salaries indeed were insufficient to afford them a bare subsistence; but it tacitly allowed them to negotiate for themselves. The consequence of such a conduct was, that each became a kind of petty dealer. Each had his little private shop in some corner of his house. The most paltry articles were in the list of their commodities for sale; and those who ranked high in the government, and assumed a string of full-sounding epithets to their names, felt no sort of indignity in retailing the produce of their gardens; not indeed avowedly, but through the medium of their slaves. In fact, the minds of every class, the governor, the clergy, the fiscal, and the secretary of the court of justice excepted, were wholly bent on trade. *Koopman* or merchant was a title that conferred rank at the Cape, to which the military even aspired. On this subject the ideas of the Dutch differ widely from those of the Chinese, who have degraded the merchant into the very lowest order of their society.

That portion of the day, not employed in the concerns of trade, is usually devoted to the gratification of the sensual appetites. Few have any taste for reading, and none for the cultivation of the fine arts. They have no kind of public amusements except occasional balls; nor is there much social intercourse but by family parties, which usually consist of card-playing or dancing. Money-matters and merchandize engross their whole conversation. Yet none are opulent, though many in easy circumstances. There are no beggars in the whole colony; and but a few who are the objects of public charity.

The

The subsistence for these is derived from the interest of a fund established out of the church superfluities, from alms, donations, and collections made after divine service, and not from any tax laid upon the public. Except, indeed, a few colonial assessments for the repairs of the streets and public works, the inhabitants of the Cape have little drawback on their profits or the produce of their labour. The luxury of a carriage and horses, which in England is attended with an enormous expence, is kept up here for a trifle after the first cost. Those in the town that are used only for short excursions, or for taking the air, are open, and calculated for four or six persons. For making journies they have a kind of light waggon covered with sail-cloth, and sufficiently large to hold a whole family with clothes and provisions for several days. The coachman is generally one of those people known in the colony by the name of *Bastards*, being a mixed breed between a Hottentot woman and European man, or a Hottentot woman and a slave. They make most excellent drivers, and think nothing of turning short corners, or of galloping through narrow avenues, with eight in hand. The ladies seldom take the exercise of riding on horseback, that exercise being considered as too fatiguing. They generally confine themselves to the house during the day, and walk the Mall in the public garden in the cool of the evening.

It has been the remark of most travellers that the ladies of the Cape are pretty, lively, and good-humoured; possessing little of that phlegmatic temper which is a principal trait in the national character of the Dutch. The difference in the manners

H

and

and appearance of the young men and the young women, in the same family, is inconceivably great. The former are clumsy in their shape, awkward in their carriage, and of an unfociable disposition; whilst the latter are generally of a small delicate form, below the middle size, of easy and unaffected manners, well dressed, and fond of social intercourse, an indulgence in which they are seldom restrained by their parents, and which they as seldom turn to abuse. They are here indeed less dependant on, and less subject to, the caprice of parents than elsewhere. Primogeniture entitles to no advantages; but all the children, male and female, share alike in the family property. No parent can disinherit a child without assigning, on proof, one at least of the fourteen reasons enumerated in the Justinian Code. By the law of the colony, a community of all property, both real and personal, is supposed to take place on the marriage of two persons, unless the contrary should be particularly provided against by solemn contract made before marriage. Where no such contract exists, the children, on the death of either parent, are entitled to that half of the joint property which was supposed to belong to the deceased, and which cannot be withheld on application after they are come of age.

It is but justice to the young females of the Cape to remark, that many of them have profited much more than could be expected from the limited means of education that the place affords. In the better families, most of them are taught music, and some have acquired a tolerable degree of execution. Many understand the French language, and some have made great proficiency in the English. They are expert at the needle, at
all

all kinds of lace, knotting, and tambour work, and in general make up their own dresses, following the prevailing fashions of England brought from time to time by the female passengers bound to India, from whom they may be said to

“ Catch the manners living as they rise.”

Neither are the other sex, while boys, deficient in vivacity or talent; but for want of the means of a proper education, to open their minds and excite in them a desire of knowledge, they soon degenerate into the common routine of eating, smoking, and sleeping. Few of the male inhabitants associate with the English, except such as hold employments under the government. This backwardness may be owing in part to the different habits of the two nations, and partly, perhaps, to the reluctance that a vanquished people must always feel in mixing with their conquerors. No real cause, however, of complaint or disaffection could possibly be alleged against the English government at the Cape. No new taxes have been imposed since the conquest; but, on the contrary, some of the old ones have been diminished, and others modified. The demand and value of every production of the colony have very considerably increased, while the articles of import have fallen, in their prices. More than 200,000 rixdollars of arrears in rent of land have been remitted to the inhabitants by the British government, as well as 180,000 rixdollars of dubious debts. They have preserved their laws and their religion, both of which continue to be administered by their own people. They enjoy as great a share of rational liberty as men, bound to each other, and to

the whole, by the ties that a state of society necessarily imposes, could possibly expect, and much greater than under their former government. Property has been secure in every instance, and has been raised to double its former value: and none has the loss of life of any friend or relation to lament at the time of, or since, the capture. Their paper currency, fabricated by the government in order to get over a temporary distress, but which it had never been able to take out of circulation, bore a depreciation of 40 *per cent.* and a silver dollar was scarcely to be seen. The former is now at par with specie, and not less than two millions of the latter have been sent from England and thrown into circulation. Every person enjoys his share of the general prosperity. The proprietor of houses in town has more than doubled his rent; and the farmer in the country, where formerly he received a rixdollar for each of his sheep, now receives three. Four years of increasing prosperity, of uninterrupted peace and domestic tranquillity, have been the happy lot of the inhabitants of the Cape of Good Hope.

Scenes very different from these would, in all probability, have been exhibited here, had not the English taken possession of the colony at the very time they were ripe for execution. Jacobinism, or subversion of all order, had industriously been propagated by the ill-disposed, among the ignorant part of the colonists, both in the town and country districts. A weak and timid government, instead of crushing it in its infancy, suffered it to grow to maturity. Its principal officers were insulted with impunity. The Landrofts, or Chief Magistrates of the police in the country, were driven out of their districts, and the farmers

farmers refused to pay the rents of the loan lands. Proscribed lists were actually made out of such as were first to suffer; and the slaves were anxiously waiting for the signal of a general emancipation. Even after the capture the people of the distant district of Graaff Reynet had indignantly used, and then turned away, the landroft and the clergyman that had been appointed and sent thither by Sir James Craig, who immediately ordered a detachment of light infantry with a squadron of dragoons to march to the Drofdy. Intimidated at the news of such a measure, they sent a supplicating letter, signed by some of the principal inhabitants, praying that the troops might be recalled, and promising good order and obedience to the laws.

About this time (May 1797) the Earl of Macartney arrived at the Cape to take charge of his government; and one of his first measures was that of sending back to Graaff Reynet the same landroft whom they had expelled, in order to convince them that the British government, though lenient and just in its proceedings, was not less firm in carrying them into execution. In addition to the political motives which induced his Excellency to send his own secretary in company with the landroft, he thought it at the same time a fair opportunity for supplying some information respecting the distant parts of the colony, and the countries bordering upon it, hitherto so little visited, and so imperfectly known. His instructions, on this occasion, embraced a variety of objects, as well for the scientific inquirer as for the promotion of the public benefit: and should the following pages be found to contain nothing conducive to the ends proposed by these instructions, the fault must rest solely on

on the person who had the honor to receive them. As facts locally collected, they have been thought worthy to be laid before the public. The observations and reflections upon the facts are such as occurred when the impression they made, on the spot, was strongest on the mind. Since that time they have undergone but little alteration, and are therefore considered as *sketches* only, to be filled up and finished by future travellers: and they are submitted to the public more with the consciousness of truth than of any literary attainments in the writer.

CHAP. II.

Sketches on a journey from The Cape of Good Hope, across the Karroo, or Arid Desert, to the Droefdy of Graaff Reynet.

THOUGH the rains usually commence about the beginning of May, in the present year the whole month of June was a series of fine pleasant weather; unfavorable, however, to the husbandman, and not less so to the traveller, who may have before him a long journey over the uninhabited deserts of Africa, and must necessarily make daily use of the same cattle, either in the team, or to travel along with him as relays. The established mode of performing such long journies, in this colony, is in covered waggons drawn by bullocks. The carriages made for this purpose are very expensive; but they are well constructed to bear hard service, to run light, and are sufficiently commodious and spacious to contain all the necessaries that may be wanted on a long journey, and also a cot, or matrafs, for sleeping upon. Such a carriage is commonly drawn by a team, or *span*, as it is termed in the colony, of ten or twelve oxen. Each day's journey is called a *skoff*; and the length of these is generally regulated by local circumstances, being from five to fifteen hours. It is customary also to travel in the night, that the cattle may have the advantage of the day to graze, or rather to brouse, among the shrubbery; for

for many parts of the country, particularly after a series of dry weather, produce not a single blade of grass. The bitter, sour, and saline plants, than which the arid soil of an African desert produces nothing better, constitute oft times their only food for weeks together; and to the use of these may probably be owing the offensive breath that the ox of the colony is generally observed to have. In Europe, the sweetness of the breath of horned cattle is almost proverbial. In Africa it is remarked to be altogether as nauseous. The bad quality of the water, which in the desert plains is never met with pure, but impregnated with saline or earthy matter, may also contribute in producing this effect. The speed of an ox in the waggon, where the country is tolerably level, and the surface hard, is full three miles an hour, at which rate he will continue for ten or twelve hours without halting.

The first day of July was fixed upon for our departure from the Cape; and the preceding month was employed in making the necessary preparations, fitting up three waggons, and in procuring draught oxen, which at this season of the year, after the long drought, were scarce and extremely lean. *Bastaards* for drivers, and Hottentots to lead the foremost pair in the team, and to take care of the relays, were very difficult to be procured, but indispensibly necessary. Every thing, however, was in readiness on the day fixed, though it was night before the waggons left the town; and the oxen were so miserably bad, that before they had proceeded three miles, two of them dropped in the yokes, and were obliged to be left behind. In seven hours they had only advanced about fifteen miles, to a place

place called Stickland, where Sir James Craig had caused stabling for several troops of dragoons, and stone-buildings for the officers and men, to be erected, as a place of great importance in case of an attack from a powerful enemy. This station is at the south point of a range of hills called the Tigerberg or Tiger Mountain, that terminates, on this side, the sandy isthmus. At the feet of the hills, and in the vallies formed by them, are several pleasant farms, with gardens well stored with vegetables for the table, fruiteries, vineyards, and extensive corn lands. As none of the latter are inclosed there is a general appearance of nakedness in the country, which, if planted with forest-trees, as the oak and the larch, and divided by fences, would become sufficiently beautiful, as nature in drawing the outline has performed her part. The sandy flat, of which the Tigerberg forms the boundary, is applied to no use but that of furnishing a part of the supply of fuel for the town, and for the country people and butchers occasionally to turn their cattle upon. It is a prevailing opinion at the Cape, that this isthmus, which now separates the two principal bays, was once covered with the sea, making, at that time, the Cape promontory a complete island. The flatness and little elevation of the surface, the quantity of sand upon it, and the number of shells buried in the sand, have been urged as the grounds for such a conjecture. If, however, such has been the case, and the retreat of the sea progressive, it is an incalculable period of time since the two bays have been united. The surface is from 20 to 30 feet above the level of high-water mark; the sand upon it, except where it is drifted into ridges, is seldom three feet deep, and generally rests on sand-stone or hard gravel, bound together,

and coloured yellow or brown with iron. The vegetable remains, washed by the rains into the hollows, form in places bogs or peat-mofs, and the water in them is of a deep claret-colour, and sometimes black. I never met with any shells on any part of the isthmus; but the presence of these is no argument of their having been brought there by the sea. Many thousand waggon-loads of shells may be met with in various places along the eastern coast, in situations that are several hundred feet above the level of the sea. They are generally found in the greatest quantities in sheltered caverns, a circumstance that might lead to the supposition of the original inhabitants of the country being a sort of Troglodytes, as indeed the savage Hottentots of the interior in some degree still are. The fact is, they are carried from the coast into these elevated situations by the myriads of sea-fowl that frequent the African shores. At Muscle-bay is a remarkable cavern containing an immense quantity of different kinds of shells peculiar to the coast; above the level of which it is not less than three hundred feet; and behind the Lion's Head, at the same height, are beds of shells, buried under vegetable earth and clay. The human mind can form no idea as to the measure of time required for the sea to have progressively retreated from such elevations.

The plain that stretches to the eastward from Tigerberg is less sandy, and better covered with shrubs and plants, than the isthmus, and has a few farms scattered thinly over it near rills of water, that have broken the surface into deep glens in their passage to the northward. On the more arid and naked parts, consisting of yellow clay and sand, are thrown up many thousands

fands of those cellular masses of earth by a small insect of the ant tribe, to which naturalists have given the name of *termes*, different, however, from, and much less destructive than, that species, of which a curious description has been given by Mr. Smeathman in the Philosophical Transactions. The ant-hills in this part of Africa seldom exceed the height of three feet.

The plain to the eastward, at a dozen miles beyond Stickland, is terminated by two mountains, between which the road leads into a valley better cultivated and more thickly inhabited than any part between it and the Cape. Simonsberg, on the right, is among the highest of the mountains that are seen from the Cape. Its forked Parnassian summit is frequently, in winter, covered with snow, and in the south-east winds of summer is generally buried in the clouds. It also has its Helicon trickling down its sides, as yet a virgin spring untasted by the Muses. It held out more charms, it seems, for Plutus, than for Apollo. A man in the time of the governor, whose name the mountain perpetuates, intent on making his fortune by imposing on the credulity and ignorance of the Company's servants, melted down a quantity of Spanish dollars, and presented the mass to the governor as a specimen of silver from a rich mine that he had discovered in this mountain. Enraptured at the proof of so important a discovery, a resolution was passed by the governor in council that a sum of money should be advanced to the man to enable him to prosecute his discovery, and work the mine, of which he was to have the sole direction; and in the mean time, to convince the public of the rising wealth of the colony, the mass of silver was ordered to be

manufactured into a chain to which the keys of the Castle gates should be suspended. The chain was made, and still remains in the same service for which it was originally intended, as a memorial of the credulity of the governor and the council.

The Paarlberg, on the left of the pass into the valley, is a hill of moderate height, and has taken its name from a chain of large round stones that pass over the summit, like the pearls of a necklace. Of these the two that are placed near the central and highest point of the range are called, *par excellence*, the pearl and the diamond: and a particular description of them has been thought worthy of a place in the Philosophical Transactions. From that paper, and Mr. Masson's description, it would appear that these two masses of stone rested upon their own bases, and were detached from the mountain; whereas they grow out, and form a part, of it. It has also been said that their composition was totally different from the rocks that are found in the neighbouring mountains, which led a naturalist in Europe to observe, that these immense blocks of granite had probably been thrown up by volcanic explosions, or by some cause of a similar nature. It has been observed in the preceding Chapter, that the sand-stone strata of the Table Mountain rested upon a bed of primæval granite, and that an infinite number of large stones were scattered at the feet of the Mountains along the sea-coast, from the Lion's Head to the true Cape of Good Hope. All these are precisely of the same nature, and the same materials, as the pearl and the diamond; that is to say, they are aggregates of quartz and mica; the first in large irregular masses, and the latter in black lumps resembling shorl:
they

they contain also cubic pieces of felspar, and seem to be bound together by plates of a clayey iron stone. All the stones of this description appear to have been formed round a nucleus, as by the action of the air and weather they fall to pieces in large concentric laminæ. The Pearl is accessible on the northern side, but is nearly perpendicular on all the rest. This sloping side is more than a thousand feet, and the perpendicular altitude about four hundred feet above the summit of the mountain, and the circumference of its base is a full mile. Near the top it is quadrifected by two cliffs, crossing at right angles, in which were growing a number of beautiful aloes, several cryptogamous and other plants. A great part of the slanting side was covered with a species of green lichen. Down the perpendicular sides were immense rifts, as if the mass had been torn asunder by its own weight. The Diamond is the higher block, but less bulky, and, being cone-shaped, is difficult and dangerous to ascend.

The mountain of the Paarl furnishes a fine field for the botanist. The plants are very varied and wonderfully luxuriant. The wild olive of the Cape seems to have here attained its greatest size, and the dark-green foliage is finely contrasted with the elegant tribe of heaths, some of which shoot up to the size and form of trees. The fruit of the wild olive is small and acrid; but the wood is close-grained, shaded, and takes a polish not unlike that of walnut. A great variety of that genus of plants to which botanists have given the name of Protea, decorate the sides of the Paarl Mountain. Of these, one of the most numerous and most conspicuous was the mellifera, called here
the

the sugar-tree, from the great quantity of saccharine juice contained in the bottom of its vase-shaped flowers. Many of the inhabitants are at the trouble of collecting this juice, which is sometimes used as a stomachic, and sometimes boiled down to a thick syrup for the purpose of preserving fruits. Several species of the gaudy-plumed *certhia*, or creeper, come in also for their share, and at this season of the year may be seen in vast numbers perching themselves on the edge of the corollas, and sucking, with their long sickle-shaped bills, "the honied sweets." The iridescent and brilliant colors of these beautiful little birds, fluttering about the variegated blossoms of the protea, cannot fail to attract the notice of the passenger, for a time, from every other object. One species in particular (the chalybea of Linnæus) commands attention to its clear melodious note. It sings delightfully in the cage, where it is kept with difficulty, existing entirely on sugar and water.

The mountains that form the eastern boundary of the valley are eminently grand, but are destitute, near their summits, of a shrub, or even a blade of grass. They are a part of that great chain that stretches from False Bay to the northward, and to which a French naturalist has given the name of the Back-bone of the Earth; a name, however, that is much more appropriate by their appearance than great extent. Their naked summits are pointed and jagged, and divided like the vertebræ of the back-bone of an animal. They consist, like the Table Mountain, of a number of sand-stone strata, placed in a horizontal direction, contain a great deal of iron, being in places perfectly red, and they rest upon beds of granite, clay, and slate. This range

range of mountains, like an immense wall, shuts out entirely from the Cape the countries that lie far beyond it; so completely, indeed, that a few men in possession of the passes would always be able to cut off all communication between the sea-coast and the interior. Of these passes, or *kloofs* as they are called by the colonists, there are but three that are ever used by wheel-carriages. Hottentot Holland's Kloof near False Bay, which opens a communication with the district of Swellendam and the eastern parts of the colony along the sea-coast: Roode Sand, or red sand, Kloof, opposite to Saldanha Bay, leading to Graaff Reynet, and the remotest parts of the colony; and Eland's Kloof, still farther north, which opens into a wild and almost uninhabited part of the country.

Though the mountains be wild and barren, nothing could be more beautiful, rich, and well covered, than the vale they enclose, which is well-watered by the numberless arms of the Berg river, uniting near the middle, and meandering through it with a smooth and almost imperceptible current. This vale contains the divisions, or parishes, of Great and Little Drakensteen, Fransche Hoek or French corner, and the Paarl. The last is an assemblage of about thirty houses, disposed into two straight lines, and are so far detached from each other as to form a street about a mile in length. The church stands near the middle. This, as well as most of the houses, is neatly covered with rye-straw: a coating of this thatch, if properly laid on, will last from twenty to thirty years. The houses are generally surrounded with plantations of oaks. The common size of these is from ten to fifteen feet in circumference, and
from

from twenty to thirty feet without a branch : many are much larger : the tops are neither bent, nor is the wood shaken, nor twisted, as of those about Cape Town ; a proof that the winds are less violent in this valley than at the latter place.

Fransche Hoek, and the two Drakensteens, have neither church nor any assemblage of houses that deserves the name of village, but are composed of detached farms, dispersed over the vale at considerable distances from each other. Most of these are freehold property, that were granted, in the early stages of the Settlement, for certain sums of money, or by favor, or for particular services. They consist each of sixty *morgens* of land, or 120 English acres, and the possessors claim the privilege of the intermediate waste-land to turn their cattle upon. This is a great abuse, which perhaps would best be checked by obliging the proprietors to inclose their just portion of 120 acres, and would certainly be the means of greatly improving the country.

The chief produce of the valley is wine. At this time they were busily employed in pruning their vines. These are seldom suffered to creep up into frames or standards, as is most common in the southern parts of Europe, but are planted in rows, in the same manner, and about the same size, as currants or goose-berry bushes in England. In this part of the colony, which is not very distant from the Cape-market, there is no kind of produce that so well repays the labor of the farmer as the culture of the grape. On an acre of ground may be planted five thousand stocks of vines, and a thousand of these will generally yield
a leaguer

a leaguer or pipe of 154 gallons of wine. The retail price of a leaguer is from 50 to 150 rixdollars, or 10 to 30*l.* sterling. That sort which is commonly drank at table under the name of Cape madeira now sells at 12*l.* a pipe, as does also a pleasant tart wine not unlike *vin de grave*, called here the Steen wine. Of rich sweet wines the colony produces great variety: a large white Persian grape, called here the *baenapod*, or cock's foot, makes a delicious but expensive wine; the grape being fleshy, is generally planted for the purpose of being converted into raisins. The muscadel gives a different wine at almost every place in which it grows. Nearly all the wines that are made at the Cape taste either very much of the fruit, or otherwise are meagre or sour. The first may generally be attributed to the must not having undergone a sufficient degree of fermentation to change its nature, but put up into pipes with much of the saccharine matter remaining undecomposed. The latter may probably be owing to the practice of pulling the grapes before they are ripe, in order to prevent their being consumed by the numerous tribes of insects that prey upon them, among which the common honey bee is not the least destructive.

The grapes in general that are produced at the Cape are not inferior to those of any country; and there can be little doubt that the wines expressed from them might, by proper management, be made to rival the best European wines. Some of the farmers have lately turned their attention to the subject, and have found themselves amply repaid for any additional labor and expence they might have incurred in making experiments. Those few also who have attended to the process of distilling

spirits from the fruit have produced brandy of a very good quality. This article is here in general very bad, evidently owing, in a great degree, to the manner in which it is manufactured. In order to get as much spirit as possible, the materials thrown into the still are of the grossest kind, the greatest part being the expressed husks and stalks of the grapes; the apparatus is bad; the conducting of the process is committed to the hands of a slave, who has little knowledge of, and less interest in, the business he is commanded to perform: he falls asleep; the fire goes out; a rapid blaze succeeds to make up for loss of time; the spirit carries over with it a strong empyreumatic flavor which it never loses. There is, however, notwithstanding every precaution that has hitherto been taken, a very peculiar taste in all the wines and brandies of the Cape, arising probably from the circumstance of the grapes growing so very near the ground. It is well known that the exhalations from the earth are so much imbibed by the leaves of the tobacco plant which grow nearest to it, that those leaves are always rejected as unfit for use; and it is natural to suppose that the fruit of the vine hanging very near to, or even resting upon, the ground, will also receive the prevailing flavor exhaling from the soil. It is indolence alone that has hitherto prevented the colonists from leading their vines along standards, in which case they would not only improve the quality of the grape, but would also receive a double quantity from the same ground. The raisins of the Cape are of so good a quality, and can be afforded at so reasonable a rate, that, in all probability, they will hereafter form an article of considerable export. Almonds are also plentiful, large, and good.

The

The whole valley is convertible into excellent arable land; yet very little corn is cultivated except for home consumption. The tract of country that stretches along the feet of the great chain of mountains from the Paarl to False Bay, including the two Drakensteens, Fransche Hoek, the Drosdy of Stellenbosch, and Hottentots Holland, is chiefly employed in raising wine and fruits for the Cape-market. The quantity of the former amounts annually to about 6000 leaguers.

Hitherto there have been few speculators among the Dutch planters: the spirit of improvement and experiment never entered into their minds; and it may be a matter of doubt, had not the French Protestants, who sought an asylum here from the religious persecutions of their once bigoted countrymen, introduced and cultivated the vine, whether at this time the whole colony would have produced a single leaguer of wine. The sugar-cane grows with health and vigor in several parts of the colony; yet none of the planters have yet procured a pound of sugar. On asking a farmer, who complained that the canes had overrun his garden, why he did not turn them to some account, he replied with that nonchalance which characterizes the nation, that it served to amuse the women and children; but that he should not be the first to try it, as long as he could buy that article in the Cape for six schillings, or three English shillings, a pound.

Among the thick shrubbery that covers the uncultivated parts of the valley, is an abundance of game, particularly of the Cape partridges, which, fearless of man, run about nearly as tame as

poultry in a farm-yard; and of korhaens, the *otis afra* of Linnæus, and white-eared bastard of Latham, which, unlike the partridge, not only fly to a distance at the approach of the sportsman, but keep up, while on the wing, a violent screaming, as if to give notice to other birds of the impending danger. There are also plenty of Cape snipes, *Scolopax Capensis*, and three species of wild ducks, the *anas Capensis*, or Cape widgeon, the Dominican duck, and the common teal. Among the quadrupeds that inhabit the valley are the duiker and the griesbok, already described; and the mountains abound with a curious species of antelope, which, from its amazing agility, is called the *klip-springer*, or rock-leaper. Its cloven hoofs are each of them subdivided into two segments, and jagged at the edges, which gives it the power of adhering to the steep sides of the smooth rock without danger of slipping. The color is cinereous grey, and its black horns are short, straight, erect, and annulated one third of their length from the base. The hair is very singular, being so brittle that it breaks instead of bending, adheres loosely to the skin, and is so very light that it is used as the best article that can be procured for stuffing saddles.

A few miles beyond the Paarl, the Berg or Mountain-river crosses the road. It is here so large and deep in the winter season as to make a pont or floating bridge necessary. A little lower down, however, it is sometimes fordable; and the peasants, to avoid the toll at the ferry, frequently cross it, though at the hazard of their own lives and of their cattle. At this time the river was pretty full; yet two farmers, rather than pay four shillings for the passage at the ferry of their two waggons, ventured

ventured through at the ford, and passed it with the loss only of two sheep that were worth at least four times the amount of the toll. The road beyond the ferry is excellent, being a level bed of hard clay ; but the country is very thinly inhabited. In advancing to the northward the surface has fewer inequalities, and becomes sandy. Nothing, however, like drifts or beds of sand, meets the eye ; but, on the contrary, it wanders over an uninterrupted forest of verdure arising from a variety of fruit-efcent plants, among which the tribes of proteas, of heaths, and two species of *scirpium*, called here the rhinosceros-bush, predominate. In those places where the ground is least covered, the hillocks thrown up by the *termites* most abound. Here also, towards the close of the day, a multitude of small land tortoises, the *testudo pusilla* and the *geometrica* of Linnæus, were crawling slowly off the road towards the bushes, having basked themselves in the open sunshine during the day. The howling wolf and the yelping jackall began their hideous cries shortly after the setting of the sun, and seemed to follow us in the night, keeping at no great distance from the waggons. It was near the middle of the night before we arrived at a solitary habitation, situated in a wild, bleak, open country, and on the borders of a lake called the *Vogel Valley* or the Bird Lake. The word *valley*, in the colony, implies either a lake or a swamp : at this time the place in question was the latter ; but it abounded with ducks, geese, and teal, and also with the great white pelican, the *onocratulus*, and the rose-colored flamingo. The wings of the latter are converted into fans for flapping away the flies that, in incredible multitudes, swarm in the houses of the peasantry for want of a proper attention to cleanliness ; and the
pelican

pelican is shot for the sake of the fine soft down which lies under his plumage.

A few miles beyond this lake or swamp brought us to the entrance of Roode Sand Kloef, or the red sandy pass over the great chain of mountains. Here the strata of which they are composed, though of the same nature as the Table Mountain, were not horizontal, but dipped to the south-eastward, making with the horizon an angle of about twenty degrees. The ascent of the Kloef is not steep, but very rugged; and a small river that meanders down it must be crossed several times. The plants, sheltered by the large fragments of rock that have rolled down the mountains, are uncommonly luxuriant. Of these the different species of protea were the most conspicuous; that species of *ricinus* called the palma Christi, which affords the castor oil, was very plentiful; and the two species of the melianthus grew in every part of the Kloef. The *calla Etbioptica* was everywhere abundant and in full flower. The baboons, from their concealed dens in the sides of the mountain, laughed, screamed, and uttered such horrible noises, the whole time that the waggons were ascending the pass, that to a stranger, not knowing from whence they proceeded, they excited no small degree of surprise.

From the upper part of the Kloef there is no descent to the land of Waveren, or, as the division is now called, Roode Sand. The surface of this vale is four or five hundred feet higher than that which lies on the Cape side of the range of mountains. It is bounded on the eastern side by a branch of the same chain,
much

much higher, however, than that through which the pass lies, yet accessible by waggons. The summits of the mountains were buried in snow, and the thermometer at sunrise stood, on the plain, at the freezing point.

The valley of Roode Sand, or Waveren, is a fertile tract of land, well watered by streamlets falling from the inclosing mountains, and produces abundance of corn, some wine, raisins, and other fruits. Several parts are capable of being flooded, and on that account admirably adapted for the cultivation of rice. The Chinese bamboo, a plant not more elegant than it is useful, grows here with great luxuriance, and is employed for whipstocks, and to make frames for the covers of the waggons. The Cape olive grows wild in great abundance, and also the palma Christi. Game of various kinds is also plentiful, such as bustards, partridges, snipes, ducks, and mountain geese. Of antelopes they have the duiker, klip-springer, steenbok, griesbok, and reebok. The last is an animal that does not yet appear to have been described in any systematic work. Its size is that of the domestic goat, but it is much more elegantly made. The color is a bluish grey, the belly and breast white; horns seven or eight inches long, annulated about a third part of the length from the base. Besides these they have the Cape hare, and an animal that burrows in the ground called the *yzervarke*, or iron hog, the flesh of which, when salted and dried, is esteemed by the Dutch as a great delicacy. It is the *hystrix cristata*, or crested porcupine of Pennant. Several of the farmers breed them; but it is a vicious animal, and not safe to be approached by strangers. The *aard varke* or earth-hog, the

the *myrmecophaga Capensis* or ant-eater of the Cape, is also very common, and like the porcupine undermines the ground, seldom quitting its subterranean abode except in the night. The thighs of this animal are sometimes salted, and in that state considered as very good hams.

The valley of Roode Sand is about thirty miles in length, and is inhabited by about forty families. Quitting this division, the country becomes wild, and almost uninhabited. Bogs, swamps, and morafs covered with rushes and four plants, large tracts of naked hard clay, deep sandy roads, pools of stagnant water, and those infallible indications of a barren soil, hillocks of ants, are the chief objects that meet the eye of the traveller. For several miles together no human habitation makes its appearance. In this dreary country there was nothing to engage the attention but the vast chain of mountains on the left which we were shortly to pass, and which here began to round off into an easterly direction. This branch was much more wild, lofty, and barren than that through which the Kloef of Roode Sand opens a passage. They consisted of immense columnar masses of naked sandstone, of a red ferruginous color passing in places into steel-blue. Their corroded and jagged tops, like the battlements of so many towers or minarets, leaned from their bases, and seemed to owe their only support to each other. The strata were here inclined to the eastward in an angle of about forty degrees, and seemed as if ready to slide down over each other. Still they were uniform, and had evidently never been disrupted by any subterraneous eruption or concussion. On the opposite

opposite side of the dale, however, stood a long range of hills which had every appearance of volcanic origin. Some were perfect cones; others truncated at the summit in the manner of those on which craters are generally found. Hills like these, standing each on its proper base, and so very different from any that had yet been seen, were too interesting to pass. They were found to be composed of quartz, sand-stone, and iron; not, however, stratified like the great chains, but torn and rent into large fragments. There was no lava; nor did it appear that any of the stones had undergone fusion. There was no blue slate in their sides, which most probably would have been the case had they been thrown up by any subterranean impulse, the whole base of the plain being composed of it.

Within these hills we came to a valley about three miles in length and two in width, having a surface as level as that of a bowling-green. By a strong stream passing from one end to the other, the whole might be laid under water, and converted into most excellent rice grounds. This stream was smoking hot. The springs, by which it was supplied, issued out of the ground at the foot of some hills which formed the head of the valley. They threw up the water with great violence, and with it quantities of small whitish sand mixed with minute crystals of quartz. The bed of the reservoir, and the channel down which the water was carried across the valley, in a stream strong enough to turn the largest mill in England, were composed of these materials. The water was perfectly clear, and deposited not the smallest degree of any kind of sediment, neither in the pool where the springs were, nor by the edges

of the stream. A green *Conserva* grew on the margin of both. No change of color was produced upon the plants and stones with which the water came in contact. With sulphuric acid it deposited no sediment, nor became in the least turbid, nor were blue vegetable colors at all affected by it. No impregnation of any kind was discoverable, in the smallest degree, by the taste. On the contrary, it is considered so pure that the family living near it generally employed it for dressing their victuals; and all their linen and colored clothes were washed in it without sustaining any injury. The thermometer I had with me was graduated only to 140° , to which point it ascended almost instantaneously. The temperature appeared to be very nearly that of boiling water.

The duration of hot springs for ages without any considerable variation in temperature, or in the quantity of water thrown out, is one of those secret operations of nature that has not as yet been satisfactorily explained, but which has baffled, at all times, the speculations of philosophers. The decomposition of pyritical matter, the slacking of lime, and the subterranean furnace, heated with combustible materials, have each had their advocates, but each when "weighed in the balance" has been found wanting."

From the hot wells we crossed the Breede, or broad river, and entered a kloef on the opposite, or northern, side of the vale, which opened a passage through the second great chain of mountains. It is called the Hex river's kloef, and is about four miles in length. The ascent is much less than that of
Roode

Roode Sand kloef, the fall of the river that meanders through it being not more than 200 feet. The mountains on each side of this pass were wild and naked, but the kloef itself abounded with large frutescent plants. Basking in the sun, on the banks of the river, were a troop of four or five hundred large black baboons, apparently of the species of *Cynocephalus*, which quitted their place with seeming reluctance, grumbling and howling as they scrambled up the sides of the naked rocks.

The head of the kloef opened out into a narrow valley to which there was no descent. It is about two miles in width and fifteen in length; and the third branch of mountains, on the northern side, were covered half way down from their summits with snow; yet the orange-trees at their feet were loaded with large ripe fruit. Four families, the only inhabitants of this deep valley, constitute a little world of their own: their wants might be as bounded as their horizon, for the fertility of the ground furnishes them with almost every necessary of life. They have plenty of cattle, and also all the different sorts of game that are met with on the other side of the mountains. We saw here some large partridges with red wings, much preferable to the common Cape partridge, and a quadruped called the *Bergbaas* or mountain hare. It was the *Dipus Cafer* of Linnæus, by some called the Cape Gerboa. Like the kangaroo of Botany Bay it has the hind legs about thrice the length of the fore ones. When pursued, it always takes to the mountains, knowing that the construction of its legs is better adapted to ascend their steep sides than to scour the plains.

All the appearances of Hex-river valley declare it, at one time, to have been a lake, the head of which having given way at the kloef, has suffered the water to force itself out upon the next lower terrace, leaving only a bog in the middle, to which the stoney bafes of the mountains shelve on each fide. Should the falls of Niagara once sweep away the barrier that occasions them, the lake Erie would then become a plain or valley, like that of the Hex-river, and many others that occur within the chains of mountains in Southern Africa.

At the head of this little valley we were to take leave of every human habitation for at least sixteen days, the time required to cross over the Great Karroo, or arid desert, that lay between us and the distant district of Graaff Reynet. It therefore became necessary to supply ourselves with a stock of provisions, as nothing whatsoever is to be had on the desert except now and then an antelope. To those travellers who are furnished with a good waggon and a tent, the want of habitations is no great loss; for few of them, behind the first range of mountains, have any sort of convenience, comfort, or even cleanliness. Among the planters of Africa it is true there are some who live in a decent manner, particularly the cultivators of the grape. Many of these are descendants of the French families who, a little more than a century ago, found an asylum at the Cape of Good Hope from the religious persecutions that drove them from their own country. But a true Dutch peasant, or boor as he styles himself, has not the smallest idea of what an English farmer means by the word comfort. Placed in a country where not only the necessaries, but almost every

every luxury of life might by industry be procured, he has the enjoyment of none of them. Though he has cattle in abundance he makes very little use of milk or of butter. In the midst of a soil and climate most favourable for the cultivation of the vine, he drinks no wine. He makes use of few or no vegetables nor roots. Three times a-day his table is loaded with masses of mutton, swimming in the grease of the sheep's tail. His house is either open to the roof, or covered only with rough poles and turf, affording a favorable shelter for scorpions and spiders; and the earthy floors are covered with dust and dirt, and swarm with insects, particularly with a species of the *termes*, which, though not so destructive as some others of this genus, is nevertheless a very troublesome and disagreeable animal. His apartments, if he happens to have more than one, which is not always the case among the grazing farmers, are nearly destitute of furniture. A great chest that contains all his moveables, and two smaller ones that are fitted to his waggon, are the most striking articles. The bottoms of his chairs consist of thongs cut from a bullock's hide. The windows are without glass; or if there should happen to be any remains of this article, it is so patched and daubed as nearly to exclude the light it was intended to admit. The boor notwithstanding has his enjoyments: he is absolute master of a domain of several miles in extent; and he lords it over a few miserable slaves or Hottentots without control. His pipe scarcely ever quits his mouth, from the moment he rises till he retires to rest, except to give him time to swallow his *sopie*, or a glass of strong ardent spirit, to eat his meals, and to take his nap after dinner. Unwilling to work, and unable
to

to think; with a mind disengaged from every sort of care and reflexion, indulging to excess in the gratification of every sensual appetite, the African peasant grows to an unweildy size, and is carried off the stage by the first inflammatory disease that attacks him.

How different is the lot of the laboring poor of England, who for six days in the week are doomed to toil for twelve hours in every day, in order to gain a morsel of bread for their family, and the luxury of a little animal food for the seventh day!

The cultivators of the ground, who inhabit the nearer districts to the town, though something better than the breeders of cattle, live but in a very uncomfortable manner in the midst of profusion. They have little or no society with each other, and every one seems to live solely for himself. Though removed from each other to the distance of several miles, and enjoying the benefit of many thousand acres of land under the rate of a farthing an acre, it is yet a singular fact, that scarcely any two neighbours are found to be on good terms with each other, but are embroiled perpetually in quarrels and disputes about the extent of their farms, or the privilege of a spring or a water-course. One great cause of their endless disputes is the absurd manner of estimating distance by time. The quantity of land in a government farm, according to the established custom of the colony, must be one hour's walk across it. If one farmer is supposed to have put down his *baaken*, or stake, or land-mark, a little too near to that of his neighbour, the *Feld-*
wagt-

wagt-meeſter, or peace-officer of the diviſion, is called in, by the latter, to pace the diſtance, for which he gets three dollars. If the *Feldwagt-meeſter* ſhould happen to regulate his pace to the ſatisfaction of both parties, the affair is ſettled ; but as this is not always the caſe, the next ſtep is for the diſcontented party to apply for a commiſſion, conſiſting of the Landroſt, two members of the Council, the Secretary of the diſtrict, and a Meſſenger. Theſe gentlemen ſhare fifteen dollars a-day as long as they are out upon the commiſſion to determine how far a man ought to walk in an hour.

The dangerous and difficult roads in every part of the colony, but particularly the *kloefs* or paſſes of the mountains, and the ſtill more perilous fords of the rivers, ſhew how very little ſenſe is entertained by the peaſantry of public benefits or public conveniences. Each gets over a difficulty as well as he can, and no more is thought about it till it again occurs. An inſtance appeared of this in croſſing the Breede river oppoſite to Brandt Valley, which is done by means of a ſmall flat-bottomed tub, about ſix feet by three. In this machine foot paſſengers hawl themſelves over by a rope fixed to two poſts, one on each ſide of the river. When a horſe is to croſs, the ſaddle is taken off, the rider gets into the tub, and drags the animal after him. But when a waggon is to be transported, it muſt firſt be unladen, and the baggage carried over in the veſſel : the carriage is then made faſt by one end to this floating machine, and the other is buoyed up by a caſk, and in this manner it is dragged over. Thus is half a day conſumed in paſſing a ſmall river of thirty or forty yards at the moſt in width,
when

when a few planks, properly put together, would enable them to carry over any sort of carriage, cattle, or horses, with safety and convenience, in five minutes.

The women of the African peasantry pass a life of the most listless inactivity. The mistress of the family, with her coffee-pot constantly boiling before her on a small table, seems fixed to her chair like a piece of furniture. This good lady, born in the wilds of Africa, and educated among slaves and Hottentots, has little idea of what, in a state of society, constitutes female delicacy. She makes no scruple of having her legs and feet washed in warm water by a slave before strangers; an operation that is regularly performed every evening. If the motive of such a custom were that of cleanliness, the practice of it would deserve praise; but to see the tub with the same water passed round through all the branches of the family, according to seniority, is apt to create ideas of a very different nature. Most of them go constantly without stockings and shoes, even when the thermometer is down to the freezing point. They generally, however, make use of small stoves to place the feet on. The young girls sit with their hands before them as listless as their mothers. Most of them, in the distant districts, can neither read nor write, so that they have no mental resources whatsoever. Luckily, perhaps, for them, the paucity of ideas prevents time from hanging heavy on their hands. The history of a day is that of their whole lives. They hear or speak of nothing but that such-a-one is going to the city, or to church, or to be married, or that the Bosjesmans have stolen the cattle of such-a-one, or the locusts eaten their corn. The young

young people have no meetings at fixed periods, as in most country-places, for mirth and recreation. No fairs, no dancing, no music, nor amusement of any sort. To the cold phlegmatic temper and inactive way of life may perhaps be owing the prolific tendency of all the African peasantry. Six or seven children in a family are considered as very few; from a dozen to twenty are not uncommon; and most of them marry very young, so that the population of the colony is rapidly increasing. Several, however, of the children die in their infancy, from swellings in the throat, and from eruptions of the same kind they are subject to in the Cape. Very few instances of longevity occur. The manner of life they lead is perhaps less favorable for a prolonged existence than the nature of the climate. The diseases of which they generally die in the country are bilious and putrid fevers and dropsies.

The men are in general much above the middle size, very tall and stout, but ill made, loosely put together, awkward, and inactive. Very few have those open ingenuous countenances that among the peasantry of many parts of Europe speak their simplicity and innocence. The descendants of French families are now so intermarried with those of the original settlers, that no distinction, except the names, remains. And it is a remarkable fact that not a word of the French language is spoken or understood by any of the peasantry, though there be many still living whose parents were both of that nation. Neither is a French book of any kind to be seen in their houses. It would seem as if these persecuted refugees had studied to conceal from

their children their unfortunate history and their country's disgraceful conduct.

The means of education, it is true, must be very difficult to be had among a people so widely scattered over a vast extent of country as the peasantry are in the colony of the Cape. Some have a person in the house whom they call the schoolmaster. This is generally a man who had served out his time in the ranks. His employment, in this new situation, is not only to instruct the children to read, to write, to sing psalms, and get by heart a few occasional prayers, but he must also make himself serviceable in other respects. At one place that we passed, the poor schoolmaster was driving the plough, whilst a Hottentot had the more honorable post of holding and directing it. The children of those who either cannot obtain, or afford to employ, such a person, can neither read nor write; and the whole of their education consists in learning to shoot well, to crack and use with dexterity an enormous large whip, and to drive a waggon drawn by bullocks.

A book of any kind is rarely seen in any of the farmers' houses, except the Bible and *William Sluiter's Gefangen*, or songs out of the Bible done into verse by the Sternhold and Hopkins of Holland. They affect to be very religious, and carry at least the devotion of religion fully as far as the most zealous bigots. They never sit down to table without a long grace before meat pronounced with an audible voice by the youngest of the family; and every morning before day-light one of William Sluiter's *Gefangen* is drawled out in full chorus

by

by an assemblage of the whole family. In their attendance at church they are scrupulously exact, though the performance of this duty costs many of them a journey of several days. Those who live at the distance of a fortnight or three weeks from the nearest church generally go with their families once a-year.

Rude and uncultivated as are their minds, there is one virtue in which they eminently excel—hospitality to strangers. A countryman, a foreigner, a relation, a friend, are all equally welcome to whatsoever the house will afford. A Dutch farmer never passes a house on the road without alighting, except indeed his next neighbour's, with whom it is ten to one he is at variance. It is not enough to inquire after the health of the family in passing: even on the road, if two peasants should meet they instantly dismount to shake hands, whether strangers or friends. When a traveller arrives at a habitation, he alights from his horse, enters the house, shakes hands with the men, kisses the women, and sits down without farther ceremony. When the table is served he takes his place among the family without waiting for an invitation. This is never given, on the supposition that a traveller in a country so thinly inhabited must always have an appetite for something. Accordingly, "What will you make use of?" is generally the first question. If there be a bed in the house it is given to the stranger; if none, which is frequently the case among the graziers of the distant district of Graaff Reynet, he must take his chance for a form, or bench, or a heap of sheep skins, among the rest of the family. In the morning after a solid breakfast he takes his *sopie*, or glass of brandy, orders his slave or Hottentot to saddle

the horses, shakes hands with the men, and kisses the women : *he* wishes them health, and *they* wish him a good journey. In this manner a traveller might pass through the whole country.

If the economy of the African farmer's house be ill managed, that of his land is equally bad. The graziers indeed, in many places, are not at the trouble of sowing any grain, but exchange with others their cattle for as much as may be necessary for the family consumption. But even those who have corn-farms near the Cape seem to have no kind of management. They turn over a piece of ground with a huge mis-shapen plough that requires eight or ten horses, or a dozen oxen, to drag it along : the seed is sown in the broad-cast way, at the rate of about a bushel and a half to an acre ; a rude harrow is just passed over it, and they reap from ten to fifteen for one. No manure comes upon the ground except a sprinkling for barley. In low situations near rivulets, where the water can be brought upon the ground, they reap from thirty to forty for one. Water in fact is every thing in Southern Africa. Not like the Chinese, whose great art of agriculture consists in suiting the nature and habit of the plant to that of the soil, which he also artificially prepares, the Dutch peasant at the Cape is satisfied if he can command only a supply of water. He bestows no kind of labor on the ground but that of throwing in the seed : the rest is left to chance and the effects of an excellent climate. The time of seeding is in the months of May and June ; and of harvest, from November to January. The grain is trodden out by horses on circular floors in the open air ; and the straw is left to rot or to be scattered about by the winds.

We

We remained a couple of days in the Hex-river valley in making preparations for crossing the desert, and in waiting the arrival of two grazing farmers of Graaff Reynet who were to meet us by appointment at this place. These people were not only likely to be useful in pointing out the places where water was generally to be found, but they were also a considerable addition to our strength in case of an attack from a savage tribe of Hottentots known in the colony by the name of *Bosjesmans*, or men of the thickets, because, lurking in the cover of the shrubbery, they are said to shoot their poisoned arrows against the unguarded traveller, for the sake of plundering him of his cattle. To oppose these Bosjesmans the farmers generally cross the desert in parties, and strongly armed. The poor savage, driven by imperious want to carry off an ox or sheep to his starving family, who have no other abode than the caverns of the mountains, often pays in the attempt the forfeit of his life; but it rarely happens that any of the colonists fall by his hands. Yet the name of Bosjesman is held in horror and detestation; and a farmer thinks he cannot proclaim a more meritorious action than the murder of one of these people. A boor from Graaff Reynet being asked in the secretary's office, a few days before we left the town, if the savages were numerous or troublesome on the road, replied, he had only shot four, with as much composure and indifference as if he had been speaking of four partridges. I myself have heard one of the humane colonists boast of having destroyed with his own hands near three hundred of these unfortunate wretches.

The

The two graziers having joined us with each a waggon, and a numerous family of children, Hottentots, and Kaffers, we proceeded, on the twelfth of July, to the north-east, and in four hours gained the summit of the lowest part of the mountains that inclose the valley. The ascent, which was from terrace to terrace, might be about fifteen hundred feet in the distance of six miles. From the top towards the east there was little or no descent. Here the face of the country began to wear an entire new aspect. All the great chains of mountains gradually disappeared, or were seen only behind sinking into the horizon; and a confined prospect of a rugged surface, broken into hill and dale, presented itself on every side. The eye wandered in vain to seek relief by a diversity of objects. No huge rocks confusedly scattered on the plain, or piled into mountains, no hills clothed with verdure, no traces of cultivation, not a tree nor a tall shrub, appeared to break the uniformity of the surface, nor bird nor beast to enliven the dreary waste. Vegetation was thinly scattered over a bed of brownish-colored clay, and the low and stunted plants were almost wholly confined to the succulent tribe. Of these the most common were several species of *mesembryanthemum*, of *euphorbia*, *crassula*, and *cotyledon*. The grand family of *proteas*, and the elegant *erica*, had totally disappeared. The road was tolerably good, being carried generally over a bed of sand-stone crossed with veins of fat quartz, and a kind of ponderous iron-stone.

Having travelled about seven hours, in which time the oxen had not proceeded above fifteen miles, we entered a long narrow pass made by two hills: the faces of these being nearly
perpen-

perpendicular and straight, gave to the eye a long natural perspective like that of a street, a name which in fact the place bore. The farther extremity of the pass opened upon a level plain, inclosed by small hills all detached from each other, and having every appearance of a volcanic origin, except that the sand-stone strata, which shewed themselves on every side, were regular and undisturbed. The inclination of these in a considerable angle to the horizon, and the form of the hills, made it appear, from certain points of view, as if a spiral line of stone twisted itself round their sides like the ridge that encircles some of the volute shells. Fahrenheit's thermometer stood at 33° at sun-rise; at noon, exposed to the sun, at 80° , in the shade 55° ; and at seven in the evening it was down at the freezing point.

The next day's journey was about five-and-twenty miles, to a place called *Constaaple*, after a Bastaard Hottentot who had been tempted by a small spring of water to erect a hut and plant a few trees. The drought, however, had soon obliged him to quit this retreat. Two spreading oaks still remained and shaded a spring of excellent water, which, however, soon lost itself in the sandy surface of the ground. The thermometer at noon rose to 80° in the sun, and at night was down to the freezing point.

On the fourteenth we travelled only twelve miles. The road, in some places, was rocky and uneven, and in others deep sand. Our oxen too were beginning to droop for want of pasturage. The stage called *Mentjies bock* afforded a few rushes and abundance of succulent plants, among which the
bullocks

TRAVELS IN

of these animals are accustomed to bronze for want of grass :
no grass of any kind had appeared since we entered upon
the plain, and shrubbery was very thinly scattered over the
country except in the neighbourhood of the few springs that
occurred there. At this place were the remains of a
hut and a solitary oak overhanging a spring of clear water.
These objects served, in some degree, to enliven, and to
break the uniformity of a barren desert. To the southward,
and now began to appear the blue summits of that barren
chain of mountains, mentioned in the preceding Chapter under
the name of Zoarteberg. A butcher of the Cape passed our
encampment with about five hundred head of cattle and five
thousand sheep that he had purchased in the Sneuwberg, or
snowy mountains. The sheep were in tolerable good condi-
tion ; but the cattle were miserably poor. As the greatest
part of the beeves that are killed at the Cape must travel from
Graaff Reynet across this desert, it cannot be a matter of sur-
prise that the Cape beef should be universally complained
against. The knife is generally put into them the moment
they arrive from a journey of forty or fifty days, in which,
beside the fatigue of travelling, they have been exposed to the
scorching rays of the sun at one season of the year, and the
intense cold of the nights in the other, without any kind of
shade or shelter ; without any kind of food but the salt, acrid,
and watery leaves of the different succulent plants that almost
exclusively grow on the Karroo ; sometimes whole days with-
out a drop of water, and most commonly such only as is
muddy and saline : sometimes their hoofs become so tender by
travelling upon the hot sand and gravel, that they are obliged

to

to be left on the desert; and they generally arrive at the town in so maimed and miserable a condition, as to be very unfit for what they are intended. Could the farmers near the Cape be once prevailed upon to sow turnips, which may be produced here equally good as in Europe, to plant potatoes, and cultivate the artificial grasses, the quality of the beef and mutton might be very materially improved. Those few inhabitants who stall-feed their cattle, have their tables supplied with beef little, if at all, inferior to what is sold in Leadenhall market; but the adoption of such a system would require more labor and activity, and more attention, than the body and mind of a Dutch farmer seem capable of supplying: his avarice, though great, is yet overcome by the habits of indolence in which he has been educated.

On the fifteenth, from the exhausted state of our oxen, three of which we had been obliged to leave behind, we made only a short stage of ten or twelve miles to the *riet fonteyn*, or the red spring, which took its rise out of a high cone-shaped hill, with a flat top, and ran in a feeble stream to the southward. The banks were skirted by a thicket of the *doorn boom*, or thorn-tree, a species of *mimosa*, called erroneously by the two Swedish travellers, who have published their researches in Southern Africa, the *nilotica*, or that which produces the gum Arabic. The pods of this is very long, and moniliform or divided like a string of beads; whereas the karroo mimosa has short sickle-shaped pods. Armed from the summit down to the ground with enormous double thorns, pointing in every direction "like quills upon the fretful porcupine," it makes an

N

impe-

impenetrable thicket to most animals except the rhinoceros, whose hide, though not proof against a musket-ball, as has been asserted by a great naturalist, has little to fear from the spines of the mimosa. The bark, being powerfully astringent, is preferred to that of any other tree in the colony for preparing leather from raw skins; and the wood, being hard and tough, is used for waggon-poles, and as lock-shoes for the wheels. The trunk of the tree gives out great quantities of a clear transparent gum, which, however, does not seem to have been applied to any kind of use. It is remarkable that almost every tree which furnishes tasteless gums or resins is covered with a bark that is highly astringent and austere to the taste.

The following day we crossed the bed of the Buffalo river, which was at least fifty yards in width; but the quantity of water in it was barely sufficient to form a current. The deep shelving banks, however, and the wreck of roots and shrubs, indicated at least its periodical power, which had forced through the *black mountains* to the southward a grand chasm in its passage to the eastern ocean. The whole surface of the country was here strewn over with small fragments of a deep purple-colored slate, that had crumbled away from the strata which in long parallel ridges lay in the direction of east and west. Scattered among these fragments were black tumified stones that had much the appearance of volcanic slugs, or the scoræ of an iron furnace. Several hills of the shape of cones, some truncated near the top parallel to their bases, stood detached from each other on the plain, apparently thrown up by volcanic explosions; but a nearer view of the alternate strata of earth and sand-

sand-stone, regularly disposed in every part, shewed them to be the effect of water and not of fire. This part of the desert was more sterile and naked than had yet occurred. Scarcely a plant of any description threw its feeble leaves out of the flat surface, except a few species of the mesembryanthemum, among which was one more luxuriant than the rest, whose leather-like covering of its fleshy cylindrical leaves served our Hottentots, when dried, for tinder.

About ten miles beyond the Buffalo river we encamped for the night upon the banks of a small running brook called *Geelbeck*, winding round a flat sandy marsh overgrown with rushes, and abounding with springs whose waters were strongly impregnated with salt. All the naked sandy patches were thinly sprinkled over with a fine white powdery substance not unlike snow: it was found in the greatest quantities where the cattle of travellers had been tied up at nights; and it was observed almost invariably to surround the roots of a frutescent plant that grew here in great exuberance. I collected a quantity of this white powder, together with the sand, and by boiling the solution and evaporating the water, obtained from it crystals of pure prismatic nitre. A small proportion of a different alkaline salt was also extracted from the liquor. The plant alluded to was a species of *salsola*, or salt-wort, with very minute fleshy leaves closely surrounding the woody branches. It is known to the country-people by the Hottentot name of *Canna*, and is that plant from the ashes of which almost all the soap, that is used in the colony, is made. These ashes, when carefully burnt and collected, are a pure white caustic alkali, a

N 2

solution

solution of which, mixed up with the oily fat of the large broad tails of the sheep of the colony, and boiled slowly for five or six days, takes the consistency and the quality of an excellent white soap. This *salsola* grows in almost every part of Southern Africa, but particularly on those plains known by the name of Karroo, and in such abundance that, supposing the plant, after being cut down and burnt, to be reproduced in five years, the quantity of soda, or barrilla, that might annually be made from the ashes would be sufficient, beside serving the colony, for the whole consumption of Great Britain: and as enormous sums of money have always been, and continue to be, drawn from England to pay the imports of this article, it may perhaps be considered as an object worthy of further inquiry. According to the present system, however, of letting out the government farms, and the high price of labor, none of the country-people would find it worth their consideration as an article to bring to market. The Hottentots, indeed, might be encouraged to prepare it; but the great distance from Cape Town, the only market in the colony, and the badness of the roads, will always operate against a supply of the natural products of the country being had there at any reasonable rate. Another shrubby plant with glaucous spear-shaped leaves, is generally met with growing among the *salsola*, the ashes of which also give a strong alkaline lie; but the soap made from these is said to have a blueish color, and to be of a very inferior quality to that made from the former. The plant was not in flower; but it appeared to be the *atriplex albicans*, a kind of orache.

The

The hills that surrounded the plain of Geel-beck were composed of a dark purple-colored slate; and among these were seen prancing a small herd of that beautifully-marked animal the *zebra*, and a great number of another species of wild horse, known in the colony by the Hottentot name of *qua-cha*. This animal was long considered as the female zebra, but is now known to be a species entirely distinct. It is marked with faint stripes on the four quarters only; is well shaped, strong limbed, not in the least vicious, but, on the contrary, is soon rendered by domestication mild and tractable: yet, abundant as they are in the country, few have given themselves the trouble of turning them to any kind of use. They are infinitely more beautiful than, and fully as strong as, the mule; are easily supported on almost any kind of food, and are never out of flesh. The zebra has obtained the character of being so vicious and ungovernable as never to be completely tamed, perhaps only from some very imperfect and injudicious trials. The success of an attempt to domesticate animals that are naturally fierce or timid would require more perseverance and patience, more labor, and more address, than seem to fall to the share of a Dutch peasant. A vicious animal, taken from a state of nature, is not to be tamed with the point of the knife, nor with stripes; they are more impatient of pain than such as are already rendered docile and accustomed to the cruelties exercised upon them by man; and wounds and harsh treatment serve only to make them more fierce and unmanageable. At the landroft's of Zwellendam I saw a male and female zebra that, while young and attended to, were said to have been mild and docile; but by neglect, and probably by teasing, had become

become exceedingly vicious. One of the English dragoons persisted in mounting the female. She kicked and plunged, and laid herself down, but to no purpose; the man kept his seat; till taking a leap from the high bank of the river, she threw him into the water; but, holding fast by the bridle, she had no sooner dragged him to the shore than, walking up quietly to him, she put her head down to his face and completely bit off his ear.

On many parts of the great deserts ostriches were seen scowring the plains and waving their black and white plumes in the wind, a signal to the Hottentots that their nests were not far distant, especially if they wheeled round the place from whence they started up: when they have no nest they make off, immediately on being disturbed, with the wing-feathers close to the body. There is something in the economy of this animal different in general from that of the rest of the feathered race. It seems to be the link of union, in the great chain of nature, that connects the winged with the four-footed tribe. Its strong-jointed legs and cloven hoofs are well adapted for speed and for defence. The wings and all its feathers are insufficient to raise it from the ground; its camel-shaped neck is covered with hair; its voice is a kind of hollow mournful lowing, and it grazes on the plain with the qua-cha and the zebra. Among the very few polygamous birds that are found in a state of nature, the ostrich is one. The male, distinguished by its glossy black feathers from the dusky grey female, is generally seen with two or three, and frequently as many as five, of the latter. These females lay their eggs in one nest, to
the

the number of ten or twelve each, which they hatch all together, the male taking his turn of sitting on them among the rest. Between sixty and seventy eggs have been found in one nest; and if incubation has begun, a few are most commonly lying round the sides of the hole, having been thrown out by the birds on finding the nest to contain more than they could conveniently cover. The time of incubation is six weeks. For want of knowing the ostrich to be polygamous an error respecting this bird has slipped into the *Systema Naturæ*, where it is said that one female lays fifty eggs.

The eggs of the ostrich are considered as a great delicacy. They are prepared in a variety of ways; but that made use of by the Hottentots is perhaps the best: it is simply to bury them in hot ashes, and through a small hole made in the upper end to stir the contents continually round till they acquire the consistence of an omlet: prepared in this manner we very often, in the course of our long journies over the wilds of Africa, found them an excellent repast. In these eggs are frequently discovered a number of small oval-shaped pebbles, about the size of a marrowfat pea, of a pale yellow color and exceeding hard. In one egg were nine and in another twelve of such stones.

At this place it was considered prudent to furnish our Hottentots, who attended the cattle, with fire-arms, having of late been much infested by parties of Bosjesmen. They had not been out with the oxen above an hour before they were seen returning with six strangers under their guard. They were
not,

not, however, Bosjesmens, but three runaway slaves, and three Hottentots, one of the latter of which was a girl about twelve years of age. This party had lived for some time upon the desert entirely on animal food, which they had procured by lurking near the usual halting-places of butchers and farmers, and driving off in the night-time a few sheep. Tired of such a mode of life, they were very glad to escape from it by entering into the list of our attendants.

On the seventeenth we proceeded about twenty-four miles over a rising country, finely marked by hill and dale, but altogether barren, except that here and there were straggling over the surface a few species of the mesembryanthemum, or fig marygold, among which were large patches of the curious and elegant ice-plant. At night the thermometer was down to the freezing point, and the following morning it had descended to 30°. The Black Mountains, about fifteen miles to the southward, had lost that part of their character to which perhaps they owed their name, and were covered with deep snow. The nights had been so intensely cold and piercing, since we entered upon the desert, that our horses, being accustomed to the stable, immediately grew sick and low-spirited, and two of them this day fell under the severity of the weather. A third had a very narrow escape. We lost several of our oxen; but these died rather for want of food than from the coldness of the nights.

On the eighteenth we crossed the *Dwyka*, or Rhinoceros river, and encamped on its banks. The bed of the river was a
fine-

fine-grained blue sand, and it generally exceeded a hundred yards in width; but the collected streamlets, creeping over its surface, would scarcely have furnished a quantity of water sufficient to turn a mill. The rivers that cross the Karroo have this difference, which distinguishes them from rivers in general, that, notwithstanding all the tributary streamlets that may fall into them, the greater the distance from the source the less water they contain. As it seldom rains on the desert, they have no supply but from the springs; and the water, in its passage from these, is continually losing of its bulk both by absorption and by evaporation. Though the surrounding country was destitute of vegetation, a thick forest of mimosas covered the banks of the Dwyka, and followed it through all its windings. This plant grows indeed on every part of the desert, on which it is the inseparable companion of all the rivers and all the periodical streamlets. Should a traveller happen to be in want of water, the appearance of the mimosa is a sure guide to the place where it occasionally at least is to be found.

On the evening of the nineteenth we encamped upon the banks of the *Gbamka*, or Lion's river. The distance from the Dwyka is about twenty miles of the most beautiful road I ever beheld. There was neither stone nor loose sand, nor rut, to break the equality of the surface, which was level as that of a bowling-green, and consisted of a hard bed of clay bound together, and colored brown, with iron. Not a swell of any sort intervened to interrupt the line of the horizon, which was as perfect as that viewed over the surface of the sea. Here, too,

which raised a wealthy and populous republic out of the sea, impressed the minds of those who first formed the settlement. A temperate climate, a fertile soil, a mild and peaceable race of natives, were advantages that few infant colonies have possessed; and, as they still exist, may one day yet be turned to account. To encourage the native Hottentots in useful labor, by giving them an interest in the produce of that labor; to make them experience the comforts of civilized life, and to feel they have a place and a value in society, which the miserable policy of the Dutch government denied to them, would be the sure means of diminishing and, in time, of entirely removing the necessity of slavery. Few negroes, in fact, have been imported since the capture, and those few by accident, or by special permission: and as the increased demand for colonial produce has required a proportional increase of labor, they now bear most extravagant prices. From one hundred to four hundred pounds sterling is daily paid for a slave in Cape Town; yet it is not unusual to find from twenty to thirty in one house. Some of these, indeed, are artificers, and are hired out at certain rates for the day, week, or month. The most active and docile, but the most dangerous, slaves, are the Malays. They are faithful, honest, and industrious; but so impatient of injury, and so capricious, that the slightest provocation will sometimes drive them into fits of phrenzy, during the continuance of which it would be unsafe to come within their reach. The revengeful spirit of a Malay was strongly marked by an occurrence which happened a short time ago. Conceiving that he not only had served his master sufficiently long, and with great fidelity, but had also paid him several sums of money, he was tempted to demand

demand his liberty, and met with a refusal. The following morning the Malay murdered his fellow-slave. On being taken and brought up for examination before a commission of the Court of Justice, he acknowledged that the boy he had murdered was his friend; but he had considered that the most effectual way to be revenged of his master was, not by taking away his life, but by robbing him of the value of a thousand rixdollars, by the loss of the boy, and another thousand by bringing himself, in so doing, to the gallows, the recollection of which would prey upon his avaricious mind for the remainder of his life.

The effects that a state of slavery invariably produces on the minds and habits of a people, born and educated in the midst of it, are not less felt at the Cape than in the warmer climates. Among the upper ranks it is the custom for every child to have its slave, whose sole employment is to humour its caprices, and to drag it about from place to place lest it should too soon discover for what purposes nature had bestowed on it legs and arms. Even the lower class of people object to their children going out as servants, or being bound as apprentices to learn the useful trades, which, in their contracted ideas, would be considered as condemning them to perform the work of slaves.

The education of youth has hitherto been very much neglected. The government never hit upon any successful plan for the establishment of public schools; and the individual had no other ambition but that of qualifying his sons, by writing and accounts, to become servants of the Company. This body
of

of merchants had a number of persons in their employ who were very ill paid. Their salaries indeed were insufficient to afford them a bare subsistence; but it tacitly allowed them to negotiate for themselves. The consequence of such a conduct was, that each became a kind of petty dealer. Each had his little private shop in some corner of his house. The most paltry articles were in the list of their commodities for sale; and those who ranked high in the government, and assumed a string of full-sounding epithets to their names, felt no sort of indignity in retailing the produce of their gardens; not indeed avowedly, but through the medium of their slaves. In fact, the minds of every class, the governor, the clergy, the fiscal, and the secretary of the court of justice excepted, were wholly bent on trade. *Koopman* or merchant was a title that conferred rank at the Cape, to which the military even aspired. On this subject the ideas of the Dutch differ widely from those of the Chinese, who have degraded the merchant into the very lowest order of their society.

That portion of the day, not employed in the concerns of trade, is usually devoted to the gratification of the sensual appetites. Few have any taste for reading, and none for the cultivation of the fine arts. They have no kind of public amusements except occasional balls; nor is there much social intercourse but by family parties, which usually consist of card-playing or dancing. Money-matters and merchandize engross their whole conversation. Yet none are opulent, though many in easy circumstances. There are no beggars in the whole colony; and but a few who are the objects of public charity.

The

The subsistence for these is derived from the interest of a fund established out of the church superfluities, from alms, donations, and collections made after divine service, and not from any tax laid upon the public. Except, indeed, a few colonial assessments for the repairs of the streets and public works, the inhabitants of the Cape have little drawback on their profits or the produce of their labour. The luxury of a carriage and horses, which in England is attended with an enormous expence, is kept up here for a trifle after the first cost. Those in the town that are used only for short excursions, or for taking the air, are open, and calculated for four or six persons. For making journies they have a kind of light waggon covered with sail-cloth, and sufficiently large to hold a whole family with clothes and provisions for several days. The coachman is generally one of those people known in the colony by the name of *Bastaards*, being a mixed breed between a Hottentot woman and European man, or a Hottentot woman and a slave. They make most excellent drivers, and think nothing of turning short corners, or of galloping through narrow avenues, with eight in hand. The ladies seldom take the exercise of riding on horse-back, that exercise being considered as too fatiguing. They generally confine themselves to the house during the day, and walk the Mall in the public garden in the cool of the evening.

It has been the remark of most travellers that the ladies of the Cape are pretty, lively, and good-humoured; possessing little of that phlegmatic temper which is a principal trait in the national character of the Dutch. The difference in the manners

H

and

and appearance of the young men and the young women, in the same family, is inconceivably great. The former are clumsy in their shape, awkward in their carriage, and of an unfociable disposition; whilst the latter are generally of a small delicate form, below the middle size, of easy and unaffected manners, well dressed, and fond of social intercourse, an indulgence in which they are seldom restrained by their parents, and which they as seldom turn to abuse. They are here indeed less dependant on, and less subject to, the caprice of parents than elsewhere. Primogeniture entitles to no advantages; but all the children, male and female, share alike in the family property. No parent can disinherit a child without assigning, on proof, one at least of the fourteen reasons enumerated in the Justinian Code. By the law of the colony, a community of all property, both real and personal, is supposed to take place on the marriage of two persons, unless the contrary should be particularly provided against by solemn contract made before marriage. Where no such contract exists, the children, on the death of either parent, are entitled to that half of the joint property which was supposed to belong to the deceased, and which cannot be withheld on application after they are come of age.

It is but justice to the young females of the Cape to remark, that many of them have profited much more than could be expected from the limited means of education that the place affords. In the better families, most of them are taught music, and some have acquired a tolerable degree of execution. Many understand the French language, and some have made great proficiency in the English. They are expert at the needle, at
all

all kinds of lace, knotting, and tambour work, and in general make up their own dresses, following the prevailing fashions of England brought from time to time by the female passengers bound to India, from whom they may be said to

“ Catch the manners living as they rise.”

Neither are the other sex, while boys, deficient in vivacity or talent; but for want of the means of a proper education, to open their minds and excite in them a desire of knowledge, they soon degenerate into the common routine of eating, smoking, and sleeping. Few of the male inhabitants associate with the English, except such as hold employments under the government. This backwardness may be owing in part to the different habits of the two nations, and partly, perhaps, to the reluctance that a vanquished people must always feel in mixing with their conquerors. No real cause, however, of complaint or disaffection could possibly be alleged against the English government at the Cape. No new taxes have been imposed since the conquest; but, on the contrary, some of the old ones have been diminished, and others modified. The demand and value of every production of the colony have very considerably increased, while the articles of import have fallen, in their prices. More than 200,000 rixdollars of arrears in rent of land have been remitted to the inhabitants by the British government, as well as 180,000 rixdollars of dubious debts. They have preserved their laws and their religion, both of which continue to be administered by their own people. They enjoy as great a share of rational liberty as men, bound to each other, and to

the whole, by the ties that a state of society necessarily imposes, could possibly expect, and much greater than under their former government. Property has been secure in every instance, and has been raised to double its former value: and none has the loss of life of any friend or relation to lament at the time of, or since, the capture. Their paper currency, fabricated by the government in order to get over a temporary distress, but which it had never been able to take out of circulation, bore a depreciation of 40 *per cent.* and a silver dollar was scarcely to be seen. The former is now at par with specie, and not less than two millions of the latter have been sent from England and thrown into circulation. Every person enjoys his share of the general prosperity. The proprietor of houses in town has more than doubled his rent; and the farmer in the country, where formerly he received a rixdollar for each of his sheep, now receives three. Four years of increasing prosperity, of uninterrupted peace and domestic tranquillity, have been the happy lot of the inhabitants of the Cape of Good Hope.

Scenes very different from these would, in all probability, have been exhibited here, had not the English taken possession of the colony at the very time they were ripe for execution. Jacobinism, or subversion of all order, had industriously been propagated by the ill-disposed, among the ignorant part of the colonists, both in the town and country districts. A weak and timid government, instead of crushing it in its infancy, suffered it to grow to maturity. Its principal officers were insulted with impunity. The Landrosts, or Chief Magistrates of the police in the country, were driven out of their districts, and the farmers

farmers refused to pay the rents of the loan lands. Proscribed lists were actually made out of such as were first to suffer; and the slaves were anxiously waiting for the signal of a general emancipation. Even after the capture the people of the distant district of Graaff Reynet had indignantly used, and then turned away, the landroft and the clergyman that had been appointed and sent thither by Sir James Craig, who immediately ordered a detachment of light infantry with a squadron of dragoons to march to the Drosdy. Intimidated at the news of such a measure, they sent a supplicating letter, signed by some of the principal inhabitants, praying that the troops might be recalled, and promising good order and obedience to the laws.

About this time (May 1797) the Earl of Macartney arrived at the Cape to take charge of his government; and one of his first measures was that of sending back to Graaff Reynet the same landroft whom they had expelled, in order to convince them that the British government, though lenient and just in its proceedings, was not less firm in carrying them into execution. In addition to the political motives which induced his Excellency to send his own secretary in company with the landroft, he thought it at the same time a fair opportunity for supplying some information respecting the distant parts of the colony, and the countries bordering upon it, hitherto so little visited, and so imperfectly known. His instructions, on this occasion, embraced a variety of objects, as well for the scientific inquirer as for the promotion of the public benefit: and should the following pages be found to contain nothing conducive to the ends proposed by these instructions, the fault must rest solely
on

on the person who had the honor to receive them. As facts locally collected, they have been thought worthy to be laid before the public. The observations and reflections upon the facts are such as occurred when the impression they made, on the spot, was strongest on the mind. Since that time they have undergone but little alteration, and are therefore considered as *sketches* only, to be filled up and finished by future travellers: and they are submitted to the public more with the consciousness of truth than of any literary attainments in the writer.

CHAP. II.

Sketches on a journey from The Cape of Good Hope, across the Karroo, or Arid Desert, to the Drosdy of Graaff Reynet.

THOUGH the rains usually commence about the beginning of May, in the present year the whole month of June was a series of fine pleasant weather; unfavorable, however, to the husbandman, and not less so to the traveller, who may have before him a long journey over the uninhabited deserts of Africa, and must necessarily make daily use of the same cattle, either in the team, or to travel along with him as relays. The established mode of performing such long journies, in this colony, is in covered waggons drawn by bullocks. The carriages made for this purpose are very expensive; but they are well constructed to bear hard service, to run light, and are sufficiently commodious and spacious to contain all the necessaries that may be wanted on a long journey, and also a cot, or matras, for sleeping upon. Such a carriage is commonly drawn by a team, or *span*, as it is termed in the colony, of ten or twelve oxen. Each day's journey is called a *skoff*; and the length of these is generally regulated by local circumstances, being from five to fifteen hours. It is customary also to travel in the night, that the cattle may have the advantage of the day to graze, or rather to brouse, among the shrubbery; for

for many parts of the country, particularly after a series of dry weather, produce not a single blade of grass. The bitter, sour, and saline plants, than which the arid soil of an African desert produces nothing better, constitute oft times their only food for weeks together; and to the use of these may probably be owing the offensive breath that the ox of the colony is generally observed to have. In Europe, the sweetness of the breath of horned cattle is almost proverbial. In Africa it is remarked to be altogether as nauseous. The bad quality of the water, which in the desert plains is never met with pure, but impregnated with saline or earthy matter, may also contribute in producing this effect. The speed of an ox in the waggon, where the country is tolerably level, and the surface hard, is full three miles an hour, at which rate he will continue for ten or twelve hours without halting.

The first day of July was fixed upon for our departure from the Cape; and the preceding month was employed in making the necessary preparations, fitting up three waggons, and in procuring draught oxen, which at this season of the year, after the long drought, were scarce and extremely lean. *Bastards* for drivers, and Hottentots to lead the foremost pair in the team, and to take care of the relays, were very difficult to be procured, but indispensibly necessary. Every thing, however, was in readiness on the day fixed, though it was night before the waggons left the town; and the oxen were so miserably bad, that before they had proceeded three miles, two of them dropped in the yokes, and were obliged to be left behind. In seven hours they had only advanced about fifteen miles, to a
place

place called Stickland, where Sir James Craig had caused stabling for several troops of dragoons, and stone-buildings for the officers and men, to be erected, as a place of great importance in case of an attack from a powerful enemy. This station is at the south point of a range of hills called the Tigerberg or Tiger Mountain, that terminates, on this side, the sandy isthmus. At the feet of the hills, and in the vallies formed by them, are several pleasant farms, with gardens well stored with vegetables for the table, fruiteries, vineyards, and extensive corn lands. As none of the latter are inclosed there is a general appearance of nakedness in the country, which, if planted with forest-trees, as the oak and the larch, and divided by fences, would become sufficiently beautiful, as nature in drawing the outline has performed her part. The sandy flat, of which the Tigerberg forms the boundary, is applied to no use but that of furnishing a part of the supply of fuel for the town, and for the country people and butchers occasionally to turn their cattle upon. It is a prevailing opinion at the Cape, that this isthmus, which now separates the two principal bays, was once covered with the sea, making, at that time, the Cape promontory a complete island. The flatness and little elevation of the surface, the quantity of sand upon it, and the number of shells buried in the sand, have been urged as the grounds for such a conjecture. If, however, such has been the case, and the retreat of the sea progressive, it is an incalculable period of time since the two bays have been united. The surface is from 20 to 30 feet above the level of high-water mark; the sand upon it, except where it is drifted into ridges, is seldom three feet deep, and generally rests on sand-stone or hard gravel, bound together,

and coloured yellow or brown with iron. The vegetable remains, washed by the rains into the hollows, form in places bogs or peat-mofs, and the water in them is of a deep claret-colour, and sometimes black. I never met with any shells on any part of the isthmus; but the presence of these is no argument of their having been brought there by the sea. Many thousand waggon-loads of shells may be met with in various places along the eastern coast, in situations that are several hundred feet above the level of the sea. They are generally found in the greatest quantities in sheltered caverns, a circumstance that might lead to the supposition of the original inhabitants of the country being a sort of Troglodytes, as indeed the savage Hottentots of the interior in some degree still are. The fact is, they are carried from the coast into these elevated situations by the myriads of sea-fowl that frequent the African shores. At Muscle-bay is a remarkable cavern containing an immense quantity of different kinds of shells peculiar to the coast; above the level of which it is not less than three hundred feet; and behind the Lion's Head, at the same height, are beds of shells, buried under vegetable earth and clay. The human mind can form no idea as to the measure of time required for the sea to have progressively retreated from such elevations.

The plain that stretches to the eastward from Tigerberg is less sandy, and better covered with shrubs and plants, than the isthmus, and has a few farms scattered thinly over it near rills of water, that have broken the surface into deep glens in their passage to the northward. On the more arid and naked parts, consisting of yellow clay and sand, are thrown up many thousands

fands of those cellular masses of earth by a small insect of the ant tribe, to which naturalists have given the name of *termes*, different, however, from, and much less destructive than, that species, of which a curious description has been given by Mr. Smeathman in the Philosophical Transactions. The ant-hills in this part of Africa seldom exceed the height of three feet.

The plain to the eastward, at a dozen miles beyond Stickland, is terminated by two mountains, between which the road leads into a valley better cultivated and more thickly inhabited than any part between it and the Cape. Simonsberg, on the right, is among the highest of the mountains that are seen from the Cape. Its forked Parnassian summit is frequently, in winter, covered with snow, and in the south-east winds of summer is generally buried in the clouds. It also has its Helicon trickling down its sides, as yet a virgin spring untasted by the Muses. It held out more charms, it seems, for Plutus, than for Apollo. A man in the time of the governor, whose name the mountain perpetuates, intent on making his fortune by imposing on the credulity and ignorance of the Company's servants, melted down a quantity of Spanish dollars, and presented the mass to the governor as a specimen of silver from a rich mine that he had discovered in this mountain. Enraptured at the proof of so important a discovery, a resolution was passed by the governor in council that a sum of money should be advanced to the man to enable him to prosecute his discovery, and work the mine, of which he was to have the sole direction; and in the mean time, to convince the public of the rising wealth of the colony, the mass of silver was ordered to be

manufactured into a chain to which the keys of the Castle gates should be suspended. The chain was made, and still remains in the same service for which it was originally intended, as a memorial of the credulity of the governor and the council.

The Paarlberg, on the left of the pass into the valley, is a hill of moderate height, and has taken its name from a chain of large round stones that pass over the summit, like the pearls of a necklace. Of these the two that are placed near the central and highest point of the range are called, *par excellence*, the pearl and the diamond: and a particular description of them has been thought worthy of a place in the Philosophical Transactions. From that paper, and Mr. Maffon's description, it would appear that these two masses of stone rested upon their own bases, and were detached from the mountain; whereas they grow out, and form a part, of it. It has also been said that their composition was totally different from the rocks that are found in the neighbouring mountains, which led a naturalist in Europe to observe, that these immense blocks of granite had probably been thrown up by volcanic explosions, or by some cause of a similar nature. It has been observed in the preceding Chapter, that the sand-stone strata of the Table Mountain rested upon a bed of primæval granite, and that an infinite number of large stones were scattered at the feet of the Mountains along the sea-coast, from the Lion's Head to the true Cape of Good Hope. All these are precisely of the same nature, and the same materials, as the pearl and the diamond; that is to say, they are aggregates of quartz and mica; the first in large irregular masses, and the latter in black lumps resembling shorl: they

they contain also cubic pieces of felspar, and seem to be bound together by plates of a clayey iron stone. All the stones of this description appear to have been formed round a nucleus, as by the action of the air and weather they fall to pieces in large concentric laminæ. The Pearl is accessible on the northern side, but is nearly perpendicular on all the rest. This sloping side is more than a thousand feet, and the perpendicular altitude about four hundred feet above the summit of the mountain, and the circumference of its base is a full mile. Near the top it is quadrisectioned by two cliffs, crossing at right angles, in which were growing a number of beautiful aloes, several cryptogamous and other plants. A great part of the slanting side was covered with a species of green lichen. Down the perpendicular sides were immense rifts, as if the mass had been torn asunder by its own weight. The Diamond is the higher block, but less bulky, and, being cone-shaped, is difficult and dangerous to ascend.

The mountain of the Paarl furnishes a fine field for the botanist. The plants are very varied and wonderfully luxuriant. The wild olive of the Cape seems to have here attained its greatest size, and the dark-green foliage is finely contrasted with the elegant tribe of heaths, some of which shoot up to the size and form of trees. The fruit of the wild olive is small and acrid; but the wood is close-grained, shaded, and takes a polish not unlike that of walnut. A great variety of that genus of plants to which botanists have given the name of Protea, decorate the sides of the Paarl Mountain. Of these, one of the most numerous and most conspicuous was the mellifera, called here the

the sugar-tree, from the great quantity of saccharine juice contained in the bottom of its vase-shaped flowers. Many of the inhabitants are at the trouble of collecting this juice, which is sometimes used as a stomachic, and sometimes boiled down to a thick syrup for the purpose of preserving fruits. Several species of the gaudy-plumed *certbia*, or creeper, come in also for their share, and at this season of the year may be seen in vast numbers perching themselves on the edge of the corollas, and sucking, with their long fickle-shaped bills, "the honied sweets." The iridescent and brilliant colors of these beautiful little birds, fluttering about the variegated blossoms of the protea, cannot fail to attract the notice of the passenger, for a time, from every other object. One species in particular (the chalybea of Linnæus) commands attention to its clear melodious note. It sings delightfully in the cage, where it is kept with difficulty, existing entirely on sugar and water.

The mountains that form the eastern boundary of the valley are eminently grand, but are destitute, near their summits, of a shrub, or even a blade of grass. They are a part of that great chain that stretches from False Bay to the northward, and to which a French naturalist has given the name of the Back-bone of the Earth; a name, however, that is much more appropriate by their appearance than great extent. Their naked summits are pointed and jagged, and divided like the vertebræ of the back-bone of an animal. They consist, like the Table Mountain, of a number of sand-stone strata, placed in a horizontal direction, contain a great deal of iron, being in places perfectly red, and they rest upon beds of granite, clay, and slate. This
range

range of mountains, like an immense wall, shuts out entirely from the Cape the countries that lie far beyond it; so completely, indeed, that a few men in possession of the passes would always be able to cut off all communication between the sea-coast and the interior. Of these passes, or *kloofs* as they are called by the colonists, there are but three that are ever used by wheel-carriages. Hottentot Holland's Kloof near False Bay, which opens a communication with the district of Swellendam and the eastern parts of the colony along the sea-coast: Roode Sand, or red sand, Kloof, opposite to Saldanha Bay, leading to Graaff Reynet, and the remotest parts of the colony; and Eland's Kloof, still farther north, which opens into a wild and almost uninhabited part of the country.

Though the mountains be wild and barren, nothing could be more beautiful, rich, and well covered, than the vale they enclose, which is well-watered by the numberless arms of the Berg river, uniting near the middle, and meandering through it with a smooth and almost imperceptible current. This vale contains the divisions, or parishes, of Great and Little Drakensteen, Fransche Hoek or French corner, and the Paarl. The last is an assemblage of about thirty houses, disposed into two straight lines, and are so far detached from each other as to form a street about a mile in length. The church stands near the middle. This, as well as most of the houses, is neatly covered with rye-straw: a coating of this thatch, if properly laid on, will last from twenty to thirty years. The houses are generally surrounded with plantations of oaks. The common size of these is from ten to fifteen feet in circumference, and from

from twenty to thirty feet without a branch : many are much larger : the tops are neither bent, nor is the wood shaken, nor twisted, as of those about Cape Town ; a proof that the winds are less violent in this valley than at the latter place.

Fransche Hoek, and the two Drakensteens, have neither church nor any assemblage of houses that deserves the name of village, but are composed of detached farms, dispersed over the vale at considerable distances from each other. Most of these are freehold property, that were granted, in the early stages of the Settlement, for certain sums of money, or by favor, or for particular services. They consist each of sixty *morgens* of land, or 120 English acres, and the possessors claim the privilege of the intermediate waste-land to turn their cattle upon. This is a great abuse, which perhaps would best be checked by obliging the proprietors to inclose their just portion of 120 acres, and would certainly be the means of greatly improving the country.

The chief produce of the valley is wine. At this time they were busily employed in pruning their vines. These are seldom suffered to creep up into frames or standards, as is most common in the southern parts of Europe, but are planted in rows, in the same manner, and about the same size, as currants or gooseberry bushes in England. In this part of the colony, which is not very distant from the Cape-market, there is no kind of produce that so well repays the labor of the farmer as the culture of the grape. On an acre of ground may be planted five thousand stocks of vines, and a thousand of these will generally yield
a leaguer

a leaguer or pipe of 154 gallons of wine. The retail price of a leaguer is from 50 to 150 rixdollars, or 10 to 30*l.* sterling. That sort which is commonly drank at table under the name of Cape madeira now sells at 12*l.* a pipe, as does also a pleasant tart wine not unlike *vin de grave*, called here the Steen wine. Of rich sweet wines the colony produces great variety: a large white Persian grape, called here the *baenapod*, or cock's foot, makes a delicious but expensive wine; the grape being fleshy, is generally planted for the purpose of being converted into raisins. The muscadel gives a different wine at almost every place in which it grows. Nearly all the wines that are made at the Cape taste either very much of the fruit, or otherwise are meagre or sour. The first may generally be attributed to the must not having undergone a sufficient degree of fermentation to change its nature, but put up into pipes with much of the saccharine matter remaining undecomposed. The latter may probably be owing to the practice of pulling the grapes before they are ripe, in order to prevent their being consumed by the numerous tribes of insects that prey upon them, among which the common honey bee is not the least destructive.

The grapes in general that are produced at the Cape are not inferior to those of any country; and there can be little doubt that the wines expressed from them might, by proper management, be made to rival the best European wines. Some of the farmers have lately turned their attention to the subject, and have found themselves amply repaid for any additional labor and expence they might have incurred in making experiments. Those few also who have attended to the process of distilling

spirits from the fruit have produced brandy of a very good quality. This article is here in general very bad, evidently owing, in a great degree, to the manner in which it is manufactured. In order to get as much spirit as possible, the materials thrown into the still are of the grossest kind, the greatest part being the expressed husks and stalks of the grapes; the apparatus is bad; the conducting of the process is committed to the hands of a slave, who has little knowledge of, and less interest in, the business he is commanded to perform: he falls asleep; the fire goes out; a rapid blaze succeeds to make up for loss of time; the spirit carries over with it a strong empyreumatic flavor which it never loses. There is, however, notwithstanding every precaution that has hitherto been taken, a very peculiar taste in all the wines and brandies of the Cape, arising probably from the circumstance of the grapes growing so very near the ground. It is well known that the exhalations from the earth are so much imbibed by the leaves of the tobacco plant which grow nearest to it, that those leaves are always rejected as unfit for use; and it is natural to suppose that the fruit of the vine hanging very near to, or even resting upon, the ground, will also receive the prevailing flavor exhaling from the soil. It is indolence alone that has hitherto prevented the colonists from leading their vines along standards, in which case they would not only improve the quality of the grape, but would also receive a double quantity from the same ground. The raisins of the Cape are of so good a quality, and can be afforded at so reasonable a rate, that, in all probability, they will hereafter form an article of considerable export. Almonds are also plentiful, large, and good.

The

The whole valley is convertible into excellent arable land ; yet very little corn is cultivated except for home consumption. The tract of country that stretches along the feet of the great chain of mountains from the Paarl to False Bay, including the two Drakensteens, Fransche Hoek, the Drosdy of Stellenbosch, and Hottentots Holland, is chiefly employed in raising wine and fruits for the Cape-market. The quantity of the former amounts annually to about 6000 leaguers.

Hitherto there have been few speculators among the Dutch planters : the spirit of improvement and experiment never entered into their minds ; and it may be a matter of doubt, had not the French Protestants, who sought an asylum here from the religious persecutions of their once bigoted countrymen, introduced and cultivated the vine, whether at this time the whole colony would have produced a single leaguer of wine. The sugar-cane grows with health and vigor in several parts of the colony ; yet none of the planters have yet procured a pound of sugar. On asking a farmer, who complained that the canes had overrun his garden, why he did not turn them to some account, he replied with that nonchalance which characterizes the nation, that it served to amuse the women and children ; but that he should not be the first to try it, as long as he could buy that article in the Cape for six schillings, or three English shillings, a pound.

Among the thick shrubbery that covers the uncultivated parts of the valley, is an abundance of game, particularly of the Cape partridges, which, fearless of man, run about nearly as tame as

poultry in a farm-yard; and of korhaens, the *otis afra* of Linnæus, and white-eared bastard of Latham, which, unlike the partridge, not only fly to a distance at the approach of the sportsman, but keep up, while on the wing, a violent screaming, as if to give notice to other birds of the impending danger. There are also plenty of Cape snipes, *Scolopax Capensis*, and three species of wild ducks, the *anas Capensis*, or Cape widgeon, the Dominican duck, and the common teal. Among the quadrupeds that inhabit the valley are the duiker and the griesbok, already described; and the mountains abound with a curious species of antelope, which, from its amazing agility, is called the *klip-springer*, or rock-leaper. Its cloven hoofs are each of them subdivided into two segments, and jagged at the edges, which gives it the power of adhering to the steep sides of the smooth rock without danger of slipping. The color is cinereous grey, and its black horns are short, straight, erect, and annulated one third of their length from the base. The hair is very singular, being so brittle that it breaks instead of bending, adheres loosely to the skin, and is so very light that it is used as the best article that can be procured for stuffing saddles.

A few miles beyond the Paarl, the Berg or Mountain-river crosses the road. It is here so large and deep in the winter season as to make a pont or floating bridge necessary. A little lower down, however, it is sometimes fordable; and the peasants, to avoid the toll at the ferry, frequently cross it, though at the hazard of their own lives and of their cattle. At this time the river was pretty full; yet two farmers, rather than pay four shillings for the passage at the ferry of their two waggons, ventured

ventured through at the ford, and passed it with the loss only of two sheep that were worth at least four times the amount of the toll. The road beyond the ferry is excellent, being a level bed of hard clay ; but the country is very thinly inhabited. In advancing to the northward the surface has fewer inequalities, and becomes sandy. Nothing, however, like drifts or beds of sand, meets the eye ; but, on the contrary, it wanders over an uninterrupted forest of verdure arising from a variety of fruit-escient plants, among which the tribes of proteas, of heaths, and two species of *scriphium*, called here the rhinosceros-bush, predominate. In those places where the ground is least covered, the hillocks thrown up by the *termites* most abound. Here also, towards the close of the day, a multitude of small land tortoises, the *testudo pusilla* and the *geometrica* of Linnæus, were crawling slowly off the road towards the bushes, having basked themselves in the open sunshine during the day. The howling wolf and the yelping jackall began their hideous cries shortly after the setting of the sun, and seemed to follow us in the night, keeping at no great distance from the waggons. It was near the middle of the night before we arrived at a solitary habitation, situated in a wild, bleak, open country, and on the borders of a lake called the *Vogel Valley* or the Bird Lake. The word *valley*, in the colony, implies either a lake or a swamp : at this time the place in question was the latter ; but it abounded with ducks, geese, and teal, and also with the great white pelican, the *onocratulus*, and the rose-colored flamingo. The wings of the latter are converted into fans for flapping away the flies that, in incredible multitudes, swarm in the houses of the peasantry for want of a proper attention to cleanliness ; and the
pelican

pelican is shot for the sake of the fine soft down which lies under his plumage.

A few miles beyond this lake or swamp brought us to the entrance of Roode Sand Kloef, or the red sandy pass over the great chain of mountains. Here the strata of which they are composed, though of the same nature as the Table Mountain, were not horizontal, but dipped to the south-eastward, making with the horizon an angle of about twenty degrees. The ascent of the Kloef is not steep, but very rugged; and a small river that meanders down it must be crossed several times. The plants, sheltered by the large fragments of rock that have rolled down the mountains, are uncommonly luxuriant. Of these the different species of protea were the most conspicuous; that species of *ricinus* called the palma Christi, which affords the castor oil, was very plentiful; and the two species of the melianthus grew in every part of the Kloef. The *calla Ethiopica* was everywhere abundant and in full flower. The baboons, from their concealed dens in the sides of the mountain, laughed, screamed, and uttered such horrible noises, the whole time that the waggons were ascending the pass, that to a stranger, not knowing from whence they proceeded, they excited no small degree of surprise.

From the upper part of the Kloef there is no descent to the land of Waveren, or, as the division is now called, Roode Sand. The surface of this vale is four or five hundred feet higher than that which lies on the Cape side of the range of mountains. It is bounded on the eastern side by a branch of the same chain,
much

much higher, however, than that through which the pass lies, yet accessible by waggons. The summits of the mountains were buried in snow, and the thermometer at sunrise stood, on the plain, at the freezing point.

The valley of Roode Sand, or Waveren, is a fertile tract of land, well watered by streamlets falling from the inclosing mountains, and produces abundance of corn, some wine, raisins, and other fruits. Several parts are capable of being flooded, and on that account admirably adapted for the cultivation of rice. The Chinese bamboo, a plant not more elegant than it is useful, grows here with great luxuriance, and is employed for whipstocks, and to make frames for the covers of the waggons. The Cape olive grows wild in great abundance, and also the palma Christi. Game of various kinds is also plentiful, such as bustards, partridges, snipes, ducks, and mountain geese. Of antelopes they have the duiker, klip-springer, steenbok, griesbok, and reebok. The last is an animal that does not yet appear to have been described in any systematic work. Its size is that of the domestic goat, but it is much more elegantly made. The color is a bluish grey, the belly and breast white; horns seven or eight inches long, annulated about a third part of the length from the base. Besides these they have the Cape hare, and an animal that burrows in the ground called the *yzzer varke*, or iron hog, the flesh of which, when salted and dried, is esteemed by the Dutch as a great delicacy. It is the *hystrix cristata*, or crested porcupine of Pennant. Several of the farmers breed them; but it is a vicious animal, and not safe to be approached by strangers. The *aard varke* or earth-hog, the

the *myrmecophaga Capensis* or ant-eater of the Cape, is also very common, and like the porcupine undermines the ground, seldom quitting its subterranean abode except in the night. The thighs of this animal are sometimes salted, and in that state considered as very good hams.

The valley of Roode Sand is about thirty miles in length, and is inhabited by about forty families. Quitting this division, the country becomes wild, and almost uninhabited. Bogs, swamps, and morafs covered with rushes and four plants, large tracts of naked hard clay, deep sandy roads, pools of stagnant water, and those infallible indications of a barren soil, hillocks of ants, are the chief objects that meet the eye of the traveller. For several miles together no human habitation makes its appearance. In this dreary country there was nothing to engage the attention but the vast chain of mountains on the left which we were shortly to pass, and which here began to round off into an easterly direction. This branch was much more wild, lofty, and barren than that through which the Kloef of Roode Sand opens a passage. They consisted of immense columnar masses of naked sandstone, of a red ferruginous color passing in places into steel-blue. Their corroded and jagged tops, like the battlements of so many towers or minarets, leaned from their bases, and seemed to owe their only support to each other. The strata were here inclined to the eastward in an angle of about forty degrees, and seemed as if ready to slide down over each other. Still they were uniform, and had evidently never been disrupted by any subterraneous eruption or concussion. On the
opposite

opposite side of the dale, however, stood a long range of hills which had every appearance of volcanic origin. Some were perfect cones; others truncated at the summit in the manner of those on which craters are generally found. Hills like these, standing each on its proper base, and so very different from any that had yet been seen, were too interesting to pass. They were found to be composed of quartz, sand-stone, and iron; not, however, stratified like the great chains, but torn and rent into large fragments. There was no lava; nor did it appear that any of the stones had undergone fusion. There was no blue slate in their sides, which most probably would have been the case had they been thrown up by any subterranean impulse, the whole base of the plain being composed of it.

Within these hills we came to a valley about three miles in length and two in width, having a surface as level as that of a bowling-green. By a strong stream passing from one end to the other, the whole might be laid under water, and converted into most excellent rice grounds. This stream was smoking hot. The springs, by which it was supplied, issued out of the ground at the foot of some hills which formed the head of the valley. They threw up the water with great violence, and with it quantities of small whitish sand mixed with minute crystals of quartz. The bed of the reservoir, and the channel down which the water was carried across the valley, in a stream strong enough to turn the largest mill in England, were composed of these materials. The water was perfectly clear, and deposited not the smallest degree of any kind of sediment, neither in the pool where the springs were, nor by the edges

of the stream. A green *Conferva* grew on the margin of both. No change of color was produced upon the plants and stones with which the water came in contact. With sulphuric acid it deposited no sediment, nor became in the least turbid, nor were blue vegetable colors at all affected by it. No impregnation of any kind was discoverable, in the smallest degree, by the taste. On the contrary, it is considered so pure that the family living near it generally employed it for dressing their victuals; and all their linen and colored clothes were washed in it without sustaining any injury. The thermometer I had with me was graduated only to 140° , to which point it ascended almost instantaneously. The temperature appeared to be very nearly that of boiling water.

The duration of hot springs for ages without any considerable variation in temperature, or in the quantity of water thrown out, is one of those secret operations of nature that has not as yet been satisfactorily explained, but which has baffled, at all times, the speculations of philosophers. The decomposition of pyritical matter, the slacking of lime, and the subterranean furnace, heated with combustible materials, have each had their advocates, but each when "weighed in the balance" has been found wanting."

From the hot wells we crossed the Breede, or broad river, and entered a kloef on the opposite, or northern, side of the vale, which opened a passage through the second great chain of mountains. It is called the Hex river's kloef, and is about four miles in length. The ascent is much less than that of
Roode

Roode Sand kloef, the fall of the river that meanders through it being not more than 200 feet. The mountains on each side of this pass were wild and naked, but the kloef itself abounded with large frutescent plants. Basking in the sun, on the banks of the river, were a troop of four or five hundred large black baboons, apparently of the species of *Cynocephalus*, which quitted their place with seeming reluctance, grumbling and howling as they scrambled up the sides of the naked rocks.

The head of the kloef opened out into a narrow valley to which there was no descent. It is about two miles in width and fifteen in length; and the third branch of mountains, on the northern side, were covered half way down from their summits with snow; yet the orange-trees at their feet were loaded with large ripe fruit. Four families, the only inhabitants of this deep valley, constitute a little world of their own: their wants might be as bounded as their horizon, for the fertility of the ground furnishes them with almost every necessary of life. They have plenty of cattle, and also all the different sorts of game that are met with on the other side of the mountains. We saw here some large partridges with red wings, much preferable to the common Cape partridge, and a quadruped called the *Bergbaas* or mountain hare. It was the *Dipus Caser* of Linnæus, by some called the Cape Gerboa. Like the kangaroo of Botany Bay it has the hind legs about thrice the length of the fore ones. When pursued, it always takes to the mountains, knowing that the construction of its legs is better adapted to ascend their steep sides than to scour the plains.

All the appearances of Hex-river valley declare it, at one time, to have been a lake, the head of which having given way at the kloef, has suffered the water to force itself out upon the next lower terrace, leaving only a bog in the middle, to which the stoney bases of the mountains shelve on each side. Should the falls of Niagara once sweep away the barrier that occasions them, the lake Erie would then become a plain or valley, like that of the Hex-river, and many others that occur within the chains of mountains in Southern Africa.

At the head of this little valley we were to take leave of every human habitation for at least sixteen days, the time required to cross over the Great Karroo, or arid desert, that lay between us and the distant district of Graaff Reynet. It therefore became necessary to supply ourselves with a stock of provisions, as nothing whatsoever is to be had on the desert except now and then an antelope. To those travellers who are furnished with a good waggon and a tent, the want of habitations is no great loss; for few of them, behind the first range of mountains, have any sort of convenience, comfort, or even cleanliness. Among the planters of Africa it is true there are some who live in a decent manner, particularly the cultivators of the grape. Many of these are descendants of the French families who, a little more than a century ago, found an asylum at the Cape of Good Hope from the religious persecutions that drove them from their own country. But a true Dutch peasant, or boor as he styles himself, has not the smallest idea of what an English farmer means by the word comfort. Placed in a country where not only the necessaries, but almost every

every luxury of life might by industry be procured, he has the enjoyment of none of them. Though he has cattle in abundance he makes very little use of milk or of butter. In the midst of a soil and climate most favourable for the cultivation of the vine, he drinks no wine. He makes use of few or no vegetables nor roots. Three times a-day his table is loaded with masses of mutton, swimming in the grease of the sheep's tail. His house is either open to the roof, or covered only with rough poles and turf, affording a favorable shelter for scorpions and spiders; and the earthy floors are covered with dust and dirt, and swarm with insects, particularly with a species of the *termes*, which, though not so destructive as some others of this genus, is nevertheless a very troublesome and disagreeable animal. His apartments, if he happens to have more than one, which is not always the case among the grazing farmers, are nearly destitute of furniture. A great chest that contains all his moveables, and two smaller ones that are fitted to his waggon, are the most striking articles. The bottoms of his chairs consist of thongs cut from a bullock's hide. The windows are without glass; or if there should happen to be any remains of this article, it is so patched and daubed as nearly to exclude the light it was intended to admit. The boor notwithstanding has his enjoyments: he is absolute master of a domain of several miles in extent; and he lords it over a few miserable slaves or Hottentots without control. His pipe scarcely ever quits his mouth, from the moment he rises till he retires to rest, except to give him time to swallow his *sopie*, or a glass of strong ardent spirit, to eat his meals, and to take his nap after dinner. Unwilling to work, and unable
to

to think; with a mind disengaged from every sort of care and reflexion, indulging to excess in the gratification of every sensual appetite, the African peasant grows to an unweildy size, and is carried off the stage by the first inflammatory disease that attacks him.

How different is the lot of the laboring poor of England, who for six days in the week are doomed to toil for twelve hours in every day, in order to gain a morsel of bread for their family, and the luxury of a little animal food for the seventh day!

The cultivators of the ground, who inhabit the nearer districts to the town, though something better than the breeders of cattle, live but in a very uncomfortable manner in the midst of profusion. They have little or no society with each other, and every one seems to live solely for himself. Though removed from each other to the distance of several miles, and enjoying the benefit of many thousand acres of land under the rate of a farthing an acre, it is yet a singular fact, that scarcely any two neighbours are found to be on good terms with each other, but are embroiled perpetually in quarrels and disputes about the extent of their farms, or the privilege of a spring or a water-course. One great cause of their endless disputes is the absurd manner of estimating distance by time. The quantity of land in a government farm, according to the established custom of the colony, must be one hour's walk across it. If one farmer is supposed to have put down his *baaken*, or stake, or land-mark, a little too near to that of his neighbour, the *Feld-*
wagt-

wagt-meeſter, or peace-officer of the diviſion, is called in, by the latter, to pace the diſtance, for which he gets three dollars. If the *Feldwagt-meeſter* ſhould happen to regulate his pace to the ſatisfaction of both parties, the affair is ſettled ; but as this is not always the caſe, the next ſtep is for the diſcontented party to apply for a commiſſion, conſiſting of the Landroſt, two members of the Council, the Secretary of the diſtriſt, and a Meſſenger. Theſe gentlemen ſhare fifteen dollars a-day as long as they are out upon the commiſſion to determine how far a man ought to walk in an hour.

The dangerous and difficult roads in every part of the colony, but particularly the kloefs or paſſes of the mountains, and the ſtill more perilous fords of the rivers, ſhew how very little ſenſe is entertained by the peasantry of public benefits or public conveniences. Each gets over a difficulty as well as he can, and no more is thought about it till it again occurs. An inſtance appeared of this in croſſing the Breede river oppoſite to Brandt Valley, which is done by means of a ſmall flat-bottomed tub, about ſix feet by three. In this machine foot paſſengers hawl themſelves over by a rope fixed to two poſts, one on each ſide of the river. When a horſe is to croſs, the ſaddle is taken off, the rider gets into the tub, and drags the animal after him. But when a waggon is to be transported, it muſt firſt be unladen, and the baggage carried over in the veſſel : the carriage is then made faſt by one end to this floating machine, and the other is buoyed up by a caſk, and in this manner it is dragged over. Thus is half a day conſumed in paſſing a ſmall river of thirty or forty yards at the moſt in width,
when

when a few planks, properly put together, would enable them to carry over any sort of carriage, cattle, or horses, with safety and convenience, in five minutes.

The women of the African peasantry pass a life of the most listless inactivity. The mistress of the family, with her coffee-pot constantly boiling before her on a small table, seems fixed to her chair like a piece of furniture. This good lady, born in the wilds of Africa, and educated among slaves and Hottentots, has little idea of what, in a state of society, constitutes female delicacy. She makes no scruple of having her legs and feet washed in warm water by a slave before strangers; an operation that is regularly performed every evening. If the motive of such a custom were that of cleanliness, the practice of it would deserve praise; but to see the tub with the same water passed round through all the branches of the family, according to seniority, is apt to create ideas of a very different nature. Most of them go constantly without stockings and shoes, even when the thermometer is down to the freezing point. They generally, however, make use of small stoves to place the feet on. The young girls sit with their hands before them as listless as their mothers. Most of them, in the distant districts, can neither read nor write, so that they have no mental resources whatsoever. Luckily, perhaps, for them, the paucity of ideas prevents time from hanging heavy on their hands. The history of a day is that of their whole lives. They hear or speak of nothing but that such-a-one is going to the city, or to church, or to be married, or that the Bosjesmans have stolen the cattle of such-a-one, or the locusts eaten their corn. The young

young people have no meetings at fixed periods, as in most country-places, for mirth and recreation. No fairs, no dancing, no music, nor amusement of any sort. To the cold phlegmatic temper and inactive way of life may perhaps be owing the prolific tendency of all the African peasantry. Six or seven children in a family are considered as very few; from a dozen to twenty are not uncommon; and most of them marry very young, so that the population of the colony is rapidly increasing. Several, however, of the children die in their infancy, from swellings in the throat, and from eruptions of the same kind they are subject to in the Cape. Very few instances of longevity occur. The manner of life they lead is perhaps less favorable for a prolonged existence than the nature of the climate. The diseases of which they generally die in the country are bilious and putrid fevers and dropsies.

The men are in general much above the middle size, very tall and stout, but ill made, loosely put together, awkward, and inactive. Very few have those open ingenuous countenances that among the peasantry of many parts of Europe speak their simplicity and innocence. The descendants of French families are now so intermarried with those of the original settlers, that no distinction, except the names, remains. And it is a remarkable fact that not a word of the French language is spoken or understood by any of the peasantry, though there be many still living whose parents were both of that nation. Neither is a French book of any kind to be seen in their houses. It would seem as if these persecuted refugees had studied to conceal from
M their

their children their unfortunate history and their country's disgraceful conduct.

The means of education, it is true, must be very difficult to be had among a people so widely scattered over a vast extent of country as the peasantry are in the colony of the Cape. Some have a person in the house whom they call the schoolmaster. This is generally a man who had served out his time in the ranks. His employment, in this new situation, is not only to instruct the children to read, to write, to sing psalms, and get by heart a few occasional prayers, but he must also make himself serviceable in other respects. At one place that we passed, the poor schoolmaster was driving the plough, whilst a Hottentot had the more honorable post of holding and directing it. The children of those who either cannot obtain, or afford to employ, such a person, can neither read nor write; and the whole of their education consists in learning to shoot well, to crack and use with dexterity an enormous large whip, and to drive a waggon drawn by bullocks.

A book of any kind is rarely seen in any of the farmers' houses, except the Bible and *William Sluiter's Gefangen*, or songs out of the Bible done into verse by the Sternhold and Hopkins of Holland. They affect to be very religious, and carry at least the devotion of religion fully as far as the most zealous bigots. They never sit down to table without a long grace before meat pronounced with an audible voice by the youngest of the family; and every morning before day-light one of *William Sluiter's Gefangen* is drawled out in full chorus

by

by an assemblage of the whole family. In their attendance at church they are scrupulously exact, though the performance of this duty costs many of them a journey of several days. Those who live at the distance of a fortnight or three weeks from the nearest church generally go with their families once a-year.

Rude and uncultivated as are their minds, there is one virtue in which they eminently excel—hospitality to strangers. A countryman, a foreigner, a relation, a friend, are all equally welcome to whatsoever the house will afford. A Dutch farmer never passes a house on the road without alighting, except indeed his next neighbour's, with whom it is ten to one he is at variance. It is not enough to inquire after the health of the family in passing: even on the road, if two peasants should meet they instantly dismount to shake hands, whether strangers or friends. When a traveller arrives at a habitation, he alights from his horse, enters the house, shakes hands with the men, kisses the women, and sits down without farther ceremony. When the table is served he takes his place among the family without waiting for an invitation. This is never given, on the supposition that a traveller in a country so thinly inhabited must always have an appetite for something. Accordingly, "What will you make use of?" is generally the first question. If there be a bed in the house it is given to the stranger; if none, which is frequently the case among the graziers of the distant district of Graaff Reynet, he must take his chance for a form, or bench, or a heap of sheep skins, among the rest of the family. In the morning after a solid breakfast he takes his *sopie*, or glass of brandy, orders his slave or Hottentot to saddle

the horses, shakes hands with the men, and kisses the women : *he* wishes them health, and *they* wish him a good journey. In this manner a traveller might pass through the whole country.

If the economy of the African farmer's house be ill managed, that of his land is equally bad. The graziers indeed, in many places, are not at the trouble of sowing any grain, but exchange with others their cattle for as much as may be necessary for the family consumption. But even those who have corn-farms near the Cape seem to have no kind of management. They turn over a piece of ground with a huge mis-shapen plough that requires eight or ten horses, or a dozen oxen, to drag it along : the seed is sown in the broad-cast way, at the rate of about a bushel and a half to an acre ; a rude harrow is just passed over it, and they reap from ten to fifteen for one. No manure comes upon the ground except a sprinkling for barley. In low situations near rivulets, where the water can be brought upon the ground, they reap from thirty to forty for one. Water in fact is every thing in Southern Africa. Not like the Chinese, whose great art of agriculture consists in suiting the nature and habit of the plant to that of the soil, which he also artificially prepares, the Dutch peasant at the Cape is satisfied if he can command only a supply of water. He bestows no kind of labor on the ground but that of throwing in the seed : the rest is left to chance and the effects of an excellent climate. The time of seeding is in the months of May and June ; and of harvest, from November to January. The grain is trodden out by horses on circular floors in the open air ; and the straw is left to rot or to be scattered about by the winds.

We

We remained a couple of days in the Hex-river valley in making preparations for crossing the desert, and in waiting the arrival of two grazing farmers of Graaff Reynet who were to meet us by appointment at this place. These people were not only likely to be useful in pointing out the places where water was generally to be found, but they were also a considerable addition to our strength in case of an attack from a savage tribe of Hottentots known in the colony by the name of *Bosjesmans*, or men of the thickets, because, lurking in the cover of the shrubbery, they are said to shoot their poisoned arrows against the unguarded traveller, for the sake of plundering him of his cattle. To oppose these Bosjesmans the farmers generally cross the desert in parties, and strongly armed. The poor savage, driven by imperious want to carry off an ox or sheep to his starving family, who have no other abode than the caverns of the mountains, often pays in the attempt the forfeit of his life; but it rarely happens that any of the colonists fall by his hands. Yet the name of Bosjesman is held in horror and detestation; and a farmer thinks he cannot proclaim a more meritorious action than the murder of one of these people. A boor from Graaff Reynet being asked in the secretary's office, a few days before we left the town, if the savages were numerous or troublesome on the road, replied, he had only shot four, with as much composure and indifference as if he had been speaking of four partridges. I myself have heard one of the humane colonists boast of having destroyed with his own hands near three hundred of these unfortunate wretches.

The

The two graziers having joined us with each a waggon, and a numerous family of children, Hottentots, and Kaffers, we proceeded, on the twelfth of July, to the north-east, and in four hours gained the summit of the lowest part of the mountains that inclose the valley. The ascent, which was from terrace to terrace, might be about fifteen hundred feet in the distance of six miles. From the top towards the east there was little or no descent. Here the face of the country began to wear an entire new aspect. All the great chains of mountains gradually disappeared, or were seen only behind sinking into the horizon; and a confined prospect of a rugged surface, broken into hill and dale, presented itself on every side. The eye wandered in vain to seek relief by a diversity of objects. No huge rocks confusedly scattered on the plain, or piled into mountains, no hills clothed with verdure, no traces of cultivation, not a tree nor a tall shrub, appeared to break the uniformity of the surface, nor bird nor beast to enliven the dreary waste. Vegetation was thinly scattered over a bed of brownish-colored clay, and the low and stunted plants were almost wholly confined to the succulent tribe. Of these the most common were several species of *mesembryanthemum*, of *euphorbia*, *crassula*, and *cotyledon*. The grand family of *proteas*, and the elegant *erica*, had totally disappeared. The road was tolerably good, being carried generally over a bed of sand-stone crossed with veins of fat quartz, and a kind of ponderous iron-stone.

Having travelled about seven hours, in which time the oxen had not proceeded above fifteen miles, we entered a long narrow pass made by two hills: the faces of these being nearly perpen-

perpendicular and straight, gave to the eye a long natural perspective like that of a street, a name which in fact the place bore. The farther extremity of the pass opened upon a level plain, inclosed by small hills all detached from each other, and having every appearance of a volcanic origin, except that the sand-stone strata, which shewed themselves on every side, were regular and undisturbed. The inclination of these in a considerable angle to the horizon, and the form of the hills, made it appear, from certain points of view, as if a spiral line of stone twisted itself round their sides like the ridge that encircles some of the volute shells. Fahrenheit's thermometer stood at 33° at sun-rise; at noon, exposed to the sun, at 80° , in the shade 55° ; and at seven in the evening it was down at the freezing point.

The next day's journey was about five-and-twenty miles, to a place called *Constaaple*, after a Bastaard Hottentot who had been tempted by a small spring of water to erect a hut and plant a few trees. The drought, however, had soon obliged him to quit this retreat. Two spreading oaks still remained and shaded a spring of excellent water, which, however, soon lost itself in the sandy surface of the ground. The thermometer at noon rose to 80° in the sun, and at night was down to the freezing point.

On the fourteenth we travelled only twelve miles. The road, in some places, was rocky and uneven, and in others deep sand. Our oxen too were beginning to droop for want of pasturage. The stage called *Mentjies boek* afforded a few rushes and abundance of succulent plants, among which the
bullocks

bullocks of Africa are accustomed to brouze for want of grafs : not a blade of any kind had appeared since we entered upon the desert ; and shrubbery was very thinly scattered over the surface, except in the neighbourhood of the few springs that here and there occurred. At this place were the remains of a hut and a solitary oak overhanging a spring of clear water. Even these objects served, in some degree, to enliven, and to break, the uniformity of a barren desert. To the southward, also, now began to appear the blue summits of that barren chain of mountains, mentioned in the preceding Chapter under the name of Zoarteberg. A butcher of the Cape passed our encampment with about five hundred head of cattle and five thousand sheep that he had purchased in the Sneuwberg, or snowy mountains. The sheep were in tolerable good condition ; but the cattle were miserably poor. As the greatest part of the beeves that are killed at the Cape must travel from Graaff Reynet across this desert, it cannot be a matter of surprise that the Cape beef should be universally complained against. The knife is generally put into them the moment they arrive from a journey of forty or fifty days, in which, beside the fatigue of travelling, they have been exposed to the scorching rays of the sun at one season of the year, and the intense cold of the nights in the other, without any kind of shade or shelter ; without any kind of food but the salt, acrid, and watery leaves of the different succulent plants that almost exclusively grow on the Karroo ; sometimes whole days without a drop of water, and most commonly such only as is muddy and saline : sometimes their hoofs become so tender by travelling upon the hot sand and gravel, that they are obliged to

to be left on the desert ; and they generally arrive at the town in so maimed and miserable a condition, as to be very unfit for what they are intended. Could the farmers near the Cape be once prevailed upon to sow turnips, which may be produced here equally good as in Europe, to plant potatoes, and cultivate the artificial grasses, the quality of the beef and mutton might be very materially improved. Those few inhabitants who stall-feed their cattle, have their tables supplied with beef little, if at all, inferior to what is sold in Leadenhall market ; but the adoption of such a system would require more labor and activity, and more attention, than the body and mind of a Dutch farmer seem capable of supplying : his avarice, though great, is yet overcome by the habits of indolence in which he has been educated.

On the fifteenth, from the exhausted state of our oxen, three of which we had been obliged to leave behind, we made only a short stage of ten or twelve miles to the *riet fonteyn*, or the red spring, which took its rise out of a high cone-shaped hill, with a flat top, and ran in a feeble stream to the southward. The banks were skirted by a thicket of the *doorn boom*, or thorn-tree, a species of *mimosa*, called erroneously by the two Swedish travellers, who have published their researches in Southern Africa, the *nilotica*, or that which produces the gum Arabic. The pods of this is very long, and moniliform or divided like a string of beads ; whereas the karroo mimosa has short sickle-shaped pods. Armed from the summit down to the ground with enormous double thorns, pointing in every direction “ like quills upon the fretful porcupine,” it makes an

impenetrable thicket to most animals except the rhinoceros, whose hide, though not proof against a musket-ball, as has been asserted by a great naturalist, has little to fear from the spines of the mimosa. The bark, being powerfully astringent, is preferred to that of any other tree in the colony for preparing leather from raw skins; and the wood, being hard and tough, is used for waggon-poles, and as lock-shoes for the wheels. The trunk of the tree gives out great quantities of a clear transparent gum, which, however, does not seem to have been applied to any kind of use. It is remarkable that almost every tree which furnishes tasteless gums or resins is covered with a bark that is highly astringent and austere to the taste.

The following day we crossed the bed of the Buffalo river, which was at least fifty yards in width; but the quantity of water in it was barely sufficient to form a current. The deep shelving banks, however, and the wreck of roots and shrubs, indicated at least its periodical power, which had forced through the *black mountains* to the southward a grand chasm in its passage to the eastern ocean. The whole surface of the country was here strewed over with small fragments of a deep purple-colored slate, that had crumbled away from the strata which in long parallel ridges lay in the direction of east and west. Scattered among these fragments were black tumified stones that had much the appearance of volcanic slugs, or the scoriæ of an iron furnace. Several hills of the shape of cones, some truncated near the top parallel to their bases, stood detached from each other on the plain, apparently thrown up by volcanic explosions; but a nearer view of the alternate strata of earth and sand-

sand-stone, regularly disposed in every part, shewed them to be the effect of water and not of fire. This part of the desert was more sterile and naked than had yet occurred. Scarcely a plant of any description threw its feeble leaves out of the flaty surface, except a few species of the mesembryanthemum, among which was one more luxuriant than the rest, whose leather-like covering of its fleshy cylindrical leaves served our Hottentots, when dried, for tinder.

About ten miles beyond the Buffalo river we encamped for the night upon the banks of a small running brook called *Geelbeck*, winding round a flat sandy marsh overgrown with rushes, and abounding with springs whose waters were strongly impregnated with salt. All the naked sandy patches were thinly sprinkled over with a fine white powdery substance not unlike snow: it was found in the greatest quantities where the cattle of travellers had been tied up at nights; and it was observed almost invariably to surround the roots of a frutescent plant that grew here in great exuberance. I collected a quantity of this white powder, together with the sand, and by boiling the solution and evaporating the water, obtained from it crystals of pure prismatic nitre. A small proportion of a different alkaline salt was also extracted from the liquor. The plant alluded to was a species of *salsola*, or salt-wort, with very minute fleshy leaves closely surrounding the woody branches. It is known to the country-people by the Hottentot name of *Canna*, and is that plant from the ashes of which almost all the soap, that is used in the colony, is made. These ashes, when carefully burnt and collected, are a pure white caustic alkali, a

solution of which, mixed up with the oily fat of the large broad tails of the sheep of the colony, and boiled slowly for five or six days, takes the consistency and the quality of an excellent white soap. This *salsola* grows in almost every part of Southern Africa, but particularly on those plains known by the name of Karroo, and in such abundance that, supposing the plant, after being cut down and burnt, to be reproduced in five years, the quantity of soda, or barrilla, that might annually be made from the ashes would be sufficient, beside serving the colony, for the whole consumption of Great Britain: and as enormous sums of money have always been, and continue to be, drawn from England to pay the imports of this article, it may perhaps be considered as an object worthy of further inquiry. According to the present system, however, of letting out the government farms, and the high price of labor, none of the country-people would find it worth their consideration as an article to bring to market. The Hottentots, indeed, might be encouraged to prepare it; but the great distance from Cape Town, the only market in the colony, and the badness of the roads, will always operate against a supply of the natural products of the country being had there at any reasonable rate. Another shrubby plant with glaucous spear-shaped leaves, is generally met with growing among the *salsola*, the ashes of which also give a strong alkaline lie; but the soap made from these is said to have a blueish color, and to be of a very inferior quality to that made from the former. The plant was not in flower; but it appeared to be the *atriplex albicans*, a kind of orache.

The

The hills that surrounded the plain of Geel-beck were composed of a dark purple-colored slate; and among these were seen prancing a small herd of that beautifully-marked animal the *zebra*, and a great number of another species of wild horse, known in the colony by the Hottentot name of *qua-cba*. This animal was long considered as the female zebra, but is now known to be a species entirely distinct. It is marked with faint stripes on the four quarters only; is well shaped, strong limbed, not in the least vicious, but, on the contrary, is soon rendered by domestication mild and tractable: yet, abundant as they are in the country, few have given themselves the trouble of turning them to any kind of use. They are infinitely more beautiful than, and fully as strong as, the mule; are easily supported on almost any kind of food, and are never out of flesh. The zebra has obtained the character of being so vicious and ungovernable as never to be completely tamed, perhaps only from some very imperfect and injudicious trials. The success of an attempt to domesticate animals that are naturally fierce or timid would require more perseverance and patience, more labor, and more address, than seem to fall to the share of a Dutch peasant. A vicious animal, taken from a state of nature, is not to be tamed with the point of the knife, nor with stripes; they are more impatient of pain than such as are already rendered docile and accustomed to the cruelties exercised upon them by man; and wounds and harsh treatment serve only to make them more fierce and unmanageable. At the landroft's of Zwellendam I saw a male and female zebra that, while young and attended to, were said to have been mild and docile; but by neglect, and probably by teasing, had become

become exceedingly vicious. One of the English dragoons persisted in mounting the female. She kicked and plunged, and laid herself down, but to no purpose; the man kept his seat; till taking a leap from the high bank of the river, she threw him into the water; but, holding fast by the bridle, she had no sooner dragged him to the shore than, walking up quietly to him, she put her head down to his face and completely bit off his ear.

On many parts of the great deserts ostriches were seen scowring the plains and waving their black and white plumes in the wind, a signal to the Hottentots that their nests were not far distant, especially if they wheeled round the place from whence they started up: when they have no nest they make off, immediately on being disturbed, with the wing-feathers close to the body. There is something in the economy of this animal different in general from that of the rest of the feathered race. It seems to be the link of union, in the great chain of nature, that connects the winged with the four-footed tribe. Its strong-jointed legs and cloven hoofs are well adapted for speed and for defence. The wings and all its feathers are insufficient to raise it from the ground; its camel-shaped neck is covered with hair; its voice is a kind of hollow mournful lowing, and it grazes on the plain with the qua-cha and the zebra. Among the very few polygamous birds that are found in a state of nature, the ostrich is one. The male, distinguished by its glossy black feathers from the dusky grey female, is generally seen with two or three, and frequently as many as five, of the latter. These females lay their eggs in one nest, to
the

the number of ten or twelve each, which they hatch all together, the male taking his turn of sitting on them among the rest. Between sixty and seventy eggs have been found in one nest; and if incubation has begun, a few are most commonly lying round the sides of the hole, having been thrown out by the birds on finding the nest to contain more than they could conveniently cover. The time of incubation is six weeks. For want of knowing the ostrich to be polygamous an error respecting this bird has slipped into the *Systema Naturæ*, where it is said that one female lays fifty eggs.

The eggs of the ostrich are considered as a great delicacy. They are prepared in a variety of ways; but that made use of by the Hottentots is perhaps the best: it is simply to bury them in hot ashes, and through a small hole made in the upper end to stir the contents continually round till they acquire the consistence of an omlet: prepared in this manner we very often, in the course of our long journies over the wilds of Africa, found them an excellent repast. In these eggs are frequently discovered a number of small oval-shaped pebbles, about the size of a marrowfat pea, of a pale yellow color and exceeding hard. In one egg were nine and in another twelve of such stones.

At this place it was considered prudent to furnish our Hottentots, who attended the cattle, with fire-arms, having of late been much infested by parties of Bosjesmen. They had not been out with the oxen above an hour before they were seen returning with six strangers under their guard. They were not,

not, however, Bosjesmens, but three runaway slaves, and three Hottentots, one of the latter of which was a girl about twelve years of age. This party had lived for some time upon the desert entirely on animal food, which they had procured by lurking near the usual halting-places of butchers and farmers, and driving off in the night-time a few sheep. Tired of such a mode of life, they were very glad to escape from it by entering into the list of our attendants.

On the seventeenth we proceeded about twenty-four miles over a rising country, finely marked by hill and dale, but altogether barren, except that here and there were straggling over the surface a few species of the mesembryanthemum, or fig marygold, among which were large patches of the curious and elegant ice-plant. At night the thermometer was down to the freezing point, and the following morning it had descended to 30° . The Black Mountains, about fifteen miles to the southward, had lost that part of their character to which perhaps they owed their name, and were covered with deep snow. The nights had been so intensely cold and piercing, since we entered upon the desert, that our horses, being accustomed to the stable, immediately grew sick and low-spirited, and two of them this day fell under the severity of the weather. A third had a very narrow escape. We lost several of our oxen; but these died rather for want of food than from the coldness of the nights.

On the eighteenth we crossed the *Dwyka*, or Rhinoceros river, and encamped on its banks. The bed of the river was a
fine-

fine-grained blue sand, and it generally exceeded a hundred yards in width; but the collected streamlets, creeping over its surface, would scarcely have furnished a quantity of water sufficient to turn a mill. The rivers that cross the Karroo have this difference, which distinguishes them from rivers in general, that, notwithstanding all the tributary streamlets that may fall into them, the greater the distance from the source the less water they contain. As it seldom rains on the desert, they have no supply but from the springs; and the water, in its passage from these, is continually losing of its bulk both by absorption and by evaporation. Though the surrounding country was destitute of vegetation, a thick forest of mimosa covered the banks of the Dwyka, and followed it through all its windings. This plant grows indeed on every part of the desert, on which it is the inseparable companion of all the rivers and all the periodical streamlets. Should a traveller happen to be in want of water, the appearance of the mimosa is a sure guide to the place where it occasionally at least is to be found.

On the evening of the nineteenth we encamped upon the banks of the *Gbamka*, or Lion's river. The distance from the Dwyka is about twenty miles of the most beautiful road I ever beheld. There was neither stone nor loose sand, nor rut, to break the equality of the surface, which was level as that of a bowling-green, and consisted of a hard bed of clay bound together, and colored brown, with iron. Not a swell of any sort intervened to interrupt the line of the horizon, which was as perfect as that viewed over the surface of the sea. Here, too,

as on that element, the mind was as little distracted by a multiplicity of objects; for in vain did the eye wander in search of tree, or lofty shrub, or blade of grass, or living creature. On every side a wide spreading plain, barren as its southern boundary the Black Mountains, presented nothing but a dreary waste, "a land of desolation." On approaching the river Ghamka the face of the country changed a little for the better. Large mimosas skirted its banks, among which were also mingled a species of willow with a narrow serrated leaf, a *rhus*, and the *lyceum afrum*. A considerable stream of water rolled over the bed of the river. Here we met with hares, partridges, mountain geese, and wild ducks of two kinds, in great abundance. The blue schistus broke out on the banks of the river, and still continued to run directly east and west in parallel ridges.

That part of the Lion's river where we were encamped was distant only about twelve miles from a chasm or kloof in the Zwarteberg, in the very mouth of which was said to be a farm-house, and several others behind the mountains. As these houses all belonged to the district of Graaff Reynet, the landroft was not without hopes of procuring the loan of fresh teams of bullocks. Many of our own had already died, others were left on the desert, and the rest were quite exhausted by the effects of the cold, of bad water, and little food. We therefore quitted the direct road, and turned off towards Zwarteberg. A few miles before we arrived at the kloof, a party of men, mounted on horseback, were observed to be making for the waggons in full gallop. In coming up with the first, they stopt short and fired a discharge of musquetry.

They

They loaded again, rode up to the second, and fired a second volley : this they repeated before every waggon, and then set off in full gallop the same way they had approached, and were out of fight in a few minutes. This manœuvre was intended as doing honor to the landroft; and such a welcome reception, so very different from that he had experienced on a former occasion from the inhabitants of the first division of his district, was no bad omen of the change of sentiments, or of conduct at least, that had taken place since his expulsion.

After a journey of nine days over a dreary and barren desert, the traces of human industry, though in a wild sequestered corner, hemmed in by huge barren mountains, had no less charms than the discovery of land, after a long sea-voyage, to the weary passenger. We found here not only a most friendly reception, but also such refreshments as we began to be in want of. Two kinds of wine, the produce of the place, were very tolerable. Various sorts of fruits, all of good quality. The oranges were already ripe and gathered, and the peach and almond trees were in full blossom. Vegetables were unusually luxuriant in their growth : some of the cauliflowers measured eighteen inches in diameter. The rapidity of vegetation, at this place, appeared the more remarkable on account of its situation at the feet of mountains whose summits were buried in snow. It was, however, exposed only to the warm north, and completely screened from all other winds. The thermometer, during the three days we remained here, was never lower than 46° , at the same time that the appearance of the

weather indicated a severe frost every night at the distance of a very few miles on the desert.

The mistress of the mansion, at the age of sixty, and the mother of sixteen children, was a tall, straight, well-looking, and active woman; and all the people, who made their appearance from the Black Mountains, were of a stature much exceeding the common size of man. The peasantry of the colony have always been represented as a gigantic race of men. Living nearly in a state of nature, with the advantage of having at all times within their reach a supply of food, procured without bodily exertion or the fatigue of labor, they sometimes attain the greatest possible size to which the species seems capable of arriving.

From this place may be seen to the northward, across the Karroo plains, the chain of mountains which forms the highest step or terrace that has yet been ascended by European travellers. The desert rises towards them in a fine swell that is clearly perceptible to the eye. An attempt to estimate the height of the *Nieuwveld Mountains*, by having merely passed over the country, can be considered as little better than a guess. I should suppose, however, from attending to the general slope of the country to the northward, as well as the sudden elevations from one terrace to another, that the summit of this screen of mountains cannot be less than ten thousand feet above the level of the sea. Snow falls upon them to the depth of five or six feet, and continues to bury them for as many months. The inferior range of *Zwarteberg* was at this time, for a considerable

siderable distance from the summit, covered with snow. These mountains were apparently composed of the same materials as those already passed; but the detached hills, near their base, consisted entirely of that species of rock called by Mr. Kirwan the *amygdaloid*, which is nearly allied to the stone that the miners of Derbyshire have distinguished by the name of *toad-stone*. The rounded pebbles, embedded in this argillaceous matrix, were almost invariably tinged with a bright grass-green color. The substratum of the mountains still continued to be a blue and purple-colored schistus.

Having completed our stock of provisions, and procured from the inhabitants of Zwarteberg the loan of sixty stout bullocks, we once more launched upon the wide desert, and proceeded, on the twenty-third, near thirty miles to a spring of water called the *Stcutel fonteyn*, and the following day encamped on the banks of the *Traka* or Maiden river. The little water it contained was both muddy and salt, and the sand on its banks was covered with a thin pellicle of nitre out of which was growing abundance of the *salsola* before mentioned.

At sun-rise this morning the thermometer was down to five degrees below the freezing point. This great diminution of temperature appeared the more extraordinary, as no change, either in the direction or the strength of the wind, had taken place. The air was clear and serene, without a cloud in the sky, and the weather apparently the same it had been for several days in every respect, except in the degree of temperature. The snow on the mountains could have had little influence.

The

The Black Mountains only were near, and they were to leeward; the light wind that blew being from the west, in which quarter scarcely a hillock occurred for the space of an hundred miles.

On the twenty-fifth we skirted the banks of the Traka about ten miles, passed the *Gbowka* or Boor's river, which was perfectly dried up, and in the evening arrived at the *Great Loory fonteyn*, in which was only a very small quantity of water standing in holes, and this was muddy, salt, and bitter. As there was neither herbaceous nor shrubby plants, and as, since our departure from Zwarteberg, the oxen had scarcely tasted vegetable food, for, independent of the little time allowed them to browse, the desert offered only the shrivelled stems of the mesembryanthemum tribe, it was thought adviseable to continue our journey, though in the dark, in search of a better place for the refreshment of our cattle: and as there was reason to suspect that it would be some time before we should meet with water, we filled our casks with the execrable mixture of the Great Loory fonteyn. In the middle of the night we arrived at a place where once had flowed a rill of water, and where still were growing clumps of mimosa, patches of the *sal-sola*, and a few other succulent plants. These, like some animals that are said to have the faculty of supplying their own nutriment, are capable of existing for a length of time by the juices which their own roots throw out. Our oxen devoured them with great avidity; and the horses made a hearty meal on the branches of the mimosa, at the expence of a considerable quantity of blood which the strong sharp thorns drew from
from

from their mouths. The acrid juices of the succulent plants, and the sour herbage of Africa, oblige the cattle to make use of various correctives; and in the choice of these they are not very nice. Old rags, pieces of leather, skins with the hair on them, dried wood; bones, and even small pebbles and sand, are greedily devoured by them. African horses very commonly eat their own dung; and numbers have been destroyed in consequence of taking into the stomach vast quantities of flinty sand.

From the *Little Loory fonteyn*, the place where we halted for the refreshment of our cattle upon the shrubbery that grew there, we advanced on the following day near thirty miles over a bed of solid clay, and late at night pitched our tent in the midst of a meadow covered completely with herbage knee-deep. A transition so sudden from unbounded barrenness, that on every side had appeared on the preceding day, to a verdant meadow clothed by the most luxuriant vegetation, felt more like enchantment than reality. The hungry cattle, impatient to satisfy the cravings of nature, made no small havoc in liberating themselves from the yokes and traces. The name of this spot was *De Beer Valley*: it was a plain of several miles in diameter, stretching along the feet of the Black Mountains, and seemed to be the reservoir of a number of periodical rivers, whose sources are in the mountains of *Niewveldt*, of *Winterberg*, and *Camdeboo*. One of these running at this time with a considerable current, was as salt as brine. To the taste it appeared to be as strongly impregnated as the water of the English Channel; that is to say, it might contain about a
thirtieth

thirtieth part of its weight of salt. Another river, with little current, called the *Karooka*, joined the salt river at the head of the valley, the water of which was perfectly fresh, but combined with earthy matter. The surface of the valley was entirely covered with two or three species of coarse rushy grasses; and all the swamps and springs were buried in large clumps of the *arundo phragmites* or common reed. The streams that fell into the valley were finely skirted with tall mimosas, which, at their confluence, spread out into a forest of evergreens.

Such a delightful spot in the midst of a barren desert, affording shelter, and food, and water, could not fail of attracting to it the native inhabitants of the surrounding country; and here accordingly we met with vast variety of game, particularly of the antelope family, three different species of which we had not before observed. These were the *spring-bok* or leaping antelope, the *pygarga* of the *Systema Naturæ*, the *gems-bok* or *pasan* of *Buffon*, the *Egyptian antelope* of *Pennant*, and the *oryx* of the *Systema Naturæ*, and the *koodoo* the *strepsiceros* of *Pallas*.

The spring-bok is a gregarious animal never met with but in large herds, some of which, according to the accounts of the peasantry, will amount to the number of ten thousand. The Dutch have given a name to this beautiful creature indicative of its gait. The strength and elasticity of the muscles are so great that, when closely pursued, he will spring at a single leap from fifteen to five-and-twenty feet. Its usual pace is that of a constant jumping or springing, with all the four legs stretched
out,

out, and off the ground at the same time, and at every spring the hair on the rump divides or sheds, and, falling back on each side, displays a surface of snowy whiteness. No dog can attempt to approach the old ones; but the young kids, which were now numerous, were frequently caught after a hard chase. Both old and young are excellent venison; and vast numbers are destroyed by the Dutch farmers, not only for the sake of the flesh, but also for the skins, of which they make sacks for holding provisions and other articles, clothing for their slaves, and, at the time of the capture by the English, for themselves also and children. The poverty and miserable condition of the colony were then so great, that all their numerous flocks and herds were insufficient to procure them decent clothing.

The gemsbok is also a very beautiful animal, and of a size much larger than the springbok. It has none of that timidity which generally marks the character of the antelope; but, on the contrary, if closely pursued or wounded, will coolly sit down on its haunches, and keep both sportsman and dogs at bay. Its long, straight, sharp-pointed horns, used in defence by striking back with the head, make it dangerous to approach. Dogs are very frequently killed by it; and no peasant, after wounding the animal, will venture within its reach till it be dead, or its strength at least exhausted. The flesh of the gemsbok is reckoned to be the best venison that Africa produces.

The koodoo is still larger than the gemsbok, being about the height of a common-sized ass, but much longer. Its strong
P
spiral

spiral horns are three feet in length, and seem to be very ill adapted for the convenience of the animal in the thick covert which it constantly frequents. The hind part of the dusky mouse-colored body has several clear white stripes, and different from most of the genus: on the neck is a short mane: the flesh is dry and without flavor.

The beds of sand, upon the margin of the valley, were all covered with saltpetre as white as snow. The production of this substance has certainly an influence upon the temperature of the air, causing a considerable degree of cold. A full hour after the sun had risen the thermometer stood, in the shade, at 26° , or six degrees below the freezing point. At Little Loory fonteyn, where the soil was hard, dry, and stoney, it was ten degrees above freezing; and about the same time on the preceding morning, on the banks of the Traka, where there was also much nitre, the mercury was five degrees below the freezing point. The weather during the three days was perfectly clear, and the wind had not shifted a point. That the great changes in the temperature of the air upon the desert, whilst the weather apparently remains the same, arise from some local rather than general cause, is pretty evident from another circumstance: in travelling at night upon the Karroo, if the wind should happen to blow upon the side, it is very common to pass through alternate currents of hot and cold air, whose difference of temperature is most sensibly felt. Whether the cooler columns of the atmosphere may have been owing to the subjacent beds of nitre, which frequently occur on the Karroo plains, or to some remoter cause, I have no grounds sufficiently

ciently strong to determine ; but a variety of circumstances seem to favor the former supposition.

In looking through the exhalations of these beds of nitre, a meteorological phenomenon of a different nature, was also here accidentally observed. In marking about sunrise the bearing by a compass of a cone-shaped hill that was considerably elevated above the horizon, a peasant well acquainted with the country observed that it must either be a new hill, or that the only one which stood in that direction, at the distance of a long day's journey, must have greatly increased of late its dimensions. Being directed to turn his eyes from time to time towards the quarter on which it stood, he perceived, with amazement, that, as the day advanced, the hill gradually sunk towards the horizon, and at length totally disappeared. The errors of sight, occasioned by the refractive power of the air, are so singular, and sometimes so very extraordinary, as hitherto to have precluded the application of any general theorem for their correction, as it is not yet ascertained even through what medium rays of light, in their passage, suffer the greatest and least degree of refraction. Were this precisely known, observations on the subject might lead to a more intimate knowledge of the nature of the different currents of air that float in the atmosphere, and without doubt are the cause of extraordinary appearances of objects viewed through them. A gentleman, to whom the world is much indebted for his many ingenious and useful inventions and discoveries, once proposed to determine the refractive power of different liquids and aeriform fluids ; and it is to be hoped he still means to

profecute a courfe of experiments on a fubject of fo much importance and curiofity.

Our cattle being well refreshed on the meadows of De Beer Valley, we advanced about twenty miles, and encamped for the night on the banks of Hottentot's river, in the narrow deep channel of which were only a few ftagnant pools of muddy water. Here we were met by fome of the inhabitants of Camdeboo, who, being apprifed of the approach of the landroft, had come a two days' journey, and brought with them feveral teams of large fat oxen to haften his arrival at the Drofdy, where he was informed the orderly and well-difpofed part of the diftriãt were anxiofly expecting him.

On the twenty-eighth we pitched our tents at the *Poort*, fo called from a narrow paffage through a range of hills that branch out from the mountains of Camdeboo and run acrofs the defert. The plains were here a little better covered with fhrubbery, and abounded with duikers and fteen-boks, whole herds of fpring-boks, and qua-chas and oſtriches.

A heap of ſtones, piled upon the bank of a rivulet, was pointed out to me as the grave of a Hottentot; and on enquiring from our people of this nation if the deceafed had been ſome chief, they informed me that no diſtinction was conveyed after death; and that the ſize of the heap depended entirely upon the trouble that the ſurviving friends choſe to give themſelves. The intention, it ſeemed, of the pile was very different from that of the monuments of a ſimilar kind that anciently
were

were erected in various parts of Europe, though they very probably might have proceeded, in a more remote antiquity, from the same origin, which was that of preventing the wolves, or jackals, or other ravenous beasts, from tearing up and mangling the dead carcase. The progressive refinement of society converted, at length, the rude heap of stones, originating in necessity, into the sculptured marble, the useless flatterer of vanity.

Though the Poort may be considered as the entrance into Camdeboo, the first habitation is twelve miles beyond it, and the second ten miles beyond the first. No others appeared either to the right or to the left, and the surface of the country was just as barren and naked as any part of the Karroo. The third farm-house we passed was fifteen or sixteen miles beyond the second; and no other occurred between this and the Drofty, or the residence of the landroft, which was about ten miles farther. It was late in the evening of the thirtieth before we arrived at this village, at the entrance of which the landroft was received by a body of farmers on horseback, who welcomed him by a discharge of several platoons of musquetry.

CHAP. III.

Sketches on a journey into the Country of the Kaffers.

IMMEDIATELY after our arrival at Graaff Reynet, the Provisional Landroft, in his list of grievances under which the diftrict was then laboring, represented the deplorable ftate of fome of its dependencies from the incursions of the tribe of people known by the name of Kaffers. Certain chiefs of this nation, he faid, with their families, and vaffals, and cattle, were overrunning the country : fome had even advanced as far as the borders of the diftrict of Zwellendam ; others had ftationed themfelves on the banks of the *Sondag*, or Sunday river, within fifty or fixty miles of the Drosdy ; but that the great bulk of them were in that divifion of the diftrict called the *Zuure-veldt*, or Sour Grafs plains, which ftretch along the fea-coaft between the Sunday and the Great Fish rivers : that an inhabitant of *Bruyntjes Hoogté*, another divifion of the diftrict, who, during the late difturbances and anarchy in the affairs of Graaff Reynet, had on all occafions ufed a dictatorial language and acted a bufy part, had now fent him a letter demanding that the command fhould be given to him of a detachment of the farmers againft a party of Kaffers who had paffed the borders of this divifion of the diftrict with three or four thoufand head of cattle : that he, the provisional landroft, had,

had, from certain intelligence of the coming of the actual landroft, fortunately withheld his answer to the said letter ; for, in the present state of affairs, he would not have dared to give a refusal : to all the measures of the leading party he had been compelled to assent : he had in fact been forced by the anarchists, by way of giving a kind of sanction to their proceedings, to take upon him the title of an office, the duties of which he was neither qualified, nor indeed suffered, to perform.

The first business, therefore, of the landroft, after his arrival at the Drofdy, was to stop the preparations of the farmers for making war against the Kaffers, by letting them know that it was his intention to pay a visit to the chiefs of that nation, and to prevail on them, if possible, to return quietly and peaceably into their own country beyond the settled limits of the Great Fish river. This, no doubt, was an unwelcome piece of intelligence to the writer of the letter, and to those of the intended expedition who were to share with him the plunder of the Kaffers' cattle, which, in fact, and not any laudable motive for the peace and welfare of the district, was the mainspring that operated on the minds of those who had consented to take up arms against them. To the avaricious and covetous disposition of the colonists, and their licentious conduct, was owing a serious rupture with this nation in the year 1793, which terminated with the almost total expulsion of the former from some of the divisions of the district : and though in the same year the treaty was renewed which fixed the Great Fish river to be the line of demarcation between the two nations, and the Kaffers retired within their proper limits, yet few of the colonists

nists returned to their former possessions, particularly those in the Zuure Veldt ; a circumstance, no doubt, that induced the former once more to transgress the fixed boundary. So long as they remained in small numbers in these forsaken parts, and during the confusion in the affairs of Graaff Reynet, little notice had been taken of their encroachments ; but of late they had poured over in such multitudes, and had made such rapid advances towards the interior and inhabited parts of the district, levying at the same time contributions of oxen and sheep on those colonists whose habitations they approached in their passage through the country, that the affair was become seriously alarming.

As soon therefore as the landroft should have held a meeting of the inhabitants to administer to them the oath of allegiance to His Majesty, to read his commission, appoint the Hem-raaden, or members of the Council, and settle some other necessary business at the Drofsdy, it was resolved to inquire into the affair of the Kaffers upon the spot where they had posted themselves in the greatest numbers ; and, should it be found necessary, to proceed from thence to the residence of their king ; at the same time to pass through and examine as many parts of the country, under the jurisdiction of Graaff Reynet, as could be done without too great an expenditure of time ; and particularly to visit the bay that was said to be formed where the *Zwart-kops* river falls into the sea.

In the meantime I had an opportunity of looking round me and taking a cursory view of that division of Graaff Reynet, properly

properly so called. It occupies about ten miles on every side of the village. On the north and east it is terminated by the *Sneurberg* or Snowy mountains, and on the south and west is inclosed by the division of Camdeboo. It contains only twenty-six families, twelve of whom inhabit the village: the rest are scattered over a wild barren country almost destitute of tree or shrub, and very little better than the Karroo desert. The Sunday river, in its passage from the Snowy mountains, winds round the small plain on which the Drosdy is placed, and furnishes it with a copious supply of water, without which it would produce nothing. The whole extent of this plain is not more than two square miles, and it is surrounded by mountains two thousand feet in height, from whose steep sides project, like so many lines of masonry, a great number of sand-stone strata; so that the heat of summer, increased by the confined situation and the reflection of the sun's rays from the rocky sides of these mountains, is intensely great; whilst the cold of winter, from their great height, and the proximity of the Snowy mountains, from whence the northerly winds rush with great violence through the kloof that admits the Sunday river, is almost intolerable; not merely on account of the decreased temperature, but from the total impossibility of stirring abroad during the continuance of these winds, which in whirling eddies carry round the plain a constant cloud of red earth and sand.

The village of Graaff Reynet is in latitude $32^{\circ} 11'$ south, longitude 26° east, and the distance from Cape Town about 500 miles. It consists of an assemblage of mud huts placed at

Q

some

some distance from each other, in two lines, forming a kind of street. At the upper end stands the house of the landroft, built also of mud, and a few miserable hovels that were intended as offices for the transaction of public business: most of these have tumbled in; and the rest are in a ruinous condition and not habitable. The jail is composed of mud walls and roofed with thatch; and so little tenable, that an English deserter, who had been shut up in it for amusing the country people with an account of a conversation he had held with some French officer, made his escape the first night through the thatch. The mud walls of all the buildings are excavated, and the floors undermined by a species of *termes* or white ant, which destroys every thing that falls in its way except wood; and the bats that lodge in the thatch come forth at nights in such numbers as to extinguish the candles, and make it almost impossible to remain in a room where there is a light.

The village is chiefly inhabited by mechanics, and such as hold some petty employment under the landroft. Its appearance is more miserable than that of the poorest village in England. The necessaries of life are with difficulty procured in it; for, though there be plenty of land, few are found industrious enough to cultivate it. No milk, no butter, no cheese, no vegetables of any kind, are to be had upon any terms. There is no butcher, no chandler, no grocer, no baker. Every one must provide for himself as well as he can. They have neither wine nor beer; and the chief beverage of the inhabitants is the water of the Sunday river, which, in the summer season, is strongly impregnated with salt. It would be difficult to say
what

what the motives could have been that induced the choice of this place for the residence of the landroft. It could not proceed from any personal comfort or convenience that the place held out; perhaps those of the inhabitants have chiefly been consulted, as the situation is nearly central; though it is more probable that some interested motive, or a want of judgment, or a contradictory spirit, must have operated in assigning so wild, so secluded, and so unprofitable a place for the seat of the Drofsdy.

On the eleventh of August we set out from Graaff Reynet on our projected expedition, accompanied by two hemraaden whom the landroft thought it adviseable to take, having proposed to call a meeting of the inhabitants of the distant divisions of his district as he passed through them, to read his commission, administer the oath of allegiance, and to proclaim those parts of his public instructions as might particularly relate to such inhabitants. He thought by doing this to spare them the trouble and expence of a long journey to the Drofsdy.

Our first route lay directly to the southward towards the sea-coast, through a country as sandy, arid, and sterile as any part of the Great desert, and equally ill supplied with water. Two farm-houses only were passed on the first day's journey, which was in the division called Camdeboo, a Hottentot word, signifying *green elevations*, applying to the projecting buttresses which support the Snowy mountains, and which are mostly covered with verdure. The farmers here are entirely graziers; and for feeding their numerous herds each occupies a vast

extent of country. Notwithstanding the miserable appearance of the plains, the bullocks were large and in excellent condition, and the sheep were in tolerable good order; but the broad-tailed breed of the Cape seems to be of a very inferior kind to those of Siberia and oriental Tartary: they are long-legged, small in the body, remarkably thin in the fore quarters and across the ribs: they have very little intestine or net fat; the whole of this seems to be collected upon the hind part of the thigh and upon the tail: this is short, broad, flat, naked on the under side, and weighs in general about five or six pounds: sometimes it exceeds a dozen pounds in weight: when melted it retains the consistence of fat vegetable oils, and in this state it is frequently used as a substitute for butter, and for making soap by boiling it with the lie of the ashes of the *salsola*. The sheep of the Cape are marked with every shade of color; some are black, some brown, and others bay; but the greatest number are spotted: their necks are small and extended, and their ears long and pendulous: they weigh from sixty to seventy pounds each when taken from their pasture; but on their arrival at the Cape are reduced to about forty; and they are sold to the butchers who collect them upon the spot for six or eight shillings a-piece. The price of a bullock is about twelve rixdollars, or forty-eight shillings, and the average weight is about four hundred pounds. The graziers seldom kill an ox for their own consumption, unless it be to lay up in salt. Their general fare is mutton and goats' flesh. The African goat is the finest of the species I ever saw, and so wonderfully prolific that it is considered as the most profitable animal, for home consumption, that can be kept. They go twenty weeks

weeks with young, and seldom have less than two at a birth, very commonly three, and frequently four. The flesh, though much inferior to mutton, is thought quite good enough for the Hottentots in the service of the farmer; and the choice pieces, well soaked in the fat of sheep's tails, are served upon his own table.

The wool of the sheep is little better than a strong frizzled hair, of which they make no kind of use except for stuffing cushions or mattresses. They neither wash nor shear their sheep, but suffer the wool to drop off on its own accord, which it usually does in the months of September and October. The skins are used only as clothing for the Hottentots, aprons for their children, bags for holding various articles, and other household purposes.

A hog is a species of animal scarcely known in the district. No reason but that of indolence can be assigned for the want of it. To feed hogs there would be a necessity of planting, and to this they seem to have a mortal antipathy. It is great exertion to throw a little corn into the ground for their own bread. Many are not at the trouble even of doing this, but prefer to make a journey of several days to exchange their cattle for what corn they may stand in need of. Potatoes they have a dislike to; and according to their report, the Hottentots, whose stomachs are not very nice, refuse to eat them. It is curious enough that this poisonous root has been generally rejected at first by most nations. Strong prejudices existed against it when first it was introduced into England, where the privation of it
now

now would be one of the greatest calamities that could befall the country. The same reasons that prevent them from breeding hogs operate against their keeping poultry: these would require grain, and this labor. Of wild fowl, such as ducks and geese, may be procured in most parts of the country almost any quantity, at the expence of a little powder and shot. The larger kinds of game, however, are generally the objects of the Dutch farmers. They have a sufficient degree of penetration to calculate that the same quantity of powder required to kill a duck will bring down an antelope. Of this deer, that species mentioned in a former Chapter under the name of the spring-bok, is met with on the plains of Camdeboo in numbers that are almost incredible. A thorough-bred sportsman will kill from twenty to thirty every time he goes out. This, however, the farmer does by a kind of poaching. He lies concealed among the thickets near the springs or pools of water, to which the whole herd, towards the close of the day, repair to quench their thirst, and by firing among them his enormous piece loaded with several bullets, he brings down three or four at a shot. Ostriches we saw in great plenty, and often refreshed our whole company with the spoils of their nests.

On the twelfth, in the course of twenty miles, we saw two farm-houses, one of which was deserted from a scarcity of water; and the following day we also passed two houses. Having crossed the Sunday river nine times since our departure from Graaff Reynet, and every time in great danger of overturning the waggons, we now quitted it altogether, and encamped on the arid plain at a distance from any water. This part of the district

district is called the *Zwart Ruggens* or black ridges. Except the plain of our encampment there scarcely occurred, in the distance of forty miles, a hundred yards of level ground. The roads over the ridges were execrably bad, constantly ascending or descending, covered with large fragments of loose stones, or carried over ledges of firm rock.

Though vegetation in general was thinly scattered over the stony surface, and languid, some of the eminences were tolerably well clothed with a species of euphorbium, whose luxuriance of growth shewed it to be congenial to the soil and the situation. The leaves were erect, hexangular, and armed with a row of double spines along each edge. It appeared to be the same species of which Mr. Patterson has given a drawing; but it is not here considered as a poisonous plant, as he has represented it, though a very obnoxious one, as it prevents the cattle from picking up any little herbage that may be growing about its roots. Another species of euphorbium, scarcely rising above the surface of the ground, is here very common. From a central *corona* issue, as so many radii, a number of round imbricated leaves, containing, like all the rest of this genus, a white milky fluid: the central part of one of these plants incloses not less than a pint. The oxen pierce the corona with their incisive teeth, and drink the milk; and it is the opinion of the farmers that they become fat upon it. Though less astringent than the fluid that is usually produced by this tribe of plants, it possesses that quality to a very considerable degree; yet no sort of inconvenience is known to attend the use of it to the cattle. The peasantry collect it for another purpose. When warmed
over

over the fire, and stirred round with a soft ochraceous stone, it takes the consistence of tar, and in that state is considered as an excellent grease for the axes of their waggon wheels.

We passed, on the fourteenth, a narrow opening, called the Poort, through a long range of hills running east and west, and extending each way beyond the limitation of sight. The approach to the chasm was one of the most beautiful things imaginable. For the space of three or four miles, on the northern side, the road serpented through a tall shrubbery diversified with the choicest plants of Southern Africa. Among these were now in the height of their blossoms a great variety of the *crassula*, a beautiful scarlet *cotelydon*, many species of the *aloe*, some throwing out their clusters of flowers across the road, and others rising above the rest in spikes of blood-red blossoms not less than fifteen feet in height, African *briony* clasping every bush with its vine-like leaves, and a beautiful plant resembling the jessamine, whose clusters of white flowers scented the whole country. The road through the shrubbery was composed of a smooth, yellowish, sandy earth without a stone, and had in no part the length of a hundred yards in a straight line. The *Riet berg*, or Reed mountain, in the back ground, blushed to the very summit with a wood of tall smooth-stemmed aloes bearing spikes of pink-colored flowers.

Having passed the kloof, or poort, we crossed a plain of six or seven miles in width, and encamped on the *Wolga fonteyn* at the feet of another range of hills parallel to the Riet berg, and more thickly covered with frutescent plants. Here we started
a herd

a herd of fourteen buffaloes that had been rolling in the spring. They were very shy, and scampered away at a great rate into the thicket that covered the sides of the hills. For three days' journey from this place the road lay over a surface of country finely marked with bold hills, plains, gradual swells, and hollows; but the whole was entirely covered with a forest of shrubbery. Sometimes for the distance of ten or twelve miles there was not the least opening that made it possible to turn a yard out of the path either to the right or to the left; and from the heights, where the bushes were less tall, the eye could discern only an uninterrupted forest. Nothing could be more beautiful nor more interesting than this grand and extensive shrubbery appeared to be for the greatest part of the first day's journey; but the inconvenience it occasioned towards the evening, when we wished to halt, was seriously felt. There was no space sufficient for the tent and waggons, or to make fast the oxen; and, what was the worst of all, not a drop of water. The weather had been very sultry, the thermometer fluctuating generally from 75° to 80° in the shade during the day; yet the cattle had tasted water once only in three days. The two nights they were unyoked it was necessary to bind them fast to the waggons, that they might not stray into the thicket, where they would infallibly have been lost, or devoured by lions. The prints of the feet of this destructive animal were every where fresh on the road, and every night we heard them roaring around us. Besides these were heard the cries of a multitude of ferocious beasts that nightly prowl the woods in quest of prey. The roaring of lions, the bellowing of buffaloes, the howling of wolves, the yelping of jackals, and the timid looing

of our oxen, were parts in the nocturnal concert that could not be said to produce much harmony to us who were encamped in the midst of a forest of which we could discern no end.

On the slope of a hill, towards the southern verge of the forest, I distinguished among the clumps of frutescent plants several flowers of a *Strelitzia*, which I took for granted to be the *reginæ*, but on a nearer approach it turned out to be a new species differing remarkably in the foliage from the two already known. Instead of the broad plantain-like leaves of these, those of the new species were round, a little compressed, half an inch in diameter at the base, tapering to a point at the top, and from six to ten feet high: the flowers appeared to be the same as those of the *reginæ*, the colors perhaps a little deeper, particularly that of the nectarium, which was of a beautiful violet blue. I procured half a dozen roots, which are now growing, and likely to do well, in the botanic garden at the Cape. A beautiful plant of the palm tribe was growing near the *Strelitzia*, from the pith of which the Hottentots were said to make a kind of bread. It was a species of *zamia*, apparently a variety of the *cycadis* described by Mr. Masson. The leaves were of a glaucous color and lanceolate; the leaflets nearest the base pointed with one, those about the middle with two, and those at the extremities with three, strong spines.

On the evening of the seventeenth we encamped on the verdant bank of a beautiful lake in the midst of a wood of frutescent plants. It was of an oval form, about three miles in circumference. On the western side was a shelving bank of green turf,

turf, and round the other parts of the basin the ground, rising more abruptly, and to a greater height, was covered thickly with the same kind of arboreous and succulent plants as had been observed to grow most commonly in the thickets of the adjoining country. The water was perfectly clear, but salt as brine. It was one of those salt-water lakes which abound in Southern Africa, where they are called *zout pans* by the colonists. This it seems is the most famous in the country, and is resorted to by the inhabitants from very distant parts of the colony, for the purpose of procuring salt for their own consumption or for sale. It is situated on a plain of considerable elevation above the level of the sea. The greatest part of the bottom of the lake was covered with one continued body of salt like a sheet of ice, the crystals of which were so united that it formed a solid mass as hard as rock. The margin or shore of the basin was like the sandy beach of the sea coast, with sandstone and quartz pebbles thinly scattered over it, some red, some purple, and others grey. Beyond the narrow belt of sand the sheet of salt commenced with a thin porous crust, increasing in thickness and solidity as it advanced towards the middle of the lake. The salt that is taken out for use is generally broken up with picks where it is about four or five inches thick, which is at no great distance from the margin of the lake. The thickness in the middle is not known, a quantity of water generally remaining in that part. The dry south-easterly winds of summer agitating the water of the lake produce on the margin a fine, light, powdery salt, like flakes of snow. This is equally beautiful as the refined salt of England, and is much sought after by the women, who always commission

their husbands to bring home a quantity of snowy salt for the table.

In endeavouring to account for the great accumulation of pure chrystallized salt at the bottom of this lake, I should have conceived the following explanation sufficiently satisfactory, had not some local circumstances seemed to militate strongly against it. The water of the sea on the coast of Africa contains a very high proportion of salt. During the strong south-east winds of summer, the spray of the sea is carried to a very considerable extent into the country in the shape of a thick mist. The powerful and combined effects of the dry wind and the sun carry on a rapid evaporation of the aqueous part of the mist, and of course a disengagement of the saline particles: these, in their fall, are received on the ground or on the foliage of the shrubbery. When the rains commence they are again taken up in solution and carried into the salt pan, towards which the country on every side inclines. The quantity of salt thus separated from the sea, and borne upon the land, is much more considerable than at first thought it might seem to be. At the distance of several miles from the sea-coast, the air, in walking against the wind, is perceptibly saline to the lips. It leaves a damp feel upon the clothes, and gives to them also a saline taste. The ostrich feather I wore in my hat always hung in separate threads when near the sea-coast in a south-east wind, and recovered itself immediately when the wind shifted. In short, the air becomes so much obscured with the saline particles that objects can only be distinguished through it at very short distances. These winds prevailing for seven or eight months

months in the year, the mind can easily conceive that, in the lapse of ages, the quantity of salt carried upon the surrounding country, and wafted annually from thence into the common reservoir, might have accumulated to the present bulk.

Were this, however, actually the case, it would naturally follow that all the reservoirs of water in the proximity of this sea-coast should contain, more or less, a portion of salt. Most of them in fact do so. Between the one in question and the sea, a distance of six miles, there are three other salt lakes, two of which are on a plain within a mile of the strand. None of these, however, deposit a body of salt except in very dry summers when the greatest part of the water is evaporated. One is called the Red Salt pan, the crystals of salt produced in it being always tinged of a ruby color with iron. This lake is about twice the size of that above described. All these should seem to favor the supposition of the salt being brought from the sea, were it not that close to the side of the lake that produces the greatest quantity is a stagnant pool or *valley*, the water of which is perfectly fresh. Another strong argument against the hypothesis above assumed is the circumstance of our having discovered, on a future journey, several salt pans of the same kind behind the Snowy mountains, at the distance of two hundred miles from the sea-coast, and on an elevation that could not be less than five or six thousand feet. The soil too on all sides of the Zwart Kop's salt pan was deep vegetable earth, in some places red and in others black, resting upon a bed of clay, and without having the smallest vestige of salt in its composition. That salt in a soil was inimical to and destructive of vegetation

was

was well known to the ancients. In the metaphorical manner of the eastern nations in treating things as well as ideas, it was usually ordained, after the destruction of a city, to "throw salt" upon it that nothing afterwards might grow there." The shrubbery, however, upon the banks of this salt lake was beautifully luxuriant to the very water's edge.

A cause, then, less remote remains to be adopted. Either salt-water springs must exist towards the center of the lake, or the water that rests in it must come in contact with a stratum of sal gem or rock salt. This in fact seems to be the only satisfactory way of accounting for the saltiness of the sea; and if the subterranean strata of this substance be among the number of those that are most commonly met with in the bowels of the earth, as has been supposed, the effects that exist may easily be conceived to arise from it. The salt of Poland alone would be more than sufficient to salify the Northern Atlantic.

We happened to visit the lake at a very unfavorable season, when it was full of water. About the middle it was three feet deep, but sufficiently clear to perceive several veins of a dark ferruginous color intersecting in various directions the sheet of salt. These were in all probability springs whose action had impeded chrySTALLIZATION, and brought up a quantity of ochraceous matter. I caused a hole four feet in depth to be dug in the sand close to the edge of the water. The two first feet were through sand like that of the sea-shore, in which were mingled small shining chrySTALS of salt. The third foot was considerably harder and more compact, and came up in flakes that required
some

some force to break, and the last foot was so solid that the spade would scarcely pierce it; and one-fifth part of the mass at least was pure salt in crystals. The water now gushed in perfectly clear and as salt as brine.

Another object of natural history was discovered about five miles north-west from the salt pan. This was on the side of a small hill down which ran a streamlet of chalybeate water from a spring situated about midway of the ascent. Immediately below the spring the stream ran through a chasm of five or six feet deep, in the midst of a mound of black boggy earth which seemed to have been vomited out of the spring. The mound was completely destitute of any kind of vegetation, and so light and tumefied that it would scarcely support the weight of a man. The water was clear, but the bottom of the channel was covered with a deep orange-colored sediment of a gelatinous consistence, void of smell or taste. In every part of the bog was oozing out a substance, in some places yellow, and in others green, which was austere to the taste like that of alum. When exposed to the flame of a candle it swelled out into a large hollow blister, of which the external part had become a red friable clay, and the interior surface was coated over with a black glassy pellicle. The smell given out was at first slightly sulphureous and afterwards bituminous. Great quantities of a dark, red, ocraceous earth was thrown out from the bog in small heaps like mole-hills. This when taken between the fingers became oily and adhesive, and the color brightened to that of vermilion. Both the red, the green, and the yellow substances, when boiled in water, deposited a smooth clayey sediment,

sediment, unctuous to the feel, tasteless and colorless. The water had imbibed a strong acid, and had dissolved part of the copper kettle in which it was boiled, as appeared by this metal being brought down on pieces of polished iron. The impregnated water changed the color of blue paper. The want of chemical tests prevented any farther experiments; but I imagine the substances were sulphuric acid in combination with clay forming alum, and the same acid in union with iron, composing green vitriol or copperas, which the mixture of bituminous or other heterogeneous matter had prevented from forming itself into regular crystals.

The water of the spring was of the same temperature as the surrounding atmosphere; but a farmer who was with us asserted positively that fifteen years ago, when last he was on the spot, the water was thrown out warm to a considerable degree. His assertion, however, was liable to some doubt. Periodical hot springs are phenomena in nature not frequently, if ever, met with. It is possible that a portion of unsaturated sulphuric acid coming in its disengaged state in contact with the water might occasionally raise its temperature. The information of the peasantry on any subject, and in all countries, should be received with a degree of caution. Those of Africa, I have generally observed, are much disposed to the marvellous. Before I ascended the hill in question I was told that the suffocating smell of sulphur constantly given out was scarcely to be supported, and that there was always a prodigious smoke, both of which were palpable falsehoods.

We

We found encamped on the borders of the salt-water lake a farmer and his whole family, consisting of sons and daughters, and grandchildren; of oxen, cows, sheep, goats, and dogs. He was moving to a new habitation; and, in addition to his live-stock, carried with him his whole property in two waggons. He advised us to make fast our oxen to the waggons, as two of his horses had been devoured on the preceding night by lions. This powerful and treacherous animal is very common in the thickets about the salt pan; treacherous, because it seldom makes an open attack, but, like the rest of the feline genus, lies in ambush till it can conveniently spring upon its prey. Happy for the peasantry, the Hottentots, and those animals that are the objects of its destruction, were its noble and generous nature, that so oft has fired the imagination of poets, realized, and that his royal paw disdained to stain itself in the blood of any sleeping creature. The lion, in fact, is one of the most indolent of all the beasts of prey, and never gives himself the trouble of a pursuit unless hard pressed with hunger. On our arrival at a farm-house on the banks of the Zwart-kop's river, a lion had just been shot by a trap-gun; and shortly after one of the Hottentots had brought down a large male buffalo. This animal (the *bos caffer* of the *Systema Naturæ*) is the strongest and the fiercest of the bovine genus. Nature seems to have designed him as a model for producing extraordinary powers. The horns at the base are each twelve or thirteen inches broad, and are separated only by a narrow channel, which fills up with age, and gives to the animal a forehead completely covered with a rugged mass of horn as hard as rock. From the base they diverge backwards, and are incurved towards the points, which

are generally distant from each other about three feet. About the height of a common-sized ox, the African buffalo is at least twice its bulk. The fibres of its muscles are like so many bundles of cords, and they are covered with a hide little inferior in strength and thickness to that of the rhinoceros. It is preferred by the peasantry to the skin of all other animals for cutting into thongs to be used as traces and harness for their carts and waggons. The flesh is too coarse-grained to be good; yet the farmers generally salt it up as food for their Hottentots. It is curious enough that the teeth of this species of buffalo should at all times be so perfectly loose in the sockets as to rattle and shake in its head.

The lion frequently measures his strength with the buffalo, and always gains the advantage. This, however, he is said to accomplish by stratagem, being afraid to attack him on the open plain. He lies waiting in ambush till a convenient opportunity offers for springing upon the buffalo, and fixing his fangs in his throat; then striking his paw into the animal's face, he twists round the head and pins him to the ground by the horns, holding him in that situation till he expires from loss of blood. Such a battle would furnish a grand subject for the powers of a masterly pencil.

If the Dutch have been too indolent to domesticate the quacha and the zebra, it is less a matter of astonishment that no attempts have been made on the fierce and powerful buffalo. Any other nation, possessing the Cape for one hundred and fifty years, would certainly have effected it. A male, if taken very
young,

young, and suffered to run among the cattle, would in all probability have intercourse with the cows ; at least the other species of the bovine tribe, when domesticated, have been found to mix together without any difficulty. Such a connection would produce a change in the present breed of cattle in the colony, and without doubt for the better : a worse it could not well be than the common long-legged ox of the country.

On the evening of the eighteenth we arrived at *Zwart-kop's*, or *Algoa bay*, and found His Majesty's brig, the *Hope*, riding at anchor there. This bay is open to every point of the compass from north-east to south-east, and of course affords no kind of shelter against the prevailing winds. The bottom, however, is generally fine sand and good holding-ground. Ships may anchor in five fathoms at the distance of a mile from the general landing-place, which is on the west side of the bay ; but vessels of great burden should keep farther out on account of the very heavy swell that almost perpetually rolls in from the eastward. The latitude of the landing-place is $33^{\circ} 56'$ south, and longitude $26^{\circ} 53'$ east of Greenwich ; and the distance from the Cape, in a direct line, 500 English miles. The time of high-water, at full and change of the moon, appears to be about three o'clock, and the tide rises between six and seven feet. The extent of the bay, from the western point to the eastern extremity, where it rounds off into the general pending of the coast, is about twenty miles ; and the shore, except from the landing-place to the west point, is a fine, smooth, sandy beach. The rivers that fall into the bay are the *Zwart-kop's*, the *Kooka*, and the *Sunday*. The mouth of each of these rivers is closed up

by a bar of sand, which occasionally breaks down as the mass of water in the river becomes too heavy for the mound of sand to support it; and the first south-east wind again blocks it up, carrying at the same time a quantity of salt water into the river. Close to the landing-place, however, there is a copious spring of excellent water at the extremity of a narrow slip of ground, hemmed in between a ridge of sand-hills on one side, and by a sudden rise of the country on the other. This slip is about four thousand feet long by five hundred in width. It is composed of excellent soil, has a gentle slope to the shore of the bay, and is the prettiest situation for a small fishing village that could possibly be imagined.

Zwart-kop's bay, indeed, seems to hold out very considerable advantages in the fishing trade. The bay swarms with the black whale, and abounds with every sort of excellent fish that frequent the coast of Southern Africa; and the salt pan would furnish an inconsumable quantity of strong bay salt ready prepared for use. More solid advantages might still be derived to the trading part of the nation, and to the East-India Company in particular, were an establishment formed at this place for the preparation of salted beef and fish. The bad quality of the Cape beef has been accounted for in the preceding Chapter. The cattle in this part of the country, from the Snowy mountains to the sea-coast, are generally in good condition; and the beef that is killed here takes salt and keeps just as well as in Europe. If the butchers at the Cape can afford to contract for supplying the army with beef at two-pence a-pound, after having brought the cattle five, six, and seven hundred miles at their
own

own expence, and at the loss of almost half the weight of the animals, it may easily be conceived at how very cheap a rate vessels bound on long voyages might be victualled at Swartkop's bay : or, if the meat here prepared should be transported to the Cape in coasting vessels, it might be afforded there considerably under sixpence a-pound. The surrounding country is very fertile ; and corn in almost any quantity might be purchased at the bay for less than three shillings a bushel. Hides and skins might also be salted and become an article of export. Those of the wild antelopes, even with the rough dressing of the uninformed peasantry, make very fine leather. For strength and durability the skins of wild animals are much preferable to those that have been domesticated.

At the distance of fifteen miles to the westward of the bay, and close to the sea-shore, many thousand acres of ground are covered completely with forest-trees of various kinds and dimensions : the most common was the *geel hout* or yellow wood, (*taxus elongatus*) erroneously called by Thunberg the *ilex crocea*. These trees grow to the amazing size of ten feet in diameter, and to the height of thirty or forty feet of trunk, clear of branches. The wood is very serviceable for many purposes, but will not bear exposure to weather. Next to the yellow wood is the *zyser hout*, iron-wood, (a *sideroxylon*,) growing to the size of three feet in diameter, and very high. The wood of this tree is close-grained, ponderous, and very hard. *Hassagai hout* (the *curtesia faginea* of the *Hortus Kewensis*) is a beautiful tree growing to the size of the iron-wood, and is used for naves, fellies, and spokes of waggon-wheels, and most implements of husbandry.

husbandry. The grain of this wood is somewhat closer and the color darker than those of plain mahogany. *Stink hout*, or stinking wood, takes its name from an offensive excrementitious odor that exhales while green, and which it retains till perfectly seasoned. It grows almost to the size of the *geel hout*, and is by many degrees the best wood in the colony. The grain and shading are not unlike those of walnut; and many specimens from old trees make exceeding beautiful furniture. It appears to be well calculated for use in ship-building, either as knees, timbers, or plank. The stink hout is the native oak of Africa, and I believe the only species found upon that continent. It may therefore not improperly be called the *Quercus Africana*. Several other timber-trees of vast size were growing here, and afterwards met with in various parts of the colony, particularly along the southern coast, to the number of more than forty different kinds, a list of which will be given in a future Chapter; yet in Cape Town there is a general complaint of want of wood; and the extravagant demand of six hundred *per cent.* profit has been made there for European deals.

In addition to the forest-trees were met with a great variety of small woods for poles; and the whole coast, for more than a day's journey to the westward of Zwart-kop's bay, was covered with thick brushwood almost down to the water's edge. The greatest part of the forests of Africa is encumbered with a species of *lichen* that covers nearly the whole foliage, and hangs from the branches in tufts of a foot to three feet in length. This lichen was observed particularly to be growing upon the *geel hout*, and evidently impeded the growth of its branches.

In

In the midst of all these forests the miserable hovels in which the graziers live are the pictures of want and wretchedness. Four low mud-walls, with a couple of square holes to admit the light, and a door of wicker-work, a few crooked poles to support a thatch of rushes, slovenly spread over them, serves for the dwelling of many a peasant whose stock consists of several thousand sheep and as many hundred heads of cattle. The oxen in this particular pasture are not so large nor fat as those farther up in the country, nor were the sheep nearly so good as those of Camdeboo. One principal article of their revenue is butter. An African cow, either from its being a degenerated breed, or from the nature of its food, or the effects of the climate, or perhaps from a combination of these, gives a very small quantity of poor milk. Four quarts a-day is considered as something extraordinary, and about half the quantity is the usual average of a cow at the very top of her milk. The butter is sometimes very good; but the manner of plunging the whole milk into the churn without suffering it to stand and cast the cream, is generally against its being so; nor is the least cleanliness observed in the management of the dairy.

The country about Zwart-kop's bay seems best adapted for the cultivation of grain. The farmers give themselves at this place no trouble to manure the land, yet reckon upon a return of twenty-five, thirty, and even forty, for one, especially if a stream of water can occasionally be turned upon the ground. In stiff clayey ground a small quantity of sheep's dung is sometimes employed to prevent the fragments from clodding together, and to make their parts less tenacious. How little they
esteem

esteem manure is very evident from the heaps of dung piled up about the houses in those places where the cattle, in order to preserve them from beasts of prey, are pent up at nights. These are circular or square spaces, shut in by dead branches of the thorny mimosa, and are called *kraals*, a name which they have also thought proper to transfer to the collected huts of the Hotentots or Kaffers. The beds of some of these kraals were twelve feet deep of dung, unmixed with any other material; and this is not the only nor the least offensive nuisance with which the hovel of a Dutch peasant is usually surrounded.

The great fertility of the land in this part of the colony can be no inducement for the farmers to extend the cultivation of grain beyond the present limited quantity, as they can have no demand for their produce unless a coasting trade should be established. They would be very glad to find a market for their grain at a contract price of two shillings and eight-pence for a Winchester bushel delivered at Zwart-kop's bay. The wheat of the Cape is a large full grain, weighing usually from sixty-one to sixty-five pounds a bushel. Since the capture of the Cape a small cargo was sent to Europe which sold in Mark-lane market at a higher price than the best English wheat that appeared on the same day.

The valley through which the Zwart-kop's river meanders in its course to the bay, is a fertile tract of country, the greatest part of it capable of being laid under water. It is twenty miles in length and between two and three in width. The hills, that on each side rise with an easy slope, exhibit an unbroken forest
of

of evergreen plants holding a middle rank, in point of size, between shrubs and trees. The tree *crassula*, several species of the *aloe*, the *euphorbia*, and other succulent plants, were also mixed with the shrubbery. The whole valley is divided between four families, each having not less than five thousand acres of land independent of the enclosing hills covered with wood. Yet not satisfied with this enormous quantity, they have made several attempts to burn down the forest, that the cattle might more conveniently come at the hefts of sweet grass that abound within it. Hitherto all their endeavours have proved fruitless. The moment that the succulent plants, particularly the great *aloes* and *euphorbia*, became heated, the expanded air within them burst open the stems, and their juices, rushing out in streams, extinguished the fire.

In one part of the valley was a morass of considerable extent, that by one single drain might be converted into a very beautiful meadow. The vast numbers of the Egyptian and the Mountain goose, of teals, and several species of ducks, that harboured in the reeds by which the swamp was covered, were beyond credibility, and the damage they did to the corn was very considerable. I have seen a field literally covered with them; and they were too bold to be driven away by shooting at them. The buffaloes also descend from the thickets at night, and commit great depredations among the corn. These, however, are much more easily chased away than the geese, and retire at the report of a musquet.

The swamp concealed also a species of antelope, or goat, called the *riet-bok*, or red goat, which does not appear yet to have been described by naturalists. In color and size the male approaches nearly to the *leucophæa* or blue antelope. Its horns are from nine inches to a foot in length, diverge a little towards the points which are bent forwards, and are annulated about one-fourth of the length from the base. A crest of short hair runs from the throat to the chest, which circumstance may probably assign it a place in the goat genus. The distinction seems to be arbitrary and not drawn by nature. This is a very rare animal, and scarcely known in most parts of the colony. Another species of antelope was here very plentiful, known by the Hottentot name of *orabie*, which, except in color and size, being of a darker brown and a little larger, bore a considerable resemblance to the steenbok: it was marked down the face with two yellow lines. Here also we met with that beautiful little animal the *royal antelope* of Pennant, and the *pygmæa* of the *Systema Naturæ*. Except the pigmy musk-deer, the royal antelope is the smallest of the hoofed quadrupeds: the height is from nine to twelve inches: the sides of a light brown passing into an ash-colored blue on the back: the horns are about an inch and half long, erect and parallel, black, polished, and shining like marble: its habits are mild and innocent. The *boschbok* or wood-deer, the *antelope sylvatica*, with its white-spotted haunches, was common amongst the brushwood; and the griesbok, the steenbok, and the duiker, were very plentiful upon the plains.

OF

Of birds, besides the ducks and geese already noticed, were great variety of water-fowl, such as flamingos, pelicans, and several species of cranes. Partridges, pheasants, and bustards were also very plentiful. The bird called in the Cape a pheasant is in fact a *tetrao* or grouse, with remarkably strong spurs on the legs, and two spurious ones just below the knee-joint. Besides the two species of bustards known in the colony by the name of *korbaans*, at this place was a third which appeared to be by much the finest bird in Southern Africa, and which, though sufficiently common, has not yet been described in the *Systema Naturæ*. It is called here the *wilde pauw*, or wild peacock, a name common with another large and elegant bird, the *ardea pavonina* or balearic crane. The bird in question is an *otis*, and is nearly as large as the Norfolk bustard. The feathers of the neck are long, very thick, and loose, like those of a domestic fowl, of a bright chestnut-color on the upper part, and an ash-colored blue under the throat and on the breast. The feathers of the back beautifully undulated with black and brown lines, the belly white; the tail-feathers from sixteen to twenty in number, marked across with alternate bars of black and white; the spread of the wings seven feet, and the whole length of the bird three feet and an half. It is generally met with in the neighbourhood of farm-houses; and to all appearance might very easily be domesticated: the flesh is exceeding good with a high flavor of game. In the vicinity of the woods we saw a great number of the *falco serpentarius*, ridiculously enough called the secretary bird, from the long feathers of its crest being supposed to resemble the pens that it was the custom for merchants' clerks to stick in the hair. The *serpentarius* is the

avowed enemy of snakes, on which account he is considered, both by the Colonists and the Hottentots, as a sacred bird. Of the several kinds of snakes that they here enumerate, one only was considered as innoxious; this was the *boom slange* or tree-snake, so called from its being generally found coiled round the branches of trees; it is from six to ten feet in length, very thick, and of a dark steel-blue color approaching nearly to black. It is said to take its abode in trees for the sake of procuring its food with the greater convenience, which in general consists of the smaller kinds of birds. The fascinating power ascribed to certain snakes of drawing animals within their reach by fixing their eyes upon them, or by some other means, has often been remarked and as often disbelieved. When a fact is mentioned of so extraordinary a nature that the generality of mankind could not have observed it, individual testimony is not always of sufficient force to establish general belief. In the southern part of Africa, where snakes are every where met with in great abundance, the fact with regard to their fascinating power over birds is so well known that very few of the peasantry will hesitate to vouch for the truth of it from personal observation; but I have never heard it supposed here that the influence of the charm was extended to the human species, as has been asserted, seemingly on good authorities, to be the case in parts of Asia and North America. The most formidable species of this venomous tribe of animals in the colony of the Cape is the hooded snake, which they call the cobra capella. The Hottentots are acquainted with several vegetable antidotes against the poison of serpents; but the most approved remedy among the Dutch is the *slange steen* or snake-stone, which they hold to be infallible.

This

This is nothing more than a piece of firm bone of some animal made into an oval shape and burnt round the edges so as to leave a whitish spot in the middle. The country-people, who purchase this remedy under the idea of its being a stone taken out of the head of a certain species of serpent, were very much astonished on being told that it was only a piece of bone; and the more so on finding that this substance stood their test of the goodness of the *flange steen*, which was that of throwing out bubbles on the surface when immersed in water. To the porosity of the bone may be ascribed its healing qualities, if it actually possesses any; for which reason any other substance made up of capillary tubes, as common sponge for instance, might produce the same effect.

About twenty miles to the westward of Zwart-kop's bay commences another wide, open, unsheltered indent in the coast called Camtoos bay, into which fall the Krommé river, the Camtoos river, Van Staaden's river, and several other inferior streams. At the mouth of the Krommé river two or three ships may ride at anchor in tolerable good shelter from most winds except the south-east. The country that surrounds this large bay is covered with thick brushwood, and in places with clumps of forest-trees. Near the mouth of Van Staaden's river we found, in the steep sides of a deep glen, several specimens of a lead ore. It was of that species known by the name of galena, which is lead mineralized with sulphur. The masses had no appearance of cubic chrySTALLIZATION, but were granular and amorphous in some specimens, and the surfaces in others were made up of small facets. This sort of galena is sometimes called

called by miners *white silver ore*, on account of the large proportion it has been found to contain of that metal. It is well known that all galenas contain more or less of silver; and it has been observed that those whose configuration is least distinct have the greatest proportion, the heterogeneous metal having disturbed and obstructed the natural arrangement of the particles, which would be that of a mathematical cube if perfectly pure. The vein of the ore was about three inches wide and an inch thick, and it appeared to increase both in width and thickness as it advanced under the stratum of rock with which it was covered. The *gangue* or *matrix* was quartzose sand-stone of a yellowish tinge, cellular and fibrous, harsh to the feel, and easily broken.

Some experiments were formerly made, in a rough way, at the Cape of Good Hope, upon specimens of this identical vein of lead-ore, by Major Van Dhen, an officer in the Dutch service, and the result of these proved it to be uncommonly rich in silver. According to this gentleman's statement of the assay, two hundred pounds of the ore contained one hundred pounds of pure lead and eight ounces of silver. Should this on a more accurate trial turn out to be the case, it may hereafter prove a valuable acquisition to the colony. Lead mines, it is true, are generally very deep below the surface of the ground, and the working of them is both troublesome and expensive. But at this place a vein of rich ore, shewing itself at the surface, gives reasonable grounds for presuming that the large body of the mine is at no great depth, and if so it might be worked with great advantage. The surrounding country is particularly favor-

favorable for the prosecution of such an undertaking. Wood is in such abundance both for building and for fuel, that it could not be exhausted in an age. Two streams of water unite in the bottom of the glen. The country would support with cattle and corn any number of people that might be required to carry on the works; and the distance of the mine is only five miles from the mouth of Van Staaden's river in Camtoos bay.

Having finished our observations on Zwart-kop's bay and the adjoining country, the next step was to make the best of our way to the eastward along the sea-coast where the Kaffers were said to have stationed themselves in the greatest numbers. An old Hottentot, who on former occasions had served as interpreter between the landrosts of Graaff Reynet and the Kaffer Chiefs, had, according to appointment, joined us with his suite, consisting of about half a dozen of his countrymen. The landroft, on his joining us, invested him with his staff of office, a long stick with a brass head on which was engraven the king's arms. By such a staff, in the time of the Dutch government, a Hottentot was constituted a captain; and, by the number they created of these captains, the ruin of their hordes was much facilitated. But they are now no more; they and their hordes have entirely disappeared, and our old *Captain Haasbeck* commands in Graaff Reynet without a rival.

Twenty years ago, if we may credit the travellers of that day, the country beyond Camtoos river, which was then the eastern limit of the colony, abounded with kraals or villages of Hottentots, out of which the inhabitants came to meet them by
hundreds

hundreds in a groupe. Some of these villages might still have been expected to remain in this remote and not very populous part of the colony. Not one, however, was to be found. There is not in the whole extensive district of Graaff Reynet a single horde of independent Hottentots; and perhaps not a score of individuals who are not actually in the service of the Dutch.

These weak people, the most helpless, and in their present condition perhaps the most wretched, of the human race, duped out of their possessions, their country, and finally out of their liberty, have entailed upon their miserable offspring a state of existence to which that of slavery might bear the comparison of happiness. It is a condition, however, not likely to continue to a very remote posterity. The name of Hottentot will be forgotten or remembered only as that of a deceased person of little note. Their numbers of late years have rapidly declined. It has generally been observed that wherever Europeans have colonized, the less civilized natives have always dwindled away, and at length totally disappeared. Various causes have contributed to the depopulation of the Hottentots. The impolitic custom of hording together in families, and of not marrying out of their own kraals, has no doubt tended to enervate this race of men, and reduced them to their present degenerated condition, which is that of a languid, listless, phlegmatic people, in whom the prolific powers of nature seem to be almost exhausted. To this may be added their extreme poverty, scantiness of food, and continual dejection of mind, arising from the cruel treatment they receive from an inhuman and unfeeling peasantry, who having discovered themselves to be removed to too great a distance from the seat
of

of their former government to be awed by its authority, have exercised, in the most wanton and barbarous manner, an absolute power over these poor wretches reduced to the necessity of depending upon them for a morsel of bread. There is scarcely an instance of cruelty said to have been committed against the slaves in the West-India islands, that could not find a parallel from the Dutch farmers of the remote parts of the colony towards the Hottentots in their service. Beating and cutting them with thongs of the hide of the sea-cow or rhinoceros, is a gentle punishment, though these sort of whips which they call *shambos* are most horrid instruments, tough, pliant, and heavy almost as lead. Firing small shot into the legs and thighs of a Hottentot is a punishment not unknown to some of the monsters who inhabit the neighbourhood of Camtoos river. Instant death is not unfrequently the consequence of punishing these poor wretches in a moment of rage. This is of little consequence to the farmer; for though they are to all intents and purposes his slaves, yet they are not transferable property. It is this circumstance which, in his mind, makes their lives less valuable and their treatment more inhuman.

In offences of too small moment to stir up the phlegm of a Dutch peasant, the coolness and tranquillity displayed at the punishment of his slave or Hottentot is highly ridiculous, and at the same time indicative of a savage disposition to unfeeling cruelty lurking in his heart. He flogs them, not by any given number of lashes, but by time; and as they have no clocks nor substitutes for them capable of marking the smaller divisions of time, he has invented an excuse for the indulgence of

one of his most favorite sensualities, by flogging them till he has smoked as many pipes of tobacco as he may judge the magnitude of the crime to deserve. The government of Malacca, according to the manuscript journal of an intelligent officer in the expedition against that settlement, has adopted the same custom of *flogging by pipes*; and the fiscal or chief magistrate, or some of his deputies, are the smokers on such occasions.

By a resolution of the old government, as unjust as it was inhuman, a peasant was allowed to claim as his property, till the age of five-and-twenty, all the children of the Hottentots in his service to whom he had given in their infancy a morsel of meat. At the expiration of this period the odds are ten to one that the slave is not emancipated. A Hottentot knows nothing of his age; "he takes no note of time." And though the spirit that dictated this humane law expanded its beneficence in favor of the Hottentot by directing the farmer to register the birth of such children as he may intend to make his slaves, yet it seldom happens, removed as many of them are to the distance of ten or twelve days' journey from the Drosdy, that the Hottentot has an opportunity of inquiring when his servitude will expire; and indeed it is a chance if he thinks upon or even knows the existence of such a resource. Should he be fortunate enough to escape at the end of the period, the best part of his life has been spent in a profitless servitude, and he is turned adrift in the decline of life (for a Hottentot begins to grow old at thirty) without any earthly thing he can call his own, except the sheep's skin upon his back.

The

The condition of those who engage themselves from year to year is little better than that of the other. If they have already families, they erect for them little straw-huts near the farmhouse. Their children are encouraged to run about the house of the peasant, where they receive their morsel of food. This is deemed sufficient to establish their claim to the young Hottentots; and should the parents, at the end of the term for which they engaged, express a desire to quit the service, the farmer will suffer them to go, perhaps turn them away, and detain their children.

Those who are unmarried and free are somewhat better in their situation than the others, though not much. The pitiful wages they agree for are stopped upon every frivolous occasion. If an ox or a sheep be missing, the Hottentot must replace them; nor would he be suffered to quit his service till he has earned the value of them. An ox, or a couple of cows, or a dozen sheep, worth forty or fifty shillings, are the usual wages of a whole year; and it frequently happens that a bill for tobacco or brandy is brought against them to the full amount.

In such a situation, and under such circumstances, it may easily be supposed that the Hottentot has little inducement to engage in marriage. Those who do so have seldom more than two or three children; and many of the women are barren. This, however, is not the case when a Hottentot woman is connected with a white man. The fruit of such an alliance is not only in general numerous, but are beings of a very different nature from the Hottentot, men of six feet high and stout in

proportion, and women well made, not ill-featured, smart, and active. These people, called *bastaards*, generally marry with each other, or with persons of color, but seldom with Hottentots, so that it is probable this mixed breed in a short time will supplant that from which they are descended in the female line. The Hottentot girls in the service of the colonists are in situations too dependant to dare to reject the proffered embraces of the young peasantry.

It has frequently been observed that a savage who dances and sings must be happy. With him these operations are the effects of pleasurable sensations floating in his mind: in a civilized state, they are arts acquired by study, and practised at appointed times, without having any reference to the passions.

If dancing and singing were the tests by which the happiness of a Hottentot was to be tried, he would be found among the most miserable of all human beings; I mean those Hottentots living with the farmers of Graaff Reynet in a state of bondage.

It is rare to observe the muscles of his face relaxed into a smile. A depressed melancholy and deep gloom constantly overspreads his countenance. A Ghonaqua man and a young Hottentot girl from Sneeuwberg, both of them in the service of one of the farmers who crossed the desert with us, were the only two I had hitherto met with who seemed to have any taste for music. They had different instruments; one was a kind of guitar with three strings stretched over a piece of hollow wood with a long handle; it was called in their language *gabowie*. The other instrument was extremely simple: It consisted of a piece of sinew or intestine twisted into a small cord, and fastened

to

to a hollow stick about three feet in length, at one end to a small peg, which, by turning, brings the string to the proper degree of tension, and at the other to a piece of quill fixed into the stick. The tones of this instrument are produced by applying the mouth to the quill, and are varied according as the vibratory motion is given to the quill and string by inspiration or expiration. It sounds like the faint murmurs of distant music that "comes o'er the ear" without any distinct note being made out by that organ. This instrument was called the *gowra*.

Of the very few Hottentots in the district of Graaff Reynet, who, besides our interpreter, had preserved a sort of independence, and supported themselves, partly by the chase, and partly from the labors of their children who were in servitude, was a small party of four or five old men who paid us a visit near the woods of *Bruyntjes Hoogté*. These men carried the ancient weapons of their nation, bows, and quivers charged with poisoned arrows. The bow was a plain piece of wood from the *guerrie bosch*, apparently a species of rhus; and sometimes the Haffagai wood is used for the same purpose. The string, three feet long, was composed of the fibres of the dorsal muscles of the springbok twisted into a cord. The stem of an aloe furnished the quiver. The arrow consisted of a reed, in one extremity of which was inserted a piece of highly-polished solid bone from the leg of an ostrich, round, and about five inches in length; the intent of it seemed to be that of giving weight, strength, and easy entrance to this part of the arrow. To the end of the bone was affixed a small sharp piece of iron of the form of an equilateral

equilateral triangle ; and the same string of sinews that bound this tight to the bone, served also to contain the poison between the threads and over the surface, which was applied in the consistence of wax or varnish. The string tied in also at the same time a piece of sharp quill pointed towards the opposite end of the arrow, which was not only meant to increase the difficulty of drawing it out, but also to rankle and tear the flesh, and to bring the poison more in contact with the blood. The whole length of the arrow was barely two feet. There are several plants in South Africa from which the Hottentots extract their poisons by macerating the leaves or branches, and inspissating the juices, either by boiling or by exposure to the heat of the sun ; but the poison taken from the heads of snakes, mixed with the juices of certain bulbous-rooted plants, is what they mostly depend upon. This party of old men had killed a hartebeest with a poisoned arrow by wounding it in the thigh. The animal had run about half an hour after receiving the wound before it fell. They immediately cut away the flesh round the wound, when it has been made with a poisoned arrow, and squeeze out the blood from the carcase, in which state they know from experience that the flesh taken into the stomach will do them no injury.

The ancient manners and primitive character of this extraordinary race of men are, no doubt, much changed since their connection with the colonists ; and the nearer they are found to the capital and the parts most inhabited by Europeans, the less they retain of them. If at any time they composed societies governed by laws, swayed by customs, and observant
of

of religious ceremonies, many of which, as related among the fables of ancient voyagers, and revived by some modern travellers, were so absurd and extremely ridiculous as to create strong doubts of their existence, they have now so completely lost them that no one trace remains behind. The name even that has been given to this people is a fabrication. *Hottentot* is a word that has no place nor meaning in their language; and they take to themselves the name under the idea of its being a Dutch word. When they were spread over the southern angle of Africa, each horde had its particular name; but that by which the whole nation was distinguished, and which at this moment they bear among themselves in every part of the country, is *Quaiqua*. From living together in particular clans, and, in later times, from mixing with different people, the Hottentots of one district differ very considerably from those of another. The part of the country we now were in, being the last that was colonized, was inhabited most probably by such as had retained more of their original character than the others; and it is those to whom the following remarks are meant to apply.

Low as they are sunk in the scale of humanity, their character seems to have been very much traduced and misrepresented. It is true there is nothing prepossessing in the appearance of a Hottentot, but infinitely less so in the many ridiculous and false relations by which the public have been abused. They are a mild, quiet, and timid people; perfectly harmless, honest, faithful; and, though extremely phlegmatic, they are kind and affectionate to each other, and not incapable of strong attachments. A Hottentot would share his last morsel with his companions.

panions. They have little of that kind of art or cunning that savages generally possess. If accused of crimes of which they have been guilty, they generally divulge the truth. They seldom quarrel among themselves or make use of provoking language. Though naturally of a fearful and cowardly disposition, they will run into the face of danger if led on by their superiors; and they suffer pain with great patience. They are by no means deficient in talent, but they possess little exertion to call it into action: the want of this was the principal cause of their ruin. The indolence of a Hottentot is a real disease, whose only remedy seems to be that of terror. Hunger is insufficient to effect the cure. Rather than to have the trouble of procuring food by the chase, or of digging the ground for roots, they will willingly fast the whole day provided they may be allowed to sleep. Instances frequently occurred in the course of our journies, when our Hottentots have passed the day without a morsel of food, in preference of having the trouble to walk half a mile for a sheep. Yet, though they are so exceedingly patient of hunger, they are at the same time the greatest gluttons upon the face of the earth. Ten of our Hottentots ate a middling-sized ox, all but the two hind legs, in three days; but they had very little sleep during the time, and had fasted the two preceding days. With them the word is to eat or to sleep. When they cannot indulge in the gratification of the one, they generally find immediate relief in flying to the other.

Their manner of eating marks the voracity of their appetite. Having cut from the animal a large steak, they enter one edge with

with the knife, and passing it round in a spiral manner till they come to the middle, they produce a string of meat two or three yards in length. The whole animal is presently cut into such strings; and while some are employed in this business, and in suspending them on the branches of the shrubbery, others are broiling the strings coiled round and laid upon the ashes. When the meat is just warmed through they grasp it in both hands, and applying one end of the string to the mouth, soon get through a yard of flesh. The ashes of the green wood that adhere to the meat serve as a substitute for salt. As soon as a string of meat has passed through their hands, they are cleaned by rubbing over different parts of their body. Grease thus applied from time to time, and accumulating perhaps for a whole year, sometimes melting by the side of a large fire and catching up dust and dirt, covers at length the surface of the body with a thick black coating that entirely conceals the real natural color of the skin. This is discoverable only on the face and hands, which they keep somewhat cleaner than the other parts of the body by rubbing them with the dung of cattle. This takes up the grease, upon which water would have no effect.

The dress of a Hottentot is very simple. It consists of a belt made of a thong cut from the skin of some animal. From this belt is suspended before a kind of case made out of the skin of the jackal. The shape is that of half a nine-pin cut longitudinally, and the convex and hairy side is outermost. The intention of this case is to receive those parts of the body for which most nations have adopted some sort of covering; but few,

who are not entirely naked, have hit upon a less effectual one for such a purpose than that of the Hottentot. If the real intent of it was the promotion of decency, it should seem that he has widely missed his aim, as it is certainly one of the most immodest objects, in such a situation as he places it, that could have been contrived. From the back part of the belt or girdle hangs a piece of stiff dried skin, reaching scarcely to the middle of the thigh, cut into the shape of an acute isosceles triangle with the point uppermost. Some wear a couple of such pieces. This contrivance is no better covering than the other; for when he walks quickly or musters up a running pace, it flies from one side to the other, and flaps backwards and forwards in such a manner as to conceal no particular part. This indeed does not seem to have been the purpose exactly for which it has been contrived. Nature having given to most animals a tail to fan themselves in hot weather and to lash away troublesome insects, and having left the Hottentot without one, he has adopted an artificial one to answer the same end. These constitute the whole of their summer dress. A great beau will probably fasten a bracelet of beads or a ring of copper round his wrist: but such are more properly ornaments belonging to the other sex.

The Hottentot women, fond of finery like those of most nations, by their immoderate rage for dress accelerated the ruin of their husbands, which they themselves had brought on by as strong a rage for ardent spirits and tobacco. These two articles and glass beads were exchanged for their cattle—things useless, worthless, and even pernicious, for what was their only support,

support, the soul of their existence. The thongs of dried skins that had encircled their legs from the ankle to the knee, as a protection against the bite of poisonous animals, were now despised and thrown away, and beads were substituted in their place. Thus what had been adopted as a matter of necessity and prudence passed into an affair of fashion. Their necks, arms, and legs were loaded with glass beads: but the largest and most splendid of these ornaments were bestowed upon the little apron, about seven or eight inches wide, that hangs from the waist and reaches barely to the middle of the thigh. Great pains seem to be taken by the women to attract notice towards this part of their persons. Large metal buttons, shells of the *cypræa* genus with the apertures outwards, or any thing that makes a great shew, are fastened to the borders of this apron. Those who either cannot afford to wear glass beads, or have no taste for the fashion, wear an apron of a different sort, which has a very odd appearance: it is the skin of an animal cut into threads that hang in a bunch between the thighs, reaching about half-way to the knee; the exterior and anterior parts of the thigh are entirely bare. The threads of such an apron are frequently too thin and few to answer the purpose of concealment. Instead of the tail worn by the men, the women have a sheep's skin that entirely covers the posterior part of the body from the waist to the calf of the leg, and just wide enough to strike the exterior part of the thigh. The rattling of this hard and dry skin announces the approach of a Hottentot lady long before she makes her appearance. The rest of the body is naked. Some, however, wear skin-caps on their heads made up into different shapes, and ornamented as caprice may direct.

In the winter months both sexes cover themselves with cloaks made of skins.

The custom of greasing the body and wrapping it in skins has been the constant theme of abuse against this race of people by those who have written on the subject. There are always two ways of representing things, and unfortunately for the poor Hottentot his character has been painted in the worst light. To cover the body with some unctuous matter in a hot climate where water was extremely scarce, was a very natural resource to prevent the skin from being shrivelled and parched by the scorching rays of the sun, and has been adopted by most nations situated in or near the torrid zone. The oil that ran so profusely down "Aaron's beard even to the skirts of his garment," was in all probability animal fat; for during the forty years that he and Moses occupied the Children of Israel in the desert with a promised land, it is not very likely they had a supply of vegetable oil; and though some late celebrated historical painters have clothed these leaders of the Children of Israel in high-colored garments trimmed with fringe and lace, it may be doubted if they had any other clothing than such as the skins of their sheep, and calves, and goats, supplied them with. If the practice of smearing the body with fat were adopted in South America, there would not probably be such numbers of objects in the streets of Rio de Janeiro laboring under that most disgusting and dreadful disorder the elephantiasis. The Hottentots know nothing of such a complaint; nor did I perceive that any kind of cutaneous disease was prevalent among them.

The

The person of a Hottentot while young is by no means void of symmetry. They are clean-limbed, well-proportioned, and erect. Their joints, hands, and feet are remarkably small. No protuberance of muscle to indicate strength; but a body delicately formed as that of a woman marks the inactive and effeminate mind of a Hottentot. The face is in general extremely ugly; but this differs very materially in different families, particularly in the nose, some of which are remarkably flat and others considerably raised. The color of the eye is a deep chestnut: they are very long and narrow, removed to a great distance from each other; and the eyelids at the extremity next the nose, instead of forming an angle, as in Europeans, are rounded into each other exactly like those of the Chinese, to whom indeed in many other points they bear a physical resemblance that is sufficiently striking. The cheek-bones are high and prominent, and with the narrow-pointed chin form nearly a triangle. Their teeth are beautifully white. The color of the skin is that of a yellowish brown or a faded leaf, but very different from the sickly hue of a person in the jaundice, which it has been described to resemble. The hair is of a very singular nature: it does not cover the whole surface of the scalp, but grows in small tufts at certain distances from each other, and, when kept short, has the appearance and feel of a hard shoe-brush, with this difference, that it is curled and twisted into small round lumps about the size of a marrowfat-pea. When suffered to grow, it hangs in the neck in hard twisted taffels like fringe.

Some of the women when young, and previous to child-bearing, might serve as models of perfection in the human figure.

figure. Every joint and limb is rounded and well turned, and their whole body is without an angle or disproportionate protuberance. Their breasts are round, firm, and distant; but the nipple is unusually large and surrounded by an areola that is much elevated above the general surface of the breast. Their hands and feet are remarkably small and delicately turned; and in their gait they are not altogether devoid of grace. Their charms, however, are very fleeting. At an early period of life, and immediately after the first child, their breasts begin to grow loose and flaccid, and, as old age approaches, become distended to an enormous size; the belly protrudes; and the posteriors, swelling out to incredible dimensions, give to the spine a degree of curvature inwards that makes it appear as if the *os coccygis*, or bone at the lower extremity of the spine, was elongated and bent outwards, which is not the case. The mass that covers the posteriors has been found to be pure fat. Some other striking peculiarities in the conformation of Hottentot women will be noticed when speaking of the Bosjesmans, who seem to be the true aborigines of the country, unmixed with any other tribes of people.

It does not appear that the Hottentots are subject to any particular diseases. Life, if not taken away by accident or violence, is generally terminated by a gradual decay and exhausted nature, which generally happens at an earlier period of existence here than in most countries of an equal temperature of climate. It is rare to see a Hottentot with sixty years upon his head; but it is also equally rare to see a cripple or deformed person among them. There are none who professedly practise the healing art; every one is his own physician. The colonists,

colonists, in this respect, are no better served than the Hottentots. In the whole district of Graaff Reynet there is but one apothecary, and his residence is at the Drosdy.

Medicine and astronomy are two sciences that may be supposed to have dated their origin from the first dawn of civilization; by one, men were taught to restore the vital functions that had lost their tone, and to repair the injured frame; by the other, they informed themselves of the different periods of seed-time and harvest. Little as the Hottentots are acquainted with the one, they are still less so with the other. They have a name for the sun, another for the moon, and a third for the stars: but this is the extent of their astronomical knowledge. The division of time, by the motion of the heavenly bodies, was too subtle an operation, and required too much observation and profound thinking, for the careless and inattentive mind of a Hottentot. The period of a day may almost be said to be the extent of his reckoning. When he has occasion to refer to the time of the day, like all other nations who are without machines for marking the divisions of time, he will point out the place in the heavens where the sun then was. The periods that have past he can express only by saying they were before or after some memorable event. The season of the year is indicated by being so many moons before or after *uyntjes tyd*, or the time that the roots of the *iris edulis* are in season; a time particularly noticed by him, as these bulbs once constituted a considerable part of his vegetable food. I know not how far the numerals in his language proceed, but none of those of our party could tell beyond *five*, nor could any of them put two numbers together

together but by the assistance of their fingers. Yet they are very far from being a stupid people. They learn the Dutch language with great facility. They are excellent marksmen with the gun : and they are uncommonly clever in finding out a passage over a desert uninhabited country. By the quickness of their eye they will discover deer and other sorts of game when very far distant ; and they are equally expert in watching a bee to its nest. They no sooner hear the humming of the insect than they squat themselves on the ground, and, having caught it with the eye, follow it to an incredible distance. The organ of sight, no doubt, is strengthened and improved by exercise. Seamen on board ships will discover objects at sea the moment they appear above the horizon, and long before they become visible to a passenger's eye.

Except in the preparation of poisons, making bows and arrows, musical instruments, coarse earthen ware, and sewing together the skins of sheep for their winter garments with sinews or the intestines of animals, the Hottentots may be said to be entirely ignorant of arts and manufactures. The great point in which their invention appears to have been exercised is in the construction of their language. Of all the methods that have been adopted in language by different nations for the purpose of expressing objects, and conveying ideas in a clear and unequivocal manner, that which has been hit upon by the Hottentots is certainly the most extraordinary. Almost all their monosyllables, and the leading syllable of compound words, are thrown out of the mouth with a sudden retraction of the tongue from the teeth or the palate against one of which
it

it had been pressed, according to the signification of the word about to be uttered; for the same sound, with the dental, will have a very different meaning with the palatal retraction of the tongue. The noise made by the dental is exactly that which is sometimes used to express impatience, and the palatal is much more full and sonorous, and not unlike the clacking of a hen that has young chickens. This sound is never made to precede or to follow a syllable, but is thrown out at the same time, and incorporated with it. All languages in their infancy consisted probably of simple or monosyllabic sounds; but as these could convey only a very limited number of ideas, recourse was had to inflexion of voice and composition of the simple sounds to make the vocabulary more copious. The division of such simple sounds into their elements, and by the various combinations of these elements to form an almost unlimited number of new sounds, was one of the most wonderful inventions in the history of man, and much beyond the genius of a Hottentot. He has done, however, all that he found to be necessary by a very few compound words, and by the clacking with the tongue. In the first formation of his language, nature seems to have been his guide. The croaking of a frog is readily recognized in *kraak* or *kraaie*; the lowing of an ox in *'mnoo*; the mewling of a cat in *meau*; the neighing of a horse in *babæ*; the breaking of the sea upon the shore in *burroo*; all of which are correspondent words in the language of this people. Many instances, besides these, sufficiently prove that the vocables were adopted in imitation of the sounds proceeding from the different objects they were meant to express. In the origin they might probably be much closer imitations. The

enunciation of sounds is liable to undergo many alterations in passing from one generation to another, even among nations that have the means of catching the nice inflexions of voice, and of handing them down, in a visible form, to posterity.

The genius of a language is generally discoverable in the application of new words to new ideas. The Hottentots who had never seen nor heard the report of a gun before their unfortunate connection with Europeans, had a new word to invent in order to express it. They called it *kaboo*, and pronounced the word in so emphatic a manner that it was scarcely possible to mistake their meaning. The *ka* is thrown out with a strong palatal stroke of the tongue, in imitation of the sound given by the stroke of the flint against the cover of the pan; and with outstretched lips, a full mouth, and prolonged sound, the *boo* sends forth the report. This language at first appears to be of such a nature as to make it impossible for an European ever to acquire; the difficulty, however, which is chiefly occasioned by the action of the tongue, is soon got over. Most of the Dutch peasantry in the distant districts speak it; and many of them are so very much accustomed to the use of it, that they introduce into their own language a motion of the organ of speech sufficiently distinct to shew from whence they procured it.

Notwithstanding the inhuman treatment that the Hottentots experience from the Dutch farmers, the latter could very ill want the assistance of the former; and, were they sensible of their own interest, and the interest of their posterity, instead of oppressing, they would offer them every encouragement. To
guard

guard their numerous herds ; to drive them from place to place in search of food and water, sometimes on plains which produce not a shrub to screen them from the scorching rays of an almost vertical sun at one part of the year, or to afford them a shelter from the cold winds, frost, and snow that happen in the other, would ill agree with the temper or with the constitution of the colonists ; yet should the present system of oppression continue, the time is not far distant when their own children must take upon them the charge now committed to Hottentots. Slaves are too expensive. In the whole district of Graaff Ruyt there are not more than six or seven hundred blacks, which is about one to each family ; and the said district contains about 10,000 Hottentots great and small. The total number of this people in the whole colony may be about fifteen thousand. Broken up and dispersed as the tribes of this nation now are, few of their ancient usages are retained among them. If they ever had a religion of any sort, all traces of it are now lost : they marry without any kind of ceremony, and inter their dead in the same manner. One custom, however, still remained, which seemed to be pretty generally observed : this was that of shaving the heads of young girls as soon as the first symptoms of maturity began to appear ; at the same time all the ornaments worn on the neck, legs, and arms are removed, the body for once in their lifetime clean washed and scoured ; and, during the continuance of the periodical symptoms, they are restricted to a milk diet, and are not suffered to mix in the company of men.

On the morning of the 29th of August we left the Zwartkop's river, and, proceeding to the eastward about twenty miles, crossed a ford of the Sunday river, and encamped upon its bank. At this place it was broad and deep, and without any perceptible current. The whole channel of the river was buried in thick woods that extended forty or fifty yards from the margin of the water upon each bank. The trees consisted chiefly of the Karroo mimosa, a species of *rbus*, and a narrow-leaved willow. The water was considerably impregnated with salt. At the feet of the hills, indeed, near which it flowed, were numbers of heaps of a white saline substance light and frothy; and from the under surfaces of the projecting strata of rotten sand-stone were suspended a great quantity of saline stalactites, whose bases were tinged green, perhaps from their being impregnated with a solution of copperas or green vitriol.

On the banks of this river we were disturbed in the night, for the first time, by a troop of elephants that had intended to quench their thirst near the place where we were encamped; but, finding the ground already occupied, they turned quietly away without molesting us. The following morning we pursued them by the track of their feet into an extensive thick forest of brushwood, among which several made their appearance at a distance; but we were not lucky enough to kill any of them.

The following day we travelled near thirty miles over a wild uninhabited part of the country, covered chiefly with shrubby plants

plants of the same nature as those that grew so abundantly between Graaff Reynet and Zwart-kop's river, but in general taller, and of more luxuriant growth. It was in fact an arm of the same forest, through which a road had been cut just wide enough to admit the waggons. Beyond the forest the face of the country was beautifully marked with knolls and dells, finely chequered with clumps of evergreen trees and patches of shrubbery. Among the swells were level meadows covered with grafs of a coarse reedy nature, and full of copious springs of good water. In the evening we encamped on the *Bosjesman's* river, and the next day proceeded easterly to the *Haffagai-bosch* river, whose source is in a small hanging forest on the declivity of the *Rietberg*. This long range of hills began here to be broken into a number of inferior elevations that continued to the eastern extremity of the colony, where they mingled into the high banks of the Great Fish-river.

On the *Haffagai-bosch* river stood the second habitation that had occurred in the last three days' journey, and we were here informed that there was no other to the eastward. The country that lies between the Sunday river and the eastern limit of the colony, and between the *Rietberg* and the sea-coast, is called the *Zuure Veldt*, or four grafs plains. In appearance it is the most beautiful division in the whole district; it is well wooded and watered, has a great depth of good soil, and is well clothed with grafs. Till the scandalous rupture between the peasantry and the Kaffers, occasioned entirely by the injustice and tyranny of the former, *Zuure Veldt* was one of the best-peopled divisions in the district, but has been since that time nearly abandoned.

It

It now became necessary to make some arrangement for our projected journey into the country of the Kaffers. Several teams of oxen for the waggons and relays had indeed already met us according to appointment with the farmers, who had also assembled to the number of thirty or forty persons, all expecting to accompany us on the intended expedition. When it had been made known to the two members of the council that it would in all probability be necessary for us to proceed into the country of the Kaffers, as far as the residence of the king, they immediately proposed, as a necessary precaution for security, to take along with us a party of twenty armed men. It was in vain to convince them that twenty armed men in the heart of a country that could bring as many thousands into the field, were no better defence than four; that by multiplying our numbers we should multiply the danger of giving offence; that the Kaffers were not to be considered in the same light as the Bosjesmans beyond the Sneeuwberg, in expeditions against whom they had been accustomed to join; but, on the contrary, as a mild, rational, and in some degree civilized people, who had always afforded protection to such travellers in their country as had made proper applications to their sovereign for it. The story of some Dutch farmer being murdered in Kafferland, where he had gone for the sake of exchanging trinkets for cattle, had got hold of their minds, and it was no easy matter to make them conceive the difference between going officially, in the service of government, to the Kaffer king, and that of clandestinely entering a country with the view of carrying on an illicit traffic with the subjects of that country. From the time they had known our intentions they had daily teased
the

the landroft with their propofal of twenty men, till at length it was found neceffary to f Silence the application by faying, that if they had any apprehenfions as to their perfonal fafety they were at full liberty to return to Graaff Reynet. Though nothing more was faid on the fubject, there was reafon to fuppofe that the people had afsembled for the purpofe of accompanying us. To a Dutch peafant a jaunt from home, on a hunting party, or to fee new parts of the country, is fupreme felicity : but an opportunity of getting into the Kaffer country, fo rich in cattle, was not to be refifted. Some of the farmers it was abfolutely neceffary to take along with us, as none of our own party were acquainted with a fingle ftep of the country. Thofe that feemed to be the moft proper for this purpofe were, an old man from Upper Zuure Veldt, and Rensburg, one of the companions of Jacob Van Reenen on the journey along the eastern coaft in fearch of the unfortunate paffengers and crew of the Grofvenor that was wrecked on the fhore of the *Hamboonas*. This at leaft was the oftendifible motive for that journey.

Rensburg was on many accounts a defirable companion on the prefent occafion. He was well acquainted with the country : he was an excellent marksman ; and he had with him an old Hottentot that was ftill better : from this man he generally reckoned upon a beaft for every ball. Two or three others joined us in the evening at the place of encampment, under pretence of looking after their oxen with which they had furnifhed us ; and the firft night that we paffed in Kaffer-land, the number of peafants, that had contrived to fmuggle themfelves into that country, amounted to ten.

We

We had not travelled many miles beyond the Haffagai-bosch river till the discovery of the whole surface of the country in flames indicated our approach to some of the stations of the Kaffers. We pitched our tents in fact at night on the banks of the *Kareeka*, amidst several hundreds of these people, who, on our approach, came swarming out of the thick shrubbery that skirted the river. A party of women were the first who advanced to salute us, laughing and dancing round the waggons, and putting on all the coaxing manners they could invent, in order to procure from us tobacco and brass buttons. Good temper, animation, and a cheerful turn of mind, beamed in all their countenances. We found them to be modest without reserve; extremely curious without being troublesome; lively but not impudent; and sportive without the least shadow of being lascivious. Their personal charms were not of a very captivating nature, though, getting over the prejudice of color, which was that of a dark glossy brown verging on black, several of them might have been accounted handsome. The rapid movement of their dark sparkling eyes gave animation to their countenances: their teeth were beautifully white and regular; they had neither the thick lips nor flat noses of Africans in general; and the whole contour of the face and head was equally well formed as those of Europeans; but the most striking feature in their character was a degree of sprightliness, activity, and vivacity, that distinguished them from the women of most nations but little civilized, who are generally reserved to strangers. Bordering upon the country of the Hottentots, their manners, their persons, and their whole character, seemed to be as widely removed from this phlegmatic race as the

the

the equator from the pole. The Hottentot young women had much the advantage, however, of the Kaffers in point of figure. The latter were mostly of low stature, very strong-limbed, and particularly muscular in the leg; but the good humor that constantly beamed upon their countenances made ample amends for any defect in their persons.

The men, on the contrary, were the finest figures I ever beheld: they were tall, robust, and muscular; their habits of life had induced a firmness of carriage, and an open, manly manner, which, added to the good nature that overspread their features, shewed them at once to be equally unconscious of fear, suspicion, and treachery. A young man about twenty, of six feet ten inches high, was one of the finest figures that perhaps was ever created. He was a perfect Hercules; and a cast from his body would not have disgraced the pedestal of that deity in the Farnese palace. Many of them had indeed very much the appearance of bronze figures. Their skins, which were nearly black, and their short curling hair, were rubbed over with a solution of red ochre, and the tint it produced on the dark ground was very far from having any disagreeable effect. Some few were covered with skin-cloaks, but the greater part were entirely naked. The women wore long cloaks that extended below the calf of the leg; and their heads were covered with leather-caps ornamented with beads, with shells, and with pieces of polished copper and iron, that were disposed in a variety of forms; but the fashion of the cap was nearly the same in all.

We distributed a quantity of tobacco among the women, who carried it to their fathers and husbands. These had not proved such successful pleaders as the females. In the evening they sent us in return some baskets of milk. These baskets were made from a species of *cyperus*, a strong reedy grass that grew in the springs of Zuure Veld. The workmanship was exceedingly clever and neat, and the texture so close that they were capable of containing the thinnest fluid. The women informed us that the making of these baskets was one part of their employment; and they seemed to feel a pleasure in our admiration of them. They were all nearly made after one model, which in shape was that of a common beehive. As they are never washed nor cleaned, the milk thrown into them almost immediately coagulates, in which state it is always used by this people, and never sweet from the animal. Having no bread, nor vegetables, nor roots, but such as grew spontaneously in the country, and as they seldom kill any of their cattle for the sake of the flesh, the necessity of taking something solid into the stomach led them, perhaps, to adopt this manner of drinking their milk; and the best proof of its nutritious quality, in such a state, was the general healthy appearance and vigor of their persons.

Towards the setting of the sun the whole plain was covered with cattle, which in vast herds were brought in from every quarter at the signal of command, which was a particular kind of whistling noise made with the mouth; at another whistle the cows separated from the herd, and came forward to have their milk drawn from them. This, and the management of the

the dairy, form a part of the employment of the men. In the morning a third signal sent them out to graze. The Kaffers and their cattle seemed perfectly to understand each other.

Though at this place there could not be fewer than three hundred men and women, exclusive of a numerous troop of young boys and girls who were obliged to keep at a distance; yet not a hut of any kind was to be seen. These were all concealed in the midst of the shrubbery: they consisted only of a few living twigs, whose tops were bent and interwoven into each other, forming a frame, of the shape of a parabola, about five feet high and eight in diameter. These frames were rudely covered over with branches of trees and long grass, and were evidently intended only as temporary abodes.

A chief of the name of *Tooley* paid us a visit, drank a few glasses of wine which he seemed very much to relish, and received a small present of beads and tobacco; but the object that seemed most to engage his attention was the wish to procure for himself a pair of breeches. Among our party were a few tolerably stout and tall men, yet none of their breeches would suffer *Tooley's* thighs to enter into them. He was a strong muscular man, of six feet in height, and well made. He was good-humored and cheerful, but did not appear to be possessed of much intellect. He declined entering into any conversation that led to the purport of our journey, and said that his brother *Malloo*, who was one of the first of the Kaffer chiefs, would talk to us on that subject. An express was therefore sent for *Malloo*, who was at a little distance on the

upper part of the river. It was not long before he made his appearance, followed by a third chief of the name of *Etonic*.

In a conversation with these chiefs, they were asked whether they were not acquainted with the treaty that had been made a long time ago between the Christians and Kaffers, and renewed at the conclusion of the late hostilities, which treaty had fixed the Great Fish river as the line of demarcation between the two nations? Malloo, who spoke for the rest, replied, that they knew it very well. If so, it was demanded why had they infringed that treaty by passing the said river and taking possession of the country belonging to the colonists, to the great injury of the latter, who had been obliged to quit their habitations? Malloo replied in a manner that shewed he was prepared to answer—that there were no habitations in that part of the country where they had fixed themselves; and as to their motive for passing the boundary, he could only say, for his own part, that he had come over for one of the reasons that had carried the colonists *first* after the treaty into the Kaffer country, which was that of hunting for game.

What this chief stated in his reply was perfectly correct. The Dutch peasantry have not only gone into the Kaffer country since the year 1793, to hunt for the larger sort of game, particularly the hippopotamus, that abounds in all the great rivers of that country, but all those who dwell near the extremity of the colony, upon the Great Fish river, have always used, and still continue to consider, the Kaffer side of the river as their own, have sown, and planted, and driven over their
cattle

cattle to graze. Some of the inhabitants of *Bruyntjes Hoogté* had even gone amongst the *Gbonaquas*, a tribe of people produced between Kaffers and Hottentots, but living under the former; had taken possession of the choicest part of their country, well watered by two plentiful streams, the Kat and the Kaapna; had laid out the extent of ground that each meant to occupy; planted vines and other fruits; and, certain that the avaricious and unjust views of the government would keep equal pace with their own, joined by twenty or thirty names that they contrived to muster from different parts of the colony, they had the audacity to petition Sir James Craig to grant them, as an indemnification for their losses by the Bosjesmans and the Kaffers, a small piece of ground on the Kaapna; and that it would still further oblige them if he could extend it to the Kat river. This small piece of ground is only about five-and-forty miles beyond the present boundary. The daring and impudent falsehoods on which the letter was grounded were easily seen through by Sir James Craig, and their petition was very properly rejected. The eyes of the colonists have long been directed towards the two rivers, the Kat and the Kaapna. A native voyager in this country, whose mind seemed only to be occupied in hunting elephants, shooting sea-cows, and collecting gold dust, could not pass without noticing this part of Kaffer-land. In a Journal, which has been published by Captain Rio, it is mentioned: " We came to a vast
" plain extending as far as a river called Kaapna, or fine meadows, which name it highly merits from its delightful situation. The whole country is intersected with rivulets
" capable of overflowing the adjacent meadows, and possesses
" every

“ every requisite for becoming a most *convenient* and *charming* *settlement*.” Such a description was sufficient to send a Dutch farmer as far as the Tambookies, if he could only be persuaded there would be no personal danger. Such are the views of those people, who have neither sense of honor, regard for truth, or feelings of justice or humanity to direct their proceedings.

The chiefs were told, that if some few of the colonists had been so imprudent as to transgress the treaty, they had done it contrary to the express orders, and without the knowledge, of government: that the colony was now in the possession of a great and powerful sovereign, the king of England: that one of his first chiefs had deputed us to say, that the established boundary should be observed on the part of the colonists; but he expected also that all those chiefs, who had spread themselves over the country of the colonists, with their families, and dependants, and cattle, would, without any further delay, quietly and peaceably return into their own country; and, as a proof of the good intentions and friendship of the English government towards the Kaffer nation, we were now on our journey to their great chief, or king *Gaika*, carrying for him a present from the English governor at the Cape.

On hearing this, the Kaffer chiefs were apparently uneasy; and it was soon discovered that they not only were on bad terms with the king, but that they had been obliged to fly their country in order to avoid the effects of his displeasure. They now began to change their former tone, and to entreat that an intercession should be made for them with their king, and gave
a promise,

a promise, on condition of a *messenger of peace* being sent to them, immediately to return into their own country. Such a messenger is known by this people from his laying his *bassagai* or spear on the ground at the distance of two hundred paces from those to whom he is sent, and by advancing from thence with extended arms. Being assured that every attempt to bring about an amicable adjustment between the king and the fugitive chiefs would be tried, and that from the apparent willingness, on their part, to a reconciliation, there could be little doubt of success, they received each a small present, consisting of tobacco, knives, flints, and steels, tinder-boxes, and a few glass beads. These are the sort of articles which the Dutch farmers have been in the habit of exchanging for their valuable breed of cattle.

The three chiefs were all stout, well-formed men ; but Etonie in particular might be accounted handsome : he had a lively pleasing countenance that always wore a smile, his eyes were vivid and active, his teeth were white as the purest ivory, and his nose was not in the least flattened, but exactly of the same form as that of the European. In their dress they had nothing particular to distinguish them from those they governed, except a slender brass chain which hung suspended on the left side, from a wreath of small polished copper beads that encircled the upper part of the head. They wore long cloaks of calves' skins, which, being well stretched and dressed, were very light and pliant. Broad rings of ivory, cut out of the solid tusk of the elephant, were worn upon the left arm, above the elbow. Bracelets of copper and of iron surrounded their wrists, and rings

rings of these metals were also worn on the legs above the ankles. Glass beads surrounded their necks; and many of the men had porcupine quills stuck through the ear.

Neither had the wives of the chiefs any distinction of dress from the rest of the women. They all wore caps, made of skins, fitting close to the head, and hanging behind, and down each side, in long divided flaps. Each seemed to have decorated their dress, without any fixed order, as caprice had suggested, or as their circumstances would allow. Small beads of copper, rings of iron, brass buttons, old knee-buckles, or whatsoever metallic material had fallen into their hands, found a place on some part of their dress. Some had a brass button stuck in one ear, and in the other a string of glass beads or a shell. They had no change of habit, but each carried her whole wardrobe about her person. Some had not fewer than fifty different strings of necklaces about the neck; a number of rings round their legs and arms of copper and iron; and on their calf-skin cloaks were stitched several rows, from top to bottom, of old buttons, as various in shape, size, and fashion, as a button-maker's card. Some had festoons of small cypræa shells round their caps; others had made them into bracelets and necklaces. Suspended from the neck most of them carried the shell of a small land tortoise, (the *testudo pumilla*,) which held a quantity of red ochre, and a thin piece of leather to rub it upon their faces.

The young boys were perfectly naked; and the only ornament about them was a small tuft of the long white hair from
the

the rump of the springbok, which was stuck upon the crown of the head.

On the second of September we skirted the banks of the *Kareeka*, towards the sea-shore, perpetually passing through multitudes of Kaffers and their herds of cattle. Of the latter, the collected opinion of the party was, that there could not have been fewer seen, in the course of this day's journey, than five thousand head. Among these were oxen of remarkable size and strength, vast numbers of cows, in general much larger and handsomer than those of the colony, some of them not unlike the Alderney cow; others were without horns, small and strong, resembling the black cattle that come down from the Highlands of Scotland. The horns of the large oxen were twisted with great pains into a variety of shapes. The points of some were brought to meet under the neck; others were drawn into straight lines projecting horizontally from each side of the head; some had one horn pointed directly into the air, and the other to the ground; and others, rising parallel from their bases, had their points turned back, which gave them the appearance of huge antelopes. Some had large circular pieces cut out of the dewlap; others had this part cut into strings, and hanging in tassels. Not a sheep nor goat were to be seen. The Kaffers, in fact, never breed any of these animals. Dogs in innumerable quantities made their appearance, but so miserably poor that it was painful to look at them. They seemed to be a small kind of cur. They had no horses. Dogs and cattle were the only animals they possessed.

A rising eminence between the Bosjesman and Kareeka rivers, which at this place were not very distant, commanded a beautiful view of the surrounding country, and a great extent of sea-coast. From these elevated plains a sudden depression of the earth descends towards the sea-shore, and particularly between the mouths of the two above-mentioned rivers. The ground has here been rent and torn into vast chasms, separated by high ridges of rude and massy rock. The glens were choaked up with thick, tall shrubbery, and the smaller kinds of the trees of the country. These wild and dismal dens, of many miles in extent, were considered by Rensberg, the person before mentioned, as the nursery of elephants, where, he asserted, he had once seen in one troop between four and five hundred of these enormous brutes, scouring the plains, and making for the forests.

Several of the persons with me pretended to have been eye-witnesses to the manner in which elephants performed the conjugal rites; and they invariably asserted that the female went down on her knees to receive the male, which, however, is not the case. The manner in which this huge animal contrived to propagate the species is a subject that has long engaged the closet-naturalists of Europe, and which has produced many strange opinions and hypotheses. Some imagined that the feelings of this animal were so delicate, and others that its sense of slavery was so powerful, that shame in the one instance, and indignation in the other, were impediments to their indulging, in a domesticated state, in the gratifications of love. Such-like hypotheses, founded on false suggestions of travellers, have of late

late been most completely set aside by facts performed in the presence of many hundred spectators. Several English gentlemen, resident in the interior parts of India, have bred elephants. In a letter from one of these gentlemen to his friend, dated Tipperah, July 11, 1793, the whole process of courtship, consummation, and time of gestation, are minutely stated. From this letter the following are points that appear to be most unquestionably ascertained.

First: That tame elephants will procreate in their domestic state, and perform the act of love without shame, and without feeling any sense of delicacy beyond other brute animals.

Secondly: That the period of gestation is about twenty-one months.

Thirdly: That they copulate invariably in the same manner as a horse with a mare, but with much less vigor. And,

Fourthly, That the female will again receive the male in five or six months after delivery.

A copy of the above-mentioned letter having been transmitted to the late ingenious Sir William Jones, the relation produced from the sportive fancy of that celebrated genius the commencement of a mock-heroic poem, in which, though very short, the marks of exuberant imagination strongly appeared. He intitles it Pelion and Offa.

" As in Jove's war, by rebel giants pil'd,
 " Enormous Pelion tower'd on Offa wild,
 " *Behadur* thus, the Pelion of our wood,
 " On sleek *Peauree*, broad as Offa, stood," &c.

The gigantic elephant is a harmless animal in comparison to the lion, the leopard, wolves, and hyænas, and other beasts of prey with which this wild part of the country abounds; and these even are much less to be feared than a nest of the most atrocious villains that ever disgraced and disturbed society, which these thickets conceal. The gang consists of seven or eight Dutch peasants, and a body of armed Hottentots which they retain in their service. They have no fixed habitation, but rove about from place to place in the woods. They live by the plunder taken from the neighbouring peasantry, and from unfortunate sufferers by shipwreck, which frequently happens on this wild coast. They are all outlaws; and rewards have been offered by government for them dead or alive; but the peasantry are so much afraid of them that none dare approach the place. This gang is known to be intimately connected with the emigrant Kaffers, who have been instigated by them to continue in the colony.

On the morning of the third of September, as we were preparing to proceed, we had a visit from the four chiefs, *Tatboo*, *Gomma*, *Yaloofa*, and *Hamboona*, having each with him a detachment of his vassals. They at once confessed their fears of returning into their own country, lest the king should make war upon them; and pressed us to intercede with him for them.

The

The route from Haffagai-bosch river had been taken out of the common track in order to speak with the Kaffer chiefs, as well as to have a view of that part of the coast where the Bosjesman and the Kareeka rivers discharged themselves into the sea. Over the grassy plains of Zuure Veldt there is little difficulty in finding a road, where the deep glens, through which the branches of rivers run, can be avoided; and we had met with no obstacle till our arrival at the *Kowie*, which falls into the sea a little to the eastward of the Kareeka. In order to cross this river it was necessary to descend from the plain into a deep chasm two miles in length; not only down a steep precipice strewn over with fragments of rock, but in several places we had to cut a road through thick clumps of brushwood. A more difficult and dreadful place was certainly never attempted by wheel-carriages. A single false step might have been attended with the total destruction of waggons and cattle. In the space of two hours, however, we found ourselves in the bottom, where we passed along a narrow defile, hemmed in on either side, sometimes by woods of tall trees creeping up the steep faces of the mountains, and at others between two walls of naked rock. The difficulty of the descent had considerably exhausted the oxen; but to rise the opposite hill, "*bic labor, hoc opus fuit.*" In vain the animals strove; the drivers shouted, and stamped, and flogged with their enormous whips, and the Dutchmen swore. The first waggon got about a hundred yards up the ascent, which was near a mile in length, but was unable to be moved a step higher. After an hour's trial, bruising and fatiguing the oxen to no purpose, they had recourse to the method that ought in the first instance to have been
been

been adopted. The reserved oxen were yoked before the others, and thus, by double teams, the waggons were at last drawn out of this horrible chasm ; not, however, without producing an instance of brutality and cruelty that will scarcely be supposed to exist in a civilized country. While the poor animals were struggling and tearing on their knees, and exerting their strength to the utmost to draw up the waggons, the owner of one of the teams, enraged at their want of success, drew out of its case a large crooked knife with a sharp point, and fixing on one of the oxen for the object on which he might give vent to his fury, cut him with several gashes across the ribs, in the flank, and in the fleshy part of the thigh, some of them from six to seven inches long, and so deep that when the animal walked they opened two inches in width. The size of the wounds is not mentioned loosely for the sake of exaggeration, but is given from actual measurement. The ribs were literally laid bare, and the blood ran down in streams ; yet in this condition the poor beast was obliged to draw in the waggon for the space of three hours, after having received such brutal treatment. By two of the gashes a large piece of flesh was very nearly taken out of the thick part of the thigh ; and had it not been for the irritable state of mind into which the savage conduct of the fellow had thrown me, but more particularly lest it should seem to give a kind of countenance to his brutality, I should have asked him to have cut it entirely out, as it could not materially have increased the pain to the beast ; not for the sake of proving the delicacy of an Abyssinian beef-steak, quivering with life, but to have observed the progress of the wound. In three or four days the gashes were skinned over, and
appeared

appeared to give the animal little uneasiness, but the cicatrices would always remain; and from these sort of scars on the bodies of many of the oxen, it is to be feared that cutting is a practice but too common among them, notwithstanding that most of the peasantry of the party seemed to be shocked at it. This was the second instance of the kind that I had occasion to witness in the course of this tour; the other was perhaps the more cruel, as it was exercised on parts of the body more susceptible of pain, the nose and the tongue. In this instance the animal bellowed most hideously, burst from the yoke, and plunging into the thickets, made his escape. Even in the neighbourhood of the Cape, where, from a more extended civilization, one would expect a greater degree of humanity, several atrocious acts of the kind are notorious. One of the inhabitants, better known from his wealth and his vulgarity than from any good quality he possesses, boasts that he can at any time start his team on a full gallop by whetting his knife only on the side of the waggon. In exhibiting this masterly experiment, the effect of a long and constant perseverance in brutality, to some of his friends, the waggon was overturned, and one of the company, unluckily not the proprietor, had his leg broken. Hottentot's Holland's kloof, a steep pass over the first range of mountains beyond the promontory of the Cape, has been the scene of many an instance of this sort of cruelty. I have heard a fellow boast that, after cutting and slashing one of his oxen in this kloof, till an entire piece of a foot square did not remain in the whole hide, he stabbed him to the heart; and the same person is said, at another time, to have kindled a fire

fire under the belly of an ox, because it could not draw the waggon up the same kloof.

As it was our intention to examine the mouth of the Great Fish river, the boundary of the colony to the eastward, it was thought advisable to send forward, in the mean time, two interpreters to the Kaffer king, carrying with them a small present in the name of the governor of the Cape, in order to obtain permission, as ambassadors from the said governor, to enter his territories, and to pay our respects to him. By this step we were not only more likely to secure his protection, but it would also shew him that the treaty made with them in the time of the governor Van Plettenberg, and renewed in the year 1793, was held sacred by the English government. The distance from the place where we now were to that of his residence was calculated to be a journey of five days: the eighth day therefore was fixed on for the interpreters to meet us in Kafferland at a certain spot, well known to them and to our guide Rensberg, which was a journey of two days' distance from the Kaffer court.

On the fourth, therefore, the interpreters proceeded to the eastward, and we directed our route towards the mouth of the Great Fish river. The country over which we passed was perfectly flat; and in those parts where the Kaffers had not yet been, there was abundance of long grass. On approaching the sea-coast we observed a long train of fires; and, supposing them to have been made by a party of Kaffers stationed there, we
turned

turned a little out of the way towards the quarter from whence the smoke proceeded ; but being to leeward of it, and the wind encreasing, the waggons were in the midst of the fire before we perceived it ; and the smoke was so thick and acrid, that it was impossible to see the length of the team. The oxen, being burnt in the feet, became unmanageable and galloped off in great confusion, the dogs howled, and there was a general uproar. The smoke was suffocating ; the flames blazed up on each side of the waggons, which, to those especially that contained a quantity of gunpowder, was very alarming. The oxen, however, by sagacity, or by chance, had set their heads against the wind and soon galloped through it. The flames ran in all directions among the long dry grass and heathy plants with incredible celerity. The face of the country for several miles was a sheet of fire, and the air was obscured with a cloud of smoke. We had yet a considerable extent of country to pass among black ashes, beyond which we presently reached the mouth of the Great Fish river, where we pitched our tents for the night.

Like all the African rivers that discharge themselves into the sea on the eastern coast, the mouth of the Great Fish river was nearly sanded up. The quantity, however, of water brought down by it keeps open a constant channel, which, at the lowest ebb, seemed to be deep enough in every part for the admission of boats. Within the bar of sand it was from three to four hundred yards in width, and appeared to be very deep. The Portuguese, in their early voyages, discovered this river, and gave to it the name of Rio Infante. Thinking that it might

admit of security for their shipping within the bar, they built a fort upon the left bank, and kept there a small establishment for a short time ; till the discovery of Rio de la Goa, farther to the north-east, promising more solid advantages, made them abandon Rio Infante. The banks descended with a fine smooth slope from the elevated plains on each side, and were covered with grass to the water's edge. That on the Kaffer side was beautifully skirted with thick woods. Towards the evening a vast number of *Hippopotami*, or sea-cows as they are called by the Dutch, were seen with their heads above the surface ; but keeping close to the opposite shore, they were too far to be easily hit with a musquet ball. Several of the paths of these animals led from various parts of the river to a spring of fresh water about a mile distant. To this spring they go in the night-time to drink, the water of the river, for a considerable distance from the mouth, being salt. They also graze during the night, and browse among the shrubbery. Short-sighted man would be apt to say that the Providence of Nature should seem to have slept, or that she had committed a mistake, when she placed this unwieldy misshapen animal in an element where it cannot exist, and in which are not to be found the means of its sustenance, for it eats nothing that the rivers or waters afford.

The latitude of the mouth of the Great Fish river we found to be $33^{\circ} 25'$ south, and longitude $27^{\circ} 37'$ east. The distance from the Cape, as before mentioned, is about six hundred miles.

The

The coast, as far as could be seen from the high hillocks of sand, was wild and rocky, and without bay or indent.

The well-clothed plains of Zuure Veldt, when inhabited by the Dutch, abounded with a variety of game, especially of the antelope tribe; but since the arrival of the Kaffers they have mostly been destroyed or chased into some other part of the country. The manner in which these people hunt is not only a very destructive one, but it so much frightens those animals that may chance to escape, that they abandon the place. A large party, consisting sometimes of several hundreds, men, women, and children, surround a plain on which they have perceived a herd of antelopes. As soon as they have formed the circle each proceeds towards the centre of it, narrowing the diameter, and closing upon each other, till the animals are completely fenced in. Antelopes, particularly that species called the springbok, like sheep, always follow where one leads. As soon, therefore, as the hunters have approached within a certain distance, an opening is made in the circle for the nearest animals to pass. All the rest follow in a line; and while by rushing together they retard each other, the men, armed with spears, close in upon the line and make dreadful havock among them. Scarcely a springbok is now to be met with in Zuure Veldt. We found the steenbok, the boschbok, the rietbok, and the orobie, towards the extremity of the colony, and shot several *bartebeests*. This is one of the finest animals of the family of antelopes. The male is about seven feet and a half long and five feet high, and the female six and a half feet long and four feet high: the horns branch out of a single trunk that projects

jects about two inches from the forehead. The mouth, and indeed the whole head, resembles that of the bovine tribe, from whence it has obtained in the *Systema Naturæ* the specific name of *bubalis*.

All the chasms with which the plains of this part of the country are intersected, and the banks of all the rivers, the sides of the knolls, and the range of hills that terminates this division to the northward, were covered with wood. This consisted generally of a tall luxuriant shrubbery, out of which sprang up in places, sometimes singly and frequently in clumps, large forest trees: of these the *geelbout* was the most lofty, and being here disentangled from the pendulous lichen that cramped its growth in the great forests of Van Slaaden's river, shewed itself as a beautiful tree. An euphorbia, throwing out a number of naked arms from a straight trunk thirty or forty feet high, held a distinguished place among the shrubbery. But one of the largest and most shewy trees, and at this time in the height of its bloom, was the Kaffer's bean-tree, the *erythrina corallodendrum*, so called from the color and resemblance of its large clusters of papilionaceous flowers to branches of red coral. Numbers of beautiful birds, such as small paroquets, touracos, woodpeckers, and others, were fluttering about these trees for the sake of the juices yielded by the flowers. The coral-tree, like most dazzling beauties, has its imperfection: the leaves are deciduous, and the blossoms, like those of the almond, have decayed before the young leaves have burst their buds. Not so with the Hottentot's bean: the clusters of scarlet flowers intermingled with the small and elegant dark-green foliage, gave it a distinguished

distinguished place among the tall trees of the kloofs, and the thick shrubbery on the sides of the swells. This plant is the African *lignum vitæ*, the *guajacum Afrum* of Linnæus, and the *Schotia speciosa* of the *Hortus Kewensis*. The wood, however, is not sufficiently hard to be converted to the same purposes as *lignum vitæ*, nor is the tree large enough to make it of any particular use. The seeds of this leguminous plant are eaten by the Hottentots, and sometimes also are used by the colonists. Two plants of the palm tribe were frequently met with; one, the *zamia cycadis*, or Kaffer's bread-tree, growing on the plains; and the other, also a species of the same genus, skirting the springs and rivulets: the fruit of the latter was called wild coffee, and substituted by the peasantry for this berry. The *Are-litzia regina* also, now in full and beautiful bloom, grew every where in wide-spreading patches in the vicinity of the Great Fish river, but not one of the new species, discovered about twenty miles to the northward of Zwart Kop's river, could be found among them. The cerulean blue nectarium of the *reginæ* seemed to be uniformly faded, and it lost its color by a short exposure to the weather, which did not appear to be the case with that of violet blue of the *teretifolia*. The seed of the *reginæ* is eaten both by the Kaffers and Hottentots. A great variety of bulbous rooted plants were now springing out of the ground; and several species of those elegant families the *gladiolus*, *ixia*, *moræa*, and the *iris*, were in full bloom. That singular plant the *tumus elephantopus*, so called from a protuberance thrown from the root resembling the foot of an elephant, was met with only in this part of the country. Several species of *xeranthemum* and *gnaphalium* decorated the grassy plains with

with their brilliant colors of red, yellow, and silky white. The Dutch in the colony name these, *flowers of seven years' duration*; but in Europe we extend the idea to *everlastings*.

In two days after leaving the mouth of the river, and skirting its banks, we came to the first ford. The moment we began to descend the heights towards the level of the river an extraordinary increase of temperature was felt; and in the course of an hour the thermometer, which stood at noon at 72° , had ascended to 102° in the shade, at which point it remained, at the ford of the river, for four hours. When exposed to the direct rays of the sun the temperature was increased only four degrees. The wind was due north and remarkably strong; and the stream of air was so heated that it was scarcely possible to bear exposure to it for any length of time. At night it blew a hurricane, and obliged us to strike the tents. It may be remarked that the meridian altitude of the sun on that day was only fifty-one degrees, and that the general surface of the country, from which the wind blew, was covered with thick shrubbery; that on the preceding night, near the same place, the thermometer was down to 52° ; and that on the following day, on the same spot, and with the same wind, but less strong, it ascended no higher than 71° . These circumstances render it very difficult, if not impossible, to account for so high a degree of temperature.

The following day we passed the Great Fish river, though not without some difficulty, the banks being high and steep, the stream strong, the bottom rocky, and the water deep. Some
fine

fine trees of the willow of Babylon, or a variety of that species, skirted the river at this place. The opposite side presented a very beautiful country, well wooded and watered, and plentifully covered with grass, among which grew in great abundance a species of indigo, apparently the same as that described by Mr. Maffon as the *candicans*.

The first night that we encamped in the Kaffer country was near a stream called *Kowsha*, which falls into the Great Fish river. On the following day we passed the villages of *Malloo* and *Tooley*, the two chiefs and brothers we had seen in Zuure Veldt, delightfully situated on two eminences rising from the said streamlet. We also passed several villages placed along the banks of the *Guengka* and its branches, and the next day we came to a river of very considerable magnitude called the *Keifkamma*. Though no part of the colony we had yet passed through could be compared to that portion of the Kaffers' country which lay between the Great Fish river and the *Keifkamma*; and though the huts of which the villages were composed appeared to be perfect and in good order, yet no vestige of human industry seemed to accompany them, nor any traces but the buildings, that might lead to suppose the country to be inhabited. In fact, during the two days we had travelled in Kafferland not a human being had made its appearance, except one of our interpreters with a Kaffer chief, whom we met at the close of the second day, and who had been dispatched by the king to invite and to conduct us to his place of residence.

That

That part of the Keiskamma where we had encamped was not fordable by waggons: had it even admitted a passage, the country on the opposite side was so very mountainous and woody, that, so far from wheel-carriages making the attempt, it was scarcely passable by horses. It was therefore concluded to send forwards, on the following day, three or four Hottentots with presents, and to proceed from the place of encampment on horseback. Though the distance from the Keiskamma to the residence of the king was not more than fifteen miles, it took us above four hours in riding. The hills were mostly covered with thick underwood, and on the plains were so many straggling trees of the thorny mimosa, just distant enough from each other for their spreading branches to meet and annoy passengers, that we were obliged to quit the direct road, which was no more than a foot-path, every moment. In the course of the journey we passed a number of villages containing from ten to thirty huts each, some of which were deserted, but others were very populous. A great crowd of people of all descriptions flocked down on every side and followed us along the road. The weather being warm, the men had thrown aside their cloaks and were entirely naked. But the women reserved their cloaks of calf-skin and close leather caps, which, with the heat of the weather, and their exertion to gratify their curiosity by the sight of the strangers, seemed to incommode them not a little.

On arriving at his place of residence, we found that the king, not having expected us until the following day, had gone to his
grazing

grazing village ten or twelve miles to the northward, in consequence of some intelligence he had received of the wolves having committed great depredations among his young cattle on the preceding night. A messenger was therefore immediately dispatched after him ; and in the meantime the king's mother, a well-looking woman, apparently about five-and-thirty, and his queen, a very pretty Kaffer girl, about fifteen, with their female attendants, to the number of fifty or sixty, formed a circle round us, and endeavoured to entertain us with their good-humored and lively conversation. It was not long before Gaika, the king, made his appearance riding on an ox in full gallop, attended by five or six of his people. Our business commenced with little ceremony under the shade of a spreading mimosa. He requested that we might all be seated in a circle on the ground, not as any mark of civility, but that it might the more distinctly be heard what each party had to say. The manner, however, in which he received us sufficiently marked the pleasure he derived from the visit: of the nature of this he was already aware, and entered immediately upon the subject, by expressing the satisfaction he felt in having an opportunity of explaining to us that none of the Kaffers who had passed the boundary established between the two nations were to be considered as his subjects: he said they were chiefs as well as himself, and entirely independent of him; but that his ancestors had always held the first rank, and their supremacy had been acknowledged on all occasions by the colonists: that all those Kaffers and their chiefs, who had at any time been desirous to enter under the protection of his family, had been kindly received; and that those who chose rather to

c c

remain

remain independent had been permitted to do so, without being considered in the light of enemies. He then informed us, that his father died, and left him, when very young, under the guardianship of *Zambie*, one of his first chiefs and own brother, who had acted as regent during his minority; but that having refused to resign to him his right on coming at years of discretion, his father's friends had shewed themselves in his favor, and that by their assistance he had obliged his uncle to fly: that this man had then joined *Kbouta*, a powerful chief to the northward, and with their united forces had made war against him: that he had been victorious, and had taken *Zambie* prisoner: that he had never been at war with, nor to his knowledge had ever given the slightest offence to, the chiefs of the other side of the *Keiskamma*, but, on the contrary, had always endeavoured to conciliate their good-will: that since his friends and subjects had supported him in the assumption and maintenance of his right, he had observed a disposition in those chiefs to withdraw themselves from his friendship: that the people of *Malloo* and *Tooley* particularly had committed great depredations on the cattle of his subjects; and that, when he sent to them a civil message to enquire if any had by chance strayed into their territories, to his great surprise he was informed they had quitted the country: that he had more than once, since that period, sent to them his proffers of friendship, but that they had detained, and, as he supposed, put to death his messengers: that still to avoid giving them any pretext for commencing hostilities, he had strictly forbid any of his subjects to molest their habitations, or even to pass the *Keiskamma*.

Astonished

Astonished to find so much good sense and prudence in a very young man and a Kaffer, we explained the nature of our visit to him, and submitted for his consideration the six following articles :

1. That he should send a messenger of peace and friendship along with one of our interpreters to the Kaffer chiefs now residing in the colony :
2. That none of his subjects, on any pretence whatever, unless sent expressly by him, should pass the boundary established between the Colonists and Kaffers :
3. That none of his subjects should have any intercourse whatever with the Colonists ; and that, if any of the latter should be found in any part of his territories, he would send them under a strong guard to Graaff Reynet :
4. That should any ship be stranded on the Kaffer coast, he would afford to the unfortunate passengers and crew hospitality and protection, and that he would conduct them in safety to Graaff Reynet :
5. That any blacks, Hottentots, or *bastards*, found in his territories, should be taken and sent to Graaff Reynet :
6. And that he should keep up a friendly intercourse with the landroft, by sending annually, or oftener, if necessary, one of his captains, bearing a brass gorget with the arms of his Britannic Majesty engraven upon it.

To all these he readily agreed, except to the latter part of the third article, observing that he did not think it right for Kaffers to make prisoners of men so superior to themselves as Christians were; but he promised to give intelligence to the landroft, should any be met with in his territories. It is a common idea, industriously kept up in the colony, that the Kaffers are a savage, treacherous, and cruel people; a character as false as it is unmerited. Their moderation towards the colonists, and all white people, has shewn itself on many occasions; and if the inhabitants of the bordering parts of the colony had any sense of honor or feelings of gratitude, instead of assisting to propagate, they would endeavour to suppress, such an idea. They know very well that in the height of a war into which this people was iniquitously driven, the lives of all their women and children that fell into the hands of the Kaffers were spared by them, whilst their own fell promiscuously by the hands of the colonists. Another instance of the different manner in which the Dutch and the Kaffers conducted themselves, under the same circumstances, will serve to shew which of the two nations most deserves the character thrown upon the latter.

In the month of February 1796, a vessel from India under Genoese colours was wrecked on the coast of the colony between the Bosjesman and Sunday rivers. The peasantry from various parts of the coast, from Langé-kloof to Kafferland, flocked down to the wreck, not for the humane purpose of giving assistance to the unfortunate sufferers, but to plunder them of every thing that could be got on shore; and it is a notorious fact, that the only man who was anxious to secure
some

some property for the captain and officers had his brains dashed out with an iron bolt by one of his neighbours.

In June 1797, the *Hercules*, an American ship, was stranded between the mouths of the Keiskamma and the Beeka. By the time that the crew, consisting of about sixty persons, had got on shore, they found themselves surrounded by Kaffers, and expected immediately to have been put to death by these savages. Instead of which, to their no small degree of joy and surprise, a chief gave orders for an ox to be instantly killed, and the flesh distributed among the unfortunate sufferers. There is, however, one temptation which a Kaffer cannot resist—the sight of metal buttons; and those who suffered shipwreck, and who happened to have any of these articles about their persons, had them cut off without much ceremony. They were deprived of no other part of their property; and they were conducted in safety to the residence of some of the colonists, from whom a demand was made of five rixdollars for the captain, and an equal sum for the whole of the crew, as a full compensation for their trouble—a very moderate and just demand; and it were to be wished that the example of the Kaffers was observed on some more civilized coasts.

Having arranged the business that brought us into Kafferland with the king, we made him a present consisting of sheets of copper, brass-wire, glass-beads, knives for skinning animals, looking-glasses, flints, steels, and tinder-boxes, and a quantity of tobacco. His mother also received a present of the same nature. Except this lady, all the other women kept in the
back-

back-ground during the conversation, as did also *Zambie*, the uncle and usurper, who was then a prisoner at large in the village. The young king's treatment of this man did him great honor. All his former attendants, his cattle, and his six wives, were restored to him, with as much liberty as the rest of his subjects, except that he was always obliged to be in the same village with the king.

Gaika was a young man, at this time under twenty years of age, of an elegant form, and a graceful and manly deportment; his height about five feet ten inches; his face of a deep bronze color, approaching nearly to black; his skin soft and smooth; his eyes dark brown, and full of animation; his teeth regular, well-set, and white as the purest ivory: his countenance open, but more marked with the habit of reflexion than is usually observed in that of a Kaffer: he had the appearance, indeed, of possessing in an eminent degree a solid understanding and a clear head: to every question that related to their manners, customs, laws, and various other points, he gave, without embarrassment or reserve, direct and unequivocal answers; and it is to him I am principally indebted for the little information I am enabled to give concerning the Kaffer nation: his understanding was not more strong than his disposition appeared to be amiable: he seemed to be the adored object of his subjects; the name of Gaika was in every mouth, and it was seldom pronounced without symptoms of joy. He had one wife only, very young, and, setting aside the prejudice against color, very pretty, by whom he had a little girl called *Yafu*. Like the chiefs in the colony he wore a brass chain suspended, on the
left

left side, from a wreath of copper beads that encircled his head : on his arm he had five large rings cut out of the solid tusks of elephants, and round his neck was a chain of beads : his cloak was faced with skins of leopards ; but he threw this dress aside, and, like the rest of his people, appeared entirely naked.

The queen had nothing to distinguish her from the other women, except that her cloak seemed to have had more pains bestowed upon it in the dressing, and had three rows behind of brass-buttons extending from the hood to the bottom of the skirts, and so close that they touched each other. The rest of the women were contented with a few of these straggling over different parts of the cloak. This weighty covering is never laid aside in the hottest weather ; but they wear nothing whatsoever under it, except the little apron that the Hottentot women take such pains to decorate. The Kaffer ladies are not less anxious to appear smart about the head. Their skin-caps were ornamented with buttons, buckles, beads, or shells, according as fancy might suggest or their wardrobe could supply.

Though the country between the Keiskamma and the residence of the king had been rugged, poor, and mountainous, it here began to assume a very different appearance. The knolls of grass were thickly covered, and the hanging woods on the steep sides of the high mountains to the northward were extremely beautiful. The village, it seemed, at which he now lived, was but a temporary residence. It was situated upon the *Kooquanie*, a small stream that fell into the *Keiskamma* ; it consisted of about forty or fifty huts of the form of beehives. That
which

which seemed to be destined for the use of the queen stood at the head of the village; was somewhat larger than the rest, and finished in a neater manner: it was about ten feet in diameter, and eight feet high. They are first shaped by frames of wood, and afterwards daubed over with a kind of mortar composed of clay and the dung of cattle; and, when this is sufficiently dry, a neat covering of matting is worked over the whole. Such huts are completely water-tight, and very warm.

The Kaffers having always been represented as agriculturists, we were a little disappointed in not meeting with gardens and cultivated grounds about their habitations, not a vestige of which had any where appeared. On putting the question to *Gaika*, he replied, that having been engaged in war for the two or three years last past, during which he had not been able to fix at any one place above a month or two at a time, they had consequently been under the necessity of suspending their pursuits of agriculture: that in time of peace they always planted millet, and several kinds of vegetables; and that nothing could give him an equal degree of pleasure to that of seeing the *keerie*, now an instrument of war, converted into an utensil of husbandry; but that at present he was just on the eve of another campaign. He seemed much pleased when the landroft told him, that if, on his return from his expedition, he would send to Graaff Reynet, he should be supplied with corn and different garden-seeds; and he appeared to anticipate the happiness that his people would experience, after the fatigues and horrors of war, in returning to their ancient habits of peaceful industry.

The

The country inhabited by the people whom the colonists distinguish by the name of Kaffers, is bounded on the south by the sea-coast; on the east, by a tribe of the same kind of people who call themselves *Tambookies*; on the north, by the savage *Bosjesmans*; and on the west, by the colony of the Cape. With the *Tambookies* they live on friendly terms; but, like the Dutch peasantry, they have declared perpetual war against the *Bosjesmans*. Their expeditions, however, against these savages are not attended with the same success as those of the colonists. The *Bosjesmans* care as little for a *Hassagai* as they dread a musquet. The principal weapon used by the Kaffers is an iron spear from nine inches to a foot in length, fixed at the end of a tapering shaft about four feet long. Such an instrument is called by the Hottentots a *hassagai*, but the Kaffer name is *omkontoo*. In throwing this spear they grasp it with the palm of the hand, and raising the arm above the head, and giving the shaft a quivering motion to find the proper point of equilibrium, it is delivered with the fore-finger and the thumb. At the distance of fifty or sixty paces they can throw at a mark with a tolerable degree of exactness; but beyond that distance they have no kind of certainty. It appears to be a very indifferent sort of weapon, and easily to be avoided. In battle they receive the point of the *hassagai* upon an oval shield about four feet in depth, made from the hide of a bullock. Their other weapon, the *keerie*, is less formidable than the *hassagai*: this is a stick about two feet and a half long, with a round knob at the end about two inches in diameter, and very weighty, being the root of some shrub. They throw it in the same manner as the *Hassagai*, and are very expert in killing birds and the smaller sort

of antelopes, particularly the little *pygmæa*. The small end of the *keerie* serves, in time of peace, in their agriculture, as an instrument for dibbling, for which purpose it seems to be much better adapted than for a hostile weapon. The government on the east side of the Keiskamma is not exactly the same as on the west. Gaika is the acknowledged sovereign over that part of the country which lies to the eastward of the river. The few chiefs who live among his people are obedient to his commands, and consider themselves as his captains. Among the emigrant Kaffers, each chief is independent, though the inferior ones look up, in some measure, to those who are more powerful than themselves. These detached hordes seem in their government to resemble the ancient clans of the Highlands of Scotland.

Every Kaffer is a soldier and a tradesman. The first is not a profession, but taken up occasionally as the state, of which he is a member, may demand his services. War is not made by them for extension of territory or individual aggrandizement, but for some direct insult or act of injustice against the whole, or some member, of the community. His habits and way of life are better suited for the herdsman than for the warrior. From the nature of his food, which is chiefly milk, his manners are mild and gentle, at the same time that the exercise of the chase, which from pleasure he follows as well as for profit, gives him an erect deportment, and a boldness and openness of expression that indicate nothing like fear. This in fact is a passion of the mind which can hardly be said to exist in that of a Kaffer. In time of peace he leads the true pastoral life: his
cattle

cattle is his only care : he rarely kills one for his own consumption, except on some particular occasion. When a stranger of distinction visits a Kaffer chief, he selects from his herd the fattest ox, and divides it with his visitors. The evening that we departed from the village of the king, curiosity had brought together about a thousand people to see the strangers. Before they returned to their houses the king ordered four oxen to be slain, and the flesh to be distributed among them. For our party he intended a present of three oxen ; but these he observed must be selected from his herd with his own hands. The whole management of the cattle is left to the men, and they easily render them uncommonly expert in comprehending their meaning. The horns of their greatest favorites are twisted in their nascent state into very whimsical forms. These are effected by grasping the young horn with hot irons till it becomes soft, in which state the direction wished for is given to it. Those of the ox on which the king rode were laid along each side of the neck with the points just touching the shoulders.

Among their cattle was a particular breed different from any I had seen in the colony. They were short-legged, short-necked, generally of a black and white color, and their horns were only from four to eight inches in length, curved inwards ; and their extremities, which were nearly of the same thickness at the roots, pointed to the ears. These horns had no connection with the skull, but were attached merely to the skin, and so loose that they might be turned round in any direction. Extended to their greatest length they strike against the

animal's face when walking. They were considered as excellent beasts for riding or for bearing burthens. This variety of the common ox had not the dorsal tuft which the loose-horned ox of Abyssinia is described to possess.

While the men are employed in rearing and attending the cattle, the women are engaged in the affairs of the house, and in cultivating the ground. These, with the manufacture of baskets with the *Cyperus* grass, and of earthen pots for boiling their meat or corn, which are the chief part of their household utensils, the making their skin-cloaks, and nursing their children, furnish sufficient employment for the women. They are said to be exceedingly prolific; that twins are almost as frequent as single births, and that it is no uncommon thing for a woman to have three at a time. Their children, soon after birth, are suffered to crawl about perfectly naked; and at six or seven months they are able to run. A cripple or deformed person is never seen. The Dutch have an idea that if a Kaffer child should be born imperfect, the parents immediately strangle it. *Gaika's* mother seemed shocked at such a question being put to her; and assured me that a woman who could suffer such an unnatural crime to be committed, would be chased out of society. A high degree of civilization may indeed dull the feelings of nature, and policy may sometimes silently approve of crimes committed against it; but a savage feels the full force of parental affection.

There is perhaps no nation on earth, taken collectively, that can produce so fine a race of men as the Kaffers: they are tall,
stout,

stout, muscular, well made, elegant figures. They are exempt, indeed, from many of those causes that, in more civilized societies, contribute to impede the growth of the body. Their diet is simple; their exercise of a salutary nature; their body is neither cramped nor encumbered by clothing; the air they breathe is pure; their rest is not disturbed by violent love, nor their minds ruffled by jealousy; they are free from those licentious appetites which proceed frequently more from a depraved imagination than a real natural want: their frame is neither shaken nor enervated by the use of intoxicating liquors, which they are not acquainted with; they eat when hungry, and sleep when nature demands it. With such a kind of life, languor and melancholy have little to do. The countenance of a Kaffer is always cheerful; and the whole of his demeanor bespeaks content and peace of mind.

Though black, or very nearly so, they have not one line of the African negro in the composition of their persons. The comparative anatomist might be a little perplexed in placing the skull of a Kaffer in the chain, so ingeniously put together by him, comprehending all the links from the most perfect European to the Ourang-Outang, and thence through all the monkey-tribe. The head of a Kaffer is not elongated: the frontal and the occipital bones form nearly a semicircle; and a line from the forehead to the chin drawn over the nose is convex like that of most Europeans. In short, had not Nature bestowed upon him the dark-coloring principle that anatomists have discovered to be owing to a certain gelatinous fluid lying
between

between the epidermis and the cuticle, he might have ranked among the first of Europeans.

Among other things that may have contributed to have kept up the tall athletic stature of these people, is their frequent inter-marriages with strangers. The principal article of their trade with the Tambookie nation is the exchange of cattle for their young women. Almost every chief has Tambookie wives, though they pay much dearer for them than for those of their own people. Polygamy is allowed, without any inconvenience resulting from the practice, as it is confined almost to the chiefs. The circumstances of the common people will rarely allow them the indulgence of more than one wife, as no woman is to be obtained without purchase. The females being considered as the property of their parents, are always disposed of by sale. The common price of a wife is an ox or a couple of cows. Love with them is a very confined passion, taking but little hold on the mind. When an offer is made for the purchase of a daughter, she feels little inclination to refuse; she considers herself as an article at market, and is neither surprised, nor unhappy, nor interested, on being told that she is about to be disposed of. There is no previous courtship, no exchange of fine sentiments, no nice feelings, nor attentions to catch the affections, and to attach the heart. It would be unjust at the same time to tax them with sensuality. A Kaffer woman is chaste and extremely modest; yet, in many points of conduct, in which she differs from females of more-polished nations, the latter part of her character might be called in question. If, for instance,

instance, a young woman be asked whether she be married, not content with giving the simple negative, she throws open her cloak and displays her bosom ; and, as most frequently she has no other covering beneath, she perhaps may discover at the same time, though unintentionally, more of her charms.

Instances of infidelity are very rare ; and, when they do occur, are accidental rather than premeditated. The punishment is a fine, and, if the man chooses it, dismissal of his wife ; but should a husband surprize his wife in the act of adultery, the law would justify him in putting the parties to death. Their laws in general appear to be very simple, and grounded less on policy than on natural principles. If a murder should appear to be premeditated, the perpetrator is instantly put to death. If a man should kill another in his own defence, in a quarrel, or by accident, he must pay to the relations of the deceased, as a compensation for their loss, a certain fine, which is either agreed to among themselves, or settled by the chief and elders of the horde. In doing this, the value that the deceased bore in the society is taken only into consideration. A chief has no power over the lives of his subjects : should he by design, or in the heat of passion, put a man to death, he would incur the hazard of being expelled by the community. For theft there is no other punishment than that of restitution. They know nothing of the practice of imprisonment for any crime.

The ancients were of opinion that the face was always the index of the mind. Modern physiognomists have gone a step farther, and say, that a fine form, perfect in all its parts, cannot contain

contain a crooked or an imperfect mind. Judging the mind of a Kaffer by such a rule, it could not be pronounced deficient in talent. The experiment of giving him a suitable education has not yet been made; but there are perhaps no unlettered people on the face of the earth whose manners and opinions have more the appearance of civilization than those of the Kaffers: they are no contemptible artifans. Though they have no knowledge of smelting iron from the ore, yet when it comes to their hands in a malleable state, they can shape it to their purpose with wonderful dexterity. Every man is his own artist. A piece of stone serves for his hammer, and another for the anvil, and with these alone he will finish a spear, or a chain, or a metallic bead that would not disgrace the town of Birmingham. The shafts of their spears are also neatly made. Many of the ornaments of copper and iron, with which they adorn their heads, are far from being void of taste. The article that furnishes their dress is prepared and put together with some degree of ingenuity. Calves' skins only are used for this purpose: when taken from the animal they are fixed to the ground with wooden pegs, extended as far as they will bear, and well scraped, so that no part of the flesh remains upon them. As soon as they are sufficiently dry to have lost the power of contraction, they are beaten with stones till they become soft and pliant. In this state the interior side is scraped with sharp stones, and smeared with red ochre, till a nap, like that on cloth, is raised over the whole surface: they are then cut into proper shapes, and sewed together exactly in the same manner that the shoemakers of Europe stitch together two pieces of leather. Their bodkin is a piece of polished iron, and the thread

thread is the fibres of the tendons of the long dorsal muscle taken from various animals ; those in a wild state are preferred, as furnishing a much stronger thread than such as are domesticated. The Hottentots sew together their sheep-skins with the same material ; and the colonists, following the example of the natives, have recourse to the same article as a substitute for flaxen thread, which, when the English took possession of the settlement, bore an advance in price of a thousand *per cent*.

The progress of their agriculture, as observed by the king, has lately been checked by internal dissensions, and the encroachments of a rival power. They seem however to be much more inclined to the pastoral than the agricultural life,—a circumstance which will retard their advancement in civilization. The one finds leisure to sit down and reflect ; the other is never stationary, but wandering from place to place in search of food for the cattle. The chase employs the greatest portion of the time they have to spare. In the Kaffer country the larger sort of game, particularly the elephant and the buffalo, are become very scarce ; and not an ostrich nor a springbok is now to be found there. These two animals, keeping generally upon the plains, and avoiding the woods, were easily enclosed by the numerous hunting parties, and destroyed. The elephant and the buffalo fell also in the woods by the Haffagai, but more frequently by deep pits made in the ground across the paths that led to their usual haunts. In this manner they sometimes took the hippopotamus ; but the usual gait of this animal, when not disturbed, is so cautious and slow that he generally smelt the snare that was laid for him, and avoided it. The

more certain method of destroying him was to watch at night behind a bush close to his path; and, as he passed, to wound him in the tendons of the knee-joint, by which he was immediately rendered lame and unable to escape from the numerous Haffagais that afterwards assailed him. Numbers of this huge animal still remain in all their large rivers; indeed they seem not very solicitous about destroying it. The tusks, though of the finest ivory, are too small for the usual purposes to which they apply this article; and they seem to have less relish for grease than either the Hottentots or the colonists. The spoils of the chase are always bestowed upon their persons. The tusks of the elephant furnish them with ivory rings for the arm; the leopard supplies his skin to ornament the front of the cloak; and the skin of the tyger-cat is used by the women as pocket-handkerchiefs.

Besides the illicit trade that the Dutch farmers have carried on with this people, consisting of pieces of iron, copper, glass-beads, and a few other trifling articles, given to them in exchange for their cattle, the Kaffers have no kind of commerce with any other nation except their eastern neighbours the Tambookies. In addition to the young girls which they purchase from these people, they are supplied by them with a small quantity of iron in exchange for cattle. It has been supposed that the Tambookies, and other nations farther to the eastward, possessed the art of obtaining iron from the ore; but it is much more probable that they are supplied with it by the Portuguese settlers of Rio de la Goa, not far from which their country is situated. The only metals known to the Kaffers are iron and copper;

copper; and their only medium of exchange, and the only article of commerce they possess, is their cattle.

There are perhaps few nations, besides the Kaffers, that have not contrived to draw some advantages from the possession of a sea-coast. They have no kind of fishery whatsoever either with nets or boats. Whether they retain any remains of superstition attached to some of the various modifications through which the Mahometan, as well as the Christian, religion has undergone in its progress through different countries, that forbids them the use of fish; or whether their way of life has hitherto prevented them from thinking on the means of obtaining a livelihood from the waters, I cannot pretend to say; but they scarcely know what kind of a creature a fish is. The whole extent of their coast, that is washed by the sea and intersected by the mouths of several large rivers, does not produce a single boat, nor canoe, nor any thing that resembles a floating vessel. The short space of time, perhaps, which they have occupied that part of Africa they now inhabit, has not yet sufficiently familiarized them to the nature of deep waters, to entrust themselves upon a frail bark.

“ Illi robur et æs triplex

“ Circa pectus erat, qui fragilem truci

“ Commisit pelago ratem

“ Primus”——

The Kaffers most certainly are not the Aborigines of the southern angle of Africa. Surrounded on all sides by people
 E B 2 that

that differ from them in every point, in color, in features, in form, in disposition, in manners, and in language, it would be absurd to consider them as indigenous to the small spot they now possess. To speculate upon their origin, it might not perhaps be far from the mark to suppose them to have sprung from some of the tribes of those wandering Arabs known by the name of *Beduins*. These people are known to have penetrated into almost every part of Africa. Much of the Arab features are visible in the countenance of a Kaffer; and there is a strong resemblance in his way of life, his pastoral habits, his character, and treatment of strangers that may want his protection. Colonies of these people have found their way even to the islands of South Africa, where more difficulties would occur than in a journey over land to the Cape of Good Hope. By skirting the Red Sea, and turning to the southward along the sea-coast, the great desert of sand that divides Africa into two parts is entirely avoided, and the passage lies over a country habitable as far as is known in every part.

Circumcision of male children, that grand feature of Islamism, is universally practised among the Kaffers, and is the only exterior mark that seems to remain of a religious or sacred institution. He considers it, however, in the limited point of view of a duty owing to the memory of his ancestors, a prescriptive custom handed down to him as an example he is bound to follow. He neither ascribes the practice of it to a principle of cleanliness, nor to any other cause or motive, but contents himself by pleading ancient usage. A circumcisor is a profession, and I believe the only one that exists among the Kaffers. The
time

time of performing the operation is generally at the age of eight or nine years. The people who follow the profession travel from village to village, cutting all the male children who may be of a proper age. During the time he remains in a village, which may be eight or ten days, to see that his patients are doing well, he is feasted from house to house.

To perform the operation of circumcision nothing more is necessary than a sharp piece of iron in the form of the blade of a knife. The point of this is inserted between the glans and the prepuce on the upper part, and the skin laid open to the root where they unite; from thence the instrument is passed down each side to the frænum, close along the edge of which the whole prepuce is removed in two parts. After the operation the boy adopts a small bag of leather which extends a little beyond the glans penis, and fits sufficiently tight to remain on without binding, though some wear a belt to which the covering is attached by a string. The projecting end of the purse has a small shank about an inch in length by which it may more conveniently be drawn off: this, with the rings, and beads, and other ornaments, constitutes the whole of a Kaffer's summer dress. He wears nothing on his head, which is naturally covered with the same kind of curling hair as that of the Hottentot. This circumstance of short hair should seem to operate against the supposition of their Arabic origin; but their intermixture with the Hottentots and other neighbouring nations along the coast, would very speedily have produced it; and when a twist is once got into the hair, in a warm climate, it seems to increase with every generation. The *Bastaards* here

here produced between an European and a Hottentot have strong curling hair, and are, except in color, very like the Kaffers.

So different are the opinions and the feelings of different nations concerning religion, and so difficult do the most civilized people find it to express their notions clearly and consistently of the "unknown God," that little satisfactory information can be collected on those points without a very familiar and extensive knowledge of the language of the people among whom the inquiry is made, which was far from being the case in the present instance. The king being asked if they had any belief in a supernatural power, and, if so, what were their notions concerning it? replied, that they believed in the existence of some invisible power that sometimes brought good and sometimes evil upon them; it was this power that caused men to die suddenly, or before they arrived at years of maturity; that raised the wind, and made thunder and lightning to frighten, and sometimes, kill them; that led the sun across the world in the day, and the moon by night; and that made all those things which they could not understand nor imitate. I then shewed him my watch; and from his great surprize it was clear he had never seen one before. On examining attentively the movements, and observing that the motion was continued in his own hands, he looked at the surrounding spectators, and pronounced the word *feegas*, which was echoed back with a nod of the head from the whole crowd. Concerning this word the Hottentot interpreter could get no other information than that it was some influence of the dead over the living in instigating
and

and directing the actions of the latter. He called it a ghost or spirit, and said it was the Kaffer way of swearing. It appeared that if a Kaffer swore by a deceased relation, his oath was considered as inviolable. A promise was always held sacred when a piece of metal was broken between the parties ; a practice not unlike the breaking of a sixpence between two parting lovers, still kept up in some country places of England. That these people have not bewildered their imaginations so far with metaphysical ideas of the immortality of the soul, as the more civilized part of mankind have given into, and that their notions have been little directed towards a future state of existence, was clear from his replies to various questions put to him on that subject. As little information was likely to be gained on such abstruse points through the medium of a Hottentot interpreter, the conversation was turned to other subjects less embarrassing, and such as came more immediately before the senses.

Their skill in music is not above the level of that of the Hottentots. They have in fact no other instruments except the two in use among the latter, and a small whistle made of the bone of some animal, and used sometimes for giving orders to their cattle when at a distance. They seldom attempt to sing or to dance, and their performances of both are miserably bad. A Kaffer woman is only serious when she dances, and at such times her eyes are constantly fixed on the ground, and her whole body seems to be thrown into convulsive motions.

A greater

A greater degree of amusement seems to be derived by the women from the practice of *tattooing*, or marking the body by raising the epidermis from the cuticle; a custom that has been found to exist among most of the uncivilized nations inhabiting warm countries, and which probably owes its origin to a total want of mental resources, and of the employment of time. By slightly irritating, it conveys to the body pleasurable sensations. In Kaffer-land it has passed into a general fashion. No woman is without a tattooed skin; and their ingenuity is chiefly exercised between the breasts and on the arms.

The temperate manner of living among these people, their simple diet and their duly-proportioned quantity of exercise, subject them to few complaints. A limited number of simples compose the dispensary of all nations where physic is not a profession. The Kaffers make use of very few plants, and these chiefly in embrocations for sprains and bruises. The mother of Gaika was so solicitous to procure from us a quantity of common salt, to be applied as a purgative, that she sent a person to our waggons, fifteen miles distant, for it. They are not subject to any cutaneous diseases. The small-pox was once brought among them by a vessel that was stranded on their coast, and carried off great numbers. The marks of this disorder were apparent on the faces of many of the elder people. They have no fermented nor distilled liquors to impair the constitution. The only two intoxicating articles of which they have any knowledge are tobacco and hemp. The effects produced from smoking the latter are said to be fully as narcotic

as those of opium. In the use of this and of tobacco, the oriental custom of drawing the smoke through water by means of the hookah, though in a rude manner, is still retained. The bowl of their earthen-ware pipe is attached to the end of a thick reed which stands obliquely fixed into the side of an eland's horn. This horn being filled with water, the mouth is applied to the opposite end to that near which the reed is fixed. The Hottentot differs very materially from the Kaffer in the construction of *his* pipe. He reduces the stem to the length of two inches, that two senses may at the same time receive the benefit and the gratification resulting from the practice of smoking.

Few are the dietetic plants cultivated by the Kaffers. The millet, called by botanists the *holcus sorghum*, and a very large species of water-melon, seem to be their principal culinary plants. The *zamia cycadis*, a species of palm, grows wild in almost every part of the country, and is sometimes used, as a substitute for millet, to mix with milk as a kind of furmety. For this purpose the pith of the thick stem is buried in the ground for a month or five weeks, till it becomes soft and short, so as easily to be reduced to a pulpy consistence. They eat also the roots of the *iris edulis*, and several kinds of wild berries, and leguminous plants.

Had the Kaffers been more generally employed in tilling the ground, they had probably before this arrived at a more competent knowledge of the general causes by which the vicissitudes of the seasons are produced. At present they know little

more of astronomy than that in about thirty days the moon will have gone through all its different phases; and that in about twelve moons the same seasons will return. Their only chronology is kept by the moon, and is registered by notches in pieces of wood. It seldom extends beyond one generation till the old series is cancelled, and some great event, as the death of a favorite chief, or the gaining of a victory, serves for a new æra.

Not the smallest vestige of a written character is to be traced among them; but their language appears to be the remains of something far beyond that of any savage nation. In the enunciation it is soft, fluent, and harmonious; has neither the monotonous mouthing of the savage, nor the nasal nor guttural sounds that prevail in almost all the European tongues. It is as different from that of the Hottentots as the latter is from the English. In a very few words, and these are generally proper names, they have adopted the palatial clacking of the tongue used by the Hottentots. The mountains and rivers in the country, for instance, still retain their Hottentot names; a presumptive proof that the Kaffers were intruders upon this nation. It is singular enough that the Kaffers, as well as the Hottentots, should have obtained a name that never belonged to them. The word Kaffer could not be pronounced by one of that nation. They have no sound of the letter R in their language. A *Koffray*, among the Indians, is an infidel, a pagan, and was a general name applied by the early voyagers to those people, in whom they did not perceive any traits of a religious nature; but the origin of the name of Hottentot seems

seems not yet to have been ascertained. The Kaffers call themselves *Kouffie*, which word is pronounced by the Hottentots with a strong palatal stroke of the tongue on the first syllable. I know not if the Kaffer language bears any analogy to the Arabic; but their word *eliang* for the sun has an oriental found for expressing the same idea. The following brief specimen of the Kaffer language, with the synonymous words in that of the Hottentots', may serve to shew how little resemblance they bear to each other. The hyphen, in the latter, expresses the dental, and the circumflex the palatal, action of the tongue on those syllables over which they are placed.

	KAFFER.	HOTTENTOT.
The sun,	Eliang,	Surrie.
The moon,	Inyango,	kā.
The stars,	Imquemqueis,	Kōro.
The earth,	Umclabo,	Kōo.
Air or light,	Amaphoo,	Kōm.
Fire,	Leaw,	Ei.
Water,	Amaanzee,	Kām.
Thunder,	Ezoolo,	hōōnoo.
Lightning,	Leaw Ezoolo,	hōōnoo-ei.
Wind,	Oomoi,	qūa.
Rain,	Imphoola,	Tōōkai.
The Sea,	Ooloanje,	hurroo.
A Man,	Abaantoo,	Quaina.
A Woman,	Omfaas,	Quaisha.
An Ox,	Incabai,	Mnoo.
A Dog,	Eenja,	Toona.
	F F 2	To-day,

	KAFFER.	HOTTENTOT.
To-day,	Emenie,	Hafai.
To-morrow,	Gamtzo,	Quātrie.
One,	Eenyé,	Qūæ.
Two,	Zimbeenie,	Kām.
Three,	Zintaté,	gōna.
Four,	Zeené,	haka.
Five,	Zincano,	gofé.
Six,	Zintantaat.	
Seven,	Zinnoné.	
Eight,	Zintoamnayené.	
Nine,	Tuamnumyé.	
Ten,	Leefhung.	
Eleven,	Leefang-gay-yé.	
Twelve,	Leefangbeenie.	
Twenty,	Amafhoomomabeenie.	
Thirty,	Amafhoomomataté.	
Forty,	Amafhoomomazeené.	
A Hundred,	Ecoloo.	

The Kaffers differ also very materially from all the neighbouring nations in their manner of disposing of the dead. Funeral rites are bestowed only on the bodies of their chiefs, and on their children. The first are generally interred very deep in the kraals or places where their own oxen used to stand at nights; and the bodies of infants are most commonly deposited in the ant-hills that have been excavated by the myrmecophagæ or ant-eaters. The rest are exposed to be devoured by wolves. As these animals drag them away immediately

diately into their dens, the relations of the deceased are in no danger of being shocked or disgusted with the sight of the mangled carcase. A Kaffer, in consideration of this piece of service, holds the life of a wolf sacred, at least, he never endeavours to destroy it; the consequence of which is, that the country swarms with them. Some author has asserted, that the custom of burning the dead was universal, till the practice of it, adopted as the most prudent and convenient disposal of an unpleasant object, became a subject of ostentatious parade; and the funeral pile having at length exhausted the forests, necessity obliged them to have recourse to other means, some to interment, others to exposure in high places to be devoured by crows and vultures. Had the Kaffers ever burned their dead in the country they now inhabit, they were under no necessity of discontinuing the practice for want of fuel, being in the midst of inexhaustible forests.

The business that had brought us to the Kaffer king being finished, our next step was to examine the mouth of the Keiskamma, the magnitude and strength of the stream being so much superior to those of the Great-Fish river, seeming to promise a considerable opening at its union with the sea, there might, in all probability, be a bay or harbour. No part of the Kaffer coast has ever been surveyed, nor indeed visited, by any one who thought of placing it in a chart. Having, however, an untravelled and an uninhabited country to pass, in order to arrive at our object, most of the party thought fit to quit us, and to amuse themselves with shooting sea-cows in
the

the Keiskamma, whilst we turned off to the southward towards the sea-coast. In the dusk of the evening we came to a small clear stream, upon the bank of which we pitched our tent. It intersected one of the most beautiful parts of Africa that had yet fallen under our observation. The bold eastern bank clothed with hanging-wood, and the extensive meadows rising gradually on the opposite side into fine swells covered with grafs, and interrupted here and there by clumps of tall shrubbery and straggling trees, gave to the country the appearance of a suite of English parks or pleasure grounds. Along the river stood a number of small villages and detached huts; but they were entirely deserted. The land had evidently been under cultivation no long time past. Fields of millet that had been consumed by the birds were still standing in regular rows. It appeared to be the *bolcus sorgbum* of Linnæus. Several large-water melons, of an insipid taste, had planted themselves from the seed of the old ones that had decayed on the ground. Several implements of husbandry, *keeries*, and small wooden spades, were lying in the gardens; and it appeared as if the inhabitants had been driven away in a hasty manner.

Some fires being seen at no great distance from the place of our encampment, and the dogs keeping a perpetual barking after it grew dark, we began to suspect that our motions were watched by one of the parties, the Kaffer king, or the emigrant chiefs. In the course of the night, however, the disturbance made by the dogs was explained, from an immense troop of wolves attracted by the smell of an ox that had been killed the preceding

preceding evening. These creatures came in such a body as completely to chase away the dogs, and to frighten all our people though armed with musquets.

Besides the common wolf and the domestic dog, there are no fewer than five distinct species of the canine tribe in Southern Africa that have passed through my hands: three of these are called in the colony by the general name of jackal; one the *mesomelas*, an animal well known and very common in every part of the Cape; another, the *aurcus*, which is smaller than the first, goes generally in troops, and is commonly met with in the Sneeuwberg: the third is a species of fox, as yet, I believe, not described; the color is grizzled, the ground cinerous blue mixed with silvery hairs; face, legs, and belly light-brown; tail straight, grizzled, and bushy; ears long, pointed, erect; face remarkably pointed; the hair soft, and resembling fur; in stature it is considerably less than the common fox. The other two go under the name of wolves; one is the *crocuta*, called the spotted wolf; the other is an enormous beast, and seldom met with except in the remote parts of the colony: its size is that of the largest Newfoundland dog; the color a pale fallow; the hair of the neck and back long, thick, and clotted; tail short and straight; shoulders, thighs, and legs marked with large irregular black blotches: from its having only four toes on the fore-feet, it may probably be a variety of the common hyæna.

The smell of the carcase presently attracted a prodigious number of birds of prey, one of which, a small kite, entirely brown,

brown, with a forked tail, was so bold that it suffered itself to be knocked down with sticks. Just the reverse was the case with a beautiful small hawk nine inches long, of a chocolate brown, with a triangular black spot on each of the back feathers; exterior side of the wing feathers marked with semicircular ferruginous spots passing into white at the edges; tail barred with alternate black and cinereous-blue stripes; beak and nails of a livid color. A species of crow in vast numbers is generally found to attend birds of prey. It is uncommonly bold and ravenous, and all its habits are vulturine: the beak is stronger and more crooked than that of the raven, and the upper mandible is carinated. One sex has a white shield down the back only; the other both on the back and the breast. It is either a variety of the raven, or an undescribed species. Of other kinds of birds, there seemed to be few that are not commonly met with in most parts of the colony. Thrushes and turtle-doves were the most numerous. The former are known in the colony under the general name of *sprew*. A description of the different thrushes of Africa would alone nearly fill a volume, though not more than thirty species appear to have been noticed, of which the *nitens*, reflecting every shade of azure, green, and purple, is the most elegant, and one of the best singers. The only curious and rare bird that I obtained in the Kaffer country was the *buceros Africanus*, the African horn-bill.

In one day's journey from the Beeka we came to the mouth of the Keiskamma, near which the river was about the width of the Thames at Woolwich, still, and apparently of great depth;

depth ; but the entrance was guarded by a bar of sand, upon which the surf broke with great violence. On each side of the mouth reefs of rocks ran out to a considerable distance ; and the wild and rocky coast was without sinuosities as far as the eye could reach. The mouth of the Keiskamma was found by observation to be in $33^{\circ} 12'$ south latitude, and $28^{\circ} 6'$ east longitude.

The only kind of game that was met with near the sea-coast was the harte-beest, the riet-bok, and the ree-bok. Innumerable traces of hippopotami were visible along the bank of the river ; but none of these animals made their appearance.

The weather being remarkably fine, butterflies and moths were flying about in the greatest abundance. Of the latter, I noticed near fifty distinct species that, in one evening, came upon the table in the tent, attracted by the light of the candle. Entomologists, employed in making a collection of the *phalanae*, could not adopt a better plan than that of placing a tent with a light in it near the side of a wood. Some of the *papiliones* were very brilliant ; and there were, no doubt, among them many species that could not be matched even in Mr. Drury's extensive and valuable cabinet of foreign insects. I regretted the want of time and convenience to make a collection of the insects of the country.

Having recrossed the Great-Fish river, on our return we directed our course across a plain towards Graaff Reynet. On this plain was found, some years ago, upon the surface of

the ground, a mass of pure iron in a malleable state. Considered as a great curiosity, it was carried from place to place, and is now in Cape Town. The mass was entirely amorphous; exhibited no appearance of having ever been in a mine; no matrix of any kind was adhering to it; nor in the cavities of its surface were any pebbles or marks of crystallization. It was exceedingly tough, and the fracture more like that of lead than of iron. The weight of the mass might be about three hundred pounds. A specimen of this iron being carried into England, some time ago, by Colonel Prehn, it was supposed that this metal was to be met with in its native state at the Cape of Good Hope. Mineralogists, however, are still in doubt whether iron, though the most abundant of all metals, has yet been discovered in a native state; and whether those masses that have been found in Siberia, in Senegal, and a few other places, were not the products of art, which, on some occasion, or by accident, had been buried in the ground. The mass in question exhibited evident marks of force having been used in order to flatten and to draw it out. It had probably been the thick part of a ship's anchor, carried from the coast to the place where it was found by the Kaffers, and attempted by them to be reduced into smaller pieces.

Travelling along the feet of the *Rietberg* before mentioned, on the northern side, we passed several fine clumps of forest-trees in the kloofs of the mountain, and among these obtained three new species of timber foreign to the woods near Zwart Kop's bay. The face of the country was here particularly rugged; the hills were composed of sand-stone, resting on
bases

bases of blue slate. In the perpendicular side of one of these was oozing out a salt of various colors, similar to that described and found near the salt lake of Zwart Kop's river. The upper part of the face of this hill consisted of large, regular, rhomboidal tablets, whose projecting angles formed a kind of cornice to the face: these rested on a mass of purple slate, crumbling into dust. The white veins of quartz that appeared to have once been liquid, and to have flowed through the slate in curved seams, were now far advanced in their transitions into clay; pieces of these veins were friable between the fingers; several prismatic quartz crystals were found in a corroded state, and evidently decomposing into the same earth. The changes of quartz into clay are perceptible in all the mountains of Southern Africa. It should seem that this is the last stage of all the earthy bodies. Future discoveries in chemistry may perhaps demonstrate that the earths, now considered as having different bases, were originally formed of one, and are reducible to the same ultimate principle; or that they are convertible substances. That exposure to, and combination with, the different airs that float in the atmosphere, or with water impregnated by different materials, they become subject to pass into the nature of each other.

Several detached pieces of hematite were found among the mass of slate. Indeed there is scarcely a mountain in Africa that does not produce iron ores; and ochres are every where found in the greatest abundance. The finest of these are met with in the state of impalpable powders inclosed in crustaceous coverings of a reddish color, of the hardness and consistence of

baked earthen ware, sometimes in single nodules of an inch or two inches diameter, but more frequently in clusters of two, three, or four nodules, connected by necks which are also hollow. In these stones every shade of color is said to have been found, except the greens; but the most common are those of a pale yellow and chocolate brown. The country people know them by the name of *paint-stones*, because the powders they contain, when mixed up with oil, make very good paint, without any sifting or further preparation.

On the upper part of the Bosjesman's river we received a visit from the chief of the Ghonaquas, followed by the last remains of this mixed tribe of Kaffer and Hottentot, consisting of about a dozen people. The prediction of Vaillant concerning this horde has turned out but too true. The name of Ghonaqua, like those of the numerous tribes of Hottentots now extinct, is just on the eve of oblivion. Driven out of their ancient possessions in the Zuure Veldt by the colonists, they yet found an asylum from the father of Gaika, in one of the most fertile districts of his kingdom, watered by the river *Kaapna*: here they were suffered to remain in quiet till the late disturbances among the Kaffers, occasioned by the refusal of Zambie to yield to his nephew the power of the government. Unwilling to act, or undecided which part to take, they became a common enemy; and those who remained in the country were plundered and massacred by both parties; whilst those who fled across the Great-Fish river met with the same treatment from the Dutch farmers of Bruyntjes Hoogté. Some sought refuge in the plains of Zuure Veldt, and were there plundered by the emigrant

emigrant Kaffers. The last remaining party, with their chief at their head, had concealed themselves among the thick cover of the Rietberg, where they had been surpris'd by a party of straggling Kaffers who had put the greatest part of the horde to death, and carried off the whole of their cattle. It was the remaining few who were left in this helpless and deplorable state, that came to entreat we should lay before the Kaffer king their melancholy condition, requesting they might be restored to his protection. Unluckily for them they had made their application too late; and all that could now be done was to furnish them with documents to that king, with a verbal message favorable to their wishes.

The chief Kaabas and the gay Narina, who have furnished so long and so eccentric an episode in the page of a French gentleman's travels among these people, were no longer recollected by them. The names even were totally unknown in their language.

Notwithstanding the friendly disposition of the Kaffer king towards the emigrant chiefs, we understood at this place they had positively refused to pass the Fish-river, withheld, no doubt, by the gang of outlaws before mentioned, on the banks of the Karooka. To drive them over at that time with an armed force, to be sent from the Cape expressly for that purpose, was deemed an unadvisable measure; but fresh disturbances among the foolish people of Graaff Reynet having since rendered it indispensibly necessary to throw troops into that district,

district, and the Kaffers having been instigated by promises and presents from the boors to enter into hostilities against the British troops, coercive measures were found to be unavoidable in order to drive these people out of the colony, and break the connection that subsisted between them and the peasantry. The country is here so close and unfavourable for regular troops to act, that a small party, with an officer at their head, were cut off by surprise. Once a numerous body of Kaffers made an attack, in the day-time, upon the camp in Zuure Veldt, where they knew the ammunition to have been lodged. For the space of an hour and half they stood the fire of musquetry and two three-pound field-pieces, and endeavoured several times to storm with single hassagais in their hands, the wooden shafts being broken short off by the sockets. Several Dutch boors were among the party, firing musquetry from behind the bushes. Being repulsed at length with great loss, the boors thought it best to throw themselves on mercy; the Kaffers disappeared; and the vagabond *Büys*, the chief of the outlaws and promoter of all the disturbances, fled into Kaffer-land, far beyond the dominions of Gaika.

In our way to the Drosdy we passed over the fertile division of Bruyntjes Hoogté, notorious for the turbulent spirit of its inhabitants, a set of adventurers, chiefly soldiers or sailors deserted or discharged from the Dutch army and the Company's shipping, who, having at this great distance from the seat of government found a country that with little or no labor would supply most of their wants, thought themselves independent of all

all authority, and attempted even to dictate to that of the Cape, which indeed was weak and timid enough to suffer their excesses to be committed with impunity.

From Bruyntjes Hoogté we descended to the Karoo plains of Camdeboo. These plains are intersected by the Bly river, the Vogel river, the Platte river, and the Melk river, in their passage from the Sneuwberg into the Sundag river. Naked as the surface appeared to be, game of every sort was very plentiful, particularly springboks and the larger kinds of antelopes. Upon those parched plains are also found a great variety of small quadrupeds that burrow in the ground, and which are known to the colonists under the general name of *meer-cats*. They are mostly of that genus of animals to which zoologists have given the name of *viverra*. An eagle, making a stoop at one of these, close where we were passing, missed his prey; and both fell a sacrifice, one to the gun, the other to the dogs. They both happened to be undescribed species. Of the eagle, the head, neck, back, and abdomen, were of a pale ferruginous brown; wings and tail steel-blue, the latter faintly barred with small bands from the root to the middle; the *cera* pale yellow; beak and nails black; the feet entirely covered with downy feathers; length two feet two inches. The *viverra* was wholly of a bright chestnut color; the tail shaded with black hairs, bushy, straight, and white at the extremity; ears short and round; on the fore feet five, and the hind feet four, toes; the body and tail each one foot long. Others of this genus are the *muski-liatte cat*, or *zenik*, of the *Systema Naturæ*; the *tigrina* or tiger-cat; the *mellivora* or *ratel*; and the *cafra*. In general these
animals

animals are easily domesticated. One species, however, is very difficult, if not impossible, to render tame. It resembles the *pectorius* or pol-cat of America, with this difference only, that the latter has five parallel white lines along the back, and the African species only four, that diverge from the shoulder. When first taken they smell very strongly of musk, which however shortly wears off by confinement. There is also found in this part of the country a beautiful little ground-squirrel, with a white stripe on each side from the shoulder to the flank; the body a dark chestnut color, about eight inches in length; tail ten inches, grizzled, black, brown, and white.

That elegant bird, the Balearic crane, *grus pavonina*, was first met with near the Melk river; and Guinea fowls were very abundant near every streamlet. Bee-eaters, *merops apiaffer*, with their beautiful plumage, and *certbias*, or creepers, with colors still more brilliant, were fluttering about in vast numbers among the mimofas of the Sunday river, where are also many beautiful species both of kingfishers and woodpeckers. The modest garb of the *colii*, of which I met with three species, formed a striking contrast with the gaudy plumage of the others. There are several species of swallows in the Cape, all migratory. One in particular, with a red-spotted breast, frequents the habitations of man, where it builds its nest. In many of the farm-houses are small shelves nailed against the beams, expressly for the swallows; and I have heard it asserted very commonly, that the same birds return to their places for many years, and generally on the very same day; a striking instance that Nature is not more constant in the organization of the machine

machine than in the effects that are intended to result from it.

The Sunday river was nearly dry, which gave our people an opportunity of taking plenty of turtle with great ease. These run generally about a foot in diameter: the females are exceedingly prolific in eggs, and are by no means wanting in flavor. The river abounds also with short thick eels, that are very delicious. From the ford of the river to the Drosdy of Graaff Reynet is a very short distance. We arrived at this village on the 30th September, having made our long circuitous journey in less than two months.

CHAP. IV.

Sketches on a journey into the Country of the Bosjesmans.

THREE weeks had scarcely elapsed, after our return from the Kaffer country, till we were ready for another expedition to the northward, across the Sneuwberg or Snowy Mountains. In these mountains, and in the country immediately behind them, dwells a race of men, that, by their habits and manner of life, are justly entitled to the name of savage;—a name, however, of which, it is greatly to be feared, they have been rendered more worthy by the conduct of the European settlers. They are known in the colony by the name of Bosjesmans, or men of the bushes, from the concealed manner in which they make their approaches to kill and to plunder. They neither cultivate the ground nor breed cattle, but subsist, in part, on the natural produce of their country, and make up the rest by depredations on the colonists on one side, and the neighbouring tribes of people that are more civilized than themselves, on the other. Twenty years ago, it seems, they were less numerous and less ferocious than at the present day; and their boldness and numbers are said of late to have very much increased. At one time they were pretty well kept under by regular expeditions of the peasantry against them. Each division had its commandant, who was authorized to raise a certain number of
men,

men, and these were furnished by government with powder and ball. It was a service at all times taken with reluctance, especially by such as were least exposed to the attacks of the savages; and, during the late disturbances of Graaff Reynet, these expeditions met with considerable interruptions. The people of Bruyntjes Hoogté were the first who failed in raising their proportion of men. Zuure Veldt was deserted, and Camdeboo and Zwart Ruggens became negligent and remiss. The people of Sneuwberg, lying nearest to the common enemy, were left to sustain the whole brunt of the business; and had they not conducted themselves with great fortitude, perseverance, and address, that valuable part of the colony, the nursery of cattle, had now been abandoned. A whole division called the *Tarka*, and a great part of another, the Sea-Cow river and Rhinoceros-berg, had been deserted, as well as a small part of Sneuwberg. There is, however, another cause which, more than the interruption to the expeditions, has tended to increase the strength and the boldness of these savages, and which, unless removed, will in the end effect the utter ruin of this distant part of the colony. The case is this: The government of the Cape, which seemed to have been as little acquainted with the temper and disposition of its distant subjects as with the geography of the country, formed all its resolutions, respecting the Bosjesmans, on representations made to it by the persons immediately concerned. In consequence of these representations, it decreed that such of the Bosjesmans as should be taken alive in the expeditions made against them, were to be distributed by lot among the commandant and his party, with whom they

were to remain in a state of servitude during their lives. Such as have been taken very young and well treated, have turned out most excellent servants; they have shewn great talent, great activity, and great fidelity. An opposite treatment has been productive of a contrary effect; and the brutal conduct of most of the Dutch farmers towards those in their employ has already been noticed. The poor Hottentot bears it with patience, or sinks under it; but on the temper and the turn of mind of the Bosjesman it has a very different effect. He takes the first opportunity that offers of escaping to his countrymen, and contrives frequently to carry off with him a musquet, and powder and ball. With tales of cruelty he excites them to revenge; he assists them in their plans of attack; tells them the strength of the whole, and of individuals; the number of their cattle, and the advantages and the dangers that will occur in the attempt to carry them off; the manner in which expeditions are conducted against them; and, in short, every thing he knows respecting the colonists. Armed with musquets and poisoned arrows, a party of these people was bold enough, a few days before we commenced our journey, to approach within four or five miles of the Drosdy, from whence they carried off several hundred sheep. They were followed into a kloof of one of the mountains of Sneuwberg, where they remained in possession of their plunder, laughing at their pursuers, and inviting them to approach and taste a little of their own mutton. One of them fired a musquet, and the ball grazing the hat of a peasant, caused the pursuing party to make a precipitate retreat.

In

In order therefore to bring about a conversation with some of the chiefs of this people ; to try if, by presents and a lenient conduct, they could be prevailed upon to quit their present wild and marauding way of life ; at the same time to see the state of the colony, and the situation of the inhabitants ; to inspect the boundaries, and to examine the nature of the country, a journey to the northward appeared indispensably necessary. It promised also much curiosity : and as no European traveller, except the two gentlemen mentioned in the introductory Chapter, had ever ascended the mountains of Snow, a great deal of novelty was to be expected from it.

On the 20th of October we departed from the Drosdy, crossed the *Sunday* and its accompanying Karroo, and at the distance of ten miles north-westerly reached the foot of the mountains, within which a narrow defile of five miles in length, and a steep ascent of three miles at the farther extremity, led upon the extensive plains, and among the scattered mountains that compose the Sneuwberg. From the plains of Camdeboo, the fronts of these mountains appear to be the most regular formed, though the most confusedly placed, of any within the limits of the colony. The stone stratum that terminates their summits is so perfectly horizontal, and so regularly squared at the angles, that their vast height and magnitude alone contradict the idea of supposing them to be lines of masonry.

It was on one of the plains that lie extended within these clusters of mountains, where we encamped in the dusk of the evening.

evening. The wind blew fresh, and the thermometer had descended to forty-five degrees. On the preceding day, at Graaff Reynet, it stood at eighty-five in the shade till near sun-set, and at seventy-six during the night ; and in the course of this day's journey it was at eighty-three. The sudden change was probably occasioned, not so much by the difference of elevation, which in a Dutch manuscript journal is estimated at 4800 feet, as by the sudden evaporation of the moisture caused by a heavy fall of rain that had here continued during the preceding day and night. An extraordinary decrease of temperature is always the consequence of continued rain in South Africa.

The following day brought us to *Waay Hoek*, or Windy Corner, the habitation of the late provisional landroft of Graaff Reynet, who had signified an inclination to accompany us on the intended expedition. He had attended Governor Van Plettenberg on his journey northwards, and had since been commandant for many years on expeditions against the Bosjesmans, which had given him an opportunity of being acquainted not only with the different parts within, but also with much of the country beyond, the limits of the colony. Having prepared himself for the journey, we remained with him only for the night ; and on the following morning sent forward the waggons, while we made an excursion into the mountains on our left in search of Bosjesmans. A large party of these people had carried off a number of cattle but two days before, and another was supposed to be still hovering about in these mountains. The places of their usual haunts are easily discoverable,

verable, but generally very difficult of access, and not safe to approach. The kloofs or chasms, washed by torrents of water rushing down the steep sides of the high stratified mountains, frequently leave a succession of caverns, of which the Bosjesman chooses the highest, as not only removing him farther from the danger of a surprise, but giving him also the command of a greater extent of country.

In one of these retreats were discovered their recent traces. The fires were scarcely extinguished, and the grass on which they had slept was not yet withered. On the smooth sides of the cavern were drawings of several animals that had been made from time to time by these savages. Many of them were caricatures; but others were too well executed not to arrest attention. The different antelopes that were there delineated had each their character so well discriminated, that the originals, from whence the representations had been taken, could, without any difficulty, be ascertained. Among the numerous animals that were drawn, was the figure of a zebra remarkably well done; all the marks and characters of this animal were accurately represented, and the proportions were seemingly correct. The force and spirit of drawings, given to them by bold touches judiciously applied, and by the effect of light and shadow, could not be expected from savages; but for accuracy of outline and correctness of the different parts, worse drawings than that of the zebra have passed through the engraver's hands. The materials with which they had been executed were charcoal, pipe-clay, and the different ochres. The animals represented were zebras, qua-chas, gemsboks, springboks, reeboks,

reeboks, elands, baboons, and ostriches, all of which, except the gemsbok, are found upon the very spot. Several crosses, circles, points, and lines, were placed in a long rank as if intended to express some meaning; but no other attempt appeared at the representation of inanimate objects. In the course of travelling, I had frequently heard the peasantry mention the drawings in the mountains behind the Sneeuwberg made by the Bosjesmans; but I took it for granted they were caricatures only, similar to those on the doors and walls of uninhabited buildings, the works of idle boys; and it was no disagreeable disappointment to find them very much the reverse. Some of the drawings were known to be new; but many of them had been remembered from the first settlement of this part of the colony.

A part of the upper surface of the cavern was covered with a thick coating of a black substance, that externally had the appearance of pitch. In consistence, tenacity, and color of a brownish black, it resembled Spanish liquorice. The smell was slightly bituminous, but faint, and rather offensive. It flamed weakly in the candle, and gave out a thin brownish fluid, but no smell while burning; the residuum was a black coal substance, two-thirds of the original bulk. The patch adhering to the rock was covered with myriads of very minute flies. In reaching up to it in order to cut off a specimen with my knife, the people called out to me to desist, assuring me that if the smallest particle got into the eye the sight of it would be lost for ever; that it was deadly poison, and used by the Hottentots to smear the points of their arrows. They all agreed in
the

the baneful qualities of this black matter, from having experienced the fatal effects of it on several of their companions, who had suffered lingering deaths from wounds received with arrows poisoned by the *klip gift*, or rock poison. Not having as yet the opportunity of trying the deleterious quality of the substance, I cannot pretend to say whether this account of the peasantry be strictly true.

In the course of the day we arrived at the house of Krüger, the commandant of Sneeuwberg, who kindly offered his services to be of our party, though he had but just returned from an expedition against the Bosjesmans. He had at this time with him in the house one of these wild men, with his two wives and a little child, which had come to him by lot, out of forty that had been taken prisoners. The man was only four feet five inches high, and his wives were still of a shorter stature, one being four feet two, and the other four feet three inches. He represented to us the condition of his countrymen as truly deplorable. That for several months in the year, when the frost and snow prevented them from making their excursions against the farmers, their sufferings from cold and want of food were indescribable: that they frequently beheld their wives and children perishing with hunger, without being able to give them any relief. The good season even brought little alleviation to their misery. They knew themselves to be hated by all mankind, and that every nation around them was an enemy planning their destruction. Not a breath of wind rustled through the leaves, not a bird screamed, that were not supposed to announce danger. Hunted thus like beasts of prey,

and ill-treated in the service of the farmers, he said that they considered themselves driven to desperation. The burden of their song was vengeance against the Dutch. This little man was intended to have accompanied us; but as he seemed more inclined to abide by his wives, he was permitted to follow his uxorious inclinations.

Proceeding to the northward, a curious but truly deplorable spectacle presented itself. It was a troop of locusts resting upon the ground. They covered a space of about one square mile in extent, so completely that the surface appeared to the eye, at a little distance, to have been burnt and strewed over with brown ashes. Not a shrub nor blade of grass was visible. The waggons passed directly through them, before which they rose up in a cloud that darkened the air on each side. Desirous of seeing the whole troop on the wing, the Hottentots ran amongst them, and the horses were made to gallop through them, but without success; none but such as were immediately under the feet of the men and horses rose up. The peasantry affirm that they are not to be driven away unless the signal for departure should be given from their commander in chief, one of which is supposed to accompany every troop.

On the evening of the 23d, we encamped at the foot of a large mountain, remarkable for its pointed peak, and also from its detached situation. It was separated from all the circumjacent mountains, on four sides, by as many large level meadows abundant in springs of water. It forms one of the highest points of South Africa. The waters flow from the surrounding

ing

ing meadows in every direction; a circumstance from which Colonel Gordon probably was induced to give it the name of the *Compass Mountain*. On the south-east side is the source of the Sunday river. On all the others are springs whose streamlets unite at no great distance from their sources, and flow directly to the north. The general surface of the country, on the northern side of the mountain, is at least fifteen hundred feet above the source of the Sunday river; and the height of the peak above this general surface was found, by trigonometrical measurement, to be also very nearly fifteen hundred feet.

The rills of water that meandered through the meadows were covered with the common reed, and these were frequented with vast flocks of small birds, particularly with the *loxia orix*, called by English ornithologists the *granadier*, and by the French, the cardinal of the Cape of Good Hope. The male is remarkable for its gaudy plumage during the spring and summer months: in these seasons the neck, breast, back, upper and under part of the rump, are of a bright crimson; the throat and abdomen are glossy black. During the other six months it is stripped of its gaudy attire, and adopts the modest garb of the female, which is at all times that of a greyish brown. They are gregarious, and build their nests in large societies. Another remarkable bird we observed in the reeds. This was the long-tailed finch, described in the *Systema Naturæ*, as the *loxia Caffra*, on the authority of Thunberg; and in the same book, with more propriety, as the *emberiza longicauda*. The changes that this bird undergoes are still more extraordinary than those of the granadier. The black

feathers of its tail, which are fifteen inches long, while the body is barely five, are placed in vertical positions like those of the domestic cock. The bounty of nature seems to have been extended to this bird to its disadvantage; its tail, when on the wing, impeding, instead of assisting, its flight. This long tail, however, endures but the season of love. In the winter it assumes the same as that of the female, short, brown, and horizontal, and it can then fly like other birds. The change of plumage, in many birds, from that of the male to the female, and the contrary, has led some speculative naturalists to adopt an opinion that a change of sex also actually takes place. This, however, is not the case with respect to the two birds in question. The long-tailed finch appears to be one of those few of the feathered tribe that, in a state of nature, are found to be polygamous. I have frequently seen from thirty to forty of their nests together in one clump of reeds, but never more than two males at one place. The construction of their nests is very curious. These are entirely composed of green grass neatly plaited into a round ball, and knotted fast between the stems of two reeds. The entrance is through a tube whose orifice is on the under side, next to the water.

The termination of the Snowy mountains is about twelve miles to the north-eastward of Compassberg; and here a port or pass through them opens upon a plain extending to the northward, without a swell, farther than the eye could command. Eight miles beyond this pass we encamped for the night, when the weather was more raw and cold than we had hitherto experienced on the Sneuwberg. The thick clouds
being

being at length dissipated by the sun, the Compafsberg shewed itself white near the summit with snow.

The division of Sneuwberg comprehends a great extent of country. The moment we had ascended from the plains behind Graaff Reynet to those more elevated of Sneuwberg, the difference of the face of the country and its natural productions were remarkably striking. One of the characters of the African mountains, as already has been noticed, is that of having one of their sides steep and lofty, whilst the opposite one gradually sloped off in an inclined plane. The Compafsberg is the last to the northward that presents a bold and high front to the southern horizon. Beyond this the northern aspects of the mountains are the highest.

It was an observation sufficiently striking, and which must have occurred to every one who has been the least attentive to the mountains and rivers of South Africa, that the ascent of the former invariably increases with the descent of the latter; or, in other words, that the highest sides of the mountains face that quarter towards which the rivers flow, whilst their sloping sides are opposed to the streams. That such, indeed, are the appearances, which ought to present themselves on the surface of every country of Neptunian origin, is conformable to what may every day be observed, on a small scale, in the beds of rivers and most water-courses. The banks of earth or sand, that the current of waters has there deposited, have always their highest points down the stream. The reason is too obvious to require an explanation. The formation of such
banks

banks in the beds of rivers supplies also another observation that is generally found to take place on the grand scale. They continue to elongate at both extremities: the upper increases by the diminution of the stream, which it has divided and thrown on each side, and the lower by the eddy caused from the meeting again of this divided current. Analogous to this effect, the point of land between the confluence of two rivers has been observed, by an able geographer, always to travel downwards towards the sea; and the point of land that divides a river, to travel upwards towards the source.

The clusters of mountains that form what is usually called the Sneuwberg, are composed of sand-stone lying nearly in horizontal strata; few of them were observed to have the quartzy summits that prevailed in the great ranges near the Cape, and that of Zwarteberg; but their bases, like these, rested on blue schistus. The soil of the Sneuwberg was generally clayey, frequently clodded together in indurated masses that appeared greasy to the eye, and such masses contained a large portion of dark foliated mica. The plants that chiefly prevailed on the elevated parts were tufts of long grass, small heathy shrubs, a beautiful mesembryanthemum with large clusters of small, bright, red flowers, and another that seemed to differ in nothing from the former, except in the color of the petals, which were white. Besides these were also a small diosma, and two species of the iris with tall spikes of flowers, one blue, the other yellow. The lower parts of the plains were charmingly embroidered with almost the whole tribe of syngenesious plants. Of these were most abundant various species

species of *arctotis*, *otbonna*, *cineraria*, *aster*, *calendula*, *athanasia*, *tanacetum*, *senecio*, and *gnaphalium*, all of them, at this time, in the height of their bloom.

But that which mostly discriminated the Sneeuwberg from other parts of the country, was the total want of shrubbery. For miles together these elevated plains produced not a stick. We passed one kloof between two hills, in which stood about a dozen small mimosas; and nothing could more strongly have marked the scarcity of bushes than the prodigious quantity of nests that these contained, made by different species of small birds, chiefly sparrows, finches, and grosbeaks. They were scattered over the branches as thickly as those of crows in a rookery; and, what was still more remarkable, there stood in the same bush, with six or eight others, the nest of a hawk, containing two white eggs with small crimson specks. The bird, on the wing, appeared to be brown and white, and was named by the peasantry the white falcon. The nests of the small birds were mostly hedged round with thorns, and, like that of the magpie, had a cover built over them, and they were all entered through tubes or small holes.

It is a remarkable fact that there are many persons in Sneeuwberg who have never seen a tree. Even the commandant, who for many years had traversed the whole country to the northward in expeditions against the Bosjesmans, had never seen a wood till he came with us, on the present journey, into the Kaffer country. Very few of the houses have a stick of any sort standing near them. The violent winds, more than the

the

the intensity of the cold, injure the growth of plants ; for oaks even, that in Europe bear almost any degree of cold, will not grow on the Sneuwberg.

The fuel used by the inhabitants is the dung of animals collected in the places where their cattle are nightly pent up, to prevent their destruction by wolves and other beasts of prey, and their depredation by Bosjesmans. In the spring of the year this is dug out in long squares, as turf is cut from the bog in the northern parts of England ; these are spread out to dry, and then, like turf, are piled up in stacks for the winter's consumption. At all the farm-houses we passed they were busily employed in cutting or in stacking their fuel.

The causes that operate against the growth of trees and shrubs extend not to the gramineous plants. Grain of all kinds is fully as productive here as in the lower districts ; but the crops are generally a month, and sometimes two, later, which renders them liable to be caught in the season of thunder that is exceedingly violent in these mountains, and almost always attended by heavy showers of hail. The finest crops have sometimes been completely destroyed by these in the course of half an hour. The returns, however, of this season being tolerably constant, commencing generally with the new year, they can in most years prevent the evil by an early feed-time. But there is a calamity of a different nature attending their crops, against which there seems to be no remedy. This arises from the multitudes of locusts with which they are occasionally infested. When these insects make their appearance,

not

not a single field of corn remains unconsumed by them. In the present year, I don't suppose that the whole of the Sneuwberg will produce a single bushel. In such years the inhabitants eat no bread; they bear the evil with great patience, and console themselves by saying, that they must make up for the loss in this article by killing a double quantity of mutton. But the greatest of all the drawbacks on the profits of their farms is that occasioned by the depredations of the Bosjesmans. Their corn is cultivated merely for home consumption; their cattle are reared for the market. All their care, and the constant attendance of numerous Hottentots in their employ, are sometimes insufficient to prevent a surprise from these savages. An inhabitant of Sneuwberg has not only the continual apprehension of losing his property, but he lives in a state of perpetual personal danger. Should he depart to the distance of five hundred yards from his house, he is under the necessity of carrying a musquet. He can neither plow, nor sow, nor reap, without his arms. If he would gather a few greens in the garden, he must take his gun in his hand. To bear a life of such constant dread and anxiety, a man must be accustomed to it from his infancy, and unacquainted with one that is better. Notwithstanding this, Sneuwberg has its temptations. It may be considered as the best nursery for sheep in the whole colony. They are here much superior to those of the other districts both in size and condition. The tails of some of them are not less than twenty pounds weight; many run from twelve to sixteen pounds. A farmer here has seldom fewer than from three to four thousand sheep. They derive no sort of benefit from the wool, which is short and harsh like hair. That this is owing

to the breed, and not to the climate, has been shewn by the introduction of some Spanish sheep a few years ago, the wool of which is supposed to have improved by their continuance in Africa: specimens of it sent to the London market are said to have fetched an unusual high price. Were one of Bakewell's rams introduced into the Sneuwberg, there can be little doubt that an excellent breed would be the consequence.

The higher parts of the Sneuwberg are not better calculated for sheep than the plains are for horned cattle. The butter made here is supposed to be preferable to any other in the colony, and of course is much sought after in the Cape, where it is brought in considerable quantity, salted and put up in casks. They reckon that on a moderately good farm fifty cows will produce a hundred pounds of butter a-week, besides bringing up the calves, which are always suffered to run with their mothers. The draught oxen are large, stout, and generally in good condition; and their horses, though small, go through a great deal of hard service. In many parts they are very subject to the common disease of the country, which proves fatal to great numbers. This disease, however, is entirely local. At one farm they were never known to have it, whilst at another, not more than six miles from it, they cannot scarcely keep a horse alive; a convincing proof of its being occasioned by certain plants whose leaves, or flowers, or fruits, possess a deleterious quality. The Bosjesmans are well aware of the time when the distemper rages, and are then particularly bold and troublesome, knowing it to be impossible for the farmers to pursue them.

Such

Such are the advantages and the calamities of which the people of Sneeuwberg are alternately susceptible. Sensible of the former, they bear the latter with much patience, and oppose them with fortitude. They are a people that, in great measure, seem to be apart from all the others. Not more different is the nature of the country than the temper and disposition of its inhabitants from those of the lower divisions of the district. They are a peaceable, obliging, and orderly people; a brave and hardy race of men. The constant danger to which their persons and their property are exposed will less admit a life of idleness and inactivity; and it is not in the men alone that their dangerous situation has called forth the active powers, but the women also evidently possess more animation, and lead a less sedentary and listless life, than those of the lower divisions. Instances of great female fortitude have here occasionally been shewn. The wife of one of our party having received intelligence, in the absence of her husband, that the Bosjesmans had carried off a troop of their sheep, instantly mounted her horse, took a musquet in her hand, and, accompanied by a single Hottentot, engaged the plunderers for some time, put them to flight, and recovered every sheep.

With infinitely more drawbacks on the produce of their industry than any of their countrymen experience, the anarchy that prevailed in Graaff Reynet produced no sort of disturbance among the people of Sneeuwberg. They lent a material assistance indeed to promote the measures of government. The only grievance of which I ever heard them complain, and which appears to be a real inconvenience to all who inhabit

the remote parts of the colony, is a ridiculous and absurd law respecting marriage; and as it seems to have no foundation in reason, and little in policy, except indeed, like the marriage-acts in other countries, it be intended as a check to population, it ought to be repealed. By this law the parties are both obliged to be present at the Cape, in order to answer certain interrogatories, and pass the forms of office there, the chief intent of which is to see that no improper marriages take place; as if the commissaries appointed to this office, at the distance of five or six hundred miles, should be better acquainted with the connexions and other circumstances regarding the parties, than the landroft, the clergyman, and the members of the council residing upon the spot. The expence of the journey to the young couple is greater than they frequently can well afford. For decency's sake they must set out in two waggons, though in the course of a month's journey, across a desert country, it is said they generally make one serve, and that nine times out of ten the consummation of the marriage precedes the ceremony. This naturally produces another bad consequence. The poor girl, after the familiarities of a long journey, lies entirely at the mercy of the man, who, having satisfied his curiosity or his passion, sometimes deserts her at the end. Though in our own country a trip to Scotland be sometimes taken where obstacles at a nearer distance could not safely be surmounted, yet it would be considered as a very ridiculous, as well as oppressive law, that should oblige the parties intending to marry to go from the Land's End to London to effect that purpose. The inhabitants of Graaff Reynet must travel twice that distance in order to be married.

Almost

Almost all the people of the Snowy mountains, who were advanced in years, were subject to gravelly complaints, occasioned probably by the badness of the water, which at one season of the year is a muddy mixture of snow and earth, and at the other strongly impregnated with salt. And not to the human species alone are complaints of this nature here confined, but almost all animals, whether domesticated or in a state of nature, are found to have more or less of stones or masses of sand formed in the bladder or stomach. Large oval stones are very commonly found in the stomach of the springbok, and numbers of a smaller size in the eggs of ostriches, as has before been remarked.

On the twenty-fifth we proceeded about twenty miles to the northward, over a flat surface of country, consisting chiefly of meadow-ground, well watered by numerous springs and small rills, but destitute of every appearance of a bush or shrub. On every side were grazing a multitude of wild animals, as gnooks, and quachas, and hartebeests, and springboks, in such large troops as in no part of the country had before been observed. The place of our encampment was called *Gordon's Fonteyn*, and near it stood the last Christian habitation, towards this quarter, in the colony. Being situated so near to the Bosjesmans, no fewer than four families were living together, as a better security to each other against the attacks of these people.

Having understood that beyond this place it would no longer be safe to proceed without an armed force, the inhabitants of the Sneuwberg and its several divisions had been summoned

moned to meet us here, in order that the commandant might select as many as should be deemed sufficient to enable us to march through the country. He took sixteen farmers and eight armed Hottentots, which, with our own party and the other Hottentots employed as drivers and leaders, amounted all together to about fifty persons. There were seven wag-gons, about a hundred oxen, and fifty horses, besides a troop of fifty or sixty sheep for consumption on the journey. The people whom the commandant made choice of, were all young men, who, reluctantly as at all times they take the service of the regular expeditions, seemed delighted on the present occasion, which they considered in the light only of a party of pleasure.

On the evening of the twenty-sixth we collected our forces at the commencement of the *Sea-Cow* river, which was about six miles to the northward of the last habitation. This river is formed from the collected branches that fall to the northward from the different parts of *Sneuwberg*, and from the *Roode-berg*, or Red mountain, which is in fact an arm of the former, stretching to the northward. The *Sea-Cow* river, and indeed all the streams that behind the Snowy mountains ran northerly, were remarkably distinguished from those whose currents took an opposite direction, by having their banks covered with tall reeds, the *arundo phragmites*, and destitute of a shrub or tree; whereas the latter were always inclosed by mimosas, willows, and other tall arboreous plants. The northern rivers consisted generally of a chain of deep stagnant pools connected by the beds of narrow channels that for the greatest part
of

of the year are entirely dry. Some of the *gats*, or holes, of the Sea-Cow river were five or six miles in length, and deep enough to have floated a line-of-battle ship. They formerly contained vast numbers of the animal from whence the river has borrowed its name; but the proximity of the colony, and the great convenience of hunting them in these pools, have been the means of destroying them almost entirely. Now and then a hippopotamus is still taken in some of the holes of the river.

The following day we passed over plains that swarmed with game. Pursuing the gnoos and different antelopes, we killed a prodigious large tyger-wolf, such as has been described, two quachas, and a couple of snakes of the same species, one five, the other near six feet long; their color was entirely a golden yellow; they were very fierce, and made several attempts to spring at the horses. The peasantry considered them as very venomous, and gave them the name of *cobra capella*.

Twenty miles farther to the northward brought us to that part of the river where Governor Van Plettenberg ended his travels towards this quarter; and, in commemoration of the event, he caused a stone or *baaken* to be there erected, which he also intended should serve as a point in the line of demarcation between the colony and the country of the Bosjesmans. These people, however, had thrown down and broken in pieces the monument; but the place retained the name of the *Edel Heer's baaken*; and the large hole of the river, upon the bank of which it stood, bore the name of Plettenberg.

The

The baaken of the governor was less a subject of curiosity than one that appeared on the opposite bank of the river. This was a clump of about half a dozen large bushes, the first that had occurred for as many days; yet the rarity of frutescent plants would not have attracted so much notice, had it not been for the vast number and size of nests with which they appeared to be loaded. These were judged to be at least sufficiently large for the vultures that were hovering in the air, or for the large blue cranes that sat by the river's side near them. On approaching the bushes, a numerous flock of birds, about the size of the common sky-lark, issued from them. The farmers, though unacquainted with the nests, immediately recognised the bird to be the locust-eater, and rejoiced not a little at its appearance so near the colony. This species of thrush is a migrating bird, and is only met with in places where the migrating locust frequents. It had not been seen in the colony for the space of thirteen years; that is to say, since the last time that the locusts infested the Sneeuwberg. The head, breast, and back, are of a pale cinereous color; the abdomen and rump white; wings and tail black, the latter short and a little forked; from the angle of the mouth a naked area of sulphureous yellow extends under the eye and a little beyond it; and two naked black striæ under the throat. The specific name of *gryllivorus* may with propriety be given to it, as its whole food seems to consist of the larvæ of this insect, at least when they are to be obtained. Nature has seldom given a bane but she has accompanied it with an antidote; or, in other words, she has ordained that one half of the creation should destroy and devour the other, that the constant operations of repro-

reproduction might be going on. The numbers of the grille-vori are not less astonishing than those of the locusts. Their nests, that at a distance appeared to be of such great magnitude, were found on examination to consist of a number of cells, each of which was a separate nest with a tube that led into it through the side. Of such cells each clump contained from six to twenty; and one roof of interwoven twigs covered the whole like that made by the magpie. Most of them had young birds, generally five; the eggs were of a blueish white with small, faint, reddish specks. These birds had here taken up a temporary abode in a place where they were not likely, in a short space of time, to be under the necessity of quitting for want of food. Of the innumerable multitudes of the incomplete insect, or larva, of the locusts, that at this time infested this part of Africa, no adequate idea could possibly be conceived without having witnessed them. For the space of ten miles on each side of the Sea-Cow river, and eighty or ninety miles in length, an area of sixteen or eighteen hundred square miles, the whole surface might literally be said to be covered with them. The water of the river was scarcely visible on account of the dead carcases that floated on the surface, drowned in the attempt to come at the reeds which grew in the water. They had devoured every green herb and every blade of grass; and had it not been for the reeds, on which our cattle entirely subsisted while we skirted the banks of the river, the journey must have been discontinued, at least in the line that had been proposed. The larvæ, as generally is the case in this class of nature, are much more voracious than the perfect insect; nothing that is green seems to come amiss to
L L them.

them. They are not, however, without a choice in their food. When they attack a field of corn just struck into the ear, they first mount to the summit, and pick out every grain before they touch the leaves and the stem. In such a state it is lamentable to see the ruins of a fine field of corn. The insect seems constantly to be in motion and to have some object in view. When on a march during the day it is utterly impossible to turn the direction of a troop, which is generally with the wind. The traces of their route over the country are very obvious for many weeks after they have passed it, the surface appearing as if swept by a broom, or as if a harrow had been drawn over it. Towards the setting of the sun the march is discontinued, when the troop divides into companies, which surround the small shrubs, or tufts of grass, or ant-hills, and in such thick patches that they appear like so many swarms of bees; and in this manner they rest till day-light. It is at such times as they are thus formed that the farmers have any chance of destroying them, which they sometimes effect by driving among them a flock of two or three thousand sheep. By the restlessness of these they are trampled to death.

Luckily the visits of this gregarious insect are but periodical, otherwise the whole country must inevitably be deserted, for they rest, as the prophet in Holy Writ hath said, "upon all thorns and upon all bushes." Even at this time the cattle in many parts of Sneeuwberg are starving for want of food. The present year is the third of their continuance, and their increase has far exceeded that of a geometrical progression whose ratio is a million. For ten years preceding their present visit,

visit, they were entirely free from them. Their last exit from the colony was rather singular. All the full-grown insects were driven into the sea by a tempestuous north-west wind, and were afterwards cast upon the beach, where it is said they formed a bank of three or four feet high, that extended from the mouth of the Bosjesman's river to that of the Beeka, a distance of near fifty English miles; and it is asserted, that when this mass became putrid, and the wind was at south-east, the stench was sensibly felt in several parts of Sneeuwberg. Fortunately they were driven thus to sea before they had deposited their eggs in the ground. The larvæ at the same time were emigrating to the northward. The column passed the houses of two of our party, who asserted that it continued without any interruption for more than a month. The gryllivori in myriads were close at their heels, and departed along with them, since which, till the present year, not one of them was to be found in the country.

Hunting excursions had daily been made on the plains, at a distance from the river, where game of all sorts were in the greatest abundance; but the chief object was the *gnoo* or *wild beast*, as it is called by the Dutch. Parties of five or six had been out for two days, in order to procure one of these animals, but without success. On the third day we mustered a company of ten persons, and after a very long chase contrived at length to hem in a troop consisting of about fifty, out of which, at one volley, we shot six. This extraordinary animal is the swiftest beast that ranges the plains of Africa. A

traveller has not always the opportunity of getting it into his possession. The various descriptions that have been given of it, all differing from each other, should seem to have been taken from report rather than from nature, notwithstanding that one of them was for some time in the menagerie of the Prince of Orange at the Hague. Nature, though regular and systematic in all her works, often puzzles and perplexes human systems, of which this animal affords an instance. It partakes of the horse, the ox, the stag, and the antelope: the shoulders, body, thighs, and mane, are equine; the head completely bovine; the tail partly one and partly the other, exactly like that of the quacha; the legs, from the knee-joints downwards, and the feet, are slender and elegant like those of the stag, and it has the *subocular sinus* that is common to most, though not all, of the antelope tribe. Yet from this imperfect character it has been arranged, on the authority of Sparrman, in the *Systema Naturæ*, among the antelopes, to which of the four it has certainly the least affinity. The Linnæan system can be considered only as the alphabet of nature, the characters of which cannot be too distinctly marked; of course, external appearances only should enter into it. Perhaps the introduction of *intermediate genera* might without impropriety be adopted, to include such animals as are found to partake of more than one genus; which would also point out the fine links that unite the grand chain of creation. The *gnoo* is a second time mentioned in the *Systema Naturæ*, and with more propriety, as a variety of the *bos caffer*, or buffalo, under the name of *elegans et parvus Africanus bos*, &c.

Its

Its head is about eighteen inches long ; the upper part completely guarded by the rugged roots of the horns that spread across the forehead, having only a narrow channel between them that wears out with age, as in those of the buffalo ; the horns project forwards twelve inches, then turn in a short curve backwards ten inches ; from the root to the point is only nine inches ; down the middle of the face grows a ridge of black hair four inches in length ; and from the under lip to the throat another ridge somewhat longer : the orbit of the eye is round, and surrounded by long white hairs that, like so many radii, diverge and form a kind of star : this radiated eye gives to the animal a fierce and very uncommon look. The same sort of white vitrissæ are thinly dispersed over the lips : the neck is little more than a foot long : on the upper part is a mane extending beyond the shoulders, erect, and five inches in length ; the hair like bristles, black in the middle and white on each side ; this mane appears as if it had been cut and trimmed : a ridge of black hair six inches long extends from the fore part of the chest under the fore legs to the beginning of the abdomen : the body is about three feet two inches long ; the joints of the hip-bones project high, and form on the buttocks a pair of hemispheres : the tail is two feet long, flat near the root, where the hair grows only out of the sides ; this is white, bristly, and bushy : the whole length, from the point of the nose to the end of the tail, seven feet ten inches, and the height three feet six inches : the color is that of a mouse, with a few ferruginous straggling hairs on the sides : like the mare it has only two teats ; and all its habits and its motions are equine : though a small animal, it appears of very considerable size when

when prancing over the plains. The *gnoo* might be considered as an emblem of unbounded freedom with the means of supporting it. Strength, swiftness, weapons of defence, a nice nose, and a quick sight, it eminently possesses. No successful attempts have yet been made to tame it. The flesh is so like that of an ox, both in appearance and taste, that it is not to be distinguished from it.

The heavy lumpish figure of the eland formed a great contrast with the elegant shape of the *gnoo*. The former were not less numerous than the latter, and as easily taken as the other was difficult. Of all the species of antelopes in Southern Africa this is by much the largest and the most awkward. The head, the thick neck, and dewlap of the male, the body, legs, and hoofs, are bovine. The horns and tail only indicate its affinity to the antelope tribe. Its habit, its gait, its size, and general appearance, are those of the ox. The *gnoo* when wounded becomes furious and turns upon his pursuer; and he is said to be so impatient of pain and danger, that, in order to put a speedy end to them, he will frequently fly to a pit of water and drown himself. The eland is altogether as mild and patient. On account of the great ease with which they are taken, the utility of their flesh as food, and of their skins for harness and traces, few of them now remain within the limits of the colony; and in a few years the eland will in all probability be a rare beast in the southern angle of Africa. The rude farmers who, like children, grasp only at the gratification of the moment, without any regard to futurity, are taking the best means in the world to hasten their extirpation. The bull, being much larger, fatter,

ter, and having a tougher hide, than the female, is always selected from the herd and hunted down; the consequence of which is, that numbers of herds are now met with consisting of females only. They are very subject also to a cutaneous disease that makes great havoc among the bovine tribe. It is called by the farmers the *brandt sicketé*, or burning disease. It generally makes its appearance among the cattle towards the end of the rainy season. The hair begins to fall off; the skin is covered with scurf and scabs; the joints become stiff, and the animal languishes, consumes, and dies. All the antelopes are more or less subject to it, but chiefly so the gnou, the hartebeest, and the eland, these approaching nearest to the nature of the ox. The plains were strewed with the skeletons of these and other animals that had fallen by the disease. The eland of the Cape is the *oreas* of the *Systema Naturæ*, and the Indian antelope of Pennant. The male of one we shot measured ten feet and a half in length, and six feet and a half in height.

Upon the plains of the Sea-Cow river were springboks in countless troops, hartebeests, and bontéboks. The last antelope is marked the same as the *scripta* of the *Systema Naturæ*; but the brown color is darker and the animal considerably smaller than the bontébok of Zwellendam. Quachas from fifty to a hundred in a troop were hourly seen. The smaller kinds of game were also very plentiful. Hares were continually among the horses' feet. Of this animal are four known species in or near the colony; the common hare, the Cape hare, the mountain hare, and the red-rumped hare. Of the last, the exterior
part

part of the thighs and its long tail are of a deep chefnut color, and the ears are much shorter than in the others. Cape partridges and the Hamaaquagrouse were equally plentiful. The latter is a gregarious bird, and was met with in large coveys near all the springs of water. They were so little intimidated at the approach of our people, that they suffered themselves to be knocked down with whips and sticks. A new species of korhaen or bustard was seen here, that appeared to be something like the *tetrix* or French field-duck, but it was so very wild and scarce that not one of them could be shot. The Egyptian black *ibis* (*niger*,) and another species of *tantalus*, called by the farmers the *baddadas*, were procured at this place. The latter uttered the most horrid screams that can be imagined. The beak is black; the ridge of the upper mandible, and the upper part of the toes, red; head, neck, and abdomen, cinereous blue; wing and tail feathers, deep violet blue; back feathers green, edged with dusky brown; shoulders and covering feathers of the wings of a metallic lustre and iridescent. The mountain goose, the Egyptian goose, and the mountain duck, were seen in considerable numbers. The last answers to the description of the *cana*; but there is a mistake in giving the white head to the male, which is found only in the female. Several other aquatic birds were met with about the Sea-Cow river, attracted thither by the vast quantities of fish that it contained. Of these a species of *cyprinus* of a silvery color was the most common; and we caught also a species of *silurus*. The most remarkable of the birds were the *platalea leucorodia*, or white spoonbill, the great white pelican, and the flamingo.

We

We saw also the common crane (*grus*), the Numidian crane (*virgo*), and the heron (*cinerea*); the bald ibis (*calvus*), the Cape curlew, and the common coot.

In the neighbourhood of such places as are most frequented by graminivorous animals, the carnivorous tribe are, as might naturally be expected, the most abundant. The peasantry were, however, much surprised that no more than one lion had been seen by the party among the reedy banks of the Sea-Cow river, a part of the country that has at all times been considered as particularly infested by them, and where they are also of a much larger size and fiercer temper than those of the lower parts of the colony. The people of Sneeuwberg are very great sufferers from their frequent visits, particularly in their horses, an animal to the flesh of which the lion seems to give a decided preference. The farmers here have a kind of dog that is not afraid to attack a lion; and it is said that two of these together have been known to destroy one. It is as large, but not so strongly made, as the Newfoundland dog, of a dark cinereous brown, with black and ferruginous stripes, a long straight tail, long pendulous ears, and spurious toes on the hind legs. Of tigers, as they are called in the colony, the peasantry distinguish two sorts, the tiger of the mountains and the tiger of the plains. Of the first, the upper part of the body and exterior part of the legs are of a fallow ground, with irregular black spots, some circular, some lunated, and others ocellated; in some parts distinct, in others running together in clusters; the sides, belly, and interior parts of the legs, a white ground with large black

M M

circular

circular spots ; upper part of the tail fulvous, with oblong black spots ; under part barred across with alternate black and white bands ; vibrissæ or strong bristles about the mouth, silvery white ; a black line along the fore part of the shoulders to the chest ; length from the nose to the end of the tail seven feet four inches ; length of the tail two feet ten inches. The description answers very nearly to that of the leopard, of which I believe it to be a variety only. The tiger of the plains is evidently the same species, the only difference being in the size, which is a little larger than that of the former, and in the color of the ground which is a little lighter, both of which probably may arise from local circumstances. To another species of the feline tribe they give the name of leopard. It is not so long, but thicker, taller, and much stronger than those described above : the color is cinereous, with small black spots ; the neck and temples covered with long crisp hair like that of the mane of the lion ; tail two feet, flat, vertical, spotted half way from the root, and the other half annulated ; a thick black line from the interior angle of the eye extends to the opening of the mouth. Of this species we procured a young one ; it became instantly tame, and as playful as the domestic kitten. Most beasts of prey, if taken young, may almost instantly be rendered tame. The fierce lion, or the tiger, is sooner reconciled to a state of domestication than the timid antelope ; and the cadaverous *crocuta*, the wild dog, has lately been domesticated in the Sneuwberg, where it is now considered as one of the best hunters after game, and as faithful and diligent as any of the common sort of domestic dogs.

Birds,

Birds, as well as beasts of prey, are attracted to such places as abound with game. By the Sea-Cow river, vultures were more numerous than they had hitherto been seen in any part of the country. Of these were distinguished three sorts; the large black condor, the *percnopterus*, or Egyptian sacred vulture, and a third that seemed to differ from the second only in size, being no more than two feet long. The female also of this bird, as well as that of the *percnopterus*, is distinguished from the whitish-colored male by its plumage of dusky brown. This small species is called by the peasantry the white crow. The sacred scavenger of Egypt meets not here with that protection which was afforded it on the banks of the Nile, where, according to Herodotus, to destroy it was a capital crime. The *percnopterus* is a gregarious bird. They fly in troops that seldom consist of fewer than fifty; and they are generally attended with two or three condors, as many of the small white kind, and a whole flock of the vulturine crow. An animal is no sooner shot than they appear hovering at an immense height in the air, from whence they plunge down the moment that the carcase is left alone.

Snakes of different sorts were seen and killed daily, all of them, according to the Hottentots' information, more or less venomous. These people are not unacquainted with several interesting particulars as to the nature and habits of the animal, as well as the vegetable part of the creation. From one I learned a very extraordinary effect produced by the application of the oil of tobacco to the mouth of a snake. One of these reptiles, about two feet in length, and of a blueish color,

had coiled itself five or six times round the body of a lizard. As I was endeavouring to set at liberty the captive animal, one of the Hottentots took out with the point of a stick, from the short stem of his wooden tobacco pipe, a small quantity of a thick black matter which he called tobacco oil. This he applied to the mouth of the snake while darting out its tongue, as these creatures usually do when enraged. The effect of the application was instantaneous almost as that of an electric shock. With a convulsed motion, that was momentary, the snake half untwisted itself, and never stirred more; and the muscles were so contracted that the whole animal felt hard and rigid as if dried in the sun. The Hottentots consider the oil of tobacco among the most active of poisonous substances; but it is never applied to the points of their arrows, being probably of too volatile a nature to retain its deleterious quality for any length of time.

In the course of our long hunting excursions, several kraals, or dwelling-places of Bosjesmans, had been seen, but all of them deserted; and from many circumstances it was evident that most of them had recently been evacuated. Their inhabitants, no doubt, had fled at the appearance of so large a party of Europeans, which they could consider in no other light than that of an enemy. The commandant now announced to his people, that for a time all hunting parties must be suspended, and that the same regular order and obedience to commands should be observed as in their usual expeditions. He assured us that unless this plan was adopted we might pass through the heart of the Bosjesmans' country without seeing a human creature,

creature, as there was little doubt of their being already well apprised of our approach. This in fact was the principal object of our present journey, that we might be eye-witnesses of the manner in which the farmers conducted their expeditions against these miserable set of beings. I thought it, however, a necessary step to make a previous stipulation with the commandant, that the extent of hostilities against these savages should be that of surrounding one of their kraals; that after this had been done we should act only on the defensive; and he was enjoined to deliver to his people a most serious charge not to fire a single shot unless it should be found absolutely necessary for their own personal security; for that the sole object of our journey was to bring about, if possible, a conversation with some of the chiefs of this people. On these conditions, a party, consisting of six farmers and as many Hottentots, were ordered out after sun-set to reconnoitre, with instructions to examine well if any fires should appear on any of the hills by night; to watch well, from some concealed spot, the plains by day; and to make a circuit from east to north, not exceeding thirty miles from the present encampment. If nothing should appear before the expiration of the third day, they were then to join us again at a certain spot upon the banks of the river, to the northward.

The following morning, at day-break, one of the scouting party, attended by a Hottentot, returned with intelligence that they had discovered from a high hill several fires at the bottom of a narrow defile about twenty miles to the eastward. In consequence

sequence of this information we remained still at our encampment the whole day, and at night proceeded towards the place where the fires had been seen. Previous to this movement the colonists prepared themselves for the enterprize by singing three or four hymns out of William Sluiter, and drinking each a glass of brandy.

Travelling slowly along, and without noise, till about one o'clock, we halted the waggons, and, taking the other hymn and glass of brandy, mounted horse and advanced towards the hill, where the rest of the reconnoitring party lay concealed, in order to observe the motions of the Bosjesmans. In a country where there is little variety of surface, where no beaten roads exist, and hill after hill occurs nearly alike, it would be no easy matter for a stranger to return upon the same track for a continuance of twenty or thirty miles which he had but once before gone over, and that in the night. A Dutch peasant, though sufficiently expert at this sort of service, always depends more upon his Hottentot than himself. The hill, however, that the reconnoitring party had chosen was so very remarkable that it could not easily be mistaken. It stood quite alone on the middle of a plain; was visible for more than twenty miles from every point of the compass; presented the form of a truncated cone from whatsoever situation it was seen; and the third tier of sand-stone strata that capped its summit appeared as a mass of masonry, a fortification on an eminence that could not be less than a thousand feet high. As a distinction we gave it the name of *Tower-berg*, because this mountain,

“ above

“ above the rest,
“ In shape and gesture proudly eminent,
“ Stood like a tower.”

About two o'clock in the morning we joined the scouting party at the base of this mountain. They and their horses had been exposed the whole of the preceding day to the scorching rays of the sun, not having dared to move from the spot lest they should be discovered and cut off by the Bosjesmans; and they had but just returned from giving their horses a little water, near fifteen miles off, in the Sea-Cow river. They gave information, that during the day vast numbers of the savages had appeared upon the plain digging up roots: that they came from different quarters, and in so many groupes that they concluded there must be several hordes in the neighbourhood of this spot: that the nearest, which it was the intention to surprise, was within two or three miles.

Having halted here a couple of hours, in order to arrive at the mouth of the defile, in which the kraal was situated, just at the first dawn of day, the march was continued in solemn silence. As we entered the defile it was perceived that at the opposite extremity a hill stretched across, admitting a pass on either side; the party therefore divided into three companies in order to possess all the passes; and they again closed together slowly towards the hill, at the foot of which the horde was supposed to lie. A Hottentot, having ascended one of the heights, waved his hat as a signal of discovery, and then pointed to the spot where the horde was situated. We
instantly

instantly set off on full gallop, and in a moment found ourselves in the middle of the kraal. Day was but just beginning to break; and by the faint light I could discover only a few straw-mats, bent each between two sticks, into a semicircular form; but our ears were stunned with a horrid scream like the war-hoop of savages; the shrieking of women and the cries of children proceeded from every side. I rode up with the commandant and another farmer, both of whom fired upon the kraal. I immediately expressed to the former my very great surprise that he, of all others, should have been the first to break a condition which he had solemnly promised to observe, and that I had expected from him a very different kind of conduct. "Good God!" he exclaimed, "have you not seen a shower of arrows falling among us?" I certainly had seen neither arrows nor people, but had heard enough to pierce the hardest heart; and I peremptorily insisted that neither he nor any of his party should fire another shot. In justification of their conduct they began to search on the ground for the arrows, a search in which they were encouraged to continue, in order to give the poor wretches a little time to scramble away among the detached fragments of rocks and the shrubbery that stood on the side of the heights. On their promises I could place no sort of dependance, knowing that, like true sportsmen when game was sprung, they could not withhold their fire. Of this I was presently convinced by the report of a musquet on the opposite side of the hill; and, on riding round the point, I perceived a Bosjesman lying dead upon the ground. It appeared that as one of our party, who could speak their language, was endeavouring to prevail upon the savages

to

to come down from the heights, this Bosjesman had stolen close to him behind a rock, and was taking deliberate aim with his drawn bow, which another of the colonists perceiving, levelled his musquet and shot him dead. It had been hoped the affair would happily have been accomplished without the shedding of human blood, and that the views of the expedition would have met with no interruption from an accident of such a nature. They soon perceived, however, that there was no attempt to pursue them up the heights, which could easily have been done; but that on the contrary the party had laid down their arms and turned their horses out to graze. Upon this, in a short space of time, several little children came down upon the plain. Among these we distributed some biscuits and other trifles, and then suffered them to return: presently afterwards the women and young girls, to the number of thirty or forty, came towards us, not without symptoms of fear. These being treated in the same manner, were sent back to desire their husbands would also come down in order to receive a present of tobacco. The men, however, had less confidence in the Christians than the women. They hovered a long time round the summit of the hill, doubting what step they should take; and the women had gone and returned, at least a dozen times, before they were able to prevail upon one man to descend; and when at last he ventured to come down, he approached us half-laughing, half-crying, trembled and acted just like a frightened child. A large piece of tobacco was immediately given to him, and he was sent back to his companions to let them know there was also a present for each of them. Three others mustered resolution to come down to us, but no more

chose to venture themselves. The manner indeed in which their village was attacked was certainly not calculated to inspire them with much confidence. On the contrary, it was so directly hostile as perfectly to justify their shooting a volley of arrows among us, which was afterwards found to be the case, as the commandant had asserted. The conclusion of the business, however, must have appeared to them very different from what, on former occasions, they had always experienced, when those who escaped from immediate death were incessantly pursued and fired upon, and their wives and children seized and carried away into slavery. In this instance they were well treated, and left at full liberty to remain with us or to depart. The women all staid behind; but three of the men accompanied us to the waggons, where they continued for several days. We had wished to speak with the captain or chief of the horde, but they assured us there was no such person; that every one was master of his own family, and acted entirely without control, being at liberty to remain with, or quit, the society as it might best suit them.

Little satisfactory could be obtained from those who returned with us to the waggons. They insisted on their innocence, by asserting that their horde, so long as they had composed a part of it, had never committed depredations on the colonists, but had always remained about the spot we found them, where they subsisted by the chase, and upon the roots of the earth. Appearances certainly were much in their favor; no bones nor horns of animals were found near the horde; no skins but those of young elands, springboks, tigers, and jackals. One
woman

woman in the whole party had a single sheep's skin thrown over her shoulders, which was very industriously pointed out by the farmers as a proof of their having suffered from this horde.

Before the men were sent away from the waggons a large present was made to each of tobacco, beads, knives, flints, and steels; and they were desired to tell all their countrymen they should happen to see, that whenever they should desist from stealing the cattle of the colonists, and should come to any of the farm-houses without bow and arrows, or other weapons, and say they were in want, as many or more sheep should be given to them than they could possibly obtain by plunder: that our present journey into their country was for no other intention than to give them an opportunity of putting a final stop to all expeditions against them, if, by a change of conduct, they were inclined to avail themselves of it; and they were assured that not a single shot would have been fired upon their horde had they not first discharged their arrows upon the farmers. Having remained with us very contentedly for a few days, they returned to their kraal highly pleased with the treatment they had met with, and with the presents they had received.

The horde or kraal consisted of five-and-twenty huts, each made of a small grass-mat bent into a semicircle, and fastened down between two sticks; open before, but closed behind with a second mat. They were about three feet high and four feet wide, and the ground in the middle was dug out like the nest of an ostrich; a little grass strewed in this hollow served as

their bed, in which they seemed to have lain coiled round in the manner of some quadrupeds. It appeared that it was customary for the elderly men to have two wives, one old and past child-bearing, and the other young; that no degree of consanguinity prevented a matrimonial connection, except between brothers and sisters, parents and children. One of these miserable huts served for a whole family. The population of the horde was calculated to amount to about a hundred and fifty persons. They possessed no sort of animals except dogs, which, unlike those of the Kaffers, were remarkably fat. They appeared to be of a small cur-kind, with long-pointed heads not unlike that of the common jackal. The high condition in which these creatures were found seemed very difficult to be accounted for. They have neither milk nor animal food to eat. The only viands we found in the huts were a few small bulbous roots, the eggs or larvæ of white ants, and the dried larvæ of locusts. The peasantry say that the dogs of Bosjesmans exist almost wholly upon the last article, the great plenty of which, in the present year, may account for the fatness of these animals.

The men were entirely naked, and most of the women nearly so. Their only covering was a belt of springbok's skin, with the part that was intended to hang before cut into long threads like those before mentioned to be worn by some of the Hottentot women; but the filaments were so small and thin that they answered no sort of use as a covering; nor indeed did the females, either old or young, seem to feel any sense of shame in appearing before us naked. Whether in the confusion

fusion and hurry they had scrambled among the rocks before they had time to adjust this their only dress, or whether they were indifferent about concealing any particular part of their bodies, their aprons happened to be very carelessly put on. The fringed part of some was hanging behind; of others, on the exterior part of the thigh; and some had fallen down as low as the knee. Yet they were not entirely without some notions of finery. A few had caps made of the skins of asses, in form not unlike helmets; and bits of copper, or shells, or beads, were hanging in the neck, suspended from their little curling tufts of hair. All the men had the cartilage of the nose bored, through which they wore a piece of wood or a porcupine's quill.

Whether considered as to their persons, turn of mind, or way of life, the Bosjesmans are certainly a most extraordinary race of people. In their persons they are extremely diminutive. The tallest of the men measured only four feet nine inches, and the tallest woman four feet four inches. About four feet six inches is said to be the middle size of the men, and four feet that of the women. One of these that had several children measured only three feet nine inches. Their color, their hair, and the general turn of their features, evidently denote a common origin with the Hottentots, though the latter, in point of personal appearance, has the advantage by many degrees. The Bosjesmans, indeed, are amongst the ugliest of all human beings. The flat nose, high cheek-bones, prominent chin, and concave visage, partake much of the apeish character, which their keen eye, always in motion, tends not
to

to diminish. The upper lid of this organ, as in that of the Chinese, is rounded into the lower on the side next the nose, and forms not an angle, as is the case in the eye of an European. It is perhaps from this circumstance that they are known in the colony under the name of *Gineeze*, or *Chinese Hottentots*. Their bellies are uncommonly protuberant, and their backs hollow; but their limbs seem to be in general well turned and proportioned. Their activity is incredibly great. The klip-springing antelope can scarcely excel them in leaping from rock to rock; and they are said to be so swift, that, on rough ground, or up the sides of mountains, horsemen have no chance with them. And, as the means of increasing their speed in the chase, or when pursued by an enemy, the men had adopted a custom, which was sufficiently remarkable, of pushing the testicles to the upper part of the root of the penis, where they seemed to remain as firmly and conveniently as if placed there by nature. It is unnecessary to add, that such an operation must necessarily be performed at an early period of life.

Curious as this custom appeared to be, it was less a subject of remark than an extraordinary character that distinguished the other sex from the women of most nations. The well-known story of the Hottentot women possessing an unusual appendage to those parts that are seldom exposed to view, which belonged not to the sex in general, is perfectly true with regard to the *Bosjesmans*. The horde we had met with possessed it to a woman; and, without the least offence to modesty, there was no difficulty in satisfying curiosity. It appeared

on

on examination to be an elongation of the nymphæ, or interior labia, more or less extended according to the age or habit of the person. In infancy it is just apparent, and in general may be said to increase in length with age. The longest that was measured somewhat exceeded five inches, which was in a subject of a middle age. Many were said to have them much longer. These protruded nymphæ, collapsed and pendent, appear at first view to belong to the other sex. Their color is that of livid blue, inclining to a reddish tint, not unlike the excrescence on the beak of a turkey, which indeed may serve to convey a tolerable good idea of the whole appearance both as to color, shape, and size. The interior lips or nymphæ in European subjects which are corrugated or plaited, lose entirely that part of their character when brought out in the Hottentot, and become perfectly smooth. Though in the latter state they may possess none of those stimulating qualities for which some anatomists have supposed Nature to have formed them, they have at least the advantage of serving as a protection against violence from the other sex, it seeming next to impossible for a man to cohabit with one of these women without her consent, or even assistance.

Nature seems to have studied how to make this pigmy race disgusting; though a certain French traveller has thought fit to exculpate Nature on this point, by asserting the above-mentioned conformation to be entirely the effect of art. The testimony of the people themselves, who have no other idea but that the whole human race is so formed, is sufficient to contradict such a supposition; but many other proofs might be adduced

adduced to shew that the assertion is without any foundation in truth. Numbers of Bosjesmans' women are now in the colony who were taken from their mothers when infants, and brought up by the farmers, who, from the day of their captivity, have never had any intercourse whatsoever with their countrymen, nor know, except from report, to what tribe or nation they belong; yet all these have the same conformation of the parts naturally, and without any forced means. The story of their perpending pieces of stone in order to draw down the interior labia, is still popular in Bruyntjes Hoogté, where the author above alluded to received it. It was here that he spent the greatest part of his time with his Narina; for at that time a tribe of Ghonaquas lay on a plain bordering on the Great-Fish river. The visit of this gentleman is still very well remembered there, though he takes care to suppress any mention of the country being inhabited by colonists, which, he supposed, would have diminished the interest he intended to excite. It may be observed that the people of Bruyntjes Hoogté know as little of the Bosjesmans as these do of the English, the communication being pretty much the same. The same author says it was from a Hottentot woman he made his drawing. If the print given in his book has been copied from that drawing, it should seem to have been a study rather from his own imagination than from nature.

The elongated nymphæ are found in all Hottentot women, only they are shorter in those of the colony, seldom exceeding three inches, and in many subjects appearing only as a projecting orifice or elliptical tube of an inch, or less, in length.

In

In the *(bastaard)* it ceases to appear; a proof that a connection with different nations counteracts the predisposition to such a conformation.

It is not, however, to the southern angle of Africa alone that the same predisposition for the elongation of the nymphæ is confined. The physical causes that tend to the production of so extraordinary an effect operated in parts of Egypt, situated under the same and opposite parallels of latitude as the Hottentot country. It was here, however, considered as a disease, an appearance so deformed and disgusting, that those who were troubled with it were glad to undergo the violent pain of the actual cautery in order to get rid of it.

The great curvature of the spine inwards, and extended posteriors, are characteristic of the whole Hottentot race; but in some of the small Bosjesmans they are carried to a most extravagant degree. If the letter S be considered as one expression of the line of beauty to which degrees of approximation are admissible, these women are entitled to the first rank in point of form. A section of the body, from the breast to the knee, forms really the shape of the above letter. The projection of the posterior part of the body, in one subject, measured five inches and a half from a line touching the spine. This protuberance consisted of fat, and, when the woman walked, had the most ridiculous appearance imaginable, every step being accompanied with a quivering and tremulous motion as if two masses of jelly were attached behind.

When we reflect on the Hottentot nation, which, with all its tribes, occupies, as it were, a point only on a great continent; when we consider them as a people differing in so extraordinary a manner from every other race of men upon it, or upon the face of the whole globe even, the natural formation of their persons, their color, language, manners, and way of life, being peculiar to themselves, conjecture is at a loss to suggest from whence they could have derived their origin. Except in the extreme flatness of the nose, and the short brushy hair, they approach nearest in color, and in the construction of the features, (to the Chinese,) how singular soever it may seem to trace a likeness between the most civilized and ingenious, and one of the lowest of the human species. If it be admitted, with several well-informed missionaries, that the Egyptians and the Chinese were originally the same people, and the arguments are certainly strong in favor of the supposition, notwithstanding the many learned and ingenious objections stated by the philosopher of Berlin, there would be no difficulty in conceiving some of the numerous tribes of people who inhabited the vicinity of the Nile to have found their way to the utmost limit of the same continent. Indeed, from all the ancient accounts that have been preserved of the Egyptians and Ethiopians, it would appear that the real Hottentots, or Bosjesmans, were the people intended to be described. In their general physical character they bear a strong resemblance to the Pigmies and Troglodytes, two tribes who are said to have dwelt in the neighbourhood of the Nile. The character drawn by Diodorus Siculus, of some of the Ethiopian nations, agrees exactly with that of the Bosjesmans. A species of brutality is stated by

by him to prevail in all their manners and customs; their voices were shrill, dissonant, and scarcely human; their language almost inarticulate; and they wore no clothing. The Ethiopian soldiers, when called upon to defend themselves, or to face an enemy, stuck their poisoned arrows within a fillet bound round the head, which, projecting like so many rays, formed a kind of crown. The Bosjesmans do exactly the same thing; and they place them in this manner for the double purpose of expeditious shooting, and of striking terror into the minds of their enemies.

The whole of the Hottentot country, comprehending all the different tribes of this people, is limited to the thirty-second degree of latitude on the east coast, and the twenty-fifth on the west. Beyond the line, connecting these two points, the various Kaffer tribes occupy a broad belt quite across the continent; and no two people can differ more than the Bosjesmans and the Kaffers, having no one agreement either in their physical or their moral character.

The Bosjesmans, though in every respect a Hottentot, yet in his turn of mind differs very widely from those who live in the colony. In his disposition he is lively and cheerful; in his person active. His talents are far above mediocrity; and, averse to idleness, they are seldom without employment. Confined generally to their hovels by day, for fear of being surprised and taken by the farmers, they sometimes dance on moon-light nights from the setting to the rising of the sun. They are said to be particularly joyful at the approach of the

first thunder-storm after the winter, which they consider as so infallible a token of the summer having commenced, that they tear in pieces their skin-coverings, throw them in the air, and dance for several successive nights. The small circular trodden places around their huts indicated their fondness for this amusement. His cheerfulness is the more extraordinary, as the morsel he procures to support existence is earned with danger and fatigue. He neither cultivates the ground nor breeds cattle; and his country yields few natural productions that serve for food. The bulbs of the iris, and a few gramineous roots of a bitter and pungent taste, are all that the vegetable kingdom affords him. By the search of these the whole surface of the plains near the horde was scratched. Another article of his food is the larvæ of ants. Whether the soil of the grassy plains, near the Sea-Cow river, be too rich for the nature of these insects, or whether they are kept under by the Bosjesmans, I will not take upon me to say; but an ant-hill, so very common in most parts of Africa, is here a rare object. Holes now and then occurred, over which the hills of the insect, demolished by this people, once had stood; but they were not very numerous. A third article, the larvæ of locusts, he can occasionally obtain without much trouble; but the procuring of the other must cost him no small pains.

Marks of their industry appeared in every part of the country, in their different plans of taking game: one was by making deep holes in the ground and covering them over with sticks and earth; another by piling stones on each other in rows, with openings or interruptions in such places as it was intended

intended the game should pass, and where the hunter could conveniently lie in ambush to strike the animals with his poisoned spears, or shoot them with his arrows. In this manner were lines continued across the plains and mouths of defiles for several miles. Sometimes, instead of stones, were placed rows of sticks, with black ostrich feathers tied to the ends, as being more effectual in turning game towards the spot where they wished them to pass.

When all these means of subsistence fail them, and they are certainly very precarious, they are driven to the necessity of hazarding a toilsome and dangerous expedition of plunder into the colony. Such a mode of life naturally leads to habits of cruelty. The disposition of the Hottentot race is mild and manageable in the highest degree, and by gentle usage may be moulded into any shape; but the treatment of the farmers towards them has been so very flagitious, that their cruelty even admits of palliation. Though in the eye of political justice it may be considered as a crime for a starving family, driven by imperious want to the necessity of taking the property of another who has perhaps more than he can possibly use, yet in the law of nature the offence is venial: but the Bosjesmans for their conduct have not only the plea of nature and humanity, but also that of retribution. They were driven out of their own country, their children seized and carried into slavery, by the people on whom they now commit their depredations, and on whom they naturally take every occasion of exercising their revenge. But that their studied barbarity should be extended to every living creature that appertains to the

the farmers, indicates a very altered disposition from that of their nation at large. Should they seize a Hottentot guarding his master's castle, not contented with putting him to immediate death, they torture him by every means of cruelty that their invention can frame, as drawing out his bowels, tearing off his nails, scalping, and other acts equally savage. Even the poor animals they steal are treated in a most barbarous and unfeeling manner: driven up the steep sides of mountains, they remain there without any kind of food or water till they are either killed for use, or drop for want of the means of supporting nature.

The condition to which this people has been reduced has entirely subdued that timid and pusillanimous mind which characterizes the Hottentot. When a horde is surrounded by the farmers, and little chance is perceived by them of effecting an escape, they will fight it out most furiously so long as a man shall be left alive. It frequently happens on such occasions that a party will volunteer the *forlorn hope*, by throwing themselves in the midst of the colonists in order to create confusion, and to give to their countrymen, concealed among the rocks or in the long grass, at the expence of their own lives, an opportunity of exercising more effectually their mortal weapons upon their enemies, and at the same time to facilitate the escape of their wives and children.

Their plundering expeditions are conducted not without system. If, in carrying off their booty, they should chance to be pursued, they always divide; one party to drive away the
cattle,

cattle, while the other continues to harass the pursuers; and, when the peasantry prove too many for them, they stab and maim with poisoned weapons the whole herd. On all such plundering expeditions, they carry, in addition to their bows and arrows, lances that resemble the Kaffers' hassagai, but of a much smaller size, and always dipt in poison. Their bows are remarkably small; and, in the hands of any one but of a Bosjesman, would be entirely useless. From the earliest infancy they accustom themselves to the use of the bow. All the little boys who came to us at the kraal carried their bows and small quivers of arrows. A complete quiver contains about seventy or eighty, made like those of the Hottentot that have already been noticed; and, in addition to these, a few small brushes to lay on the poison; pieces of iron, red ochre, leg-bones of ostriches cut in lengths and rounded, and two little sticks of hard wood to produce fire: this is done by placing one horizontally on a piece of withered grass, and whirling the other vertically between the hands, with the point acting in a hollow place made in the surface of the former. In a few seconds of time the velocity and friction set the grass in a blaze.

Miserable as the life of a Bosjesman appears to be, it is perhaps in reality not more so than that of most savage tribes. He has no invidious object of comparison to place against his condition. Universal equality prevails in his horde. When one feasts they all partake, and when one hungers they all equally suffer. "They take no thought for the morrow." They have no sort of management nor economy with regard to provisions. With them it is either a feast or a famine.

When

When successful in bringing to the horde a herd of cattle, they slay them in such numbers that the kraal soon becomes a mass of putrefaction, and the whole air tainted with the smell. The number of vultures that are attracted by the remains of the dead carcases are frequently the means of discovering to the colonists the kraals of Bosjesmans. Like these voracious birds, they are equally filthy and gluttonous. The three who accompanied us to our waggons had a sheep given to them about five in the evening, which was entirely consumed by them before the noon of the following day. They continued, however, to eat all night, without sleep and without intermission, till they had finished the whole animal. After this their lank bellies were distended to such a degree that they looked less like human creatures than before. Accustomed to food of a strong and pungent quality, simple water seemed to have no relish for them: they prepared a beverage that was excessively disgusting: having cut the throat of the sheep, they opened the belly to let the blood run among the entrails; then cutting these with a knife, and pouring in a quantity of water, they stirred up all together, and drank the nauseous mixture with an appetite that sufficiently shewed it to be suited to their taste.

It did not appear that they were in the habit of applying unctuous substances to the body any farther than wiping their greasy hands on their skin; but the hair and faces of many of them had been rubbed with red ochre after the manner of the Kaffers, and a few had the face painted black, in the shape of a mark: this they do with the kernel of a small nut burnt in the fire. The oil expressed from this nut is considered by them as
a pre-

a preventive against stiffness in the joints, and by the colonists as the best application for rheumatic complaints. Indeed the oil bears a very strong resemblance to that called cajapoota, which has obtained a high character of being useful in the same disorder. The Hottentot name of the plant is *kai*; and the nut resembles the seed of the tea-shrub.

The constitutions of this pigmy race are much stronger, and their lives of longer duration, than those of the Hottentots. Many instances of longevity are found among those who live with the peasantry. In every sickness, of what kind soever, it is usual with them to take off the extreme joints of the fingers, beginning with the little finger of the left hand as the least useful. This operation is performed under the idea that the disease will run out with the effusion of blood.

It is customary with them to inter their dead, and, like the Hottentots, to cover the graves with piles of stones. Some of these were so large, and on grassy plains where not a stone was naturally to be found, that the amassing of them together must have occasioned a very considerable degree of labor.

The temper of a Bosjesman is widely different from that of a Hottentot who lives in the colony. The latter, for a life of indolence, would barter all that he possessed in the world; a state of inactivity would be to the former intolerable. The powers of the mind, in one, are languid, and difficultly brought into action; in the other, they seem capable of great exertion. Their mechanical skill appeared in their arrows, which were

finished with great neatness ; in the baskets placed in the rivers for the purpose of taking fish, ingeniously contrived, and very well executed ; in the mats of grass, of which their huts were composed ; and in their imitations of different animals, designed on the smooth faces of the rocks. Being questioned with respect to these drawings, it appeared that they were generally the work of a numerous tribe of their countrymen that lived a little to the northward, on the other side of a very large river.

The nature of their language is the same as that of the Hottentots, though they are not able to understand each other. In the latter, the action of the tongue against the roof of the mouth, or the teeth, is seldom used on more than one syllable of a word. In the language of the Bosjesman, there is scarcely a syllable enunciated without it ; and this action is performed by them much more forcibly than by the Hottentots. Notwithstanding the difficulty for an European to acquire such a language, several of the Sneuwbergers speak it as fluently as the natives, from their having been committed, in their infancy, to the care of Bosjesmans' nurses.

It were greatly to be wished that the peasantry would see the policy of putting an end to their expeditions against this miserable people, and adopt in their place a lenient mode of treatment. They might not perhaps succeed in reclaiming them at once from their rooted habits of life ; but their hatred towards the colonists, which aims at their lives, might certainly be abated. The first step towards it would be to abolish the inhuman practice of carrying into captivity their women and children.

children. This, in fact, is the "lethalis arundo" that rankles in their breasts, and excites that spirit of vengeance which they perpetually denounce against the Christians. The condition of those who are made prisoners by the farmers is, in fact, much worse than that of slavery; for, not being transferable property, they have no claims upon their interest. An attempt indeed was lately made at Graaff Reynet to induce the government to grant them leave to sell such Bosjesmans as should be taken prisoners, on condition of ten rixdollars being paid into the treasury for every such slave sold. This humane proposal, "made," as it is stated in the records, "for the purpose of rousing the military ardor of the farmers, which of late was observed to have abated," was unanimously carried in the Council, but did not receive the sanction of the Government at the Cape.

Forty years ago, it appears from living testimony, the Bosjesmans frequented the colony boldly and openly, begged, and stole, and were troublesome, just as the Kaffers now are; but they never attempted the life of any one. They proceeded not to this extremity until the government had unwisely and unjustly suffered the peasantry to exercise an unlimited power over the lives of those who were taken prisoners. It failed, at the same time, to fix any bounds to the extent of the expeditions made against them, which certainly ought not to go beyond the limits of the colony. Nothing could be more unwarrantable, because cruel and unjust, than the attack made by our party upon the kraal; and the only palliation it could admit of

is the consideration of the end it was meant to answer. The poor wretches were peaceably sleeping under their humble covering of mats, and in the heart of their own country, far removed from the boundary of the colony. The inroads of these savages would much more effectually be checked by charging them boldly, whenever they should be known to have passed the limits, but not to pursue them into their own country. This, however, would not answer the object of the farmer, which is that of procuring children. To attend his numerous flocks and herds, he must have many people; and Hottentots are now so scarce that a sufficient number is not to be had. These, too, must be paid wages; but the poor Bosjesman has nothing except his sheep-skin and his meat. The fatigues, however, that the peasantry undergo in their long expeditions against them are sometimes very great. They are frequently, for many days together, without a drop of water, enduring hunger, want of rest, and the vicissitudes of heat and cold. Many suffer from the wounds of poisoned arrows, which, if not mortal, frequently, by injudicious treatment, bring on lingering complaints of which they never recover. Some of them are prudent enough to carry with them cupping vessels to draw out the poison, and sweet oil to wash the wounds, and a quantity of vinegar to drink; but the greatest part depend entirely on the application of the snake-stone, which has been noticed before to be only a piece of burnt bone. The Hottentots generally wash their poisoned wounds with a mixture of urine and gunpowder; and it is observed that these people seldom die except wounded very severely.

On

On the evening of the thirtieth we joined the waggons that had proceeded along the bank of the Sea-Cow river to that part where it passed through an opening in a cluster of hills, which opening was called the *first poort*. Here the late Colonel Gordon, who had proceeded beyond the Governor, met with an accident which also put an end to his journey: his horse fell with him into one of the deep holes made by the Bosjesmans for taking sea-cows, and was staked. From the north side of the Snowy mountains to these hills, there was scarcely an inequality in the surface of the country. Here it began to be broken; and blue mountains appeared in the horizon to the northward. The following day we reached the second poort or pass, through which also the Sea-Cow river bent its course. The hills now began to increase very considerably in height, and their summits were capped with a stratum of sand-stone. They were also lengthened out into a continued chain, so as to prevent the possibility of waggons passing to the northward.

Though none of the party had ever been beyond the entrance of the second poort, yet they willingly accepted the proposal of making a day's journey within it, following the course of the river as far as it might be practicable or adviseable to proceed. The kloof we found to be in general so very narrow, and the river serpented so much from side to side, passing close under the steep rocky points, that we were obliged to pass it a hundred times, and had almost abandoned the hope of making much progress, when we fell into a large beaten track made by the hippopotami or sea-cows. This carried us, without
further

further interruption, through reeds and shrubbery, and shallow parts of the river, to the very end of the kloof, which we computed to be about fifteen miles from the entrance, where we had left our waggons. Here also was the termination of the Sea-Cow river; its tranquil waters formed a confluence with another river of prodigious size, whose rapid stream rolled over the rocky bed a vast volume of muddy water. The current of this river set to the north-westward. Though there had not been a cloud in the sky since we left Graaff Reynet, very heavy rain must have fallen in some part of the country through which it flowed; for it was evident from the wreck of trees, and plants, and grafs, yet green, thrown up near the banks of the river, that the water had subsided twelve or thirteen feet. It was now, at this place, about four hundred yards in width, and very deep. The peasantry had no name for it but that of the *Groot*, or Great river; but from the magnitude and the direction of the current, there could be no doubt of its being the same which empties itself on the western coast between the two tribes of people called the Great and the Little Namaquas, and to which Colonel Gordon there gave the name of the Orange river. In point of size, and bulk of water, all the rivers of the colony, taken collectively, would not be equal to it,

The banks were fringed with the Karroo mimosa, the willow of Babylon, and the *rhus viminalis*. Vast numbers of the hippopotamus were snorting and blowing in every part of the river, loud as the torrent that roared among the rocks. Under the shade of the trees, and on the reedy banks near the mouth
of

of the Sea-Cow river, were the beds where these enormous animals had been playing and rolling, on venturing forth from their watery abodes. The description that the author of the Book of Job has put into the mouth of the Almighty, of the behemoth, is poetic, grand, and figurative; and it is more than probable that the hippopotamus was the animal alluded to:—

“ Behold now behemoth which I made with thee; he eateth
“ grafs as an ox: His bones are as strong pieces of brafs;
“ his bones are like bars of iron: He lieth under the shady
“ trees, in the covert of the reed and fens. The shady trees
“ cover him with their shadow; the willows of the brook
“ compafs him about. Behold he drinketh up a river; he
“ trusteth that he can draw up Jordan into his mouth. He
“ taketh it with his eyes; his nose pierceth through snares.”

In the rocky mountains of the long pafs, that brought us to the river, were great numbers of klip-springers and reeboks, and of a species of monkey of a grizzled greenish tint, with a straight tail, a third longer than the body, and black at the extremity; a horizontal white line across the forehead, just above the eyes; cheeks bearded with whitish hair. But the grandest object that occurred in the kloof was a plant of the lilliaceous tribe, with undulate ensiform leaves; the flower-stalk was six feet high, and an inch in diameter, supporting an umbel that consisted of twenty to thirty flowrets; the petals on the outside, striped with red and white, were within of a clear snowy whiteness; the antheræ were bright crimson.

On

On returning to the waggons we directed our course easterly, and rounded the mountains of the above-mentioned kloof, by which means we approached the Orange river, where, with an easy current, it flowed through a level part of the country. We soon found, however, that it was impossible for the waggons to proceed far in this direction, and that in very few places they could be brought near the banks of the river. We therefore took to our horses, and followed the windings of the river four days, in the hope of meeting with a ford where it might be passed by the waggons. The first day the water had subsided near two feet perpendicularly, and it continued to fall for three days; but the fourth day put an end to our hopes of crossing, by a sudden swelling of the water to a greater height than when we had first approached it. The mountains also, among which it pushed its current, began now to be so rugged that the banks were seldom accessible even on horseback. Nothing therefore remained for us but to return to the waggons, and abandoning the idea of penetrating farther to the northward, we contented ourselves with striking off in the opposite direction towards the Kaffer country.

The general breadth of this river, when free from inundations, appeared to be about three hundred yards. In many places it extended to five hundred, and in others was contracted to two hundred yards. The volume of water was immense, and, in the narrow parts, forced its way with great rapidity. Yet from this place to the embouchure on the western coast, supposing it to be the Orange river, the distance was not less than

than five hundred miles. On each side of the river, the surface of the country was naked and barren as the Karroo, and infinitely more difagreeable, being loofe fand; but at the diftance of a couple of miles on the fouth fide, were plains well covered with herbage. In feveral places the inundations had extended beyond a mile from the river, as was apparent by the wreck of large trees, roots, fhubs, and ridges of fand, lying in a long continued line. The elevation of the ground, at fuch points of inundation, could not be lefs than thirty to forty feet above the level of the river at its ordinary ftate.

The Orange river, like the Nile, has its periodical inundations, and, as well as that river, might be made by the help of canals, to fertilize a vaft extent of adjoining country. The Orange alfo has its cataracts. One of thefe made a prodigious roaring noife, not far from one of the places where we halted; but it was not approachable without a great deal of fatigue and trouble. It is a remark that cannot fail to obtrude itfelf on every traveller in Southern Africa, who may have attended to the accounts that have been given of the northern parts of the fame continent, that the analogy between them is very clofe. Egypt and the colony of the Cape lie under the fame parallels of latitude: they have the fame kind of climate, the fame foil, the fame faline waters: they both abound in natron; and the fame plants and the fame animals are common to both. Egypt, without the Nile, would be a defart wafte, producing only a few faline and fucculent plants like thofe of the Great Karroo, where rain full as feldom falls as in the former country; and the fandy foil of the Cape, with the affiftance

QQ

of

of water, is as fertile as that of Egypt possibly can be. The rains in the Abyssinian mountains generally begin in May, and cause the inundations of the Nile to take place in June, continuing to the month of September. The rains in the Great mountains beyond the Kaffers and the Tambookies, along the feet of which the Orange river runs, collecting their tributary streams in its passage, commence in November, and cause the inundations to take place, towards the Namaqua country, in December, corresponding thus exactly with the former, both countries being nearly at the same distance from the equator, but on contrary sides. The same singular peculiarity has been observed in the conformation of the Egyptian women that pervades the whole of the Hottentot nation. That extraordinary animal the camelopardalis is said to be an inhabitant of Ethiopia, nearer to the Line than Egypt; and it is first met with in Southern Africa, beyond the Orange river, which is also nearer to the Line than any part of the colony of the Cape. Many other analogies might be drawn; but these are more than sufficient to establish the opinion of a striking resemblance existing between the two countries.

The Orange river, at this time, though far from being full, exhibited a very grand object; but in its low state, when the water is clear, it must be exceedingly beautiful. In the level parts of the country through which its smooth and easy current ran over pebbly beds, these were composed entirely of stones that were not common, nor were many of them wanting either in being curious or beautiful. Among these were opals, carnelians, chalcedonies, and agates of every form and color,
figured,

figured, plain, and striped, zoned and stalactitical; not thinly scattered here and there, but in such quantities that, judging by those few banks which were uncovered with water, a wagon-load might be collected in a few hours. These beds consisted generally of round and oval pebbles, some having a black ground, others light-brown, and others chocolate color. These were inlaid with other small, white, quartz pebbles, forming, on the smooth surfaces of the former circles, stripes, and irregular spots and lines. They appeared to be of that description of aggregated stones called, by some French mineralogists, variolites, and to which Mr. Kirwan has proposed to give the general name of porphyrites. The white parts grew as it were into the colored base, and adhered to it so closely as not to be easily separated. It is remarkable enough that this should be the only river in Southern Africa, at least between it and the Cape, in which stones of this nature are found. According to the relations of Vaillant and Patterson, the agates extend down the bed of the river as far as its mouth, on the western coast; but neither of these authors makes any mention of the spotted stones which, had they been there, must have obtruded themselves on their notice, being no less singular and beautiful than they were numerous; whole banks were entirely composed of them and the others above mentioned. They occurred of all sizes, from a line to a foot in diameter, generally rounded and smoothly polished by attrition in their passage down the river. The rocky banks were masses that apparently were composed of clay and mica, containing also a considerable portion of the oxyd of iron. The angles of these were likewise rounded off, and their surfaces worn smooth by the action of

the current. From alternate exposure to water and the sun, they had contracted a glossy black color, bearing a resemblance to black, glazed, earthen ware. The mountains that were contiguous to the river had generally their summits of grey quartz; under this a stratum of iron-stone, then sand-stone, and lastly slate. The strata were laid horizontally, or very nearly so.

The fishing-tackle of the Bosjefmans, lying in several places on the banks of the river, and in good order, shewed plainly that many of them were in the neighbourhood, and had certainly been disturbed in their occupation by our party. They consisted of baskets made of osiers, and the stems of reeds alternately worked in: one being white, and the other dark-brown, gave them a very pretty appearance. The workmanship was firm and neat, and the contrivance sufficiently clever, being of the same nature as those wicker-baskets used in Europe for the like purpose. We found also several harpoons of wood, some pointed with bone, and fixed to ropes made apparently of some sort of grass. Deep holes were dug along the side of the river in vast numbers, and most of them were covered over with so much care that they were not easily discoverable, which made it dangerous to ride along the sea-cow paths. One of our horses fell into a hole near nine feet deep, which, fortunately, had no stake in it, otherwise he must inevitably have been killed.

In what part soever we approached the river, hippopotami were snorting and playing in vast numbers. Of these animals

our

our party killed four in one day. They were all very lean, a circumstance that was attributed to the locusts having devoured every green plant for a considerable distance from the banks of the river. A young one was taken out of the womb of a female, perfectly formed in every part except the teeth and tusks. Though now only seven inches long, the same animal, if not destroyed, would, in the course of time, most probably have attained the enormous weight of three or four thousand pounds.

Near the end of the last day's journey, along the banks of the river, was a wood of tall mimosas. The branches of these were loaded with many thousands of the nests of the locust-eating thrush; and, not far from the same place, we crossed the only troop of young locusts that had occurred in the vicinity of the river, the herbage, as was above noticed, being there already consumed. This troop covered a plot of ground at least a hundred yards in width and five miles in length. Its march was directed towards the river, which it intended to cross. Close to the water's edge these creatures were heaped together in clumps of five or six inches deep. Myriads had already entered the water, and were carried down the stream.

On the fifth of December we left the river, and, turning off to the southward, travelled over a flat country of a strong clayey soil, well covered with fine grass, but destitute of wood or bushes, and ill supplied with water. Springs here and there occurred; and these were easily discovered by the patches of tall reeds that surrounded them. Elands and gnooks, hares and partridges,

partridges, were very plentiful, and none, except the second, difficult to procure. Most of the antelope tribe may be nearest approached on the plains, about one or two o'clock, when the heat of the sun is greatest, either from their being then in a state of languor, or from their eyes being dazzled by the strong light, which renders them incapable of judging of distances. The thermometer stood at 88° in the shade, about the middle of the day. For eight or ten days past its greatest height had been 84°. The weather almost constantly calm, with a cloudless sky.

The following day, after ten hours travelling directly south, over a level country, brought us to the highest ridge of mountains that run across the southern angle of Africa. It might be considered as a continuation of the Compas-berg before noticed, though there are several interruptions in the interjacent chain. At this part it had the name of Zuure-berg, or the Sour Mountain. The waters that issue from its sides run in opposite directions. Those that take a northerly course fall into the Orange river; and the united streamlets, flowing to the southward, become at length the Great Fish river which divides the colony from the Kaffer country.

Early on the morning of the seventh, in consequence of one of the party having asserted that some years ago he had met with the drawing of an unicorn in a kloof of the Zuure-berg, we set out upon an excursion across this mountain. Paintings we found, in several places, of a variety of animals, but none which bore the least resemblance to a quadruped with
a single

a single horn. Many of the peasantry had frequently assured me that unicorns were commonly found designed among the rest; but none of them as yet had been able to point out to me the drawing of such an animal, though we had visited several caverns in the Bosjesmans country for that purpose. If, however, we were disappointed in not finding the object that had been the occasion of the excursion, we were amply repaid for the inconvenience and fatigue of eight hours' exposure to the scorching rays of an unclouded sun, by a variety of other interesting subjects that were constantly occurring. In no part of the journey had been found such an assemblage of rare plants as grew on the sides of the Zuure-berg. The number and great variety of the geranium family, especially of that genus which, by a late botanical arrangement, has been named pelargonium, were truly astonishing. The *xeranthemum fulgidum* with its brilliant yellow flowers, and the still more showy *speciosissimum*, were equally numerous; not less so many species of the everlasting gnaphalium. Two species of that very singular and beautiful plant the *difa*, found also on Table mountain, decorated the margins of the springs upon the Zuure-berg. At the feet of the mountain, we procured one of the most beautiful, and also one of the most disgusting quadrupeds that are perhaps to be found in the whole creation. The first, it would almost be unnecessary to add, was the zebra, which we shot in a troop consisting of six; and the latter was the bosch varke, or wild hog of Africa, described in the *Systema Naturæ* under the name of *sus Ethiopicus*. This creature is not more ugly than it is vicious and cunning. The long ivory fangs that, like horns, project from its mouth, and bend upwards, make it dangerous

gerous to be approached, whilst its little eyes, placed near the top of its square forehead, and the fleshy bags hanging from each cheek like an additional pair of ears, gave it a very hideous and frightful appearance. A great variety of lizards were observed, and one in particular, in the agonies of death, reflected transient shades of colors that were remarkably beautiful. The permanent ones were cerulean blue and green, with a line down the back of dark-blue and yellow spots; tail marked with waved lines orange and ferruginous; body muricated, eight inches long. Another species, about a foot in length, was entirely of a brilliant yellow. Cameleons were also plentiful, particularly of the small species peculiar to the Cape, the *pumila* of the *Systema Naturæ*. This reptile is supposed to be always found of the same color with the body on which it may happen to rest. Though in general this, perhaps, may be the case, yet the rule does not always hold good. I have seen it remain black for many minutes, on a white ground, and white when placed upon a black hat. Previous to its assuming a change of color, it makes a long inspiration, the body swelling out to twice its usual size; and, as this inflation subsides, the change of color gradually takes place. The only permanent marks are two small dark lines passing along the sides. The cameleons are characterized from the rest of the lizard tribe by their perching on the extremities of the branches of shrubby plants, from whence, holding themselves fast by their prehensile tails, with outstretched tongue they catch the passing flies. Hence seems to have originated the idea that this class of reptiles lived upon air.

The

The zebra that had been shot was left at the foot of the hill until our return, when it was the intention to have taken off the skin. We had not been absent from it more than an hour, in which space of time it had been completely eviscerated by a troop of vultures, consisting of the condor, the percnopterus, white crow, and the vulturine crow; yet in no part of the body was the skin broken, except that the hole in the neck, where the ball had entered, was a little enlarged. Out of this hole a great part of the entrails had been drawn. The animal was a female, and its full-grown foal had been dragged by the vultures more than half out of the vagina. It seems that the sacred bird of Egypt is a kind of caterer to the condor, and is employed in drawing the carcases of animals, whilst the other fits by "to prey on garbage."

In the evening we reached a farm-house, situated on the skirts of the colony, in the division of the Sea-Cow river and the Rhinoceros-berg, where, after a very long day's journey, our waggons also arrived. In this part of the country are still a number of families that, like the people of Sneuwberg, have withstood the attacks of the Bosjesmans, by keeping together and affording to each other mutual assistance. The wealth of the farmers here consists of sheep and horned cattle; all their crops were entirely destroyed by the locusts.

At this place the party that had accompanied us was discharged; but, as it was the intention to skirt the colony to the eastward, and pass through the deserted division of the Tarka,

R R

another

another party was selected from among the farmers of Agter Sneuwberg, as being best acquainted with this eastern part of the country. Six colonists and six Hottentots, in addition to our own strength, were deemed sufficient to enable us to perform this part of the journey with safety.

Directing our course to the south-eastward, we came to a chain of four salt-water lakes, lying one immediately after the other. Three of them were fully as large as, and one smaller than, that near Swart Kop's river; but there was very little water in any of them. The bottoms were covered with a crust of salt that in the thickest part did not exceed an inch. Immediately under the salt was a thin coating of red sand, and below the sand a stratum of soft impalpable blue clay two feet deep; the next three feet consisted of a coarse friable yellowish clay, containing small crystals of salt; under this was a small quantity of water, resting upon a covering of rotten purple slate half an inch thick; and below this a dry reddish-colored soil that did not apparently contain a particle of salt. Close to the margin of the third salt-pan were several springs of clear water, having a bitter earthy taste; and along the rills that fell from these into the pan, grew tall reeds and rushes into the very centre among the salt. The others were entirely naked, without a bush or shrub on their banks. The surrounding country was also destitute of plants, and the surface was strewn over in many places with thin pellicles of salt. The quantity of game on the neighbouring plains, consisting chiefly of elands and springboks, was to us a sufficient inducement to
pitch

pitch our tents near the salt-pans; but we were disturbed the whole night by the roaring of lions.

Continuing our route to the eastward, on the tenth we entered the division of the Tarka, under the point of a lofty mountain called the Bambos-berg, which also forms a part of the highest ridge that crosses the continent near the southern angle of Africa. The Bambos-berg is a double range, and is completely impassable either with waggons or on horseback. In order to have got beyond them with horses, it would have been necessary to return to the northward and to cross the Zuure-berg. To the eastward, no passage over them has yet been discovered in any of the expeditions that, with different views, have been made through Kaffer-land. The country, therefore, behind the Bambos-berg, at the feet of which the Orange river flows, may be considered as very little known, and on that account it was a subject of no small regret to some of the party to be denied a passage over the mountains. It was found imprudent also to continue our route to the eastward, a horde of Bosjesmans, commanded by one *Lynx*, consisting of five hundred people, having posted themselves near a point of the Bambos-berg. We were obliged, therefore, to turn off to the southward, directly through the Tarka.

In one of the mountains that terminates this division to the eastward, we discovered a cavern full of the drawings of different animals generally of the larger kind, such as elephants, rhinoceroses, hippopotami, and, among the rest, one of the came-

lopardalis. The representation of this animal proved the assertion of the Bosjesman to be true, that the people who made these drawings were from hordes dwelling on the northern side of the Orange river; because, on the southern side, the camelopardalis has never been met with. It is an animal entirely unknown to the inhabitants of Graaff Reynet.

The division of the Tarka is named after a river that, rising in the Bambos-berg, flows directly through it, and afterwards forms a confluence with the Fish river. It is a well-covered country; and, when inhabited, was considered as one of the best divisions of Graaff Reynet for sheep and cattle. At some of the deserted farms we found vineyards loaded with grapes, peach-trees, almonds, apple and pear trees full of fruit, and vegetables of various kinds, thriving well without the assistance of water, or any kind of attention. Game seemed to be scarce, except springboks and elands. The only interesting object was a flight of the gryllivori, seemingly in search of locusts, that, like a cloud, continued to pass over-head for the space of fifteen minutes.

Quitting the Tarka on the twelfth, we encamped at night on the Fish river, so called from the great quantity of fish it was said to contain of a species of cyprinus or carp. The same river, after flowing some distance to the southward, and receiving a number of tributary streams, takes the name of the Great Fish river, and from thence becomes, as before mentioned, a boundary of the colony.

On

On the right bank of the river were two wells of hepatized water, easily distinguished by the strong smell they emitted, not unlike that of the rifings of a foul gun-barrel. The wells were only a few paces asunder, and differed one degree of Fahrenheit in temperature, the larger being 88° and the smaller 87° . The latter boiled up uniformly; but the former threw up the water by starts. This was about three feet deep, and rounded like a pot; it consisted of a hard crust of cemented rock, formed of minute pebbles of various colours, of small quartz crystals worn round in their subterranean passage, and ferruginous globular pyrites. The cement appeared to be chiefly fine emery-sand. The soil of the adjacent country, and of the banks of the river, was a firm blueish clay. On every side of the wells, and not many yards distant from them, were several circular bogs puffed up to the height of four or five feet above the common surface. These were highly elastic, and gave out springs of water that was cold, and clear, and tasteless. The waters of these hepatic wells are said to have been found very efficacious in healing bruises and sprains, and favorable also to rheumatic complaints, to which, from the great changeableness of the climate, the peasantry are very subject.

About twelve miles to the westward of the wells, in a kloof of a detached mountain, we found a considerable quantity of native nitre. It was in a cavern similar to those used by Bosjesmans for their winter habitations, and in which they make the drawings above noticed. The under surface of the projecting stratum of calcareous sand-stone, and the sides that supported

ported it, were encrusted with a coating of clear white salt-petre, that came off in flakes from a quarter of an inch to an inch or more in thickness. The fracture resembled that of refined sugar: it burned completely away without leaving any residuum; and, if dissolved in water, and this evaporated, crystals of pure prismatic nitre were obtained. This salt, in the same state, is to be met with under the sand-stone strata of many of the mountains of Africa; but perhaps not in sufficient quantities to be employed as an article of export. There was also in the same cave, running down the sides of the rock, a black substance that apparently was bituminous: the peasantry called it the urine of the Das. The dung of this gregarious animal was lying upon the roof of the cavern to the amount of many waggon-loads. The putrid animal matter, filtering through the rock, contributed, no doubt, to the formation of the nitre.

The hepatic wells and the native nitre-rocks were in the division of Agter Sneuwberg which joins the Tarka to the south-west. Part of it resembles the other Sneuwberg; but the side adjoining the Fish river is Karroo ground, and the plains there are covered with tall bushes of the *salsola*. The soap that the inhabitants make from the ashes of this plant, and the fat of sheep's tails, is a considerable article of their revenue. Cattle and sheep are purchased by the butchers upon the spot; but soap and butter are carried in waggons to the Cape. The corn of this division was wholly consumed by the locusts; and the grass and the shrubs were so much devoured that the cattle
were

were almost starving. The numerous herds of springboks assisted also to bare the ground of its produce. In no part of Africa had such prodigious numbers of these animals been seen together as in this division. Our party, who were accustomed to judge pretty nearly of the number of sheep in a flock, estimated one troop of the springboks to consist of about five thousand; but if the accounts of these people might be credited, more than ten times that number have been seen together at such times as they were about to migrate.

On the fifteenth we made another long excursion into the Tarka mountains, near where they unite with the great chain that runs along the upper part of the Kaffer country. Our object was to find among the drawings, made by the Bosjesmans, the representation of an unicorn. One of the party promised to bring us directly to the spot where he knew such a drawing stood. We set off at an early hour, and rode through several defiles along the beds of temporary streamlets. In one place was a very large and curious cavern formed by a waterfall, that from time to time had deposited a vast mass of stalactitical matter; many of the ramifications were not less than forty or fifty feet in length. Some were twisted and knotted like the roots of an old tree, and others were cellular and cavernous. This great mass, reflected from a sheet of deep water beneath, clear as crystal, hemmed in by two steep faces of solid rock, and fronted by two old weeping-willows, made as fine a piece of wild and romantic scenery as fancy could design. A little on one side of the cavern, and under a long projecting
ridge

ridge of smooth white sand-stone, were several sketches of animals, and satirical attempts to represent the colonists in ridiculous situations and attitudes, characterizing them by some of their most common and striking habits. But the grand object of our research was still wanting. The long-necked camelopardalis was easily distinguished among the rest; as was also the rhinosceros and the elephant.

The same kind of black matter that had been found along with the native nitre, was here abundantly adhering to the rocks, and oozing down the sides of the cave. A Bosjesman that belonged to one of the party informed us that his countrymen mixed it with water, and drank it as tea. This cavern was near the source of the Riet river, a small stream that falls into the Fish river.

We still continued our search in the kloofs of the mountains, in the hope of meeting with the figure of the unicorn, the peasantry being equally sanguine to convince me of the truth of their assertions as I was to gratify curiosity. We came, at length, to a very high and concealed kloof, at the head of which was a deep cave covered in front by thick shrubbery. One of the party mounted up the steep ascent, and having made his way through the close brushwood, he gave us notice that the sides of the cavern were covered with drawings. After clearing away the bushes to let in the light, and examining the numerous drawings, some of which were tolerably well executed, and others caricatures, part of a figure was discovered that

that was certainly intended as the representation of a beast with a single horn projecting from the forehead. Of that part of it which distinctly appeared, the following is a *fac simile*.



The body and legs had been erased to give place to the figure of an elephant that stood directly before it.

Nothing could be more mortifying than such an accident ; but the peasantry, who could form no idea of the consequence I attached to the drawing of such an animal, seemed to enjoy my chagrin. On being told, however, that a thousand, or even five thousand, rixdollars would be given to any one who would produce an original, they stood gaping with open mouths, and were ready to enlist for an expedition behind the Bambos-berg, where some of them were quite certain the animal was to be found. Imperfect as the figure was, it was sufficient to convince me that the Bosjesmans are in the practice of including, among their representations of animals, that of an unicorn ; and it also offered a strong argument for the

existence of a living original. Among the several thousand figures of animals that, in the course of the journey, we had met with, none had the appearance of being monstrous, none that could be considered as works of the imagination, “creatures of the brain;” on the contrary, they were generally as faithful representations of nature as the talents of the artist would allow. An instance of this appeared in the cavern we last visited. The back shell of the *testudo geometrica* was lying on the ground; and the regular figures with which it is marked, and from which it takes its name, had been recently, and very accurately, copied on the side of a smooth rock. It was thought, indeed, from several circumstances, that the savages had slept in the cavern the preceding night.

The unicorn, as it is represented in Europe, is unquestionably a work of fancy; but it does not follow from thence that a quadruped with one horn, growing out of the middle of the forehead, should not exist. The arguments, indeed, that might be offered are much stronger for its existence than the objections are against it. The first idea of such an animal seems to have been taken from Holy Writ; and from the description there given, a representation of the unicorn, very illy conceived, has been assumed as a supporter to regal arms. The animal, to which the writer of the Book of Job, who was no mean natural historian, puts into the mouth of the Almighty a poetical allusion, has been supposed, with great plausibility, to be the one-horned rhinosceros: “Canst thou bind the unicorn
“ with his band in the furrow? or will he harrow the vallies
“ after thee? Wilt thou trust him because his strength is great,
“ or

“ or wilt thou leave thy labor to him?” Moses also very probably meant the rhinoceros when he mentions the unicorn as having the strength of God. Aristotle had a very different idea of the animal, to which he gives the name of unicorn, for he describes it as a species of wild ass with solidungulous feet.

The African rhinoceros, having invariably two horns, cannot be supposed as the prototype of the Bosjesmans' paintings of the unicorn. Besides, the former frequently occurs among their productions, and is represented as the thick short-legged figure that it really is, whilst the latter is said by the peasantry to be uniformly met with as a solidungulous animal resembling the horse, with an elegantly shaped body, marked from the shoulders to the flanks with longitudinal stripes or bands. The greatest number of such drawings are said to be met with in the Bambos-berg; and, as the people who make them live on the north side of this great chain of mountains, the original may one day, perhaps, be also found there.

This part of Africa is as yet untrodden ground, none of the peasantry having proceeded beyond the mountains. It may be said, perhaps, that if such an animal existed, and was known to the natives inhabiting a part of the country not very distant from the borders of the colony, the fact would certainly before this time have been ascertained. This, however, does not follow. Very few of the colonists have crossed the Orange river, or have been higher along its banks than the part where we were under the necessity of turning off to the southward; and the sort of communication that the peasantry have with the

Bosjesmans is not of that nature to supply much information respecting the country they inhabit. The mouth of the Orange river is much nearer to the Cape than the plains behind the Kaffer mountains; yet it was but the other day that the existence of the camelopardalis was ascertained near the former place, though no savage nation, but a civilized tribe of Hottentots only, intervened. Certain animals, as well as plants, confine themselves to certain districts of the same country. The animal above mentioned was never known to have passed the Orange river. It would appear also that in Northern Africa it has its limited range; for, since the time of Julius Cæsar, when one was publicly exhibited in Rome, it had been lost to Europe till within the present century. The accounts given of it by ancient writers were looked upon as fabulous. The gnou is found only in certain parts of Southern Africa; and the blue antelope, (the leucophæa,) which confined itself to the banks of one small river in the vicinity of Zwellendam, is now entirely lost to the colony. The springbok, seen in the northern parts in troops of thousands, never made its appearance in any part of the district of Zwellendam.

The Bosjesmans have no knowledge of any doubts concerning the existence of such an animal as the unicorn; nor do they seem to think there is any thing extraordinary that a beast should have one horn only. The colonists take it for granted that such an animal exists beyond the limits of the colony. Father Lobo, in his history of Abyssinia, describes the unicorn as a beautiful horse; but Father Lobo was considered as a person worthy of little credit, because he related things that were
new.

new. A modern traveller through the same country, in detailing some of the same circumstances touched upon by the former writer, has met with no better success. The schooled mind is apt to feel a propensity for rejecting every thing new, unless conveyed to it through the channel of demonstrative evidence, which, on all occasions, is not to be obtained; whilst, on the other hand, credulity swallows deception in every flimsy covering. The one is, perhaps, equally liable to shut out truth, as the other is to imbibe falsehood. Nature's wide domain is too varied to be shackled with a syllogism. What nations, what animals, what plants, and other natural productions, may yet be discovered in the unknown parts of the globe, a man, who has studied nature in the closet only, would hardly be supposed presumptuous enough to form a conjecture; yet such is the bias that the reputation of a name begets with the multitude, that the verdict of half a dozen generally decides the question.

Of all the accessible parts of the earth, the interior of Southern Africa is the least known to Europeans. A few paltry establishments of the Portuguese lie widely scattered along the two coasts; and the Dutch have colonized a few hundred miles from the southern angle along the two shores; but neither the one nor the other have supplied any information of the interior. Among the latter, Colonel Gordon was the only man who seemed desirous of extending the knowledge of the southern part of this continent, and his travels were very circumscribed. This gentleman had several occasions to see the drawings of the unicorn made by the savages, a circumstance to
prove

prove the existence of such an animal, on which he used to lay great stress. The following particulars, related to me by the persons themselves, may perhaps be considered as not entirely irrelevant to the subject. They shew at least how imperfect is the knowledge of the natural history of parts bordering immediately on the colony of the Cape, and that much yet remains to be discovered to an attentive traveller.

Adrian Van Yarfeld, of Camdeboo in Graaff Reynet, shot an animal a few years ago, at the point of the Bambos-berg, that was entirely unknown to any of the colonists. The description he gave me of it in writing, taken, as he said, from a memorandum made at the time, was as follows :

“ The figure came nearest to that of the quacha, but of a
 “ much larger size, being five feet high and eight feet long ;
 “ the ground color yellowish, with black stripes : of these were
 “ four curved ones on each side of the head, eleven of the
 “ same kind between the neck and shoulder ; and three broad
 “ waved lines running longitudinally from the shoulder to the
 “ thigh ; mane short and erect ; ears six inches long, and
 “ striped across ; tail like the quacha : on the centre of the
 “ forehead was an excrescence of a hard boney substance, covered
 “ with hair, and resembling the rudiments of a horn ;
 “ the length of this with the hair was ten inches.”

About the same time, *Tjardt Van der Walt*, of Olifant's River in Zwellendam, in company with his brother, saw, near the same place, an animal exactly of the shape of a horse, and
 somewhat

somewhat larger than the quacha, that had longitudinal black stripes on a light ground; it was grazing among a herd of elands. The two brothers having been some time without food, from their anxiety first to secure an eland, neglected the striped animal, intending afterwards to give chase to it; but his speed was so wonderfully swift, that, bounding towards the mountains, he was presently out of their sight.

Martinus Prinslo of Bruyntjes Hoogté, when on a hunting excursion, saw behind the same mountain several wild horses, entirely different from either the quacha or the zebra, but they were so shy that they never would approach them sufficiently near to make minute distinctions; they appeared to be of a light cinereous color, without stripes. This, however, might be a deception of sight arising from distance, as dark stripes upon a light ground cannot be distinguished very far; they form a shade between the two colors, and the lighter tint is predominant; as the primitive colors disposed in concentric circles on a card, and put in motion, will appear white. The black and buff zebra, even when very near it, and especially if in motion, appears of a dull bluish ash color, like the common ass. It is therefore probable, that the animals described by the three different persons, were of the same species. Vaillant also, who may generally be depended on, when he speaks of animals, mentions his having chased beyond the Namaaquas, day after day in vain, an Isabella colored zebra. This also, in all probability, was of the same kind as the others.

The

The weather had been excessively sultry for many days; and towards the setting of the sun on this day, as we were descending the mountain, the heavens became suddenly overspread with heavy black clouds that momentarily threatened to burst. The waggons just reached in time a spot in the valley, in some measure sheltered from the wind, when the storm opened with incredible fury. The violence of the wind was so great, that it swept away every thing before it; and it was followed by a burst of thunder that seemed to "shake the foundations of old earth." Peal after peal incessantly rushed on each other, and roared in the mountains as if tearing and riving in pieces their masses of rock; and streams of livid fire flew with terrible swiftness to every part of the horizon. Heavy rain, mingled with hailstones of unusual bigness, and violent squalls of wind seemed to be contending for the mastery with the thunder and the fire.

" ——— Since I was man

" Such sheets of fire, such bursts of horrid thunder,

" Such groans of roaring wind, and rain, I never

" Remember to have heard."

The storm continued a great part of the night; and on the following morning some of its effects were seen in the wreck of a grove of tall mimosas, the greatest part of which was torn up by the roots. Such like storms are said to be very frequent in these great chains of mountains during the summer months; but the south-east winds, which blow with such strength at the Cape, are not felt in the interior parts of the country. At the
Cape

Cape there happens less thunder and lightning than perhaps in any other part of the world, the island of St. Helena excepted, where they are scarcely known to the inhabitants.

Passing over a rough mountainous country, we halted on the thirtieth near the source of the Bavian's, or Baboon's river. It rises out of a chain of mountains in the Kaffer country, and joins the Great Tush river. Tall spreading mimosas were here scattered over the face of the country, and, with their new foliage of lively green, displayed a very beautiful appearance; they were also studded with clusters of golden flowers, not more pleasing to the eye than agreeable to the smell. Thousands of bees were busily employed in collecting from these flowers their winter's store. This part of the country seemed to abound in honey; it was hanging in large clusters from almost every rock, and this was the season of its greatest plenty and perfection. The Hottentots have a common observation among them, that when the *Doorn boom* blossoms the honey is fat.

Quick as the Hottentots are in observing the bees, as they fly to their nests, they have still a much better guide on which they invariably rely. This is a small brownish bird, nothing remarkable in its appearance, of the cuckoo genus, to which naturalists have given the specific name of *Indicator*, from the circumstance of its pointing out and discovering, by a chirping and whistling noise, the nests of bees; it is called by the farmers the honey bird.

In the conduct of this little animal, there is something that approaches to what philosophers have been pleased to deny to the brute part of the creation. Having observed a nest of honey, it immediately flies in search of some human creature, to whom, by its fluttering, and whistling, and chirping, it communicates the discovery. Every one here is too well acquainted with the bird to have any doubts as to the certainty of the information. It leads the way directly towards the place, flying from bush to bush, or from one ant-hill to another. When close to the nest, it remains still and silent. As soon as the person, to whom the discovery was made, shall have taken away the honey, the Indicator flies to feast on the remains. By the like conduct it is also said to indicate, with equal certainty, the dens of lions, tygers, hyænas, and other beasts of prey and noxious animals. In the discovery of a bee's nest, self-interest is concerned; but in the latter instance, its motives must proceed from a different principle. That involuntary and spontaneous agent, which is supposed to guide and direct the brute creation, and which man, unable to investigate the nice shades of cause and effect that no doubt govern all their actions, has resolved into one general moving power called Instinct, is perhaps less a blind impulse of nature than a ray of reason. The chain of rational faculties from man, the topmost link, to the meanest reptile, may, perhaps, with equal propriety, be supposed to exist, as that which more apparently is observed to connect their exterior forms. If it be instinct that in Europe causes the shyness of birds at the approach of man, the same instinct instructs them to be so bold in India and China, where they are not molested,

as almost to be taken by the hand. The different propensities of animals, proceeding from the different organs with which nature has furnished them, are no doubt modified and altered according to situation and circumstances. Most of the small birds of Southern Africa construct their nests in such a manner, that they can be entered only by one small orifice, and many suspend them from the slender extremities of high branches. A species of loxia, or grosbeak, always hangs its nest on a branch extending over a river or pool of water. It is shaped exactly like a Chemist's retort; is suspended from the head, and the shank of eight or nine inches long, at the bottom of which is the aperture, almost touches the water. It is made of green grass, firmly put together, and curiously woven. Another small bird, the *Parus Capensis*, or Cape Titmouse, constructs its luxurious nest of the *pappus* or down of a species of *asclepias*. This nest is made of the texture of flannel, and the fleecy hosiery is not more soft. Near the upper end projects a small tube about an inch in length, with an orifice about three-fourths of an inch in diameter. Immediately under the tube, is a small hole in the side, that has no communication with the interior part of the nest; in this hole the male sits at nights, and thus they are both screened from the weather. The sparrow in Africa hedges round its nest with thorns; and even the swallow, under the eaves of houses, or in the rifts of rocks, makes a tube to its nest of six or seven inches in length. The same kind of birds in Northern Europe, having nothing to apprehend from monkeys, snakes, and other noxious animals, construct open nests.

From the Bavian's river we made an excursion, for the second time, into the Kaffer country, where we ascended the Kaka, the continuation of the first range of mountains in the Sneuwberg. The summit was broken into hill and dale, and the surface beautifully varied with patches of green grass, and clumps of tall forest trees. The thick and sombre foliage of the woods, throwing their deep shadows into the hollows, contrasted with the bright and lively green knolls of grass, produced a succession of *gleams and glooms* that were extremely beautiful and pleasing. No part of Africa had yet afforded such grand, picturesque, and diversified scenery, as this commencement of a double chain of mountains, and the intermediate forests, of which the eye, looking easterly, could discover no end. The trees that were most plentiful were two species of the *Geel-bout*, or Yew, some of which were from twenty to thirty feet in circumference, and sixty to seventy feet in length.

The summit of the Kaka mountain commanded a most extensive view of the Kaffer country, as far as the sea-coast to the south, and beyond the residence of the king to the south-east. The level plains over which the Kat and the Kaapna are seen to serpentine, those plains where once the Ghonaqua nation tended their flocks and herds, now desolate, were laid as it were at the feet of the spectator.

A number of rare and beautiful birds were seen about the forests of the Kakaberg. Among these, one of the most remarkable was the *Cuculus Persa*, or Touraco. This superb
bird,

bird, by its gestures, seems as if conscious of its superior beauty. The *Upupa*, or Hopoe, was very plentiful; the *Numida melagris* equally so. A fifth species of bustard was also seen here, with brown and white wings, and neck of a cerulean blue color; size, that of a pheasant. Along the road were numbers of that beautiful little pigeon, called here the Namaaqua dove, not larger than a sparrow.

On entering one of the narrow vallies, we seemed on a sudden to be overtaken in the midst of a shower of snow, which we thought to be the pappus or down of certain plants. On closer examination, however, it was found to proceed from myriads of white ants, on the wing. The life of the Ephemera, in its perfect state, is that of a single day; but the flight of the white ant is but a leap into the air for a few moments, from whence they tumble to the ground never to rise again. The wings are so very fine, and so slightly attached to their bodies, that they generally fall off, or are broken with the fall. Others immediately roll them off, and afterwards creep into the crevices of the ground to end their existence in quiet. It would seem they had some presentiment of the doom that awaited them, and that they hastened to escape under the cover of the earth to avoid being devoured by their own children, which, in numberless myriads, swarm in the roads and naked places of the ground, particularly after a shower of rain. Heat and moisture, the two great productive powers in nature, or those at least that call the vital principle into action, bring forth the young from the eggs of all the insect tribe that are deposited in the ground. Thus, though a rainy summer may promote vegetation, yet it
at

at the same time calls to life such multitudes of destructive vermin, which otherwise would have remained dormant in the ground, that on the whole a dry season is perhaps the best.

From the Bavian's river into Bruyntjes Hoogté is a day's journey, and through this to the entrance of Camdeboo another, and three from hence to Graaff Reynet, at which village we arrived on the twenty-fourth, on one of the warmest days that we had yet experienced in the whole country. The thermometer, when exposed to the wind in the shade, rose to 108° : whilst in the house it was cool and pleasant at 82° . It was one of those hot winds, such as we had once before experienced on the banks of the Great Fish river. They happen most frequently upon the Karroo plains, where they are sometimes attended with tournados that are really dreadful. Wagons are overturned, men and horses thrown down, and the shrubs torn out of the ground. The dust and sand are whirled into the air in columns of several hundred feet in height, which, at a distance, look like the water-spouts seen sometimes at sea; and with those they are equally, if possible, avoided,—all that falls in their way being snatched up in their vortex. Sometimes dust and small pebbles are hurled into the air with the noise and violence of a sky-rocket. Rain and thunder generally succeed those heated winds, and gradually bring about a decrease of temperature to the common standard, which, in the summer season at Graaff Reynet, appears to be about 80° to 84° in the middle of the day. The mornings and the evenings are generally cool and pleasant.

CHAP. V.

Sketches on a journey from Graaff Reynet along the sea-coast to the Cape.

THE long continuance of dry weather had, for more than a month, rendered the passage of the Karroo, or great desert, impracticable, on account of the scarcity both of water and of herbage. All the rivers that intersect it, and the few springs that are found upon it, were said to be completely dried up; and the farmers of Graaff Reynet, who, at this season of the year, just after their harvest, generally make their annual visit to the Cape, were under the necessity of delaying their journey, or of going round through the district of Zwellendam, in all parts of which, and at all seasons of the year, is abundance of water. Three days, however, previous to our departure from Graaff Reynet, there had fallen such heavy and continued rain, both at that place, and to the westward in the mountains of Camdeboo and Sneuwburg, that little doubt was entertained of its having brought upon the Karroo a plentiful supply of water, as far at least as De Beer valley, the delightful meadow of the desert, mentioned in a former chapter.

On the strength of this conjecture, we departed from Graaff Reynet on the ninth of December, and found the two rivers,
Sunday

Sunday and Camdeboo, so much swelled with the rains as barely to be fordable. At the port also of Camdeboo, which opens upon the desert, the small river there was running with a copious and rapid stream; a circumstance that nearly removed every doubt, and scarcely suffered an idea to exist of the probability even of experiencing any want of water on this side of De Beer valley. We soon however found, by fatal experience, that the extent of the rains had been very limited. In fact they had reached only a few miles beyond the Poort. Still we had hopes that the Hottentot's river, a day's journey farther, would contain some water, or should this even fail, that the Karuka, whose source was in the mountains of Camdeboo, must undoubtedly be full from the late rains that were perceived to fall in those mountains.

On the eleventh, therefore, we left the Poort, and the farther we proceeded upon the desert, the fainter became the traces of the rain that had fallen, till at length they totally disappeared. The face of the country very soon presented only one continued plain of uniform aridity and barrenness. The few saline plants, thinly scattered over a surface of white clay sprinkled with reddish sand, were shrivelled up, crackling under the feet like so many bundles of rotten sticks. The rays of the sun playing upon the naked surface were painful to behold, and their dazzling light highly injurious to the eye.

About the middle of the day a melancholy object presented itself before us, near the side of the road. It was a horse at his last gasp, for want of water. He was known by our Hottentots
to

to have left Graaff Reynet eight days before, with a party of farmers, who had gone from thence, in order to proceed across the Karroo to Zwarteberg. He had probably strayed from them in the night, the time they generally travel, and by that means was left behind. The poor animal, on perceiving us, made a faint attempt to advance towards the road, as if to entreat a drop of water, but the exertion was too great. He fell exhausted on the ground, and the only relief that could be given to his painful sufferings, was that of bringing them to a speedy end. A few miles farther, another of these poor creatures, that had belonged to the same party, was found by the road side already dead. Such objects were but ill calculated to keep alive our hopes in our present situation. We ventured, however, to proceed, making the best of our way to Hottentot's river; and, after a long and very fatiguing day's journey, about nine o'clock at night we reached this river, which, to our great grief and mortification, we found completely dry; and its clayey bed broken and divided, by the heat of the weather, into polygonal figures, like the summits of basaltic columns. The disappointment may more readily be conceived than described; and we now began to be seriously afraid for our cattle. To quench the thirst of man a small quantity of water is sufficient for a length of time; but cattle, after the fatigue of a long day's journey, require more than could possibly be carried for their use. The little that we had brought upon the waggons was shared among our people, who happened to be numerous enough to require our whole stock.

A consultation was held, to take into consideration the steps that appeared most advisable to be put in practice. The result of this was, that as soon as the oxen, which had been in the yoke the whole day, had refreshed themselves by a few hours' rest, the relays should be put to the waggons, and we should proceed on our journey. We were unwilling to return, and it was in vain to think of remaining longer where we were. Beside the total want of water, there was neither a blade of grass, nor shrubbery of any sort, upon which the cattle could browse. The succulent and fleshy leaves even of the mesembryanthemum tribe, were shrivelled up to a leathery consistence, and all their juices evaporated. Scarcely a living creature had appeared during the whole day, but at night there came into the tent, attracted by the light of the candle, such a multitude of a species of insect, such as in England are called cockchafers, that they literally extinguished the candle and drove us out. This insect was of a pale ash color, and the thorax was covered with a whitish powder.

A little after midnight we started afresh, directing our way across the desert towards the nearest part of the Karuka, hoping still to be fortunate enough to meet with water there. On arriving at day-light on the wished-for spot, not a vestige of moisture even appeared in the whole bed of the river for several miles. We were now totally at a loss what step to take. We found we had advanced too far to think of retreating, and were entirely uncertain of what might be the event of proceeding. In the midst of painful reflections, the sun began to dart his scorching

scorching rays, and to display a wide horizon that presented to the eye a melancholy picture of cheerless desolation. No quadrupeds, except our own exhausted oxen, not a bird, nor even an insect appeared. A total suspension of the vivifying principle seemed to prevail on every side, or that animated nature had fled from the dreary waste. With such a prospect, and under such a situation, the mind sickened, and seemed to feel a kind of

“ — secret dread and inward horror
 “ Of falling into nought.”

One single hope only now remained, and that was fixed upon De Beer valley. This place we knew to be a kind of reservoir, in which a number of periodical streams had their confluence from various parts of the distant mountains of Nieuwveld, Winterberg, and Sneuwberg. The distance from our present situation to it was not very far, but our cattle were exceedingly exhausted; and had long expressed their suffering by hollow lowings, and the sheep by their perpetual bleating. The children also of the Hottentots who were with us, cried incessantly for water.

The appearance of De Beer valley, from a distance, indicated no want of water; it was that of a beautiful green meadow; and the cattle, and the horses, and the Hottentots, the moment it caught the eye, scampered away towards it in full career. Those in the waggons were not behind the rest. Their looks and manner, on arriving at the spot, sufficiently expressed the

U U 2

disappoint-

disappointment they felt on finding the beds of the pools and the rivers all perfectly dry. In one place only, shaded by mimosas that had withstood the drought, was a small puddle of muddy water. Of this we contrived to bail out with our hats a small quantity for the horses, but it afforded none for the cattle. The strong grass, in many places, and the reeds still retaining some verdure, were greedily devoured by the oxen, and it was to this circumstance I am convinced their safety was owing.

Riding over the surface of the valley in search of some pond or rivulet that might afford a little water, the glimpse of a small pool caught the eye of my horse through some thick bushes, into which he directly sprung, and, in spite of resistance, forced his way into the water. He had no sooner, however, applied his mouth to it, than he withdrew his head, finding it to be as salt as brine. It was in fact the Salt river mentioned on a former visit to this place. Much of the water having evaporated in the course of the long series of hot weather, the banks were now encrusted with plates of salt, that wore the appearance of ice.

The reeds and rush-like grass having in some degree refreshed our cattle, towards the cool of the day we determined to start afresh, strike off towards the edge of the desert, and cross the great range of the Black mountains, beyond which there was no uncertainty of meeting with water. Our miserable cattle were, therefore, once more put into the waggons, and moving slowly through a pass of the mountains, which proved to be tolerably level, we came about midnight to a place where a Hottentot had

had told us was the *Karree fonteyn*. After searching about for some time in the dark, a kind of swamp was discovered, containing, in places, a little muddy and fetid water. Bad as it was, both Hottentots and cattle swallowed it with great avidity. For our own part, a bottle of chalybeate, and another of hepatic water, that had been taken and kept for experiment, were found very acceptable and refreshing.

On the fifteenth, after travelling about five hours, and after having been four days without fresh water, we came to a clear limpid stream called the *Keur fonteyn*, or Choice Spring; and never certainly did any stream of water appear to be more truly valuable and delightful. It was with the greatest difficulty that both cattle and Hottentots, who are equally void with the former of thought or reflection, were restrained from drinking to excess after so long an abstinence.

The great scarcity of water on those plains of Africa, known by the name of Karroo, rendering it sometimes hazardous, and almost always harassing, for cattle to pass, should seem to point out the camel or the dromedary as the kind of animals best suited for the transport of goods and passengers in the colony of the Cape. The camel is more patient of hunger than most quadrupeds, and is able to endure thirst for a much longer space of time; and the harsh thorny shrubs, or the succulent plants, one or the other of which are to be met with on the most dreary of the deserts, would furnish for it abundance of food. It will carry with ease half a ton weight, which is more than twice the quantity that is ever drawn by an African ox.

We

We encamped on the seventeenth near the banks of the Olifant's river, where several hot springs issued out of a bog, consisting of a brownish oxyd of iron, mixed with irregular shaped pieces of ponderous iron stone, many of which seemed once to have been in a state of fusion. The water was chalybeate, as appeared from the great quantity of orange colored sediment deposited in the channels through which it ran, and the fine steel blue skum with which the surfaces of the wells were covered. Of the four principal wells, all rising out of the same bog, the temperatures were 111° , 109° , 105° , and 95° of Fahrenheit's scale. They are much frequented by the neighbouring peasantry, and held by them to be efficacious in the cure of bruises, sprains, and rheumatic complaints.

How friendly soever the water of the wells might prove to the human constitution, it could not be more so than in appearance it was favorable to the growth of plants. Along the sides of the streamlets a zone-leaved geranium was observed climbing to the height of fifteen feet, and the whole shrubbery that grew in the vicinity of the water was more than usually luxuriant.

The long drought had completely deprived the Olifant's river of its waters, and the face of the country was nearly as barren and parched as the Karroo on the opposite side of the Black mountains, except indeed along each side of the bed of the river, where the mimosas, now full of golden blossoms, still retained their verdure, and where the Canna plant, or Salsola, was growing to the height of eight or ten feet. Should these two articles, at any future period, be considered as worthy attention in a
commercial

commercial point of view, the division of Olifant's river is the most favorable situation for encouraging their culture, and for procuring their products in the most considerable quantities.

None of the larger kind of game, except the Koodoo, are now to be met with near Olifant's river, though the animal, whose name it bears, in all probability, once abounded there. The river otter is plentiful, as are also two or three species of wild-cat, one of which appeared to be that described under the name of Caracal. The body was of a deep chestnut brown, and the points of the ears tipped with brushes of long black hairs; a second species, or rather variety, was of a cinereous blue color; and a third, clouded black and white. Here also is abundance of that species of viverra called the *Ratel*. Its choice food is honey, and nature has endowed it with a hide so very thick, that the sting of a bee is unable to penetrate through it. No animal is perhaps more tenacious of life than the ratel. A dog with great difficulty can worry it to death; and it is a species of amusement for the farmers to run knives through different parts of the body, without being able, for a length of time, to deprive it of existence.

Turning off to the southward from the Olifant's river, and passing round a high detached mountain called the *Kammaasieberg*, we crossed a range of hills, and descended into Langé Kloof, or the Long Pass. This is a narrow valley, in few places exceeding a mile in width, hemmed in between a high unbroken chain of mountains on the south, and a parallel range of green hills on the north, stretching nearly due east and west, without
any

any interruption, about one hundred and fifty miles. The hills on the northern side increasing to the height of mountains in their progress to the eastward, terminate on the plains near Zwart Kop's river; and the great chain of mountains on the south side runs into the sea near Camtoo's bay, and extends to the westward till it meets the high mountains of Hex river.

Lange Kloof abounds with streams of water and good pasturage. The ground throughout consists of a fine rich soil, and to almost all the habitations are good gardens, fruiteries, and vineyards. Being considerably elevated above the level of the sea, and situated in the midst of mountains, snow frequently falls in the winter months, and lies on the ground for a length of time.

From one end to the other of Lange Kloof there is but one passage for waggons over the south chain of mountains, and this is seldom made use of, being considered among the most formidable and difficult roads and passes in the colony. It lies, in fact, over the very summit of one of the points in the chain, called the Duyvil's kop, or the Devil's head. We had sixteen oxen to each waggon, in order to effect our passage of this mountain. The road was dreadfully steep and stoney; and as it approached the summit, where the width of the ridge was not above fifteen paces, the ascent was from stratum to stratum of rock, like a flight of stairs, of which some of the steps were not less than four feet high. Upon these it was necessary to lift the waggons by main strength. Just as we reached the summit, the weather, which had been remarkably pleasant, the thermo-
meter

meter standing at 74° , now began to be overcast, the wind blew fresh, and shortly after an immense sheet of black vapor was observed to approach, borne upon the south-east wind from the sea. Ascending rapidly in rolling volumes, it completely immersed us upon the summit of the mountain. The temperature of the air was immediately decreased to 39° of Fahrenheit. Before our three waggons had got over the highest peak, the weather began to clear up, and it was then curious enough to observe that part of the country between the mountains and the sea involved in dense clouds, and deluged apparently with heavy rain, whilst the northern side of the same mountains enjoyed a sunshine unobscured by a single cloud.

The instability of the climate of the southern angle of Africa, has frequently been noticed in the course of these sketches; yet a more remarkable instance of it had not perhaps occurred than in the present situation. An elevation of about one thousand feet, or little more, produced a variation of temperature, in the course of two hours, equal to thirty-five degrees. It afterwards appeared, that, on the same day, being the longest in the year, snow had fallen and lain for some time upon the same chain of mountains, close behind Zwellendam, where it is not particularly lofty.

The descent of the Duyvil's kop was much more gradual than had been the ascent, and the smooth grassy surface of the northern side was now changed into an extensive shrubbery, among which the most conspicuous plants were heaths and proteas of amazing sizes; one of the latter having a round thick

leaf with a purple margin, bore a flower that measured very nearly ten inches in diameter. Several species of the *Ixia*, of the *Iris*, of the *Morea*, and *Gladiolus*, now in full bloom, adorned the sides of the hills, whilst the *Cape Sophora*, and the *Arduina* with its jessamine-like smell, perfumed the whole country.

At the feet of this chain of mountains runs a belt of wood, extending with little interruption near two hundred miles in length; and consisting chiefly of a great variety of forest trees, many of which are found of a prodigious magnitude. Some of the woods of the colony have already been noticed. Here I completed my catalogue of such as appeared most applicable to common uses, having procured in the whole forty-four different sorts. Of these, I could have wished to have been able to indulge the Botanist with Linnæan names, but the little time I had to spare, and the difficulty of procuring blossoms from tall forest trees, made it impossible. I must, therefore, content myself with giving the colonial names only of most of them; and even these may prove of infinite service to the future traveller, who may wish to direct his attention to the subject.

Catalogue of useful Woods, growing in the Colony of the Cape of Good Hope.

No.	COLONIAL NAMES.	GENERAL SIZE.		Quality.	Uses.	Linnæan Names.	Remarks.
		Height, without a Branch. Feet.	Diameter. Feet.				
1.	Autniequas Geel hout	20 to 50	10	Not unlike deal	Balk, beams, plank, &c.	<i>Taxus elongatus</i>	
2.	Zwart yzer hout	25—45	4	Very hard	{ Ploughs, axes for wheels, &c. }	{ <i>Sideroxylon Mi-</i> <i>lanopoleos.</i> }	
3.	Wit yzer hout	25—45	3½	Nearly as hard as do	Ditto Ditto	<i>Sideroxylon</i>	
4.	Haffagai hout	20—40	3	Like plain mahogany	{ Fellies and spokes of wheels, chairs, &c. }	<i>Curtisia faginea</i>	{ A very good wood for all kinds of house carpentering }
5.	Wit peer	15—20	2 to 3	Hard and tough	{ In general use for waggon }		
6.	Rood peer	20—30	3	Harder than ditto	{ Axes, waggon-poles, beams, &c. }		
7.	Rood hout	12—15	1½ to 2	- - -	Not much used		
8.	Gomaffie hout	12—15	1½ to 2	- - -	{ Vaneering, household furniture }		
9.	Saffran hout	10—15	1 to 2	Clofe and hard			
10.	Coyatte hout	12—20	1 to 2	Tough	Staves for butter firkins		
11.	Roodde Els	15—25	2	Stands water well	Mill work	<i>Cunonia Capensis</i>	
12.	Witte Els	10—12	3	Soft and tough	Plank for boxes, &c.		
13.	Stinkhout	20—35	3 to 5	Like walnut	Furniture		
14.	Buckan hout	15—25	2	Tough	Waggon wheels		
15.	Maffanu hout	20—35	3 to 5	Like yzer hout	{ Known only near Bosjesman's river }		
16.	Camdeboo Stink hout	12—15	3	Soft and porous	Very little used		
17.	Dorn hout	8—10	1 to 1½	Hard and tough	{ Waggon wheel, shocs, poles, &c. }	<i>Mimosa Karroo</i>	
18.	Olyven hout	6—10	1	Very hard	General	<i>Oliva Capensis</i>	
19.	Wilgan hout	6—10	1½	Of willow	{ Little used but where wood is scarce }	<i>Salix Babylonica</i>	
20.	Hottentots' bourbonje	12	1	Hard and short	Not used	<i>Schotia speciosa</i>	{ African Lignum Vitæ, but not applicable to the same purposes as that wood }
21.	Zwart bast	12	1½	Hard and tough	Not much used	<i>Royena?</i>	Fit for poles of all sorts
22.	Nieft hout	15	1	Very hard	{ In Bruyantjes Hoogte only }	- - -	Stands water remarkably well

Catalogue of useful Woods, growing in the Colony of the Cape of Good Hope.

No.	COLONIAL NAMES.	GENERAL SIZE.		Quality.	Uses.	Linnæan Names.	Remarks.
		Height, <small>without a Branch.</small> Feet.	Diameter. Feet, Inch ^s				
23.	Kerfen hout . . .	12	1 0	- - -	Not used - -	- - -	{ Apparently not of much value ; the tree scarce
24.	Castanie hout - -	20	1½ 0	Soft - - -	- - -	Callodendrum	
25.	Hard peer - - -	14 to 16	1½ 0	Harder than No. 2.	Sometimes in waggons	- - -	{ Found only in Kaffer land
26.	Hoenderspoor - -	12—14	0 9	Hard and close	Not much used	- - -	
27.	Buffel hoora - -	12—14	0 9	Ditto - - -	Not used	- - -	
28.	Bofch bourbonjes -	-	-	- - -	- - -	{ Schotia, or Guia- cum, new species }	
29.	Melk hout - - -	6—8	1 0	Very hard - -	Ploughs - -	Ficus ?	{ Used by the Bosjefman Hot- tentots for bows The strong smell of turpentine it emits, prevents insects from entering it
30.	Essen hout - - -	-	-	- - -	- - -	Taxus ?	
31.	Geel hout (proper) -	-	-	- - -	- - -	- - -	
32.	Karru hout - - -	6—8	0 10	Tough - - -	Nothing particular	Euclea ?	
33.	Cyperus, or Cedar-hout	12—20	1 0	Of fir - - -	{ Chests, drawers, fur- niture }	Thuia, new species ?	
34.	Klip Essen - - -	20	8 to 10 0	Hard and short	Little used	- - -	{ Recommended to be tried as plank in boat building A close-grained, shaded, hand- some wood The interior bark of this tree is just like silk, but not of long fibre Good for poles; being long, small, and straight
35.	Saly hout - - -	15	8 to 10 0	Hard and heavy	{ Yokes for waggons, charcoal }	Budleia Salvi folia ?	
36.	Witte bosch hout -	20	2 0	Light and soft	{ Fellies for light car- riage wheels }	- - -	
37.	Wilde Granate - -	12	0 8	Short - - -	Nothing particular	- - -	
38.	Wilde Vier - - -	10	0 7	Hard - - -	Chairs, Table feet, &c.	Lyceum ?	
39.	Wit Essen hout - -	12—15	3 0	Close and soft	{ Plank for various purposes }	- - -	
40.	Kocha - - -	10—12	0 7-9	Hard and tough	Carriage poles - -	- - -	
41.	Seybaft - - -	10—12	0 7-9	Tough - - -	Ditto - - -	- - -	
42.	Zwarte hout - - -	20	1 to 2½ 0	Hard and tough	{ Fellies for waggon wheels }	- - -	
43.	Keur hout - - -	20	1 to 2½ 0	Light and soft	Spars, rafters, &c.	Sophora Capensis	
44.	Witte hout - - -	15—20	1 to 2 0	Ditto - - -	Ditto - - -	- - -	

It may be observed, that the sizes marked in the above list are, as nearly as could be guessed, such as they run in general, but of both the Geelhouts, may be met with abundance of trees, from seventy to ninety feet in length, and very proper for ships' masts, spars, and other timber used in ship building.

Between the foot of the Duyvil's kop and Plettenberg's bay, the latter of which is about fifty miles to the eastward of the former, the country is beautifully wooded, and intersected with numberless rivulets, issuing out of the forests; there are also several broad deep rivers, over which it is necessary to pass in boats. Some of these terminate in large sheets of water, forming beautiful lakes, whose margins are finely fringed with wood. One lake is sufficiently curious, having neither inlet nor outlet, and the water is greener than any part of the ocean, not salt, but so slightly saline as scarcely to be perceptibly so to the taste. One of the farmers told me, with great triumph, that he had puzzled the Governor Van Plettenberg, with respect to the water of the Green lake, by asking him whence the color proceeded. The governor had made him for answer, that it came from the surrounding shrubbery, being green matter washed away by the rains. Upon this the peasant shewed him some of it in a glass, where it appeared clear and colorless. There is a tradition among the Hottentots, that this lake, now six or seven miles in circumference, was, no very long time ago, a beautiful green meadow, and it is still said to be increasing in size. If the quantity of water thrown in by the rains, and its springs, should exceed the quantity

tity that may escape by absorption and evaporation, the Green lake will one day, by great pressure, break down the barrier that now divides it from the sea, which has evidently been the case with its neighbouring lake the Knysna. This, in fact, is now become an arm of the sea, into which the tide sets through a narrow passage or portal, as into a dock. This passage, though narrow, and not quite clear of rocks, would admit of small vessels; and within there is plenty of deep water stretching out into a basin of several miles in width. The surrounding hills are clumped with forest trees, and their sloping sides are clothed with shrubbery down to the water's edge. The lake is studded with a number of flat islands, covered with verdure. The arms of the Knysna stretch into the deep vallies at the feet of the mountains, and are there lost in impenetrable forests. The whole country is boldly marked, and most magnificently clothed, and may be considered, beyond comparison, as the grandest and most beautiful part of Southern Africa.

The farm-houses in this part of the country were also in a better style than they are usually found to be at so great a distance from the capital. Being near the sea-coast, the proprietors had been at the expence of burning shells into lime, and of white-washing all the buildings. A sort of chalky limestone was also here observed in large masses, lying upon, and near the surface; but was never burnt into lime. To almost every house was attached, generally in a grove of trees, a small inclosure with ornamented walls, serving as the family burying-ground. The decorations usually bestowed on those
mansions

mansions of the dead, appeared to have much more engaged the attention than those of the living. In the interment of the dead, the Dutch have no kind of service or ceremony.

Plettenberg's, as well as Zwart Kop's bay, is entirely open to the south-east winds. The west point called Robenberg, or Seal mountain, lies in latitude $34^{\circ} 6'$ south, longitude $23^{\circ} 48'$ east; distance from Cape Point 320 English miles. The eastern shore of the bay rounds off into the general trending of the coast, which, seen from the landing-place, terminates in a very high and regular cone-shaped mountain, called in the old Portuguese charts, Pic Formosa, but by the more modern Dutch navigators, the Grenadier's Cap. The best landing-place is about three miles and a half to the northward of the Robenberg, on a sandy beach, about five hundred and fifty yards in length, guarded at each extremity by rocky points that project into the sea. A heavy swell generally sets into the bay, except in northerly and north-westerly winds; when these blow, the water is smooth. The south-west winds occasion the greatest heave of the sea.

Close to the landing-place is erected a new and handsome dwelling-house; a magazine for the reception of timber, two hundred feet in length; and a strong commodious building for the reception of troops. The intention of the Dutch government was to form an establishment here, for the purpose of deriving from it a supply of timber, to answer their demands for that article in the Cape. Strong prejudices, however, have long been entertained against the Cape timber, though perhaps without grounds for them. Few woods will stand the effects
of

of alternate exposure to heavy rains, dry winds, and a scorching sun; where such exposure has been guarded against, one of the lightest of the woods, the Geelhout, has been known to remain for more than a century, without shewing any symptoms of decay.

In the forests, near this bay, a creeping plant grows in great plenty, whose interior bark, drawn off in fibres of forty or fifty feet in length, seems to be an excellent substitute for hemp. The Hottentots twist these fibres into very strong cordage. The bark of another native plant, a species of Hibiscus, made very excellent hemp. The leaves of the plant were deeply divided, like those of the *Cannabinus*, a species of the same genus, cultivated in India, for the purpose of obtaining hemp from the bark; but the stem of the African Hibiscus had small spines, and the flower was large, and of a sulphureous yellow color.

Among the useful trees of the forests, we noticed a species of wild fig, that grew to a very considerable size, and bore a fruit resembling in shape and appearance the Bergamot pear. It had a pleasant subacid flavor, and was greedily devoured by the birds. The leaves were oblong-ovate. A species of salvia, or sage, grew wild, and was much esteemed for its healing qualities, when applied to green wounds. A species also of Solanum was much esteemed for the same purpose. The leaf resembled that of tobacco, on which account it was known by the name of wild tobacco; the upper side of the leaf was dark green, and smooth; the under side white, and woolly; the stem woody and prickly. The woolly side of the leaf applied to a swelling

swelling or gathering, quickly brings it to a head, and the green side afterwards as quickly heals it. I had an opportunity of seeing these effects in more than one instance. Not far from Plettenberg's bay, along the banks of a small rivulet, I met with a whole forest of the *Strelitzia Alba*, whose tall and tapering stems, like those of the *Areca* nut, or Mountain cabbage, were regular and well proportioned, as the Corinthian shaft. Many of them ran to the height of five and twenty or thirty feet, without a leaf. It is sufficiently remarkable, that the three *Strelitzias* of Africa should be found in three distinct situations, and at great distances from each other; and what is still more remarkable, that the white species should grow so very abundantly along the side of one stream of water, and not a single plant be found near any of the rest in the same neighbourhood. From the great resemblance of this plant to the *Banana* tree, the peasantry call it the *Wild Plantain* *.

From Plettenberg's bay we returned to the westward, crossing many deep and dangerous rivers. Of these, the *Kayman*, or *Crocodiles'* river, was by much the most difficult to pass with waggons, the banks on either side being several hundred feet high, steep, and rocky. It is confidently asserted, that the animal, whose name the river bears, occasionally appears in it,

* But the most elegant plant that occurred in the whole forest, was the native vine of Africa. This creeper ran to the very summits of the highest *Geel-hout* trees, and bore a fruit in size and appearance not unlike the *Morelle* cherry, seldom more than two or three in a cluster, of a very agreeable and delicate subacid flavor. The leaves of this vine are shaped like those of the *ivy*, dark green, and smooth on the upper, and rather woolly on the under, surface; not deciduous, but evergreen.

though none of the people with me could testify to have seen any other species of that genus frequenting the water, except Iguanas, from six to ten feet in length. In the Nile only the crocodile is found, in so high a latitude as 31° or 32° ; but the *Trichecus*, or Lamantin, frequents both coasts of Africa, from the Mediterranean to the Cape point, sometimes, though very rarely, entering the mouths of the rivers.

The Kayman's river separates the division of Plettenberg's bay from the Autinieguas land, a tract of country which the Dutch government kept exclusively for its own use, both on account of the grand forests that were here easily accessible, and the excellent pasturage it afforded for their cattle at all seasons of the year. The mountains here being near the sea, attract the vapors, and cause a greater quantity of rain to fall than in any other part of the colony. This division is terminated to the westward by the great Brakke river, which rises in the forests above-mentioned, and, running directly south, discharges itself into Muscle bay.

Muscle bay, like all the others on this coast of the colony, is open to the south-east, but it is safer and better for shipping than either Zwart kops, or Plettenberg's bay. The western point, called Cape Saint Blaize, is in latitude $34^{\circ} 10'$ south, longitude $22^{\circ} 18'$ east, and distance from the Cape about 240 English miles. Variation of the compass was $27^{\circ} 54'$ west, and time of high water at full and change about three o'clock. When the winds blow from south south-west, westerly, and round to east-north-east, and not too violently, the bay affords secure and easy anchorage

anchorage for ships at the distance of half a mile to that of a mile from the landing-place. The winds that blow from east to south throw in a heavy swell; but the south-east winds never blow home here as at the Cape.

The general landing-place is upon a sandy beach, at the head of a small bay, into which runs a rivulet of water slightly impregnated with salt. This stream does not appear to be capable of filling above a dozen butts of water in a day. A magazine for the reception of grain is erected near the landing-place. It is a strong stone building, one hundred and fifty feet in length, and will conveniently hold ten thousand bushels of corn. The price of this article delivered here is about twenty-two rix-dollars the load of thirty-one Winchester bushels, or at the rate of two shillings and tenpence the bushel.

The bay abounds with excellent fish of various kind, with muscles that are large and of a strong flavor, and with oysters of an excellent quality; and, in the winter months, the black whale is very plentiful.

Great quantities of the common aloe grow upon the plains that surround Muscle bay. The inspissated juice of this plant was once an article that afforded a considerable profit to those who were at the trouble of collecting and preparing it, but the price is now reduced so low, about threepence the pound, that it is no longer considered as an object worthy the attention of the inhabitants. Three pounds are as much as one person can collect and prepare in one day.

On the fifth we crossed Gauritz river, the western limit of the division of Muscle bay. This river may properly be called the Sink of the Colony. All the waters that have their origin within the distance of one hundred and fifty miles to the eastward, and as far to the westward, upon the Great Karroo, and mountains to the northward of it, meet in one immense chasm of the chain of mountains nearest the sea-shore, and are discharged through the channel of the Gauritz river. The sudden and copious inundations of this river are almost beyond credibility. The ruins of a house are still to be seen, that is said to have been destroyed by a swelling of the river, though the site cannot be much less than a hundred feet above the level of the channel; at this time all its numerous branches scarcely supplied it with water sufficient to cause a current.

From Gauritz we proceeded to one of its branches, the False river, near which were seen a great variety of brown and yellow ochres, and abundance of that curious stone, already mentioned, under the name of Paint stone.

On the sixth we passed several rivulets, whose united streams form the Kaffer Kuyl's river. In advancing towards the Cape, the country became better inhabited; neat houses stood on the banks of all the rivers, and the gardens, and vineyards, and fruiteries, were more extensive, and kept in a better state of culture. The surface of the country interjacent between the rivers was very irregular, the soil dry clay and chalk, and was fit for little else than a sheep pasture. It produced a great quantity of shrubs, among which was one called the *Guarrie bosch*, (Royena?)
from

from whose berries, and those of the *Arduina*, some of the farmers had made a sweetish wine, not unlike that which in Europe is procured from the Alder.

The forests of Plettenberg's bay, and the Autiniequas land, had ceased to clothe the feet of the mountains from the point directly north of Muscle bay. Another clump now appeared, about twenty miles to the eastward of the Drofsdy of Zwellendam, called the Grootvader's bosch. This wood, in the early stages of the colony, contained as great a variety of large timber trees as the others, but being so much nearer to the Cape, is now stripped of most of the wood that is valuable.

From Grootvader's bosch, a beautiful valley stretches along the feet of the mountains, as far almost as the Drofsdy. This village is composed of about twenty houses, scattered over a fertile valley, with a perpetual stream of water flowing down it. The habitation of the Landroft stands at the head of the valley; is a very comfortable building, and has an extensive garden attached to it, surrounded with plantations of oaks, and well stocked with a variety of fruits.

The district of Zwellendam, is composed chiefly of that tract of country lying between the Black mountains and the sea-coast, and stretches to the eastward, as far as the Camtoos river, where Graaff Reynet first begins. The number of families contained in it, are between five and six hundred; and the whole population of whites amounts to about three thousand. The number of
Hottentots,

Hottentots, in the whole district, do not exceed two to each family; and that of slaves is about five.

Zwellendam affords no great supply of cattle to the Cape market, and still less so of sheep. Horses are brought up for sale in considerable numbers. The revenue of the farmers are principally derived from timber, grain, butter, soap, and dried fruits. To a naturalist, this district is the least interesting, except in botany, and in this department it offers an ample field. Of the number of those who have made that branch of science their particular pursuit, and who have visited this colony, none have sufficiently attended to the native forest trees, so as to be able to assign them their places in the prevailing system of arranging the vegetable part of the creation. Few antelopes, except the Reebok, Steenbok, and Duyker, are now remaining in the district of Zwellendam. Formerly the Bonte'bok, the *Scripta* of the *Systema Naturæ*, was almost as numerous near the Drosdy, as the Springbok still continues to be in the Sneeuwberg. At present they are rarely seen in troops exceeding a dozen. At one time also in the vicinity of Zwellendam, were a few of that elegant species of antelope, the *Leucophæa*, or blue antelope, an animal that is now no longer to be met with in the whole colony, at least none have been seen or heard of these ten years past. Hares and partridges are plentiful in every part of the district. The woods of Autiniequas land abound with a variety of birds, both great and small.

On the twelfth we entered the district of Stellenbosch, by crossing the river Zonder-end, and proceeded to Zoete Melk valley,

valley, a patch of excellent land belonging to government, and lately converted by it into a station for cavalry.

Proceeding up the valley through which the *Endless* river meanders, we halted, late in the evening, at a place called the Bavian's kloof, where there is a small establishment of Moravian missionaries, or *Hernhüters*, so called from a village in Saxony where an asylum was offered to them after their expulsion from Moravia. These people have been several years in this colony, for the express purpose of instructing the Hottentots in the doctrines of Christianity, but had met with little encouragement, in the object of their mission, under the Dutch government. The number of their proselytes have increased of late to such a degree, that they have found it necessary to send to Europe for more teachers of the gospel.

Early in the morning I was awakened by the noise of some of the finest voices I had ever heard, and, on looking out, saw a group of female Hottentots sitting on the ground. It was Sunday, and they had assembled thus early to chaunt the morning hymn. They were all neatly dressed in printed cotton gowns. A sight so very different to what we had hitherto been in the habit of observing, with regard to this unhappy class of beings, could not fail of being grateful; and, at the same time, it excited a degree of curiosity as to the nature of the establishment. The good fathers, who were three in number, were well disposed to satisfy every question put to them. They were men of the middle age, plain and decent in their dress, cleanly in their persons, of modest manners, meek and humble in their deportment,

ment, but intelligent and lively in conversation, zealous in the cause of their mission, but free from bigotry or enthusiasm. Every thing about the place partook of that neatness and simplicity which were the strongest features in the outline of their character. The church they had constructed was a plain neat building; their mill for grinding corn was superior to any in the colony; their garden was in high order, and produced abundance of vegetables for the use of the table. Almost every thing that had been done was by the labor of their own hands. Agreeably to the rules of the society, of which they were members, each had learned some useful profession. One was well skilled in every branch of smith's work, the second was a shoemaker, and the third a taylor.

These missionaries have succeeded in bringing together into one society, more than six hundred Hottentots, and their numbers are daily encreasing. These live in small huts dispersed over the valley, to each of which was a patch of ground for raising vegetables. Those who had first joined the society had the choicest situations at the upper end of the valley, near the church, and their houses and gardens were very neat and comfortable; numbers of the poor in England not so good, and few better. Those Hottentots who chose to learn their respective trades, were paid for their labor as soon as they could earn wages. Some hired themselves out by the week, month, or year, to the neighbouring peasantry; others made mats and brooms for sale: some bred poultry, and others found means to subsist by their cattle, sheep, and horses. Many of the women and children of soldiers, belonging to the Hottentot corps, reside

at

at Bavian's kloof, where they are much more likely to acquire industrious habits than by remaining in the camp.

On Sundays they all regularly attend the performance of divine service, and it is astonishing how ambitious they are to appear at church neat and clean. Of the three hundred, or thereabouts, that composed the congregation, about half were dressed in coarse printed cottons, and the other half in the ancient sheep-skin dresses; and it appeared, on enquiry, that the former were the first who had been brought within the pale of the church; a proof that their circumstances at least had suffered nothing from their change of life. Persuasion and example had convinced them, that cleanliness in their persons, not only added much to the comforts of life, but was one of the greatest preservatives of health; and that the little trifle of money they had to spare, was much better applied in procuring decent covering for the body, than in the purchase of spirits and tobacco, articles so far from being necessaries, that they might justly be considered as the most pernicious evils.

The deportment of the Hottentot congregation, during divine service, was truly devout. The discourse delivered by one of the fathers was short, but replete with good sense, pathetic, and well suited to the occasion: tears flowed abundantly from the eyes of those to whom it was particularly addressed. The females sung in a stile that was plaintive and affecting; and their voices were in general sweet and harmonious. Not more than fifty had been admitted as members of the Christian faith, by the ceremony of baptism. There appeared to be no violent zeal on

the part of the fathers, which is the case with most other missionaries, to swell the catalogue of converts to Christianity, being more solicitous to teach their trades to such as might chuse to learn them. Adopting the idea of the humane and ingenious Count Rumford, their first great object seemed to be that of making men happy, that they might afterwards become virtuous, which is certainly much fonder philosophy, than the reverse of the proposition.

It would be supposed, that men like these, so truly respectable in their missionary character, and irreproachable in their conduct, would be well received and encouraged in any country; yet such is the brutality and gross depravity of the peasantry of this colony, that a party, consisting of about thirty, had entered into a confederacy to murder the three teachers, and to seize and force into their service all the young Hottentots that might be found at the place. These horrid wretches had actually assembled at a neighbouring house, on the Saturday evening, intending on the following day, in the middle of divine service, to carry their murderous purposes into execution. Luckily for the missionaries, they had intimation of what was going on through a Hottentot, who deserted the service of one of the intended assassins for that purpose. They had laid their apprehensions before Sir James Craig, who, in consequence, issued his injunctions, in a letter to the overseer of the post of Zoete Melk valley, that no inhabitant should in any shape molest the *Hernhüters*, on pain of incurring the heaviest displeasure of the government. The letter arrived on the very day they were assembled, and the paltrons, on hearing it read, sneaked off each to his own home, and

and the missionaries since that time have continued to exercise their functions unmolested. The cause of the farmers' hatred to these people, is their having taught the Hottentots the use of their liberty, and the value of their labor, of which they had long been kept in ignorance.

At the point of a small detached mountain, to the southward of Bavian's kloof, is a warm spring, whose waters are pretty much used by invalids from the Cape. They are strongly chalybeate, like those near Olifant's river, and rise out of the same kind of black turfy ground, in which were large masses of a brown ponderous iron stone, that apparently contained from 60 to 70 per cent. of iron. The Dutch government had caused a house to be erected, for the accommodation of such as might be inclined to use the waters; which is now in so ruinous and filthy a state, that the appearance of it is much better calculated to hasten the progress of the disease, than the convalescence of the patient. Most of the English who have used the bath, have taken their lodgings at a farm house, about a mile from the wells, where there are comfortable accommodations for a few persons. The temperature of the waters, where they first break out of the ground, is 114° of Fahrenheit, but in the bath they are reduced to 110°. They are chiefly recommended for rheumatic complaints and debilitated constitutions.

From the bath we proceeded to the westward, crossed a steep sandy hill, called the *Hou boek*, and on the seventeenth, descended the Hottentot's Holland's kloof, a difficult pass across

the great north and south chain of mountains, but infinitely less so than either the Duyvil's kop, or the Kayman's river.

From the portal, or entrance of the kloof, is a grand view of the Cape peninsula, the sweeping shores of the two great bays, and the intermediate dreary isthmus appearing like a sea of sand, and enlivened only by a few neat farm houses, scattered over the fore-ground, at the feet of the great chain of mountains. The middle of the isthmus is inhabited only by a few poor people, who gain a subsistence by collecting the stems and roots of the shrubs that grow in the sand, and sending them in small carts to the Cape, where they are sold for fuel. The distance from Hottentot's Holland's kloof to Cape Town, is about thirty-six miles, or an easy day's journey, which we made on the eighteenth of January; not sorry to have brought to an end a seven months' tour, in the course of which many personal inconveniences and difficulties had occurred, to be borne and surmounted only by a determination to gratify curiosity at the expence of comfort.

CHAP. VI.

Sketches on a Journey into the Country of the Namaaquas.

THE breaking up of the south-east monsoon, which generally happens towards the end of April or the beginning of May, is a season of the year that, of all others, is worst calculated for undertaking a journey through the sandy deserts of Southern Africa. Should the change of the monsoon not have taken place when the traveller sets out, the long drought which always precedes it will have parched up and destroyed vegetation to such a degree, that his cattle would be in danger of perishing from scarcity of food, and still more so from want of water: and, should the contrary be the case, he is equally unfortunate, as not only for some time he will find no pasturage, but must also have to contend with all the inconveniences of stormy weather, and perhaps be retarded for weeks together by the swelling of the rivers.

Weighty as these objections appeared to be, it was thought expedient to commence a journey to the northern parts of the colony, along the western coast, at the very moment when the breaking up of the summer monsoon was expected. It was the tenth of April when I set forward from Cape Town, with a covered waggon, and twelve stout oxen, in good condition, a single horse, a slave, a waggoner, and leader, who had accompanied me on the

the other journies, and an additional Hottentot to attend the oxen for relays: for it must not be supposed, that the same team of oxen should be able to draw daily for a length of time. The farmers, who live only at the distance of ten days' journey from the Cape, seldom come up with less than a couple of teams of bullocks to use alternately. They also travel at nights, for the sake of coolness, and that their cattle may graze or browse during the day.

But for the better convenience of those who travelled on the public service, government imposed a kind of tax on the farmers, by obliging them to furnish *Voorspans*, or gratuitous teams of oxen, whenever they should be demanded. It was considered as a sufficient recompense for this service, that they were supplied by the government, without any expence to themselves, with powder and ball, to carry on their expeditions against their enemies, the Bosjesmans. In the present, as well as on the former tour, I availed myself of this privilege of ancient usage in the colony, and never met with a refusal, or even a reluctant compliance with the demand, which, indeed, was always requested not as a matter of right, but of favor.

None of my Hottentots being acquainted with one step of the northern tour I was about to undertake, we had to depend entirely on the information of the farmers as to the road and most convenient halting places. The first day brought us to *Koeberg*, about eighteen miles from the Cape; and the second to *Groene kloof*, about sixteen miles farther of deep sandy road, a hard day's drag for a dozen oxen.

Groene

Groene kloof is a division of the Cape district, consisting of several clumps of small hills, that cross the sandy slip, extending along the western coast. On the dales that lie within these hills are copious springs of good water, and excellent pasturage for cattle and horses. None of the ground near the Cape can be considered as remarkably productive in grain; it requires manure, or to lie fallow for two or three years, and even then affords nothing that in England would be considered as a crop. It appears from the returns of grain, which the farmers are obliged to deliver annually to government, that the average product is under tenfold. In places close to the town, the returns are much less, the ground being worn out by a continual succession of crops of grain.

Among the hills of Groene kloof, are considerable numbers of Steenboks, Duykers, and Reeboks, and a few Hartebeests, but frequent visits of sportsmen from the Cape have made them very shy. Hares, korhaens, grouse, and partridges, were sufficiently plentiful. Various species of the liliaceous tribe, particularly of the amaryllis, and other bulbous rooted plants, were now in bloom, but the long drought had left little verdure on the sides of the hills. At this season of the year that refreshing tint is only to be looked for in the neighbourhood of springs and rivulets.

The house of Slabert, the *Tea fonteyn*, is the next usual stage beyond Groene kloof. As this family holds a distinguished place in the page of a French traveller in Southern Africa, the veracity of whose writings have been called in question, curiosity

was

was naturally excited to make some enquiries from them concerning this author. He was well known to the family, and had been received into their house at the recommendations of the fiscal ; but the whole of his transactions in this part of the country wherein his own heroism is so fully set forth, they assert to be so many fabrications. The story of shooting the tyger, in which his great courage is contrasted with the cowardice of the peasantry, I read to them out of his book. They laughed very heartily, and assured me that although the story had some foundation in fact the animal had been shot through the body by a *shell-roar* or trap-gun, set by a Hottentot, and was expiring under a bush at the time they found it, when the valiant Frenchman discharged the contents of his musquet into the tyger and dispatched him. The first book which he published, of his Travels to the Eastward, contains much correct information, accurate description, and a number of pointed and just observations. The sale of the copy of this, encouraged the making of a second, the materials of which, slight as they were, seem to have chiefly been furnished by the publication of an English traveller, whom he pretends to correct ; and, from an account of an expedition to the northward, sent out by the Dutch government of the Cape in search of a tribe of people reported to wear linen clothing. The fact seems to be this : that he left *Zwartland* in July, travelled to the Orange river, and returned at the beginning of the following December, at which time he is conducting his readers to the northward, as far as the tropic. The inventive faculties of the Abbé Filippo, who is the real author of the work, supplied what he conceived to be wanting in the traveller's remarks, and in the two above-mentioned publications.

From

From the house of Slabert we crossed the country to Saldanha bay, which, as a spacious, secure, and commodious sheet of inland sea water, for the reception of shipping, can scarcely perhaps be equalled in any part of the world. It extends in length near fifteen miles, in the direction of the coast, which is about north by east, and south by west; and the entrance into it is near the northern end, through a ridge of granite hills, moderately high. In this entrance are three rocky islands, two of which, named Jutten and Malagas, are partly without; and the third of flat naked rock, called Marcus, is directly in the mouth of the passage, about three quarters of a mile from the northern, and a little more than a mile from the southern points of land, forming the entrance. These and the island being once fortified, would render the bay inaccessible to an enemy's fleet. To the southward of the entrance, and within the bay, are two other islands, called the Schaapen and the Mewen. Between these is a narrow passage into the south angle of the bay, which is called the Laguna, or lake, where cutters, schooners, fishing ships, and all kinds of small craft, to almost any amount, might lie as securely as in a dock. On the north side of these two islands is also good and safe anchorage for large ships; and it was here that the squadron of Admiral Lucas was lying, when captured by that of Sir George Elphinstone.

But the northern part of Saldanha bay, distinguished by the name of Hootjes bay, affords the most eligible, convenient, and secure anchorage for large shipping, being land-locked and sheltered from all winds. There is also a very excellent landing-place near a mass of granite rock, which is convertible into a commodious pier. The western shore of Hootjes bay is skirted

by a range of granite rocks, along the sides of which shipping might be hove down to repair, the water being four fathoms deep, close in with the rocks. The Dutch ship Middleburg, that was set on fire when Commodore Johnstone appeared off the bay, went down with her sides just touching these rocks, where she now lies under water as if alongside a quay.

The entrance of Saldanha bay lies in latitude $33^{\circ} 10'$ south, longitude 18° east, and the distance from Table bay is eighteen leagues north by west. About nine leagues to the southward of the entrance is a low flat island, not many miles from the main land, called Dassen island, which is said to be constantly covered with rabbits and penguins. The former may generally be taken with great ease; for on the appearance of people on the island, the penguins take possession of the rabbit holes, to the exclusion of the rightful owners. Saldanha bay, the shores of Dassen island, and Robben island, in the mouth of Table bay, abound with the different kinds of fish peculiar to this part of the world. Saldanha bay, in the winter season, is frequented by vast numbers of the black whale. At this time they were just beginning to set in. A whaler that had entered the bay, on trial, found no difficulty in picking up a large fish every day.

From the many conveniences that Saldanha bay possesses, as a secure harbour for shipping, at all seasons of the year, where they may be repaired, and even built, must, on the other hand, be deducted very serious disadvantages, without the removal of which it will ever be prevented from becoming the general rendezvous of a fleet; these are the want of wood and of fresh water.

The

The first might indeed be supplied, to a certain degree, from the adjacent country. In the sand hills, that surround a part of the bay, grow several kinds of shrubby plants, whose long and thick roots are easily drawn out of the loose sand, and in such abundance, as scarcely to be credited. They form a kind of subterranean forest. The sides of the hills also, and the extensive plains, are covered with frutescent plants. Was the country planted with the oak, poplar, silver tree, and others that grow near the Cape, plenty of firewood might, in a very few years, be furnished for any number of shipping that would ever frequent the bay.

The scarcity of water is a much more serious evil than that of wood, and perhaps more difficult to obviate. There are two small springs towards the south end of the bay, but the water of both is slightly impregnated with salt. The farmers seem to have no idea of digging wells, or of opening a spring to let it run; on the contrary, the usual practice is that of making a large dam close to the spring: by so doing, they expose a greater surface to the action of the sun, which is certainly an unwise measure, on a soil so strongly impregnated with saline substances, and in a climate where evaporation is so powerfully carried on. On a trial being made, by order of the late Admiral Sir Hugh Christian, to obtain water by digging near the landing-place of Hootjes bay, a mass of granite rock, of a steel blue color, was entered to the depth of thirty or forty feet, and the small quantity of water that oozed through the seams, was found to be impregnated with salt.

The best method of supplying water at the bay seems to be that of bringing it in leaden pipes from a copious elevated spring, about six miles to the northward of Hootjes bay. This spring at Witte Klip, or the white rock, appears to be quite sufficient for every purpose, and the expence of conveyance would be moderate, at least of little consideration, when compared with the magnitude of the object.

It was a favorite subject of conversation with the late Colonel Gordon, and some other Dutch gentlemen, to turn the course of the Berg river into Saldanha bay, by which they would not only furnish a plentiful supply of water for a town, garrison, and shipping, but would, at the same time, open a navigation into the interior of the country, particularly into Zwartland, the granary of the colony. Such a scheme would, no doubt, be practicable, though that part of it which regards the supply of a fleet and town with fresh water would perhaps fail to answer the purpose, for the following reasons: That part of the Berg river, where it would be the most practicable to turn its course, is within a mile or two of the place to which the high spring tides flow, and about twenty miles from the present mouth of the river in St. Helena bay. The distance from the same place, along the line in which the new channel would be carried to Saldanha bay, is about five and twenty or perhaps thirty miles. Allowing for the circuitous course of the river in its present channel, and considering the bays of Saldanha and St. Helena to have the same difference of level with the place at which the river is proposed to be turned, the general current in the new would be the same as that in the present channel, and this

this is so very trifling, that, let there be given in the new one a fall as little as possible at the first, and as great as possible near the bay, the tide would nevertheless set up it for many miles, and render the water completely salt. Were a canal made to terminate in an open basin near the bay, there is reason to think that, without a current, it would constantly be choked up with the immense volumes of sand that are shifting and rolling over the level surface whenever the winds blow strong.

The general surface of the country, between the Berg river and Saldanha bay, is flat and sandy, exhibiting, however, a continued forest of shrubbery. It is very thinly inhabited, on account of the scarcity of fresh water. The ground, however, is uncommonly fertile. The usual returns on wheat are from fifteen to twenty fold. Barley yields from thirty to forty. They use no manure, and in some places the soil is so loose and sandy, that the operation of ploughing is unnecessary. Garden plants of all kinds thrive remarkably well. It is curious enough to see pumpkins, melons, cauliflowers, and other vegetables, growing luxuriantly in sheer sand. At one place they were rooting out sugar canes, that had overspread a garden, to give place for a plantation of tobacco. The greasy appearance, and the adhesive quality, of the sandy soil that covers the surface of this part of the country, are probably loamy or marly particles that render it so particularly favorable to vegetation. From the chalky masses of stone that lie at certain depths under, and sometimes appear above, the sandy surface, may perhaps be disengaged, by some simple or combined action of the air and the saline bodies in the sand, that species of aeriform acid contained in chalk, which

which late experiments have shewn to be the kind of aliment most congenial to the nature of plants.

Notwithstanding the fertility of the ground, and the facility of tillage, a very inconsiderable quantity of grain is produced, owing to the distance and heavy roads to the only market in the colony. Draught oxen are scarce and dear in the neighbourhood of the Cape, and vast numbers are annually destroyed, in transporting the articles of necessary consumption to Cape Town. There is a curious paragraph in the Minutes of the Proceedings in the government of Van Rièbeck, the founder of the colony, which shews the extreme scarcity of cattle in the early stages of the settlement, before some daring adventurers penetrated beyond the great ranges of mountains. It states, that the captains of four English ships having arrived in the bay and presented the governor and council with pipes, glasses, brandy, and other acceptable articles, the governor in council resolved, in order to shew that the Hollanders were not wanting in gratitude and civility, that the ox belonging to the Company, which had died, not of disease, but from hunger, should be divided into four quarters, and that one should be sent to the captain of each ship.

The bay of St. Helena is about fifteen miles, over a sandy slip of land, to the northward of Hootjes bay. It resembles Table bay, than which it is a little more open and exposed to the northerly and north-westerly winds, but has much clearer anchorage. There is a small spring of fresh water at the point of the hilly peninsula that runs along the coast from Saldanha bay.

bay. The Berg river, though an immense mass of water, is so fanded up at the mouth, that boats can enter it only at high water. There still remain a few Hippopotami towards the lower part of this river, but they are very shy, and come up at nights only, to the place where the water begins to be fresh. The Dutch government, in order to preserve this animal in the colony, imposed a fine of a thousand guilders on any person that should put one of them to death. Game of every kind is very plentiful towards the mouth of the river. The two large antelopes, the hartebeest, and the gemsbok, are occasional visitors of this part of the country.

At the distance of fifteen miles from the mouth of the river, I crossed it in a boat, and floated over the waggon with a cask. The road on the opposite side was so heavy, and so great the extent of country uninhabited, on account of the deep sandy surface, and scarcity of water, that it was dark before the waggon could arrive at the place where it was proposed to halt for the night. The driver, though an inhabitant of the country, lost his way over the uniform surface of sand and bushes, and we were three hours dragging backwards and forwards before the house could be discovered, though close upon it the whole time. It was a wretched hovel of rushes, standing in the midst of a sandy plain. The night was very cold, and there was neither food nor shelter for the horses, nor water for the cattle. The shifting of the sand-drifts had choaked up the briny spring, and the inhabitants had been obliged for some time to fetch their water from the Berg river, a distance at least of twelve miles. At the hazard, therefore, of losing our way a second time, I determined

mined to proceed to the next habitation, which was said to be about four miles farther. On arriving there, at midnight, it was found to be very little better than the other. The marks of extreme poverty appeared on the house and its inhabitants. A cow, or two, a little corn, a few sheep and goats, constituted the whole of their possessions. Yet these are in much better circumstances than the generality of the peasantry of Europe, having the benefit of a climate that requires little clothing, and no artificial heat, both of which are absolutely necessary in most countries of the latter; and they may here, at all times, procure abundance to satisfy the cravings of nature.

It was on these miserable plains that the Abbé de la Caille terminated the measurement of his base from the Cape, in order to ascertain the length of a degree of the meridian in the southern parallels of latitude. Respecting this great mathematician and astronomer, and his arduous undertaking, the learned author of a *Mathematical Dictionary*, lately published, has the following remark: "Having thus executed the purpose of his voyage, and no present opportunity offering for his return, he thought of employing the vacant time in another arduous attempt; no less than that of taking the measure of the earth, as he had already done that of the heavens. This, indeed, had been done before by different sets of learned men, both in Europe and America; some determining the quantity of a degree at the equator, and others at the arctic circle: but it had not as yet been decided, whether in the southern parallels of latitude the same dimensions obtained as in the northern. His labors
" were

“ were rewarded with the satisfaction he wished for, having
 “ determined a distance of 410814 feet from a place called
 “ *Klip fonteyn* to the Cape, by means of a base of 38802 feet
 “ three times actually measured : whence he discovered a new
 “ secret of nature, namely, that the radii of the parallels in south
 “ latitude, are not the same length as those of the corresponding
 “ parallels in north latitude.”

If the observations of the Abbé be correct, and I believe they have never been called in question, the result of them, giving a larger bulk to the southern hemisphere of the earth than to the northern, may, perhaps, be sufficiently satisfactory to account for the equipoise of the globe without having recourse to a *southern continent*, which many learned and ingenious gentlemen imagined to exist, in order to counterbalance the great quantity of mountainous land in high northern latitudes.

The oxen for relays having followed the waggon alone, without the Hottentot who had the charge of them, his companions began to grow uneasy about him. Having had a violent headache the preceding evening, occasioned by repletion, he had asked me for an emetic. At first he took three grains of tartarized antimony, which produced no effect. In the course of half an hour, I gave him three more without success. The third time he swallowed a double dose which answered the purpose. His companions concluded that he must have died on the road from the effect of the medicine, and were continually repeating in my hearing, that it was pity I had given him so much. Though perfectly at ease myself with respect to any

harm that would come to the Hottentot, having had former experience of the strength of their stomachs, yet it was no easy matter to convince the rest of it ; and his absence was also a very serious inconvenience. In the morning however he made his appearance. He had fallen asleep, it seemed, about the middle of the preceding day, and had not awakened till night. Though very dark and unacquainted with a single step of our route, he had found us by following the tract of the waggon. At this sort of business a Hottentot is uncommonly clever. There is not an animal among the numbers that range the wilds of Africa, if he be at all acquainted with it, the print of whose feet he cannot distinguish. And though the marks by which his judgment is directed be very nice, they are constant in animals in a state of nature, whereas domesticated animals are liable to many accidental variations. He will distinguish the wolf, for instance, from the domestic dog, by the largeness of the ball of the foot, and the comparative smallness of the toes. The print of any of his companions' feet he would single out among a thousand. The peasantry are also tolerably expert in tracing game by the marks of their feet ; it is, in fact, a part of their education. An African boor gains a sort of reputation by being clever *op bet spoor*. This is the method by which, on moonlight nights, they hunt down the poor Bosjesmans.

At the eastern extremity of the sandy plain, I was fortunate enough to procure fresh oxen, to enable me to pass the northern point of the *Picquet berg*, a clump of mountains, probably so named from their position in front of the great chain. Grain,
fruit,

fruit, good tobacco, and a limited number of cattle, are the produce of the farms, at the feet of these mountains. At one place they were distilling an ardent spirit of no disagreeable flavor, from water-melons, the largest I remember to have ever seen.

The deep sandy plains were succeeded by still deeper sandy hills, over which the waggon made but very slow progress, the wheels sinking to the axes every moment. These hills, or rather mountains, of sand, extended near thirty miles beyond the point of the Picquet berg, before they attained their greatest elevation, where a very curious and grand spectacle presented itself. Along the summit, which was several miles in width, and the length from north to south bounded only by the horizon, rose out of the coarse chrystallized sand and fragments of sandstone, a multitude of pyramidal columns, some of which were several hundred feet in diameter, and as many in height; these, viewed from a distance, had the regular appearance of works of art. The materials were also sandstone, bound together by veins of a firmer texture, containing a portion of iron. The cavernous appearance of these peaked columns, that had hitherto withstood, though not entirely escaped, the corroding tooth of time, and the vicissitudes of devouring weather, proclaimed their vast antiquity; and the coarse sand in which their bases were buried, and the fragments of the same material that were scattered over the surface, and not yet crumbled away, were sufficiently demonstrative that these pyramids had once been united, making at that time one connected mountain, similar to the great northern range. Out of the mouldered remains of these mountains had been formed the inferior hills of sand, while the finer parti-

cles, wafted by the winds and the torrents, have rested on the plains that stretch along the sea coast. The united streamlets of water among these hills compose a sheet of considerable extent, called the *Verlooren valley*, or the Forlorn lake. It had some resemblance to the Knyfna, near Plettenberg's bay, but was totally devoid of the appendages that beautify the latter. Instead of green knolls, skirted and capped by forest trees, the Forlorn lake was surrounded by barren mountains of sand, crowned with masses of naked rock. The margin of the lake, however, was belted with good ground, and seemed to be tolerably well inhabited.

It was three long days' journeys before the hills of sand were left behind, and a new sort of country, still sandy, presented along the banks of the *Olifant*, or Elephant's river, which, like the Berg, is one of the few rivers in the colony that is never entirely dried up. It receives a constant supply from the numerous rills that descend from the great northern chain of mountains, along the feet of which it flows, till their discontinuance in a connected range, between the thirty-first and thirty-second degree of latitude. Here they branch out into a number of rugged hills and detached masses, till at length they mingle with the Karroo plains. After the breaking up of the chain of mountains, the Elephant's river turns off to the westward, and falls into the sea, in latitude $31\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ north. The mouth of this river is contracted, rocky, and shallow, and seldom safe to be entered by boats. Within, it is navigable near thirty miles up the country, which is, however, wild, and almost uninhabited, owing to the scarcity of fresh water.

The

The banks of the river, where we crossed it, afforded several very excellent farms. The rice that was produced here was a large heavy grain, and white as snow. The multitude of birds attracted by this grain, requires a number of people to guard it from them. The small *Loxia Afrild* is particularly troublesome. The immense flocks of this species of Grosbeak may in some degree be conceived, from the circumstance of three-and-sixty having been shot at one discharge of a small fowling-piece.

On the twenty-first I attempted, with sixteen fresh oxen in the waggon, to cross the great chain of mountains; which was effected in about eight hours. The passage had not been made at this place for a length of time by any waggon, yet as the usual circuitous road would have occasioned the loss of a whole day, I considered it as an object worth the trial.

This part of the chain of mountains was exceedingly grand and lofty, and the road that serpented through the lower passes, between the high points, was dreadfully steep and rocky. On approaching the summit, the same kind of pyramidal remains made their appearance, in the midst of a surface of sand and fragments of rock. These peaks were some of them a thousand feet high, and of such vast bulk, that each might be considered as a separate mountain. They form the very highest ridge of the great chain, but the general summit to be passed over, in the approach to them, was at least five miles in width. The grotesque manner in which the resisting fragments grew out of this surface, or, rolling from the upper ridges, had tumbled

on

on each other, forming natural chambers, arches, colonnades, and *Stonebenges*, to the magnitude of which, that on Salisbury Plain would appear but as a cottage by the side of that city's great cathedral; all of these so wasted, and corroded, and cavernous, the skeletons only of what they once were, struck the mind with the same kind of melancholy awe, that the contemplation of the remains of ancient grandeur generally inspires. Waiting in the midst of these antique ruins, the mind was in vain busied in trying to form some estimation of the measure of time that had passed away in effecting the general depression of the mountain, and equally vain was it to attempt a calculation, in how many ages yet unborn, the stupendous masses, of at least a thousand feet high, of solid rock, would dissolve, and "leave not a rack behind."

It could be at no loss, however, to comprehend, whence proceeded the sandy plains that stretched along the western coast of this country, to a distance yet untravelled. This range of mountains alone, taken at two hundred miles in length, five miles in width, and the general depression at a hundred feet only, would have supplied materials to cover uniformly to the depth of three feet, a plain of thirty-three thousand square miles. A farther idea suggested itself, that all the sand of the sea shores probably owed its origin to the remains of worn-down mountains, scattered by the winds, and borne down by torrents into the "bosom of the deep," and thence thrown back upon its shores. This theory seems to be established by facts. In Africa the whole coast is sand, from the Cape of
Good

Good Hope to the Gulph of Benin, under the equinoctial line, an extent through which it is more than probable, the stratified mountains of sand-stone continue to run ; whilst, on the opposite continent, the rocky shore extends from the line to the southernmost Cape, because the whole of the mountains there are composed of durable granite. Geological observations on the gradual decay, or rather mutation of superficial form of this our habitable earth, leaves a doubt on the unprejudiced and unshackled mind, of the idea of the popular Jewish notion, that would limit its creation to the short period of six thousand years. The human mind appears lost and bewildered in attempting to form any conception of a beginning of the existence of matter, or of ought antecedent to it.

On approaching the upper part of the mountains, the weather became suddenly boisterous, and to a perfect calm and mild atmosphere succeeded, in the course of a few hours, a violent hurricane that roared through the vaulted rocks, and a cold and piercing air. Yet in this elevated situation, a small spring of water had tempted a peasant to erect his cottage, around which was just as much ground as was sufficient to afford a supply of bread to its possessor. Solitary and wretched as the hovel appeared to be, it was crowded with persons of both sexes, in the height of gaiety. The owner of the place had just returned from the Cape, and had brought with him a supply of brandy, with which they were making merry. The poorest peasant, on his annual visit to the Cape, never fails to lay in, among other articles of purchase, a cask of *sopic*, and this has little rest day

or

or night till it be exhausted. Friends and strangers are equally welcome to it as long as it will run. Among the present company were two men whom, from their countenances, I could perceive to be Europeans. They had been long enough in the country to forget their own language, but not to have learned that of the Dutch, so that in fact they scarcely had the means of making themselves intelligible to any one. The one was an Irishman, the other English, and both were probably deserters from the army or the navy. The first had taken up the profession of a *water-wyzer* or discoverer of water, and had shewn sagacity enough to establish a sort of reputation in the country. By speaking little, looking wise, and frequent application to the eye of a double convex lens, which happened to have an air-bubble within it, he had practised with great success on the credulity and ignorance of the Dutch farmers, and had obtained from them, by this and other means, a pair of horses, and several hundred rix-dollars of paper money. Lighting their pipes at the sun by means of his glass, and the persuasion that the air-bubble within it was a drop of water that possessed the sympathetic quality of always turning towards its kindred element, had such an irresistible effect on the rude minds of the African boors, that the Irishman, like a true quack, appreciated his consequence so highly, that he never deigned to pay a visit to any farmer, in order to examine the state of his water, without a previous fee. Observing me laugh at the credulity of the people gaping at his mountebank tricks, he took occasion to speak to me apart, begging, for God's sake, I would not detect the imposture, as he was now in such good practice that he was able to keep an assistant. Surprise ceases at the credulity
of

of men born and educated in the wilds of Africa, on reflecting to what extent the impostors of Europe have succeeded, in living upon the folly of those who have been weak enough to listen to them. Animal magnetism has raised many a quack to a state of grandeur, at the expence of credulity; and the nonsense of the *virgula divinatoria*, or divining rod, has still its votaries.

There never perhaps were a set of men so void of resources in overcoming difficulties as the Dutch farmers of the Cape. The inanity of mind, and the indolent habit of body, are not even surmounted by self-interest. Their ignorance cannot be a matter of wonder, but we often find in Europe unlettered men possessed of great talents and ingenuity. No printing-press has yet found its way to the Cape of Good Hope, except a small one for cards or hand-bills. They contrive, indeed, to publish a sort of almanac, but that of the current year has somewhat suffered in its reputation, by having stated an eclipse of the moon to fall on the day preceding the full, and to be invisible, when, unluckily for the almanac-maker, it happened at its proper time, visible, and nearly total.

The descent to the eastern plain was several hundred feet less than had been the ascent of the opposite face of the mountain. The country was now rough and stony, bounded by a high ridge of wall-sided rock, from five hundred to a thousand feet in height. The summit was a broad belt, of that kind of surface formerly spoken of under the name of Karroo. A partial elevation still higher than this surface, is called the Bokkeveld's mountain, and resembles, in its appearance and produce, the

mountains of Sneeuwberg. In ascending the Bokkeveld, the south-east monsoon threatened a change. The wind having blown strong from that quarter for three days, suddenly changed to the northward, and the contention produced incessant peals of thunder the whole day, heavy rain, and the largest hailstones I ever saw. Some of them measured six-tenths of an inch in diameter; and a peasant who lived on the highest part, asserted that they fell near his house as large as pullets' eggs. On the weather clearing up at night, the temperature of the air had decreased from 78° at noon, to 40° of Fahrenheit's Scale.

In the course of a very few days after the rain, the surface of the Bokkeveld became one verdant carpet of herbaceous plants, embroidered by a multitude of the humble, yet beautiful, *Oxalis*, some red, some white, and others yellow. Game of most kinds is very abundant in this district, particularly hares, bustards, and partridges, which we daily saw in thousands; and they were so very tame, that we had no difficulty in procuring whatever quantity we wished for.

The division of *Onder*, or lower Bokkeveld, being the remotest in the colony on this side, and bordering on the country inhabited by those Maroon Hottentots, called Bosjesmans, it became necessary in order to proceed to the northward, to make an addition to my people, not only as a protection against the savages, but as guides over an uninhabited desert of the same nature as the great Karroo leading to Graaff Reynet. *Louw*, the *Veld Commandant*, readily offered his services, but he was totally unacquainted with the desert that skirted his district. A
Hottentot,

Hottentot, however, was soon found, to whom were known all the places where water was most likely to be met with, and he was glad of the occasion to act as guide.

Having mounted a second waggon to carry the necessary provisions and grain for our horses, we set forward at an early hour in the morning, in order to arrive at the steep edge of the mountain before dark. From this precipice, which in many parts is not less than two thousand feet, the Karroo plains beneath appeared as a vast sea, and the horizon was interrupted only by a few distant hills, rising out of the dreary waste like so many islands. We descended the precipice where it was least steep, and having reached in safety the bottom, just before dark, we yoked fresh oxen into the waggons, and launched forth upon the desert. About midnight we halted upon the Thorn river, which unexpectedly ran in a considerable stream, but the water was salt as brine. A spring near the river called the *Stink fonteyn*, threw out water that was saline to the taste, and had a most disgusting fetid smell. The thunder storm and heavy rain, that for a whole day had continued on the Bokkeveld, had not extended to the Karroo. The surface was dry and dusty, as in the middle of summer, and the few shrubby plants that are peculiar to this sort of country, generally of the succulent kind, were so parched and shrivelled, that vegetation seemed for a length of time to have been suspended.

We were here visited by a party of Bosjesmans, headed by a captain or chief. This man was well known to the commandant, having been of signal service to him in expeditions against his

own countrymen, whose marauding way of life he had been prevailed upon to quit, with his whole horde, on the promise of pardon and protection of the government. It is now fifteen years since they had taken up their abode on the edge of the Karroo, where they have lived peaceably and industriously ever since. He said that, by making proper overtures to his countrymen, he had no doubt but many hordes might be brought to live quietly in the service of the farmers, for that their distresses, in their present way of life, were great and grievous.

Early on the morning of the twenty-seventh, with fresh teams of oxen, we proceeded to cross the desert. The wind still continued at south-east, and the weather was remarkably warm for the season of the year, the thermometer standing at 59° at sun-rise, and at 80° in the middle of the day in the shade. The waggons raised a cloud of dust that was almost insupportable. Except one solitary ostrich, not a living creature of any kind appeared the whole day. Having travelled near eight hours, our Hottentot guide pointed out a place under a small clump of naked hills, where water, he said, frequently lodged in the cavities of rocks. He called it the *Lieuw kuyl*, or Lions' den. After a long search, a little water was discovered in a cavernous rock fresh and sweet; and with this we replenished our vessels. Under one of the ridges of hills was a channel covered with small pebbly sand, which appeared in several places to have been scratched with hands in search of water; and thousands of the impressions of the feet of various antelopes, quachas, and zebras, were marked on the sand, but none of lions, of which the name of the place seemed to imply it to have been the resort.

On

On the twenty-eighth we entered a narrow pass among the hills that lay behind the Lions' den, which hills are considered as the commencement of the Namaaqua country. The surface continued to be broken into hill and dale, but both were destitute of plants, except indeed that along the stony sides of most of the hills were growing vast multitudes of a tree as unsightly as it was curious. It was a species of the aloe, called by botanists the *Dichotoma*, from the division and subdivision of each branch into pairs. Each of these subdivisions is terminated by a tuft of leaves, and the whole forms a large hemispherical crown supported upon a tapering trunk, which is generally of large diameter, but short in proportion to the vast circumference of the crown. This has been said sometimes to amount to many hundred feet. The largest I met with was about one hundred feet. It is called in the country the *Kooker boom*, or quiver tree, its pithy branches being employed by the Bosjesmans Hottentots as cases for their arrows. In some of the passes of the hills were thinly scattered several species of the geranium, among which was one, whose branches were armed with strong spines; and also a tree *Cotyledon*, that appeared ancient and stunted like the artificial dwarf trees invented and cultivated by the Chinese.

Two mountain geese directed us by their flight to a spring of water, about twenty miles beyond the Lions' den. Though sufficiently copious for our wants, yet it was strongly impregnated with salt. Ten miles beyond this brought us to the bed of the Hartebest river, which, from the very lofty mimosas that skirted its banks, and entirely buried it within their extended

tended branches, promised a plentiful stream. It happened, however, to be perfectly dry. The experiment of digging was made in the bed of the river, and at five feet under the pebbly and chrystallized sand, the fragments apparently of decomposed granite, was a stream of clear fresh water; and from various experiments afterwards made in the sandy beds of the rivers of the Namaaqua country, I am inclined to think, that subterranean streams of water pass under most of them in this part of Africa.

Near this river was situated a Kraal or horde of Namaaqua Hottentots. Their flocks of sheep, brought in towards the evening, might perhaps amount to three thousand. They possessed also a few cattle, and a herd of small handsome goats, that were spotted like the leopard. The sheep were totally different from the breed usually met with in the colony. Instead of the short, broad, and curling tails of these, those of the Namaaquas were long and round like the common English sheep. The rams had small straight horns. The covering was short, straight, shining hair in general, spotted bay and white. These, in all probability, were the indigenous sheep of the country, the broad-tailed ones having been brought into the colony from the northward. The assertion of Monsieur Vaillant is without any kind of foundation, when he says, that broad-tailed sheep transplanted into the Namaaqua country lose that part of their character, and obtain long round tails. There are Dutch peasants who have lived in this country thirty years, yet have not a long-tailed sheep in their whole flock. I could have no conversation with these people through the means of my Hottentots, the language

language spoken by the one being perfectly unintelligible to the other ; nor could they speak or understand a word of Dutch.

Our next encampment was at the house or hovel of a Dutch peasant, situated at the entrance of a narrow defile between two ranges of mountains. The figure that presented itself at the door truly represented a being of a different country from that which we had left behind. It was a tall old man, with a thin fallow visage, and a beard of dingy black, that extending to the eyes where it met the straggling hair of the forehead, obscured the face like a visor. Never was a finer figure for the inhabitant of a black tower or enchanted castle, in the page of a romance. Not accustomed to receive strangers, he seemed, on our arrival, to be somewhat agitated. In one corner of the chimney of his hovel, which consisted of one apartment, sat an old Hottentot woman, over whose head had passed at least a century of years. To her natural fallow complexion was superadded no small quantity of soot, so that she was at least as black as her bearded master. A female slave next made her appearance, of a piece with the two former. The faggot presently crackled on the hearth ; a quarter of a sheep was laid on the coals to broil ; and the repast was speedily served up on the lid of an old chest, for want of a table, and covered with a remnant of the same piece of cloth worn as a petticoat by the female slave, which, it seemed not unlikely, had also once been employed in the same sort of service.

It turned out in conversation, that the old gentleman had long resided in this sequestered spot far removed from all society ;

society; without wife or child, relation or friend, and any human being to converse with or confide in, except the old Hottentot and the slave, who were his only inmates, and a tribe of Hottentots in straw huts without. With the appearance of wretchedness and extreme poverty, he possessed immense herds of sheep and cattle, and had several large sums of money placed out at interest. He was literally what the world has properly called a miser. In justice, however, to the old man, he was one of the civillest creatures imaginable. On our return we were much indebted to him for the assistance of his cattle, which he very obligingly sent forward to fall in with our waggons on the midst of the Karroo desert.

It is singular enough, that a brother and a sister of this man, both old, and both unmarried, should each have their habitations in separate and distant corners of these mountains, and live, like him, entirely in the society of Hottentots; they are nearly related to one of the richest men in the Cape.

On the twenty-ninth we crossed a chain of mountains to the west, and proceeding to the northward between it and another much higher, we came at night to the head of the defile, where it was found impracticable for the waggons to make any farther progress. We therefore encamped near a clear and copious spring of water, called the *Fleuris fonteyn*. The mountains, within the defiles of which we now were, are called in the Namaaqua language, the *Kbamies*, signifying the cluster or aggregate. That which headed the several passes, or where as a center they all terminated, was a very high peak, not less
than

than four thousand feet above the plain, on the western side, that sloped gently to the sea-shore. These mountains, in their nature and composition, differed from all others in the colony. Except the high point just mentioned, they were neither peaked, nor tabular, nor stratified, but were composed of large rounded masses of granite, a whole mountain sometimes consisting only of one naked rock. To two of this sort, from their similarity to those remarkable stones already noticed under the names of the Pearl and the Diamond, but ten times their size, as a point of distinction in the chart, I gave the name of the Namaqua Pearls.

The loose fragments of stone on the sides of the Khamies berg, whether detached pieces of granite, or greasy quartz, or flinty pebbles, had almost invariably that side which lay next the ground, tinged of a blue or green color, most frequently the latter. The veins that ran through the mountainous masses of granite, were generally filled with semi-transparent quartz, among which were both metallic chrySTALLIZATIONS and arborizations. In several places were curious flat rocks, colored red and yellow, which might be taken up in such large flags, and were so easily cut with a knife, that they had obtained the name of plank-stone. In the veins of this stone were also metallic plates of a pyramidal form, and a greenish color. All these appearances indicated the existence of abundance of copper in the Khamies berg. In fact, this is the commencement of what are called the Copper mountains, from the quantity of Malachite that is said to be strewn over their surface. In these mountains is also found, in large blocks, that species of stone to which mineralogists in Europe have given the name of Prehnite. It possesses most of

the characters of Zeolite ; but having some others from which it differs, it was considered as a new species. Some specimens are extremely beautiful ; they are generally of an apple-green ground, marked with white, pale yellow, or brown stripes, or spots. The only use or ornament to which the Dutch apply this stone, is to convert it into tobacco pipes, a purpose to which it is least suited, as the heat soon destroys the colors, and, if carried to redness, the form also ; for like Zeolite it possesses the character of intumescence by strong heat. It might be manufactured into vases, little inferior to the Derbyshire spar, which, though much less esteemed than it deserves, because too common, has certainly no rival in the lapidary's workshop.

We attempted to ascend the highest point of the Khamies berg on horseback, but before we had gained the general summit out of which it rises, we were buried in a thick mist, which shortly became heavy rain ; and the thermometer from 51° at the bottom of the mountain, had descended to 34° .

We took shelter in the solitary hovel of a Dutch peasant, that stood on the general summit of the mountain. Cold as it was, the man and his family had no other habitation than a hut made of rush matting, and fashioned after the manner of the Namaaquas, which will presently be noticed. Though rich as to the number of his sheep and cattle, he could have no other comfort in life, except, like the miser at the foot of the mountain, the gratification arising from knowing how much he was worth. Fearful that the weather might become worse, and that from the increasing cold the rain might be converted into snow,
we

we thought it prudent to give up the attempt of proceeding higher, and to make the best of our way down. It frequently happens that the snow begins to fall on this mountain early in May. The inhabitants are then obliged to quit their elevated situation, and to establish themselves for the winter on the plains below. Neither the distance of the Khamies berg from the sea, which is only about fifteen miles, nor its height, are sufficient to account for the early approach of winter, and the deep snows that fall there. Perhaps as this point is the termination of the periodical winds, and the commencement of those almost invariable breezes that blow between the tropics, and extend five or six degrees beyond them, called the trade winds, the frequent squalls and commotion in the air occasioned at the point of meeting, may have a tendency to lower the temperature. To the northward of the Khamies berg, on the sandy plains of the Namaaqua country, it is said that rain never falls. Whatsoever clouds may be borne from the sea, or formed in the atmosphere, are immediately attracted to this cluster of mountains.

In that part of the Namaaqua country, lying between the Khamies and the *Groote*, or *Orange river*, no water is met with, except in the periodical streams that flow from the mountain under beds of sand, in which the natives, when such existed, used to dig deep wells, and cover them over to prevent evaporation. These plains are now desolate and uninhabited. All those numerous tribes of Namaaquas, possessed of vast herds of cattle, are, in the course of less than a century, dwindled away to four hordes, which are not very numerous, and in a great measure are subservient to the Dutch peasantry, who dwell among them.

The latter, who have seized upon the choicest part of their country, allow them to erect their huts in the neighbourhood of their farms, on condition of their furnishing a certain number of people to protect their cattle against the attacks of Bosjesmans, or wild beasts of prey. A dozen years more, and probably a shorter period, will see the remains of the Namaaqua nation in a state of entire servitude. Such are the effects of an encroaching peasantry, sanctioned by the low policy of a government that could descend to employ agents to effect the purchase of whole herds of cattle for a cask of brandy. To this government, was so little a concern of such great magnitude, that it authorized those agents, for the greater convenience of transporting their brandy, to make an expensive road across a point of the Khamies berg, which still bears the honorable name of the *Company's road*. The government having fixed no limits to their colony, nor their subjects to their avarice, the latter found it still more convenient to settle themselves in the midst of the harmless Namaaquas, who considered them as the most acceptable neighbours in the world. For a bottle of brandy, which cost sixpence, they willingly exchanged an ox; and such is still the infatuation of this people for the noxious liquor, that they will even now exchange a sheep for the same quantity of it.

How great soever may have been the avaricious designs of the first settlers of the Khamies berg, and the degree of blame imputable both to them and the government, it is but justice to remark, that the present inhabitants have much the appearance of being a harmless and honest set of people. Those heroes in infamy, whose characters, as drawn in the page of the French traveller

traveller before alluded to, seem not to be in the smallest degree overcharged, have most of them met the fate they so well deserved. *Pinaar*, and *Bernfry*, the *Bastaards Piet* and *Klaas*, and many others of the same stamp, have murdered one another, or have fallen by the hands of their own Hottentots.

Though the Namaqua Hottentots vary but very little in their persons from the other tribes of this nation, their language is widely different. It is obviously, however, of the same nature, and abounds with the clapping of the tongue peculiar to the Hottentot. They are of a taller stature in general than the eastern tribes, and less robust. Some of the women were very elegant figures, and possessed a considerable share of vivacity and activity; and they had the same conformation of certain parts of the body as the *Bosjesmans* women, and other Hottentots; in a less degree, however, than is usual in the former, and more so than in those of the latter. Like the Hottentot women of the East, the most ornamental part of their dress was the little square leather apron, to which, in addition to the border of shells or beads, were appended six or eight chains in pairs, whose points dragged on the ground; the upper part of each chain was copper, the lower of polished iron. They are supplied to them by the *Damaras*, a tribe of people to the northward, who will shortly be noticed.

The huts of the Namaquas differ very materially from those erected by the Hottentots of the colony, or by the *Bosjesmans*, or by the *Kaffers*. They are perfect hemispheres, covered with matting made of sedges; and the frame-work,

or

or skeletons, are semicircular sticks, half of them diminishing from the center or upper part, and the other half crossing these at right angles; forming thus a true representation of the parallels of latitude and meridians on an artificial globe. They are in general from ten to twelve feet in diameter; and so commodious, that many of the peasantry of the Khamies berg have adopted them.

These people, like the Kaffers, pay the greatest attention to their cattle; and, after the manner of that nation, they give to the horns of their oxen artificial directions, confining the shape generally to the spiral line, something like the Koodoo antelope. Those of the Khamies berg, in the possession both of Dutch and Hottentots, are large boney cattle, not in the least degree inferior to those of Sneuwberg. The people too in their persons are equally robust with those of Graaff Reynet. An old Namaqua ~~Hottentot~~ woman is a figure that the most serious could not behold without laughter, and an old Dutch woman of this part of the country without pity, the first being remarkable for the prominences of the body, the latter from its want of points and uninterrupted rotundity. The breasts of the former are disgustingly large and pendant; the usual way of giving suck, when the child is carried on the back, is by throwing the breast over the shoulder. In this formation of their persons, they agree with the Latin Satirist's description of Ethiopian women on the borders of Egypt:

“ In Meroë crasso majorem infante mamillam.”

In the women of ancient Egypt, enormous protuberances of the body were very common, and have been attempted to be accounted

accounted for, by various authors, from a variety of causes. Though one of these may exist in the impurities of the water, yet the essential difference in the effect produced on a Hottentot and Dutch woman, shews different predispositions to exist inherent in the persons of each.

It should seem, however, that some principle does exist in these highly elevated situations of Southern Africa, that sheds its influence on the animal, and even on the vegetable part of the creation. The withered stem of a liliaceous plant, apparently the same as that found on the banks of the Orange river, was seven feet long, and crowned with an umbel of more than fifty flowrets, each having a peduncle or foot-stalk of eighteen inches in length, making the diameter of the umbel to exceed that of three feet. The bulb, of which I could but conveniently carry a few, was as large as the human head. Of this enormous lily the people gave an account, not unlike that of the fictitious Upas of Java, rendered famous by a relation of it inserted in the notes to Doctor Darwin's fanciful, yet classic, poem of the Botanic Garden. They say, with regard to the lily, that the juice of its bulb is a strong poison; that the leaves occasion sudden death to the cattle which may chance to eat them; and that if small birds should happen to perch on its blossoms, they instantly roll off lifeless to the ground. Another species of amaryllis, called by botanists the *disticha*, common on all the mountainous parts of the colony, was now on the Khamies berg throwing out its long broad leaves in opposite pairs, forming the shape of a fan. Both the bulb, and the leaves of this plant, have been ascertained to be, without any preparation, most virulent

lent poisons, that act on the animal system, whether taken into it by the stomach or the blood. The farmers pull up the root and leaves wherever they find them growing. It was said that the juice of this bulb, mixed up with the mangled body of a certain species of spider, furnishes the Bosjesmans with poison for their arrows, more deadly than any other they are acquainted with. This spider should seem to be peculiar to the western coast of the country, at least I never met with, nor heard of it, on the other side. Its body, with the legs, which are short, is three inches in diameter, the former black and hairy, the latter faintly spotted; the beak red. It lives under ground, constructing over its hole a cover composed of the filaments spun from its entrails, and earth or dung. This cover is made to turn on a joint. When the animal is watching for its prey, it sits with the lid half open, ready to fall out upon such insects as serve it for food. On the approach of danger it closes the cover, and in a short time cautiously opens it again to see if the enemy has retreated.

The Namaqua Hottentots seem well acquainted with poisonous substances, though they now make use of none. The bow and arrow, their ancient weapons, are become useless. The country they now inhabit is almost entirely deserted by all kinds of beasts that live in a state of nature, and the dread of Bosjesmans prevents them from ranging far over the country in quest of game. Formerly, however, the kloofs of the Khamies berg abounded with elands and hartebeests, gemsboks, quachas, and zebras, and were not a little formidable on account of the number of beasts of prey that resorted thither. A few days

days before our arrival at the foot of the mountain, a lion had occasioned some little stir in the country, which had not yet entirely subsided. A Hottentot belonging to one of the farmers had endeavoured for some time, in vain, to drive his master's cattle into a pool of water enclosed between two ridges of rock, when at length he espied a huge lion couching in the midst of the pool; terrified at the unexpected sight of such a beast, that seemed to have its eyes fixed upon him, he instantly took to his heels, leaving the cattle to shift for themselves. In doing this he had presence of mind enough to run through the herd, concluding that if the lion should pursue, he might take up with the first beast that presented itself. In this, however, he was mistaken. The lion broke through the herd, making directly after the Hottentot, who, on turning round, and perceiving that the monster had singled him out for a meal, breathless and half dead with terror, scrambled up one of the tree Aloes, in the trunk of which had luckily been cut out a few steps, the more readily to come at some birds' nests that the branches contained. At the same moment the lion made a spring at him, but, missing his aim, fell upon the ground. In surly silence he walked round the tree, casting every now and then a dreadful look towards the poor Hottentot, who had crept behind some finches' nests that happened to have been built in the tree.

There is in this part of Africa a small bird of the *Loxia* genus, that lives in a state of society with the rest of its species, in the same manner as the locust-eating thrush mentioned in the account of a former journey. Like this bird too, they construct a whole republic of nests in one clump and under one cover.

Each nest, however, has a separate entrance on the under side, and has no communication with its neighbour from within. Sometimes one of these clumps of nests will extend a space of ten feet in diameter, and contain a population of several hundred individuals. The aloe dichotoma, being the only plant met with on the hills of this country approaching to the size of a tree, except the mimosa, which grows only on the borders of periodical rivers, is generally the resort of these gregarious birds, where they construct their temporary dwellings, when nature calls upon them to fulfil the end of their creation.

It was on one of these edifices that the Hottentot screened himself from the sight of the lion. Having remained silent and motionless for a length of time, he ventured to peep over the side of the nest, hoping that the lion had taken his departure; when, to his great terror and astonishment, his eyes met those of the animal, to use his own expression, "flashing fire at him." In short, the lion laid himself down at the foot of the tree, and stirred not from the place for four-and-twenty hours. He then returned to the spring to quench his thirst, and, in the mean time, the Hottentot descended the tree, and scampered to his home which was not more than a mile distant, as fast as his feet could carry him. The perseverance of the lion was such, that it appeared afterwards he had returned to the tree, and from thence had hunted the Hottentot by the scent within three hundred paces of the house.

It seems to be a fact well established, that the lion prefers the flesh of a Hottentot to that of any other creature. He has frequently

quently been singled out from a party of Dutch. The latter being disguised in clothing, and the former going generally naked, may perhaps account for it. The horse, next to the Hottentot, seems to be his favorite food; but on the sheep, perhaps on account of his woolly covering, which he is too indolent to uncase, he seldom deigns to fix his paw.

From the Cape to the Khamies berg, very little occurs in the animal kingdom to interest the natural historian, especially one who may have made a previous journey to the eastward, where almost the whole tribe of quadrupeds peculiar to Southern Africa may be met with. In a Namaqua hut I observed the skin of a Jackal, with a black bushy tail, that seemed to be different from any I had seen on the other side of the continent. It was covered with thick fur. The dogs of the Namaquas were of the same sort as those of the Bosjesmans; and it was here observed of them, that their tails, contrary to the description of Linnæus, given as the specific character to the domestic dog, were almost invariably recurved on the right side.

In our descent of the mountain, we were driven to seek shelter from the violence of the rain in a mixed horde of Bastards and Namaquas. The chief was of the former description. In his younger days he had been a great lover of the chase, and his matted hut within still displayed a variety of the skins of animals that had fallen before his piece. He boasted that, in one excursion, he had killed seven camelopardales and three white rhinoceroses. The latter is not uncommon on the skirts of the colony behind the Hantam mountain, and seems to be a variety

only of the African two-horned rhinoceros. It differs from it in color, which is a pale carnation, in size, which is considerably larger, and in the thinness of its skin; all of which may perhaps be the effects of age. These people seemed to live very happily together. They had horses, and cattle, and sheep, and gardens of no inconsiderable extent, well stocked with pumpkins, onions, and tobacco.

We met also, at this kraal, one of the nation above mentioned under the name of Damaras. From his appearance I took him to be a Kaffer, and he was unquestionably of that race of people. He represented the Damaras as a very poor tribe; that their country along the sea-coast produced nothing for the support of cattle; and that their whole existence depended on exchanging copper rings and beads, which they themselves manufactured, with the *Briquas* to the east, and the *Namaquas* to the south. From the Orange river to the Tropic, under which these people live, runs a chain of mountains, that, from the various accounts of travellers, are so abundant in copper ore, that it is every where found upon the surface. From this ore, it seems, the Damaras are in possession of the art of extracting the pure metal. This man's account of the process of smelting the ore was as satisfactory as simple. They make a kind of charcoal from the wood of a certain mimosa, of which he gave me a large bean, by smothering it when burning clear, with sand. They break the ore into small pieces. Thus prepared, they lay the materials in alternate strata, within a small enclosure of stones, on a clayey bottom. They set fire to the charcoal, and blow it with several bellows, each made from the skin
of

of a gemsbok converted into a sack, with the horn of the same animal fixed to one end for the pipe. This is all that is necessary to procure the metal from the sort of ore they make use of; being that species called by mineralogists vitreous copper ore. It is in fact mineralized with sulphur, which a moderate heat will dissipate, and leave the copper in its pure metallic state. Such sort of ore is even more fusible than pure copper. The metal thus obtained is then manufactured into chains, rings, and bracelets, by means of two pieces of stone that serve as a hammer and anvil, and the workmanship would be no disgrace to an artizan furnished with much better tools. The links of the chains, however, are all open, as well as the rings, which shew that they have not yet discovered the art of foldering, or joining together pieces of the same metal by the interposition of a second, or a composition of a softer nature than those to be united.

As a nation of artists, and acquainted with metallurgy, they are, from all accounts, the poorest on the face of the earth. They keep no kind of cattle. Their country, in fact, is so totally barren and sandy, that no cattle could exist upon it. Though the Damaras are obviously the same race of people as the Kaffers, and these, as has in a former chapter been conjectured, of Arabic origin, yet there is no necessity of tracing them back to a more refined nation, in order to account from whence they might have obtained the art of reducing copper ore into a metallic state. The accidental discovery is full as likely to have happened, as the Phœnician story of the invention of glass related by Pliny.

The

The three tribes of Kaffers above-mentioned have each a different language, though they are all of the same nature, and have evidently been derived from the same source. This must be the case among every people who want a written character, especially when they become divided into tribes, and cease to communicate with each other. The different families of Hottentots all speak a different language, which, however, is very obviously perceived to have been derived from one common origin.

Having dried our clothes, we took leave of the kraal, and continued our descent of the mountain. It was night before we gained the plain, where we once more enjoyed a clear sky and a brilliant moon. The following morning the thermometer was down to the freezing point, and the whole surface of the country was covered with a hoar frost.

From this place we made the best of our way to the Bokkeveld, returning nearly by the same route that had brought us to it. At the edge of the desert the Bosjesmans' captain paid us a second visit, with the people of his kraal, and a whole string of Namaqua Hottentots, generally women, whose husbands and children were in the service of the Dutch farmers. One of these appeared to be the oldest woman I had ever beheld. Much more than a century of years had certainly passed over her head. She produced her eldest daughter, who headed five generations. On being asked if her memory could carry her back to the time when the Christians first came among them, she replied, with a shake of the head, that she had very strong reasons

reasons to remember it, for that before she had ever heard of the Christians, she knew not the want of a bellyful, whereas it was now a difficult matter to get a mouthful. The condition of the whole horde certainly appeared to be very deplorable; but I feel a happiness in adding, that, by means of this captain and two or three well-disposed farmers, several hordes of the outcast Bosjesmans have since been brought in, and obtained by public subscription a considerable quantity of sheep and horned cattle, of which, it is to be hoped, they will speedily see their advantage in encreasing the numbers; and one of that worthy and very useful fraternity of men, the *Hernhüters*, has voluntarily offered his services to go among the Bosjesman hordes, and endeavour to promote among them that sense of comfort, which has so effectually crowned their exertions in another part of the colony among the poor Hottentots, as has been noticed in the preceding chapter. Other members of societies, established principally with a view of propagating among savages the mild doctrines of Christianity, have also lately arrived in this colony, whose missions are particularly directed to the two nations of the Bosjesmans and the Kaffers; and though they perhaps may not make them readily comprehend the full intent and object of their mission, they will at least, by their mild and humane conduct, inspire them with a degree of confidence in men of a different complexion to themselves, and shew them that the colony is now in the hands of a government that will no longer sanction the cruelties under which they have so long and lately groaned.

On

On the morning of the fifth of May, after dropping the commandant at his own house, I proceeded inland to the eastward, and, passing over a rough stony country, reached in two days the foot of the Hantam mountain. The inhabitants at this time were in a state of alarm, on account of the Bosjesmans. A party of these people had carried off into the kloofs of the mountain, several sheep and oxen, after severely wounding two Hottentots with poisoned arrows, one through the upper part of the arm, and the other in the ankle joint. The former seemed likely to do well, but the latter was in a very dangerous way. The point of the arrow had broken off and stuck in the bone. The leg was swollen as high as the knee, and gangrene appeared to have commenced round the wound. The people not knowing in what manner to treat it, I directed them to apply poultices of bread, onions, and oil, and to wash the wound well with a solution of *ammonia præparata*, and to give him plenty of vinegar to drink. At the end of four days, which it took me in rounding the mountain, the patient was no worse, but the wound on the contrary seemed to put on favorable appearances; the other was nearly well.

The Bosjesmans have been generally represented as a people so savage and blood-thirsty in their nature, that they never spare the life of any living creature which may fall into their hands. To their own countrymen, who have been taken prisoners by, and continued to live with the Dutch farmers, they have certainly shewn instances of the most atrocious cruelty. These poor wretches, if retaken by their countrymen, seldom escape being put to the most excruciating tortures. The party above-mentioned,

mentioned, having fallen in with a Hottentot at some distance from any habitation, set him up to the neck in a deep trench, and wedged him in so fast with stones and earth that he was incapable of moving. In this situation he remained a whole night, and the greater part of the following day; when, luckily, some of his companions passed the place and released him. The poor fellow stated that he had been under the necessity of keeping his eyes and mouth in perpetual motion the whole day, to prevent the crows from devouring him.

The habitations that compose the division of the Hantam, lie scattered round the feet of that mountain. The face of the country is similar to that of the Sneuwberg, and the breed of cattle and of sheep are equally good; the horses in general much better, but they are subject to the same endemic disease that prevails in most parts of Graaff Reynet. It is here, however, very partial, for while it rages at the foot of the mountain, there is not the smallest danger on the flat summit, on which account this part of the mountain is appropriated to the public use, each inhabitant having the privilege of sending thither eight horses during the sickly season.

As in the Sneuwberg, they are here also very much infested with locusts. One troop of these insects, in their last stage of existence, passed on the wing along the eastern side of the mountain when we were encamped there. For several hours they continued to hover in the air as they passed along, at such a height as not to be individually distinguished; but their immense numbers formed a kind of fleecy cloud, that completely took off the

radiated beams of the sun, and made it appear as when seen through a mist. Like a thin cloud also, they cast a confused shadow on the ground. In the Bokkeveld and the Khamies berg, for the two last years, these insects have been particularly troublesome. After repeated experiments to get rid of them, they at last hit upon one that at least saved their corn. This they effected by making fires of four acrid plants, by the smoke of which they were driven away; having, however, repeatedly extinguished the fires by the myriads that flew into them.

The Hantam mountain, like the bold fronts of Camdeboo that support the Sneuwberg, is composed of a number of horizontal strata of sandstone. In fact it may be considered as forming a part of the same ridge, being the most elevated line in the colony; this evidently appears from the different courses of the streams, that rising out of its sides, flow from it towards every point of the compass. The great elevation of course renders it exceedingly cold during the winter months. Even in the beginning of May, and at the foot of the mountain, the thermometer was down to the freezing point for five succeeding mornings, and the whole surface of the country was covered with a white frost.

Leaving the Hantam, and proceeding south-easterly, I ascended the heights of Roggeveld, that are separated only from the former by a narrow chasm or opening. These heights are so called from a species of rye-grass that is found very plentifully in most of the hollows, and on which the cattle, during the summer season, in a great degree subsist. In some places

places the Roggeveld presents to the next lower terrace, which is the Bokkeveld and Karroo plains, perpendicular faces of stone from two to four thousand feet in height. Yet from this great elevation, on the eastern side, the descent is scarcely perceptible. The Fish river, whose course is easterly, and which rises on the very summit of the mountain, scarcely has any current, but is a series of deep holes connected by periodical streamlets. The great inequality of the summit of the Roggeveld, gives it the appearance of a chain of mountains rising out of the general surface of a mountain. Of these the *Kom*, or Cup mountain, is the highest. According to the information of a neighbouring peasant, who assisted Colonel Gordon in determining its altitude, it is fifteen hundred feet higher than the Table mountain, or five thousand feet above the Karroo plains. For several months in the year the Roggeveld is entirely under snow; the inhabitants are then obliged to descend upon the Karroo with all their cattle, where, in temporary dwellings of rushes or straw, they remain till the spring. This division of Stellenbosch is considered to produce the best breed of horses in the whole colony.

The country to the eastward of the Roggeveld, is inhabited by different hordes of Bosjesmans. One of these, called the *Koranas*, dwelling on the right bank of the Orange river, directly east from the Roggeveld, is represented as a very formidable tribe of people. The few that I had an opportunity of seeing, were strong lusty men, apparently of the same tribe as the Namaaquas. They are considered as being more cruel, and at the same time more daring than any other tribe of this nation. They possess a few sheep and cattle, but have the same

wandering inclination, and the same propensity to the chase and to plunder, with the other Bosjesmans. The Briequa Kaffers, who inhabit the country close behind them, are very considerable sufferers from such daring neighbours. Of these people, the Koranas not only carry off large herds of cattle, but they also seize and make slaves of their children, some of whom have been brought into the colony, and purchased by the farmers in exchange for cattle. The Briequas, with their hassagais, have little chance of standing against poisoned arrows. The shields too of the Koranas are enormously large, and so thick that the hassagai cannot penetrate them. I saw one made from the hide of an eland, that measured six feet by four. These people make regular attacks, in large parties of four or five hundred. Though very good friends among each other while poor, from the moment they have obtained by plunder a quantity of cattle, they begin to quarrel about the division of the spoil; and they are said to carry this sometimes to such an excess, that they continue the fight and massacre till, like the soldiers of Cadmus, very few remain in the field,

“ ——— suoque

“ Marte cadunt subiti per mutua vulnera fratres.”

The miserable bad roads, the nakedness of the country, and the very few animals that are found in a state of nature, upon the Roggeveld mountain, make it a disagreeable, uninteresting, and tedious route for one who travels with no other view than that of gratifying curiosity. Crows, kites, and vultures, are almost the only kinds of birds that are met with. Of the last,
I broke

I broke the wing of one of that species called by Ornithologists the Condor, of an amazing large size. The spread of its wings was ten feet and one inch. It kept three dogs for some time completely at bay, and having at length seized one of them with its claws, and torn away a large piece of flesh from its thigh, they all immediately retreated.

Having proceeded for twelve days along the summit of the Roggeveld, till I fell in nearly with the track that had carried me on a former journey to Graaff Reynet, I descended to the Karroo plains, which, in this part, employed me three days in crossing. These plains are every where of the same nature, presenting to the traveller "a scene of dreadful uniformity; where a barren level is bounded only by the horizon; where no change of prospect, or variety of images, relieves the traveller from a sense of toil and danger; of whirlwinds, which, in a moment, may bury him in the sand; and of thirst, which the wealthy have given half their possessions to allay."

Bordering these arid plains, on the west side, are several clumps of high mountains, enclosing meadows and vallies, covered with good grafs, that are also called the Bokkeveld, but distinguished from the other by the names of Little Bokkeveld and Cold Bokkeveld. These are ramifications of the Great Chain mentioned in the former part of this chapter; and the vallies and meadows within them appear to have been the beds of lakes, in which there still remains a number of springs and swamps, that never fail to furnish a copious supply of water in the

the very driest seasons. The ground is productive of good grafs, and yields abundant harvests. The cold in winter obliges the inhabitants to drive their cattle upon the Karroo plains, but not to quit their houses, as is the case with those of the Roggeveld.

On the twenty-seventh of May I repassed the great chain of mountains, through a ravine called the Eland's kloof. Here once more I had an opportunity of contemplating the venerable ruins that lay scattered around, strongly displaying the havoc of old Time. The road over this part of the mountains was much better than I had any reason to expect from the representations of the peasantry. Indeed at this time it was by much the best of the four passes through which I had now crossed this great range of mountains.

The Olifant's river runs along the feet of the great chain on the west side, and is hemmed in between it and a parallel range of high hills, called the *Kardouw*. From one of these issues a plentiful spring of chalybeate water, of the temperature of 108° of Fahrenheit's thermometer. The Dutch government caused a house to be erected at this place for the accommodation of such as might be inclined to use the waters, but, like all the public buildings of the colony, it has been suffered to go out of repair.

On the west side of the *Kardouw* lies the division of the Four-and-twenty Rivers, extending from thence to the banks of the Berg river. This part of the country to the sea-shore, including
Zwartland,

Zwartland, consists of a flat extended plain, very fertile in corn, grass, and fruits, and being well watered, is more populous than most parts of the colony. With a proper degree of labor and management in the culture of the land, by plantations and inclosures for shelter, warmth, and moisture, that part of the colony alone which lies within the great range of mountains, would be fully sufficient to supply with all the necessaries of life the town and garrison of the Cape, and all the shipping that will probably ever frequent its ports. In the introductory chapter, the probability was mentioned of the different foreign articles in the vegetable kingdom, of general consumption, that were most likely to succeed in this country. Since that was written, several of such articles have had a fair trial in the Botanic garden at the Cape, and many of them have fully answered the expectations that were formed. As food for cattle, four species of millet have been tried of the genus *Holcus*, namely, the *Sorghum*, the *Saccharatus*, the *Spicatus*, and *Bicolor*. All of these, except the *Spicatus*, have been cut down several times in the same season, afterwards grew to the height of six to ten feet, bore a plentiful crop of seed, sprung up afresh from the old stumps in the winter, furnishing most excellent food for cattle throughout the whole year. A species of Indian Lucerne, the *Medicago esculenta*, was twice cut down, and afterwards gave a plentiful crop of seed. A small kidney bean, the *Phaseolus lobatus*, grew very rapidly, producing two crops the same season, and is an excellent species of food for cattle, whether given to them green, or dried into hay, which is the case also with the lucerne. A strong tall dog's-tail-grass, the *Cynosurus coracanus* of India, useful both for man and beast, was cut down twice, and

and afterwards produced a crop of feed. Of this species of grass horses are extravagantly fond, and it will remain green nearly through the winter. The encouragement of the culture of all these would be of the greatest importance to the interest of the colony. The *Sesamum* plant promises very fair to become useful in giving a supply of vegetable oil for the table, an article that is at present very much wanted in the Cape. Tea, coffee, and sugar, might all be cultivated with success. But that which in a commercial point of view is likely hereafter to render the colony of the Cape most valuable to the state on which it may be dependent, is the facility with which the cultivation of the different kinds of hemp for cordage and canvases, may be carried on to an unlimited extent. The *Cannabis sativa*, or common hemp, has been long planted here as a substitute for tobacco, but the idea was never extended to make it useful in any other way. It grows to a sort of branching shrub, losing entirely that habit of springing up in a single stem as it always appears in Europe; this, however, is entirely owing to its being planted singly. When sown thick on the ground as in Europe, it grows exactly in the same manner, ascends to about the height of eight feet, and gives to all appearance a fibre of equal strength and tenacity of that where it is usually cultivated, and it requires very little trouble in keeping clean on the ground. The different plants of India, that are generally cultivated there for the purposes of hemp, have been found to grow here, as well in every respect as in their native soil. Of these the most common are the *Robinia cannabina*, giving a durable fibre in the water, and on that account used in the east for fishing-nets and tackle. The Jute of India, *Corchorus olitorius*, thrives very well, as does also
the

the *Hibiscus cannabinus*, whose leaves of a delicate subacid taste serve as a sallad for the table, and the fibres of the stem are manufactured into cordage. A native species of hibiscus that I brought from the vicinity of Plettenberg's bay, yields a hemp of an excellent quality, little perhaps inferior to that of the cannabis, or common hemp, which is most unquestionably the best material yet discovered for the manufacture of strong cordage. The *Janap* of India, *Crotularia juncea*, from which a strong coarse stuff is manufactured under the name of *Gunney*, seems to thrive very well in the climate of the Cape. Cotton and indigo may both be produced in any quantity in this colony; but the labor necessary in the preparation of the latter, and the enormous price of slaves, or the hire of free workmen, would scarcely be repaid to the cultivator. That species of cotton plant called the *birfutum* seems to sustain the south-east blasts of wind with the least degree of injury; but the Bourbon cotton, originally from the West Indies, will thrive just as well in the interior parts of the country where the south-easters extend not with that degree of strength so as to cause any injury to vegetation. Most of the India and China fruits, that have yet been brought into the garden, seem to bid fair for success. In short, there is not, perhaps, in the whole world, a place so well adapted for concentrating the various products of the vegetable kingdom, as the Southern angle of Africa.

Crossing the Berg river, I entered Zwartland, where, in consequence of a shower of rain, the inhabitants were busily employed in ploughing the ground, which the long drought this

year had hitherto prevented them from entering. In this division there is no scarcity of water in springs or wells, but it is universally, and so strongly, impregnated with salt, as not only to be disagreeable, but almost impossible to be taken by those who have not been long accustomed to it. By such it is preferred to the purest water; this being accounted insipid and tasteless. An old man in the Bokkeveld, who, from his infancy till a few years past, had lived in Zwartland, never missed an opportunity of sending thither a few bottles to be filled with the briny water for his own particular use; the pure stream of the mountain, as he asserted, not being able to quench his thirst. Similar instances of habit, or of fancy, appear in ancient history. Some of the princesses of the Ptolemy family would drink no other water but that of the Nile, though it is sometimes so strongly impregnated with nitrous and other salts, as to possess a purgative quality; and superstition directed the same water to be carried from Egypt into Syria and Greece, for the sole purpose of sprinkling in the temple of Isis.

Leaving Zwartland, and its saline springs to those who could relish them, I directed my route across the Tiger berg to the Cape, where I arrived on the second of June, without having experienced any of those inconveniences which the season of the year seemed to threaten.

I N D E X.

A	PAGE
<i>AGRICULTURE</i> neglected by the Dutch -	135
no market for its products - -	136
<i>Algoa Bay</i> described - -	131
might be rendered useful to the East- India Company - - -	132
<i>Antelopes</i> , how hunted by the Kaffers -	187
various species of, mentioned - -	<i>ib.</i>
<i>Ant-bills</i> , their height - - -	59
<i>Atmosphere</i> its temperature at the Cape -	41
its weight - - -	42

B

<i>Bank</i> , Lombard, at the Cape, account of	16
<i>Barilla</i> may be procured in great abun- dance at the Cape - - -	92
<i>Bastaards</i> , race so called - -	49. 148
<i>Bavian's kloof</i> , establishment of Moravian missionaries at - - -	351
<i>Beef</i> , at the Cape, bad, and the reason	88
<i>Berg river</i> , crossed by the author -	367
<i>Birds</i> , various species of, described	29. 264
<i>Bosjesmans</i> , who - - -	85. 234
their hostilities with the colo- nists - 234—236. 286. 290, 291	
considerations on this subject -	290—292
journey into their country, and its purpose - - -	237
their drawings of various animals, ac- count of - - -	239, 240

<i>Bosjesmans</i> —	PAGE
their miserable situation described -	241
their depredations on the colonists, 249.	285
one of their kraals surprised by the au- thor's party - - -	270, &c.
communications with - - -	273—275
construction of their kraals - - -	276
their dress and appearance - - -	276, 277
are very diminutive - - -	<i>ib.</i>
their women have the nymphæ clon- gated - - -	278
other singularities characteristic of the make of - - -	281
belong to the Hottentot race - - -	283
conjectures respecting their origin -	282
their disposition and means of sub- sistence - - -	283, 284. 286
their offensive weapons - - -	287
estimate of their situation - - -	<i>ib.</i>
their longevity, &c. - - -	289
compared with the Hottentots	290, 291
some of their hordes in amity with the farmers - - -	380. 399
their cruel treatment of a Hottentot	401
<i>British</i> government at the Cape, bene- ficial effects of - - -	51, 52
checks effectually principles subversive of order in the colony - - -	52, 53
<i>Buffalo</i> described - - -	129
its battles with the lion - - -	130
neglected by the Dutch - - -	131

C		PAGE	PAGE
<i>Caille, Abbé de la</i> , ascertains the length of a degree of the meridian at the Cape - - -		368	<i>Catalogue</i> of various sorts of wood in the colony - - - 339, 40
important conclusion drawn from his measurement - - -		369	<i>Cattle</i> , their food in the deserts four and acrid - - - 56
<i>Camel</i> , or Dromedary, might be introduced with advantage into the colony - - -		333	its effects upon them - - - <i>ib.</i>
<i>Cameleon</i> , facts respecting its change of colour - - -		304	how the acridity is corrected - - - 103
why they have been thought to live on air, explained - - -		<i>ib.</i>	of the Kaffers immensely numerous 170—177
<i>Cape of Good Hope</i> , importance of - 1, 2			guided by signals - - - 170
taken possession of by the British, 1620, 2			account of the various kinds of - - - 177
particulars of this transaction - 3, 4, 5			loose horned ox, description of - - - 203
colonized by the Dutch in 1650 - 6			<i>Chinese</i> , their resemblance to the Hot-tentot race - - - 278
its rapid population - - - <i>ib.</i>			<i>Circumcision</i> practised among the Kaffers - - - 212
difficulties of the first settlers - - - <i>ib.</i>			how performed - - - 213
policy of the Dutch government unfriendly to the settlement - - - 7			<i>Climate of the Cape</i> , not unhealthy - - - 42
extent and population of the settlement's territory - - - 9			<i>Coal</i> , discovered at the Cape by the English - - - 20, 21
general view of the country 10, 11, 12			<i>Cobra capella</i> , the most dangerous snake at the Cape - - - 140
its division into districts, and internal government - - - 12			<i>Cold</i> , intense degree of, in the Karroo - - - 87. 96. 101
description of the Cape district 12, 13, 14			<i>Colonists</i> , Dutch, their mode of life, and domestic economy - - - 77
<i>Cape and Egypt</i> , circumstances of analogy between - - - 297, 8			their modes of agriculture - - - 84
<i>Cape Town</i> , description of - - - 14, 15			manners of the females - - - 80
population of - - - 16			their prolific tendency - - - 81
its inhabitants principally engaged in mercantile transactions - - - 48			external appearance of the men - - - <i>ib.</i>
their manners, social and domestic 48, 49			their neglected education - - - 82
character of the Cape ladies - 49, 50, 51			their religious zeal - - - 82, 83
diseases to which they are liable - - - 43			their hospitality - - - 83
longevity rare among them - - - <i>ib.</i>			some of them treat their oxen with brutality - - - 182, 183
their education much neglected - - - 47			instance of their inhumanity in a case of shipwreck - - - 197
			their inanity of mind, and indolence - - - 377
			<i>Copper</i> , indications of its abundance in the Khamies berg - - - 385

D	PAGE
<i>Damaras</i> , of the Kaffer race, account of the - - -	396
acquainted with the art of smelting iron ore - - -	<i>ib.</i>
their process described - - -	<i>ib.</i>
<i>Dead</i> , peculiar manner of disposing of the, by the Kaffers - - -	220
<i>Defile</i> , deep, account of the passage of 181, 182	
<i>Dichotoma</i> , a curious species of aloe, described - - -	381
<i>Diseases</i> that prevail among the colonists 42, 43	
<i>Disticba</i> , a species of amaryllis, described	391
<i>Distillation</i> of spirits, process of, at the Cape - - -	66
<i>Dogs</i> of the cur kind, among the Kaffers, their multitude, and miserable appearance - - -	177
different species of the <i>dog</i> kind met with in Southern Africa - - -	223
<i>Drawings</i> by the Bosjesmans, account of - - -	239, 240
<i>Duyvil's kop</i> , difficult pass of - - -	336

E

<i>Egypt</i> and the <i>Cape</i> , circumstances of analogy between - - -	297, 298
<i>Eland</i> , of the antelope genus, described	262
<i>Elephants</i> , immensely numerous in Southern Africa - - -	178
errors respecting their mode of copulation refuted - - -	179
their period of gestation - - -	<i>ib.</i>
how hunted by the Kaffers - - -	209
<i>Euphorbium</i> described - - -	19

F

	PAGE
<i>Farms</i> , immense size of in the colony - - -	7, 78, 137
unfriendly to its prosperity - - -	7
strange manner of regulating their boundaries - - -	78, 79
<i>Fish</i> , various kinds of - - -	29, 30, 31
<i>French</i> refugees introduce the cultivation of the vine - - -	67
now confounded with the other settlers - - -	81
<i>Fruits</i> , European and Tropical, introduced and cultivated - - -	22, 23

G

<i>Game</i> , various kinds of - - -	67
<i>Garden</i> , public, established by Lord Macartney - - -	17
<i>Gbonaquas</i> , tribe of the, their deplorable state - - -	228, 229
<i>Gnoo</i> , or <i>wilde beest</i> of the Dutch, described and classed - - -	259, 260, 261
<i>Goat</i> African, remarks on - - -	116
<i>Government</i> Civil and Judicial of the Cape, account of - - -	12—16
<i>Graaff Reynet</i> , arrival in the district of - - -	98
account of a valley in it - - -	99
gigantic size of its colonists - - -	100
political state of the district - - -	110, 111
its physical appearance - - -	113
village of, described - - -	113, 114
its wretched state - - -	114
<i>Grain</i> , species of, cultivated - - -	24
average product of, near the Cape - - -	359
<i>Grass</i> dry, conflagration of - - -	184, 185
<i>Grazing</i>	

	PAGE	<i>Hottentots—</i>	PAGE
<i>Greasing</i> the body, utility of in warm countries - - -	156	possess many good qualities -	151, 152
<i>Great Fish river</i> , account of -	185, 186	their indolence and gluttony -	152
frequented by Hippopotami -	<i>ib.</i>	their manner of preparing food -	153
<i>Guajacum Afrum</i> of Linnæ, its seeds eaten by the Kaffers - - -	189	their drefs - - -	153—155
		their persons described -	157, 158
		their diseases few - - -	158
		their mode of computing time -	159
		their numerals did not seem beyond five -	<i>ib.</i>
		quicklighted - - - -	160
		their language described -	160—162
		no traces of religion among them -	163
		their numbers in the colony, and serviceableness to the colonists -	<i>ib.</i>
		their rapid diminution in number - - -	143, 144
		expertness at tracing animals by their foot-marks - - -	370
		<i>Hovels</i> of the Dutch peasants described - - -	135
H			
<i>Hartebeest</i> , of the family of antelopes, described - - -	187		
<i>Hemisphere</i> , Southern, probably of larger dimensions than the northern -	360		
<i>Hemp</i> , substitute for, used by the <i>Hottentots</i> - - -	344		
might be cultivated with great benefit at the Cape - - -	408		
<i>Hippopotami</i> , very numerous in the rivers of Africa - - -	186		
eat nothing that waters afford -	<i>ib.</i>		
how destroyed by the Kaffers -	210		
probably the Behemoth of Job -	295		
<i>Hottentots</i> , make little opposition to the establishment of the Dutch colony -	7		
how deprived of their lands -	<i>ib.</i>		
almost to a man in a state of servitude to the Dutch - - -	144		
their probable extinction - - -	<i>ib.</i>		
causes of their decrease enumerated -	<i>ib.</i>		
inhumanly treated by the Dutch -	145		
flogging them by pipes, what -	146		
regulations in their favour disregarded -	<i>ib.</i>		
their marriages often barren -	147		
depressed by melancholy - - -	148		
their instruments of music -	149		
their ancient weapons - - -	149, 150		
no traces of the customs described by old travellers - - -	151		
		I	
		<i>Indicator</i> , or honey bird, its useful employment - - -	322
		<i>Insects</i> of the Cape - - -	32
		<i>Inflinæ</i> , considerations on what is called -	322
		operates differently in the birds of Southern Africa and those of Europe - - -	323
		<i>Journey</i> across the Arid Desert to Graaff Reynet - - -	55
		mode of performing it - - -	<i>ib.</i>
		into the Bosjesmans' country, the Author's preparations for -	254
		into the Kaffer country - - -	166
		into the Namaaqua country -	357
		<i>Iron ore</i> abounds in the mountains of Africa - - -	227

K		PAGE
<i>Kaffers</i> , preparations for visiting their country - - -	166,	167
<i>Kaffer</i> women characterised - - -	-	168
their frank and agreeable manners -	-	<i>ib.</i>
men possessed of great strength and symmetry - - -	169, 204,	205
instance of their superior size -	-	171
their dress - - -	-	<i>ib.</i>
interview with some <i>Kaffer</i> chiefs, and conversation respecting boundaries - - -	171—	174
articles of request among the <i>Kaffers</i> -	-	175
their ornaments - - -	-	176
interview with their king - - -	-	193
articles of agreement that were the fruit of the conference - - -	-	195
character of the <i>Kaffers</i> vindicated, and particular instances of their humanity related - - -	-	196, 197
person and character of the king -	-	198, 199
dress of the females - - -	-	<i>ib.</i>
huts described - - -	-	200
their agriculture - - -	-	<i>ib.</i>
their weapons - - -	-	201
their government and employments -	-	202, 203
those of the women - - -	-	204
a fine race of men, and the reasons -	-	205
do not, in person, resemble the negro -	-	<i>ib.</i>
their marriages - - -	-	206
crimes and punishments - - -	-	207
their arts - - -	-	208
rather a pastoral than agricultural nation - - -	-	209
unacquainted with fishing - - -	-	211
probably of Arabic origin - - -	-	212
practise circumcision - - -	-	<i>ib.</i>
their religious notions - - -	-	214, 215

<i>Kaffers</i> —		PAGE
their notions in astronomy - - -	-	218
their language - - -	-	<i>ib.</i>
their funeral rites - - -	-	220
hostilities between them and the British troops - - -	-	230
<i>Karoo</i> , or Great Desert, journies across the - - -	-	86, 327
sufferings of the party from want of water - - -	-	3:8, 333
<i>Keiskamma river</i> , its mouth - - -	-	225
<i>Khamies berg</i> , winter, more early, and severe in the - - -	-	387
its inhabitants migrate into the plains -	-	<i>ib.</i>
<i>Koranas</i> , a tribe of <i>Bosjesmans</i> , their predatory and quarrelsome disposition - - -	-	403, 404
<i>Kraal</i> of the <i>Bosjesmans</i> entered by surprise - - -	-	270, &c.
its construction and inside, account of -	-	276

L

<i>Language</i> , of the Hottentots, its use of dental and palatial sounds -	-	160, 161
often imitates the sounds of objects expressed - - -	-	<i>ib.</i>
curious instance of this - - -	-	162
acquired by Europeans without much difficulty - - -	-	<i>ib.</i>
of the <i>Kaffers</i> described - - -	-	218
list of some of its vocables - - -	-	219
<i>Lead ore</i> , vein of, noticed - - -	-	141
its uncommon richness - - -	-	142
<i>Leopard</i> of the country described -	-	266
<i>Lion</i> , his insidious qualities - - -	-	129
his battles with the buffalo described -	-	130
prefers the flesh of the Hottentot, and of the horse - - -	-	265, 395

Lion

<i>Lion</i> —	PAGE
may be domesticated when young	- 266
remarkable account of a Hottentot's escape from	- - 593, 594
<i>Locusts</i> , their depredations	= 242. 248. 257
mode of destroying them	- - 402
<i>Locust-eater</i> , bird of that name described	256
their immense numbers	- - 257
<i>Loxia orix</i> , or Cardinal of the Cape, notices respecting the	- - 243

M

<i>Marriages</i> of the colonists, absurd law respecting the	- - - 252
<i>Milk</i> , quantity of given by African cows always used by the Kaffers in a coagu- lated state	- - - 170
probable reason for this	- - <i>ib.</i>
<i>Milk baskets</i> , of what texture	- - <i>ib.</i>
<i>Millet</i> , species of, introduced at the Cape	407
<i>Mineralogy</i> of the Cape peninsula	35
<i>Mine</i> , silver, pretended to be found at the Cape	- - - 59
<i>Miser</i> , Dutch, and his domestic economy described	- - - 383, 384
<i>Missionaries</i> European, their attempt to propagate Christianity among the Kaffers and Bosjesmans	- 351. 399
<i>Moravian missionaries</i> , account of their establishment at Bavian's kloof	- 351
beneficial effects of their labours among the Hottentots	- - 352
divine service, decent performance of	353
their mode of introducing civilization	354
not encouraged by the Dutch colonists	<i>ib.</i>
offer their services among the Bosjes- mans	- - - 399

N

	PAGE
<i>Namaaquas</i> , preparations for a journey into their country	- - 357
greatly diminished by the encroach- ments of the Dutch	- 387, 388
their persons and language described	389
breasts of the females large and pen- dant	- - - 390
their huts described	- - - <i>ib.</i>
their employment pastoral	- - <i>ib.</i>
great apparent age of a female Na- maqua	- - - 398
<i>Nests of birds</i> , how constructed in South ern Africa	- - 323. 394
<i>Nieuweld</i> mountains, their height, and component parts	- 100, 101
<i>Nitre</i> , how procured by the Author	- 91
its probable influence on the tempe- rature of the air	- - 106
<i>Nymphæ</i> , elongation of, universal among the Bosjesmans and the Hottentot females	- 278—280
a similar appearance in parts of Egypt	281

O

<i>Origin of the Hottentots</i> , conjectures re- specting the	- - - 282
<i>Orange river</i> , account of	- 294. 296, 297
pebbles on its banks	- - 299
<i>Ostrich</i> , remarks on the	- - - 94
a polygamous bird	- - - 95
its eggs a delicacy	- - - <i>ib.</i>
<i>Oxen (draught)</i> , sometimes brutally treated by the colonists	- - 183
shocking instances of this	- 182, 183

P	
	PAGE
<i>Paariberg</i> , a remarkable mountain, ac- count of - - -	60
<i>Phenomenon</i> , curious, in natural his- tory - - -	127
<i>Pigmies</i> of the ancients, traces of resem- blance between them and the Bos- jesmans - - -	282
<i>Plants</i> , useful, to be found in the coun- try about the Cape - 17, 18. 344, 345 that might be introduced with success <i>ib.</i>	
<i>Plettenberg's Bay</i> , country around, de- scribed - - -	341, 342
landing-place near - - -	343
<i>Polygamous birds</i> - - -	244
<i>Potatoes</i> , disliked by the planters -	117
<i>Punishments</i> , public, at the Cape -	44, 45

Q

<i>Quack</i> , an Irish, imposes on the credulity of the Dutch farmers - - -	376
<i>Quadrupeds</i> , account of - - -	27, 28, 29
<i>Quartz</i> , its change into clay frequently visible in the African mountains -	227

R

<i>Ratel</i> , of the species of <i>Viverra</i> , noticed	335
<i>Refraction of the air</i> , curious effect of - - -	107
<i>Reptiles</i> of the Cape - - -	33
<i>Rivers</i> that cross the Karroo, observa- tions respecting the - - -	97

Rivers—		PAGE
how passed by the Dutch peasants -		79
<i>Rooe sand</i> , valley of, described -		71
mountains beyond, account of -		73

S

<i>Saldanha bay</i> , account of - - -	361, 362
frequented by whales - - -	362
its conveniences and disadvantages as a harbour, and means of removing the latter - - -	362, 363, 364
appearance of the country in its neigh- bourhood - - -	365
<i>Salt-water lake</i> remarkable, described 123.	311
supposition concerning the cause of its saltness - - -	124, 125
probable cause - - -	126
<i>Sand</i> , chrySTALLIZED, pyramidal columns of - - -	371—373
probably the ruins of vast mountains -	374
<i>Sea-sand</i> , conjectures respecting its origin <i>ib.</i>	
<i>Schoolmasters</i> , who, and what their situa- tion among the planters - - -	82
<i>Sea-bells</i> , why found so high above the level of the sea - - -	58
<i>Seasons</i> , view of, at the Cape - - -	40, 41
<i>Sepulchral heaps</i> , origin of - - -	108, 109
<i>Serpents</i> , most of them thought noxious 140 a fascinating power ascribed to them - <i>ib.</i> vulgar antidotes against their poison - <i>ib.</i> curious method of destroying, by the Hottentots - - -	268
<i>Sheep</i> , description of the Cape breed -	116
their wool, of what kind - - -	117
<i>Shrubbery</i> , natural, described - - -	121
<i>Slaves</i> , African, in the colony - - -	46
Malay, sometimes dangerous - - -	<i>ib.</i>
3 M	<i>Slavery,</i>

	PAGE
<i>Slavery</i> , its pernicious effects - -	47
<i>Sneeuwberg</i> , mountains of, their component parts, and vegetable productions - -	246, 247
defitute of shrubbery, and the reason	247, 248
productions of this district, and its advantages and inconveniences -	250
character of its colonists - -	251
<i>Soap</i> , how formed at the Cape -	91
<i>Soda</i> , might be procured in abundance at the Cape - -	92
<i>Soil</i> , its fertility in various places -	135
<i>Spiders</i> , remarkable account of -	392
<i>Spring-bok</i> , destroyed in great numbers as game - -	118
<i>Springs</i> , medicinal, noticed -	334, 355
<i>Staaten</i> , Island of, Settlement formed at the, for the Southern Whale-fishery - -	1
<i>Stalagmites</i> , account of a mass of -	311
<i>Stream</i> , hot, account of -	73, 74
<i>Sugar-cane</i> , wild and uncultivated -	67

T

<i>Table mountain</i> , description of - -	33
view of its stratification - -	36
grand view from its summit -	37
causes of the phenomenon of the cloud on its summit - -	39
<i>Tattooing</i> prevalent among the Kaffers -	216
<i>Temperature</i> , remarkable variation of -	337
<i>Thermometer</i> , its remarkable variations	190, 238
probable cause - -	ib.
<i>Thrushes</i> , many kinds of, in Southern Africa - -	224
<i>Thunder-storm</i> described - -	320
<i>Timber</i> , kinds of, produced at the Cape - -	19, 20, 133, 339

<i>Timber</i> —	PAGE
for building, scarce and expensive -	20
for fuel, mode of procuring - -	ib.
<i>Trogodytes</i> , Bosjesmans resemble the, and eat the larvæ of ants and locusts	282—284

V

<i>Vaillant</i> , remarks on an assertion of that author - -	279, 280
his veracity called in question -	360
criticism on his books of travels -	ib.
an erroneous assertion of, corrected -	382
<i>Vegetable</i> productions, abundant -	24
account of a variety of them -	25, 26, 27
<i>Villages</i> , account of some in the neighbourhood of the Cape -	63, 64
<i>Vines</i> , culture of - -	23, 24
<i>Vultures</i> , various kinds of, mentioned -	267
<i>Unicorn</i> , figure of an animal resembling it discovered - -	313
considerations rendering probable the existence of such an animal	313—319
<i>Viverra</i> , various species of that genus noticed - -	231, 232

W

<i>Water</i> , great want of, experienced	121, 328—333
when a traveller may expect to meet with - -	97
<i>Weather</i> , view of the, at the Cape -	40, 41
its mean temperature - -	41
<i>Whale fishery</i> established at the Cape -	32
<i>Wild hog</i> of Africa described -	303
<i>Winds</i> , prevalent at the Cape -	40, 41
<i>Wine</i> , Constantia - -	23
<i>Wines</i> of the Cape, account of -	64, 65, 66
<i>Wood</i> ,	

I N D E X.

419

	PAGE		PAGE
<i>Wood</i> , catalogue of various sorts of, in		<i>Zebra</i> , remarks on the domestication of	93
the colony	339, 340	<i>Zoology</i> , general view of the Cape	27
<i>Wool</i> , African, of what kind	117	<i>Zuurv Veldt</i> , plains of, their vegetable productions	188, 189, 190
Z			
<i>Zamia cycadis</i> , its fruit a substitute for coffee	189	<i>Zwart-kop's bay</i> , fertility of the country	
		around	135
		productive of excellent timber	133
		abounds in game	138, 139
		<i>Zwellendam</i> , district of, its population and produce	1349, 350

T H E E N D .



L. B. 1007

AN
ACCOUNT
OF
TRAVELS
INTO THE
INTERIOR OF SOUTHERN AFRICA.

IN WHICH IS CONSIDERED,
THE IMPORTANCE OF THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE TO THE DIFFERENT EUROPEAN
POWERS, AS A NAVAL AND MILITARY STATION; AS A POINT OF SECURITY
TO OUR INDIAN TRADE AND SETTLEMENTS DURING A WAR, AND
AS A TERRITORIAL ACQUISITION AND COMMERCIAL
EMPORIUM IN TIME OF PEACE:

WITH
*A STATISTICAL SKETCH OF THE WHOLE COLONY;
COMPILED FROM AUTHENTIC DOCUMENTS.*

By JOHN BARROW, Esq.

LATE SECRETARY TO THE EARL OF MACARTNEY, AUDITOR-GENERAL OF PUBLIC ACCOUNTS
AT THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE, AND SECRETARY TO LIEUTENANT-GENERAL
FRANCIS DUNDAS DURING HIS GOVERNMENT THERE.

VOLUME THE SECOND,
ILLUSTRATED WITH SEVERAL ENGRAVINGS.

LONDON:
Printed by A. Strahan, Printers-Street,
FOR T. CADELL AND W. DAVIES, IN THE STRAND.
1804.

JOHNSON REPRINT CORPORATION JOHNSON REPRINT COMPANY LTD.
111 Fifth Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10003 Berkeley Square House, London, W. 1

Reprinted from a copy in the collections of
The New York Public Library
Astor, Lenox and Tilden Foundations

Landmarks in Anthropology, a series of reprints in cultural anthropology
General Editor: Weston La Barre

First reprinting, 1968, Johnson Reprint Corporation
Printed in the United States of America

TO
THE LORD VISCOUNT MELVILLE,
ONE OF HIS MAJESTY'S MOST HONOURABLE PRIVY COUNCIL,
Es. Es. Es.

UNDER WHOSE AUSPICES, THE EXTENSIVE AND IMPORTANT COLONY
OF THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE
WAS ACQUIRED AND ANNEXED TO THE BRITISH EMPIRE,
BY WHICH OUR POLITICAL AND COMMERCIAL INTERESTS IN THE EAST-INDIES
WERE EFFECTUALLY SECURED AND PROMOTED;

THIS SECOND VOLUME OF
TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA, *Es.*

IS RESPECTFULLY INSCRIBED,

BY
HIS MOST FAITHFUL
AND OBLIGED HUMBLE SERVANT,

JOHN BARROW.

CONTENTS.

CHAP. I.

PRELIMINARY SUBJECT.

Motives that gave Rise to the present Volume.—Importance of studying the Disposition of Inhabitants—of gaining local Information.—Assiduity of the French in these Respects—instanced in a Variety of Cases—combine national with individual Views—their Dispersion by the late Revolution—endeavour to attract the Notice of their Country.—Extract from the ~~Travels~~ of the Duke of Rochefaucault Liancourt—his Sentiments those of the Emigrants.—French indefatigable in their Pursuits abroad—Progress made in India—in the Birman Empire—in Cochin-China—the Danger, or Advantage, that England may derive from the last Connection.—Considerations respecting Macao.—French communicate Knowledge—Dutch and Portuguese impede it with regard to their Colonies—Cape of Good Hope an Exception to this Remark—Knowledge of it imperfect—and Accounts contradictory.—Various Authors who have written on the Subject—Tachard—Merklin—Valentyn—Kolbe—Abbé de la Caille—Sparmann—Thunberg—Patterfon—Hoppe—Van Reenen.—Maps of Captain Riou and De la Rochette.—Important Observations on the South Coast of Africa—Errors of different Charts—Observations on Monsieur Le Vaillant's Work—Manner in which the Chart prefixed to the present Work was constructed.—Disagreement between the Chart and the Text explained.—Testimony of General Vandeleur.—Misrepresentations of the Cape accounted for.—General Nature and Appearance of the Country—Improvements suggested.—Change in the national Character of the Dutch in their Colonies—their helpless Condition in Batavia.—Industry and Activity of the Chinese there—their Numbers—would prove a valuable Acquisition to the Cape—real Importance of this Colony to England.—Conclusion.

Page 1

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Military Expedition to the Kaffer Frontier.

Occasion of this Expedition.—Affairs of Graaf Reynet.—Gordon's Bay.—Hottentot Holland's Kloof—Obstinacy of the Colonists.—Cruelty to Animals, bad Effects of.—Palmiet and Bott Rivers.—Temperature of the Air.—The Shoemaker's Hovel.—Rapid Vegetation after Rain—Plants first appearing.—Sweet Milk's Valley—wild Animals there.—Establishment of Herbhuters or Moravians—good Effects of.—Hottentots discouraged by the Colonists—Sir James Craig's Testimony of—other Missionaries.—Instance of Zeal in Mr. Kicherer—Reflection thereupon.—Instance of savage Cruelty in the Boors—a Boor taken into Custody.—Two of our Dragoons lost in a River.—Scarcity of Water attempted to be explained from the Nature and Antiquity of the Mountains—Facts adduced in Proof of the Theory.—Cape Isthmus never covered with the Sea—Reasons for such Curiousness—L'Aguillas Bank once Part of the Continent.—Antiquity of Africa.—Muscle Bay—Chart and Description of.—Cross Attaquas Kloof into Lange Kloof.—Wine—Raisins—Brandy—all of bad Quality.—Experiment for making good Wine.—Appearance of Lange Kloof—cross the Mountains to Plettenberg's Bay—Reason why Forest Trees are more abundant there than elsewhere.—Mr. Calander's Account of the Knyfina—and surrounding Country.—Condition of a Cape Boor.—Anchor found on Table Mountain.—Plants near Plettenberg's Bay—and Animals.—Instance of Ingenuity in a deaf and dumb Man.—Appearance of the Country between Camtoos River and Algoa Bay.—Engagement between La Preneuse and the Rattlesnake.—Change of Circumstances favourable to the Boors—rebellious Boors sent to the Cape—tried by the Court of Justice there—Constitution of this Court—bad Character of, undeserved. Boors plundered by the Hottentots—Justification of these People—their cruel Treatment by the Boors—Examples of in a Hottentot Woman and Child cut with Shambocs—in a Boy with Iron Rings clenched on his Legs—Punishment of the Boor—Another Instance of the sanguinary Character of the Boors—its Cause explained.—People of Cape Town.—The Burgher and the Whale.—Character and Mode of Life—tenacious of Rank.—Hottentot Corps—Character of.—Condition of the Slaves.—Imprudence of the Whites.—Administration of Justice between the Whites and Blacks.

Blacks.—Rencontre with the Kaffer Chief Congo.—Comparison between the Persons of Boors and Kaffers.—Reflection.—Food of the Kaffers.—Boosbuanas.—City of Leetakoo.—Conjecture of the Kaffer Origin—Extent of their Country—their Dogs not subject to Canine Madness.—Small Pox not endemic in South Africa—Origin of.—High Situations favourable to the Growth of Animals.—Uncommon Instance of Bulk in a Woman—Fate of this hapless Creature.—Attack of the Kaffers upon the British Troops—a wounded Kaffer taken.—Rencontre of Boors and Hottentots at Algoa Bay.—Kaffers storm the British Camp.—Melancholy Fate of Lieutenant Chumney and sixteen Men.—Ill-judged Conduct of the Boors—Consequences.—Hatred of Kaffers and Hottentots against the Boors—Conduct of the latter at Plettenberg's Bay.—Horrid Murder committed in Lange Kloof.—Curious Articles of Instructions proposed for the Boors in their Wars with the Kaffers.—Return to the Cape.—Change of Conduct in the Colonists—reconciled to the British Government—indifferent as to the Return of their own—little Rejoicing shewn at this Event—Reasons of it—final Evacuation. - - Page 32

CHAP. III.

Importance of the Cape of Good Hope, considered as a Military Station.

Views of the British Government in taking Possession of the Cape—State of that Colony—Arrival of the British Forces—Behaviour of the Inhabitants—Capture of the Settlement—general Opinion of its Importance—Plans for its Government.—Lord Macartney appointed Governor.—Resolution of the Minister.—Conduct of the present Directors of the East India Company—compared with that of those in the American War.—Consequences of our Failure in the Expedition against the Cape at that Time.—Considerations proposed in a Treaty with Holland in 1787—Opinion of Lord Macartney.—Holland not desirous to have the Cape.—Order of the East India Company prohibiting their Ships to touch at the Cape—countermanded with regard to Ships navigated by Lascars.—Condition of two Regiments brought to the Cape in such Ships.—Design of the following Part of this Work.—Meaning of the Term Military Station.—Soldiers, what.—Importance of forming Men previous to Embarkation.—Inconveniences attending a Sea Voyage.—India not favourable for forming Recruits into Soldiers.—A middle Station desirable.—Cape of Good Hope, great Advantages of

of in this Respect—possesses all the Requisites desired by the East India Company as a Depôt.—Healthiness of Climate, various Proofs of—seasons the Constitution for India—remarkable Instance of in upwards of two thousand Men sent to India—another in twelve hundred to the Red Sea.—Difficulties started against this Expedition.—Importance of the Cape on account of the small Expence of subsisting Troops there.—Value of the Ration here and elsewhere.—Price of Provisions—of Wine.—Profits derived by the Government at the Cape from Bills on his Majesty's Paymasters— from Specie imported— from Copper Money— from issuing new Paper Money.—Expenditure in the military Department—a mere Trifle compared with the Importance of the Station—capable of being borne in Peace out of the colonial Revenues.—Importance of the Cape on account of its local Position—instanced in detecting the Views of Tippoo at the Isle of France—in sending Troops expeditiously to India.—Opportunities of doing this in English or neutral Ships.—General Advantages.—Importance of the Cape stated in comparison with that of Malta.—Views of the French on India—seen in the Publication of Anquetil Duperron.—Disadvantages of Malta being in the Hands of the French.—Difficulties that would attend an Expedition by Sea from Suez.—Island of Perim.—Difficulties that would occur by Land—not insurmountable.—De la Croix's Opinion of the Cape.—Defences of the Cape.—Table Bay and Site of the Town—Works—Citadel—Lines—Craig's Battery and Tower—Fort Knocke—Rogge Bay, Amsterdam, and Chavonne Batteries—the Moulié—Camp's Bay and Batteries—Importance of the Lion's Rump—Objections against it.—Chapman and Hout Bays.—Simon's Bay.—Garrison of the Cape, Strength of.—Unprotected Coast and Bays.—Algoa Bay.—Means to be employed by an Enemy for distressing the Garrison—taken by a Coup de Main.—Garrison of the Dutch.—Disposition of the Hottentot Corps.—State of the Batavian Ships of War in the Eastern Seas.—Ammunition and Stores at the Cape. - Page 143

CHAP. IV.

Importance of the Cape of Good Hope, considered as a Naval Station.

Comparative small Space occupied by the British Islands—their Weight among Nations accounted for.—Commerce the Source of British Wealth.—Precariousness of the mere Carrying-

Carrying-trade.—Colonies improve Navigation.—Character of French Seamen—of Dutch Seamen.—Treatment on board their own Ships.—Mortality.—The Cape necessary to the Dutch Trade to India—an intermediate Port desirable to other Nations—least so to England—Reasons of it.—Incidents to which maritime Transactions are liable make friendly Ports always desirable.—Convenience of the Cape.—Portuguese the first Visitors—then the English and Dutch—taken Possession of by the latter—extend their Territory beyond the original Intention—Impediments thrown by the Company—Willingness to part with it.—Advantages as a Naval Station, not confined to the Supply of Refreshments—Resort for Ships in Distress—the Countess of Sutherland Indiaman.—Cape proper for assembling Convoys—Provisions to be procured.—Importance as commanding the Entrance of the Indian Seas.—Isles of France and Bourbon dependent on the Cape.—France unable to disturb India without a Fleet.—Trade of India subject to the Masters of the Cape—Healthiness of the Climate for Seamen.—Moderate Expence of subsisting a Fleet—Sailors' Ration of fresh Provisions—Brandy cheaper than West India Rum—Consumption of colonial Produce by the Fleet—about one-fourth of the usual Expence—Wear and Tear of the Ships considerable.—Importance of the geographical Position of the Cape—commanding a speedy Inter-course with most Parts of the World.—Disadvantages to Britain in the Hands of an Enemy.—Three Points of Annoyance to our Trade—comparative Danger of the outward and homeward bound Passages—that of passing the Straits of Sunda—of Manilla—of L'Aguiilas Bank—of Saint Helena.—Inefficacy of Convoys.—Difference of Circumstances between this and the American War.—Present Aim of France.—The comparative Estimate of the Cape and Ceylon.—French jealous of our Commerce.—Necessity of re-possessing the Cape or destroying the Enemy's Shipping there.—Bays of the Cape—Table Bay—Robben Island—Loss of the Sceptre—Simon's Bay—Saldanha Bay—Objections to it—obviated.—Saint Helena Bay.—Conclusion. Page 221

CHAP. V.

Importance of the Cape of Good Hope, considered in a commercial Point of View, and as a Depôt for the Southern Whale Fishery.

Intention of the United States in forming the Settlement.—Commerce discouraged.—Rising Prosperity of the Colony checked.—Consequences of its becoming a Free Port.

—*American Trade.*—*Ships under neutral Flags and British Capitals.*—*Situation of Batavian Republic respecting the Cape.*—*Interests of the East India Company.*—*Cape considered as an Emporium of Eastern Produce.*—*Objections to it.*—*attended with Loss to the Crown.*—*and Injury to the London Market.*—*Remedy.*—*Trade from the Cape.*—*to the West Indies.*—*to the Brazils.*—*at the Discretion of the Company.*—*America.*—*Holland.*—*France.*—*Advantages of the Cape as furnishing Exports.*—*Grain and Pulse.*—*Wine and Brandy.*—*Wool.*—*Hides and Skins.*—*Whale Oil and Bone.*—*dried Fruits.*—*salt Provisions.*—*Soap and Candles.*—*Aloes.*—*Ivory.*—*Tobacco.*—*Total Value of Exports in four Years.*—*Imports from England what.*—*from India and China.*—*by foreign Nations.*—*Table of Imports.*—*Balance of Imports over Exports.*—*State of the Colony.*—*Relapse into Poverty.*—*Commercial Advantages not Important to Great Britain.*—*considered as a Depôt for the Southern Whale Fishery.*—*Establishment of this Fishery.*—*might be exclusively in our Hands through the Cape.*—*Black Whale.*—*Spermaceti.*—*Bounties.*—*Seal Fishery in the Hands of Americans.*—*Inducement for them to dispose of their Skins.*—*Conclusion.* - Page 265

CHAP. VI.

Topographical Description and Statistical Sketch of the Cape Settlement.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.—*Dimensions.*—*Extent.*—*Soil.*—*Climate.*—*Winds.*—*Scarcity of Water.*—*Permanent Rivers enumerated and described.*—*Mountains.*—*Divisions, Population, and Produce.*—*Provincial Judicature.* **DISTRICT OF THE CAPE**—*Extent of and Quantity of Land under Cultivation.*—*Cape Town.*—*Stock, Produce, and Population ascertained by the Opgaaff.*—*Births and Mortality.*—*Criminals.*—*Natural Products of the Cape District.*—**DISTRICT OF STELLENBOSCH AND DRAKENSTEIN**—*Extent and Divisions of.*—*The Drofsdy or Village.*—*Situation and Produce of the other Divisions of this District.*—*Stock and Population of, according to the Opgaaff.*—**DISTRICT OF ZWELLENDAM**—*Dimensions, Extent, and Divisions of.*—*the Drofsdy or Village of.*—*Situation and Produce of the other Divisions.*—*Stock and Population according to the Opgaaff.*—**DISTRICT OF GRAAF REYNET**—*Dimensions, Extent, and Divisions of.*—*Drofsdy or Village of.*—*Situation and Produce of the other Divisions of this District.*—*Stock and Population according*

to the Opgaaff.—TENURES OF LANDS.—*Loan Farms, Nature and Number of.—*
Gratuity Lands.—Quit Rents.—Freeholds.—Reasons against Improvement of Estates
in the Cape.—Property frequently changes Hands.—CONDITION OF THE INHA-
BITANTS.—Necessaries of Life obtained without Exertion.—Four Classes of Colonists
—Those of the Town, Condition of. Taxes and Assessments moderate.—Tythes or
Church Rates none—no Poor Rates.—Police conducted by a College of Burghers—
their Functions Neglect and Abuses of—Improvement suggested.—Indifference of
the Colonists for rational Amusements.—The Wine Growers, Condition and Re-
sources of State of their Outgoings and Returns.—Easy Terms of purchasing Estates.
—Corn Boats, Condition of—State of their Outgoings and Returns.—Graziers,
indolent and helpless Condition of—their bad Character—subject to no Taxes—State
of Outgoings and Returns.—REVENUES OF GOVERNMENT Nature of the thirteen
Heads of, and Table of their Amount for four successive Years.—JURISPRUDENCE.
—Nature and Constitution of the Court its Members.—Civil Causes.—Attornies.
—Office of Fiscal.—Court of Commissaries for petty Suits, and matrimonial Affairs.
—The Weeskammer, or Chamber for managing the Effects of Minors and Orphans
—its Functions.—RELIGION, that of the Reformed Church.—Lutherans and others
barely tolerated.—Condition of the Clergy—Duties of—direct the Funds raised for
the Relief of the Poor—are Curators of the public School.—Amount of Church
Funds.—IMPROVEMENTS SUGGESTED, by the Introduction of Chinese—easily
effected by the British Government—by Moravian Establishments of Hottentots in
the distant Parts—by enclosing the Farms leading their Vines up Props or Espaliers.
—New System in the Tillage of Corn Lands.—Establishment of Fairs or Markets,
and erecting of Villages—Consequences of these.—Conclusion. - Page 324

E R R A T A.

- VOL. I.** Page 9. line 27. *for* Tush *read* Fish
 10. — 27. *for* Zewarte *r.* Zwarte
 16. — 27. *for* inclusive *r.* exclusive
 31. — 12. *for* Bray *r.* Cray
 33. — 17. *for* Cenæa *r.* Penæa
 64. — 20. *for* into *r.* on
 88. — 11. *for* Zoaarteberg *r.* Zwarteberg
 89. — 18. *for* red *r.* reed
 93. — 8. *for* four *r.* fore
 131. — 24. *for* pending *r.* trending
 137. — 9. *for* hefts *r.* tafts
 202. — 15. *for* tradesman *r.* herdman
 232. — 3. *for* pectorius *r.* putorius
 314. — 21. *for* illy *r.* ill
 321. — 7. *for* Tush *r.* Fish
 319. — 3. fifth column, *for* Milanopoleos *r.* Melanophleos
 346. & seq. *for* Muscle Bay *r.* Moffel
 360. — 27. *for* Philippo *r.* Philippeaux
- VOL. II.** Page 11. line 3. *for* assassinato *read* assassination
 40. — 4. *for* Rhode *r.* Roode
 41. — 20. *for* it *r.* in
 165. — 12. *for* on *r.* in
 207. — 11. *for* 1500 *r.* 3000
 211. — 7. *for* 2700 *r.* 5400
 362. — 6. *for* white *r.* whole
 368. — 3. *for* Kange *r.* Lange
 370. — 3. *for* them *r.* it

In the Prefs,

TRAVELS IN CHINA,

CONTAINING

DESCRIPTIONS, OBSERVATIONS, and COMPARISONS, made and collected in the
 Course of a short Residence at the *Imperial Palace* of *Yuen-min-yuen*, and
 on a subsequent Journey through the Country from

PEKIN TO CANTON.

In which it is attempted to appreciate the Rank that this extraordinary Empire
 may be considered to hold in the Scale of civilized Nations.

“ *Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum.*”
 It is the lot of few to go to *Pekin*.

By JOHN BARROW, Esq.

late Private Secretary to the Earl of Macartney, and one of his Suite as Ambassador from the
 King of Great Britain to the Emperor of China.

TRA-

TRAVELS

INTO THE

INTERIOR OF SOUTHERN AFRICA.

PRELIMINARY SUBJECT.

Motives that gave Rise to the present Volume.—Importance of studying the Disposition of Inhabitants—of gaining local Information.—Assiduity of the French in these Respects—instanced in a Variety of Cases—combine national with individual Views—their Dispersion by the late Revolution—endeavour to attract the Notice of their Country.—Extract from the Travels of the Duke of Rochefaucault Liancourt—his Sentiments those of the Emigrants.—French indefatigable in their Pursuits abroad—Progress made in India—in the Birman Empire—in Cochin-China—the Danger, or Advantage, that England may derive from the last Connection.—Considerations respecting Macao.—French communicate Knowledge—Dutch and Portuguese impede it with regard to their Colonies—Cape of Good Hope an Exception to this Remark—Knowledge of it imperfect—and Accounts contradictory.—Various Authors who have written on the Subject—Tachard—Merklin—Valentyn—Kolbe—Abbé de la Caille—Spatrman—Thunberg—Patterson—Hoppe—Van Reenen.—Maps of Captain Riou and De la Rochette.—Important Observations on the South Coast of Africa—Errors of different Charts—Observations on Monsieur Le

Vaillant's Work—Manner in which the Chart prefixed to the present Work was constructed.—Disagreement between the Chart and the Text explained.—Testimony of General Vandeleur.—Misrepresentations of the Cape accounted for.—General Nature and Appearance of the Country—Improvements suggested.—Change in the national Character of the Dutch in their Colonies—their helpless Condition in Batavia.—Industry and Activity of the Chinese there—their Numbers—would prove a valuable Acquisition to the Cape—real Importance of this Colony to England.—Conclusion.

THE very flattering reception which a former volume of sketches experienced from an indulgent public, was sufficient encouragement for the Author to resume his pen, though it might not be considered as an adequate motive, without new pretensions, to obtrude himself a second time on public notice. The pretensions then, which I now claim, consist chiefly in being allowed to finish an incomplete work: to add a volume, in continuation of the former, which I am encouraged to hope will be considered no less interesting, from the importance of the matter, than the other was from its novelty. The natural history of a country little known; the general description of its surface and appearance; the manners, customs, and state of society, of the several classes of inhabitants, furnish a vast fund of useful and agreeable information; but they do not constitute a whole.—A number of other subjects must be discussed and described before our knowledge of that country can be said to be complete. Among these are not the least important the local advantages it may command in a political, military, and commercial point of view, either with respect to itself, or in its relations with other countries; its resources, and their application; its revenues, jurisprudence, population, and a variety of other points which, when attentively taken, form a topographical

phical and statistical account, from whence both the statesman and the philosopher may be instructed and amused.

This latter part is a task which, in all human probability, I should never have undertaken, had I not found, on my return to England, that a great variety of opinions were fluctuating with regard to the importance of the Cape of Good Hope to the interests of the British Empire, but more immediately so to those of the East-India Company, which composes so very distinguished a part of it. Most of these opinions were, obviously, grounded on a very limited view of the subject; or on an imperfect knowledge of the country. For, without arrogating to myself any superior information beyond what local knowledge, acquired by frequent travel, and my public situation, enabled me to collect, I may be allowed to observe, that few seem to understand in what respects the Cape is, or is not, an important object to the different powers of Europe. In the former volume all political discussions were studiously avoided, not only because they might at that time, for many reasons, have been thought unseasonable or indiscreet, but because I then conceived there was but one opinion with regard to the real value of the Cape of Good Hope, if considered only in the single view of its being a barrier and a point of security to our Indian settlements.

Since, however, it has unfortunately been found expedient to relinquish the possession of it, in consideration of something that, no doubt, appeared to be of equal moment, such caution will now be no longer necessary; and I shall therefore, in the

B 2

present

present volume, enter very fully into the question of the political, military, and commercial advantages, which this grand outwork of all the European possessions in India commands, and of the dangers to which those of the British empire in that quarter of the world, as well as the trade of the East-India Company, are now exposed, by having resigned this point of security into the hands of an enemy. I feel it, indeed, incumbent on me to prove a position I then took for granted, *that the Cape of Good Hope was an acquisition by which our political and commercial interests in the East Indies had been secured and promoted.*

Having hitherto dwelt more fully on the character and disposition of the several tribes of aboriginal inhabitants, bordering upon the colony, than of the Dutch and German settlers, I thought it expedient to commence the present volume with a military expedition to the Kaffer frontier, in order to afford myself an opportunity of making such remarks and observations, as had either escaped me in composing the first, or had purposely been omitted. The character and disposition of the inhabitants of a country, likely to become the seat of war, are points of no small importance to be known previous to its conquest. The late King of Prussia, that wise and vigorous monarch who, if now living, would not have been tardy in assisting to repel republican tyranny or consular despotism, recommends, in his celebrated instructions to his general officers, a particular attention to the study of the disposition, the temper, and the turn of mind, of the people inhabiting those countries which were destined to be the object of a military expedition.

In

In this chapter I have also blended some remarks on particular points and passes, with plans and descriptions of the three principal bays on the south-east coast of the colony, from actual surveys ordered to be made by Rear-Admiral Pringle, at the request of Lord Macartney. The regularity of a journal I have not thought it necessary to observe; nor to consider the insertion of dates important, the chief use of which is, to mark the distances travelled over in a given time, the state of the weather, or temperature of the air, at given seasons, and the growth and maturity of the vegetable productions of the earth, as they appear in succession. To these points I have already attended in my former publication, as well as to the general geography of the country. Of the present work, particular topography will form a material part; the knowledge of the one being no less useful than that of the other.

It might appear invidious to point out particular instances of fatal mistakes which have happened from want of local information; but they are numerous in the records of our history. It may not, however, be unimportant to observe, that, in acquiring this kind of knowledge, and in making connections with foreign nations, our most inveterate and rancorous enemy has always been more successful, because more assiduous, than ourselves. I might instance this observation in the labours of *D'Anquetil du Perron*, whose book was withheld from publication for several years, on account of the important information it was supposed to contain respecting the politics of India:—in the Travels of *Messrs. Olivier and Bruguière* into the Turkish and Persian empires, who were sent by the Executive Council in

1792, with particular instructions to inquire into the political system, the opinions, topography, commerce, and productions of these countries;—in *Volney's Travels into Egypt*;—in *Sonini's Investigations in the same country*;—in *Sebastiani's Mission and Report*, the objects of which are too glaring to be mistaken;—and in those persons who, under the name of *Commercial Agents*, had accepted the odious employment of spies.

Few Englishmen, indeed, it is to be hoped, would undertake a commission, which might be considered as degrading to execute, but for which a Frenchman holds his government alone responsible, and its sanction a sufficient excuse. If, by any act in a foreign country, he can gain the favour and countenance of his government at home, he will seldom stick at the means. Hence we find, in every part of the world, Frenchmen labouring for the interests of their nation, in the various characters of ambassadors to the court, missionaries for propagating the Christian religion, commissaries of commerce, emissaries of a subordinate rank, and voluntary adventurers. A Frenchman, travelling in foreign countries, generally combines national with individual views. Since the late revolution they have been dispersed, like the Jews, over the whole world; but their dispersion is yet too recent to have obliterated the *amor patriæ* which, next to that of the ties of blood, clings, perhaps, closest to the heart. To their usual propensity for intrigue at foreign courts, and their national enmity against England, the emigrants have now the additional spur of doing something that may recommend them to the notice of their country. The Travels of *Le Duc de Rochefaucault Liancourt* through the American states, furnish

furnish a striking instance of this observation. The sentiments of this nobleman, openly avowed when it no longer served his purpose to conceal them, may be considered as those of a very great number of the French emigrants; and it is less a subject of wonder that such should be their sentiments, than that men should be credulous enough to think them otherwise. In the publication of Liancourt, we perceive the national antipathy burst forth in almost every page, amidst an apparent inclination, on the part of the individual, to be grateful for acknowledged benefits and multiplied civilities. But it is evident that his feelings of abhorrence for the crimes of the French revolution are not more strong than those of envy and hatred at the successes and prosperity of the British nation. One passage, in the noble author, is so remarkable, that I am tempted to extract it.

“ Je suis embarrassé de me rendre compte à moi-même des
 “ différens sentimens qui m’opprimaient et m’empêchaient de
 “ me livrer entièrement à la reconnaissance et à la douceur qui
 “ en résulte. J’aime les Anglais plus peut-être qu’aucun Fran-
 “ çais ne les aime; j’en ai toujours été très-bien traité; j’ai
 “ des amis parmi eux; je reconnais à ce peuple beaucoup de
 “ grandes qualités et de talens. Je hais les crimes infâmes
 “ dont la révolution Française a été souillé, que m’ont d’ailleurs
 “ enlevé des objets chers à mon affection et à mon estime;
 “ je suis banni de France, mes biens sont confisqués; je suis
 “ traité par le gouvernement de mon pays comme si j’étais un
 “ criminel ou un mauvais citoyen; séparé de tout ce qui
 “ m’est cher, Roberfpierre et les autres brigands par qui ma
 “ nation

“ nation s’est laissée tyranniser, m’ont rendu excessivement
 “ malheureux, et mes malheurs sont loin de finir : hé bien !
 “ ce sentiment de la patrie, ce sentiment adjourd’hui si pénible,
 “ si contradictoire avec ma position, domine tous les autres et
 “ vient me poursuivre ici plus que jamais. Le Pavillon Anglais
 “ sous lequel je navigue, sur des lacs où a si long-tems flotté
 “ le Pavillon Français ; ces forts, ces canons enlevés à notre
 “ puissance, ce temoignage perpetuellement sous mes yeux de
 “ notre ancienne faiblesse, et de nos adversités, me gênent,
 “ m’accablent, et me donnent un excès d’embarras, de honte, que
 “ je ne puis trop bien démeler, et moins encore définir.—Les
 “ succès que le Lord Howe a eus l’année dernière, dont les
 “ Anglais parlent d’autant plus librement devant nous, qu’ils
 “ croient notre cause attachée à la leur ; cette avidité d’annoncer
 “ de nouvelles defaites des Français, d’y croire, et d’oser nous
 “ en complimenter, en nous assurant que nous rentrerons dans
 “ nos propriétés par les efforts Britanniques ; tous ces sujets
 “ habituels d’une conversation dans laquelle l’intention de mes
 “ hôtes semble toujours bonne, ont quelque chose d’autant plus
 “ pénible, qu’il faut cacher sa pensée dans le silence ; qu’en la
 “ disant, on passerait pour un sot aux yeux du très-petit nom-
 “ bre par qui on ne serait pas jugé un Jacobin, un Roberfpierre,
 “ et qu’on en est pour ainsi dire embarrassé avec soi-même. Et
 “ cependant, il est en moi, il est profondément en moi de
 “ préférer de garder toute ma vie mon état de banni, de pauvre
 “ diable, a me voir rappeler dans mon pays et dans mes biens
 “ par l’influence des puissances étrangères et par l’orgueil
 “ Anglais. Je n’entends pas parler d’une defaite des troupes
 “ Françaises sans une grand peine, de leur succès sans un senti-
 “ ment

" ment d'amour-propre satisfait que je ne cherche pas toujours
 " assez a cacher."—" I am at a loss to account for the contend-
 " ing sentiments which have grievously oppressed me, and pre-
 " vented me from yielding myself entirely to the feelings of
 " gratitude, and to that pleasing state of mind which ever at-
 " tends them. I love the English more, perhaps, than any
 " Frenchman does; I have always been extremely well treated
 " by them; I have friends among them; I acknowledge they
 " possess many great qualities as well as talents. I abhor the
 " infamous crimes which have stained the French revolution,
 " which have torn from me the dearest objects of my affections
 " and esteem; I am banished from France; my property is
 " confiscated; I am treated by my own government as if I
 " were a criminal or a bad citizen; separated from every thing
 " I hold dear, Robespierre and the other brigands, to whose
 " tyranny my country has submitted, have rendered me ex-
 " tremely miserable, and my misery is far from being at an
 " end: but yet, this feeling for one's country, a feeling at
 " present so painful, so much at variance with my condition,
 " still triumphs over all others, and pursues me here more
 " powerfully than ever. This English flag under which I sail,
 " upon lakes where the French flag has so long been flying;
 " these forts, these cannon taken from us, this proof, perpet-
 " ually under my eyes, of our former weakness and ill success,
 " disturb, overwhelm, and fill me with a confusion and shame,
 " which I can neither well distinguish nor define. The successes
 " of Lord Howe last year, of which the English talk with
 " the greater freedom before us, as they consider our cause at-
 " tached to theirs; that avidity to announce fresh defeats of

“ the French, to give credit to them, and to dare to congratu-
 “ late us on such occasions, by assuring us that we shall be
 “ restored to our possessions through British exertions—all
 “ these subjects, the constant theme of conversation, in which
 “ the intention of my hosts always appear to be good, are still
 “ more painful to me, as prudence requires me to conceal my
 “ thoughts, for, in avowing them, one would certainly be
 “ considered as a fool in the eyes of the very few who might
 “ not think one a Jacobin, a Roberfpierre; and thus is a man
 “ perplexed with himself. And yet, it is within me, most
 “ deeply rooted within me, to prefer, through my whole life,
 “ this state of banishment, of a forlorn outcast, rather than owe
 “ my restoration to my country and my property to the in-
 “ fluence of foreign powers, and to English pride. I never
 “ hear of a defeat of the French without great distress, nor of
 “ their success without an emotion of self-love, which I am
 “ not always sufficiently careful to conceal.”

The sentiments contained in this passage are such as numbers of
 the emigrants, by their conduct, have shewn to be congenial with
 their own; and such as ought to convince us how little gratitude
 they really feel for the protection and support they have received
 from English generosity; and that neither the miseries nor the in-
 justice they have suffered from their own country can ever make
 them forget for a moment their national enmity. To expect
 that they should for ever abandon their country would be a sen-
 timent equally illiberal on the other side. It would have been
 well, indeed, for themselves, and better for England, that the
 whole body of the emigrants had returned to France. As to
 those

those few malignant and unchristian priests who have dared, in their prayers, to invoke the vengeance of Heaven on the hand that saved them from assassination, and lifted bread to their mouths when, otherwise, they must have been famished, these miscreants have so far degraded themselves below the common level of humanity, that it is not easy to determine whether they are more deserving of pity or contempt.

In all their pursuits abroad the French are indefatigable. In India they have translated the enlightened doctrines of the Rights of Man into the language of some of the country powers; they converted the late Tippoo Sultaun into a citizen of the world; and established a Jacobin club in the very centre of Seringapatam. In Hydrabad they had proceeded to greater lengths. We find them in the Birman Empire, labouring to undermine the British character, and to insinuate themselves into the favour of the court by their services. In Cochin-China they have been still more industrious. They have translated the *Encyclopedie des connoissances humaines* into the language of the country; they have instructed the people to build ships of war, and they have trained their soldiers to the use of artillery. So great a favourite was the late titular bishop of Adran with the king of Cochin-China that, on his death, after his brother missionaries had interred his remains according to the rites of the Romish church, he ordered the body to be taken up and again buried with all the ceremonies and funeral pomp of the Cochin-Chinese religion, as the greatest honour he could bestow on his memory: nor could all the expostulations, or the entreaties, of the missionaries, who were scandalized at

such unhallowed proceedings, prevail upon the king to forego this testimony of his great veneration. It is even said, and believed, that they have urged the monarch of this country to throw off his vassalage to the emperor of China, which, if it be true, cannot fail of producing a war that may either prove fatal to our trade at Canton, or be turned greatly to our advantage; for, if the Chinese should discover Europeans acting against them, little solicitous as they really are with regard to foreign trade, they might be induced to shut their ports against us; or, abhorring, as they do, French principles, and afraid lest they should get possession of some country, at no great distance from their empire, they might, perhaps, by proper management, be inclined to court the alliance and protection of England.

It has been mentioned, indeed, but with what degree of truth I do not pretend to say, that the Viceroy of Canton has lately hinted it would by no means be disagreeable to the Chinese government to see the English in possession of Macao, instead of the Portuguese, whom they do not consider as able to defend this small neck of a large island against any attack the French might be disposed to make upon it. If the fact be so, and the Court of Directors cannot but have long known it, it is presumed that they have lost not a moment in negotiating with Portugal for this possession, which is only a small peninsular promontory of no use nor benefit whatever to that kingdom, but of infinite importance to ours. The French know the value of our trade to China as well as we do, and will let slip no opportunity of embroiling us with the Chinese, either by direct or indirect means. A Monsieur Perron, more than

than twelve months ago, in the capacity of commissary of commerce, has hoisted the French flag at Canton. Even here, before the revolution, the French had greatly the advantage over us by retaining in their employ an agent, a son of the learned Monsieur de Guignes, who understood the Chinese language, whilst, on every occasion, the English were obliged to have recourse to the Hong merchants to act as interpreters, the very men who were most interested in counteracting their views. Happily, however, at this critical moment, the English East India Company possess the means of communicating directly, and in the language of the country, with the Chinese government, through a gentleman in their employ, whose extraordinary talents and engaging manners, added to his station in society, cannot fail to be productive of incalculable service to their important concerns with this nation. In a word, there is scarcely a part of the globe where Frenchmen may not be found, employing their talents, and their time, in gaining such information, or making such connections, as may be useful or agreeable to their government at home.

It cannot be denied that, from the labours of such persons, much information of foreign countries has been communicated to the world. In this respect, the French have contributed as much as, and perhaps more than, any other nation. But the Dutch and Portuguese, partly from the effect of a narrow policy, and partly, perhaps, from the weakness of intellectual powers, owing to a defective education, have rather impeded, than promoted, any information relative to their colonies. The Cape of Good Hope, however, forms an exception from
this

this remark ; for although the Dutch themselves have not furnished much intelligence respecting the southern promontory of Africa, foreigners were seldom refused permission to visit the interior parts of the settlement. French, Swedes, and English have published accounts, and some of them voluminous, of this colony ; yet, at the capture, singular as it may appear, we were entirely ignorant of all the points that were most material to be known. There was not a survey of one of the bays that could be depended on, except one of Table Bay, made by order of governor Van de Graaf ; not a single map that took in one tenth part of the colony. Neither the direction nor the distance of Graaf Reynet were known to any of the inhabitants. It was called a month's journey, or so many hundred hours, with an ox waggon ; but whether it was five hundred or a thousand miles was uncertain. That enlightened officer Sir James Craig roughly calculated it at eight hundred miles ; which is three hundred miles more than it actually is. He observed that he once had received a dispatch from thence in sixteen days, but that the journey had been done in thirteen. Before we left the Cape, the English officers and English dragoons, performed the journey in seven days, and sometimes in six ; seldom using more than two horses upon the road. It was pretended that the three country districts could raise a militia of cavalry to the amount of from fifteen to twenty thousand men ; whereas the fact is, there are little more than twenty thousand white inhabitants, men, women, and children, in the whole settlement. The country was supposed to be so productive of grain, that a Cargo of wheat was sent to England out of the quantity found in store at the capture ; the following year there

was

was a famine; and a very serious scarcity has twice happened during the short period of our possession.

The earliest authors, who have written on the subject of the Cape, are *Tacbard*, *Merklin*, and *Valentyn*, none of whom were a day's journey from the town, and, consequently, must have drawn up their relations from what they could collect from the inhabitants; which experience has found to be neither important nor correct. The same remark will nearly apply to the work of *Kolbe*, who, although professedly sent out in the character of a naturalist, has described subjects that he never saw; retailed idle stories of the peasantry that betray his great credulity and imbecility of mind; and filled his book with relations that are calculated to mislead rather than inform. The *Abbé de la Caille* had no opportunity of collecting general information, being principally employed in the arduous undertaking of measuring a base line, of thirty-eight thousand eight hundred and two feet, in order to determine the length of a degree on the meridian; and in ascertaining the situations of the principal fixed stars in the southern hemisphere. His account of the Cape is, therefore, very imperfect. *Sparrmann*, the Swede, followed next, and, by his indefatigable labours, supplied a very extensive and satisfactory account of the natural productions, especially in the animal kingdom, of those parts of the settlement over which he travelled; but he was credulous enough to repeat many of the absurd stories told of the Hottentots by his predecessor *Kolbe*, with the addition of others collected from the ignorant boors. His map is also so miserably defective, and so incorrect in every part, that he must certainly have

have constructed it in his closet from recollection, otherwise errors of two and even three hundred miles in latitude, as we shall presently see, could not have happened. *Thunberg*, another Swede, travelled a great deal within the limits of the colony, and made many valuable additions to the discoveries of *Sparrmann* in the natural history of the country; yet, although he describes objects as they presented themselves before him, and touches on a variety of subjects, his book, being made up of a collection of incomplete and unconnected paragraphs, whose juxtaposition are sometimes whimsical enough, conveys neither accurate topography nor even a general idea of the colony.

The work of our countryman *Mr.* (now lieutenant-colonel) *Patterson*, is a mere journal of occurrences, with descriptions of a few subjects in natural history, some of which, at that time, were new; but the information it contains, with regard to the extent and population of the colony, the character of the settlers and of the natives, is very slight; and he has republished the very defective map of *Sparrmann*.

There are, also, two modern publications of travels made by Dutchmen. The one is by *Hoppe*, who attended an expedition that was sent from the Cape to the northward, in search of a nation that were reported to wear linen cloathing. This expedition made very little progress on account of the want of water, and the failure of their cattle. The nation, in all probability, was the Portugueze colony on the southern part of Angola; or, perhaps, some seamen belonging to a whaler that
had

had touched at *Angra Pequena*, a small bay in latitude $26^{\circ} 36'$ south, might have been seen by the Damaras, or the Great Namaquas. The other publication is a Journal of *Van Roenen*, who, with some of the Dutch peasantry, proceeded through the Kaffer country, in search of the passengers and crew of the Grosvenor that was wrecked on the coast a little to the southward of De la Goa Bay. This journal was published by *Captain Riou* in England, with the addition of a map, constructed from the materials contained in the journal, and the information of a Dutch navigator. It is therefore hardly necessary to observe that, from such *data*, it could not be otherwise than defective in most of the essential points that constitute the value of a sea-chart. It is incorrect in the latitudes and longitudes, in the indentations of the coast, and in the size and shape of the bays. A partial map of the colony by *De la Rochette* has also been lately published, which is so far incorrect, even in the vicinity of the Cape, that the *four-and-twenty rivers* are made to flow in an opposite direction to that which is actually the case.

In speaking of charts, it may not, perhaps, be considered unimportant to observe in this place, that the whole of the coast of South Africa, between Algoa or Zwartkop's Bay, and that of *De la Goa*, stretches, in reality, much farther to the eastward, (making the continent in this part much wider,) than it is laid down in any of the sea-charts that have hitherto been published; by several degrees more easterly than some of them make it. To this circumstance may, probably, have been owing the loss of the Grosvenor Indiaman, and many other ships that have

been wrecked on the Kaffer coast; and by it may be explained the reason why ships, coming from the north-eastward, almost invariably fall in with the land, to the northward of Algoa Bay, a full degree or more before they make it by their observations or reckoning. Immediately beyond Algoa Bay the coast, in the charts, is usually made to trend to the north-east, and even to the northward of this point, whereas, in reality, it runs only east-north-east to the mouth of the Great Fish River, or Rio d'Infanté, whose latitude at this place, by repeated observations, I found to be $33^{\circ} 25'$ south; and from hence to the mouth of the Keiskamma in the Kaffer country, the direction continues pretty nearly the same; after which, and not before, the coast begins to trend more to the northward. At the mouth of this river I had also an observation for the latitude, which I found to be $33^{\circ} 12'$ south. The latitude of the true Cape point is $34^{\circ} 22'$ south; so that, in the distance of about six hundred and fifty miles, the coast inclines to the northward no more than seventy miles from the parallel of the true Cape of Good Hope, which is very far from being the case in any of the sea or land-charts I have ever seen. It may not be amiss to subjoin the errors in latitude of these eastern points, as they appear in some of the charts.

	Keiskamma.	Rio d'Infante, or Great Fish River.	Zwartkop's Bay.
Neptune Oriental Actual Observations	32° 0' 33 12	32° 50' 33 25	33° 37' 33 56
Errors - -	1 12	35	19
Captain Riou - - Actual Observations	32 30 33 12	33 25 33 25	33 46 33 56
Errors - -	42' miles		10
Sparrmann - - Actual Observations	28 12 33 12	30 0 33 25	30 57 33 56
Errors - -	5 0	3 25	2 59
Mr. Le Vaillant - Actual Observations	29 42 33 12	30 44 33 25	31 54 33 56
Errors - -	3 30	2 41	2 2

With regard to the last-mentioned gentleman, I should not have noticed his map had he not endeavoured to impress the world with an idea of the great pains that were taken in collecting the materials, and of the assistance he afterwards received, and the attention that was bestowed, in putting them together. And in order to add force, as he supposes, to the value of his observations, with a pretended zeal for the cause of humanity (pretended because he knew that every line in his chart was false), he breaks out into the following apostrophe:—"Had
" my voyage been productive of no other good than that of

“ *preventing a single shipwreck*, I should have applauded myself “ during my whole life for undertaking it !” The fact is, he has done little more, in the eastern part of his map, than copy from Sparrmann; and the whole to the northward of Saint Helena Bay is a work of fancy. Two instances will be sufficient to shew how very little he is to be trusted. He places Camdeboo, and the beginning of the Snowy Mountains, in the latitude of about 28° south, instead of $32^{\circ} 15'$ south, an error of more than 290 English miles! And he makes the Orange River *descend* from the northward, nearly parallel to the coast, which, in fact, takes its rise near the eastern coast, and *ascends* towards the north-west. Messrs. Truter and Somerville, who, two years ago, penetrated farther into the interior of Southern Africa than any Europeans had ever done before, calculated that they crossed this river in about $29^{\circ} 0'$ south, and between 23° and 24° east of Greenwich. I skirted its banks from $29^{\circ} 40'$ to $30^{\circ} 15'$ south, and between the longitudes of $25^{\circ} 45'$ and $26^{\circ} 30'$ east, which shews, as I said before, that its course is north-westerly. *Monsieur Le Vaillant* cannot be offended at my pointing out his mistakes, as he himself has observed, that “ a traveller ought to conceal nothing that may lead to “ error in the sciences.” Besides, I feel myself called upon to answer a charge, preferred against me by *Monsieur Grandpré*, the translator of my former volume, that I have attempted to invalidate the truth of *Monsieur Le Vaillant's* work, *because it was from the pen of a Frenchman*. I can very seriously assure *Monsieur Grandpré*, that he is mistaken; that I consider the work of *Monsieur Le Vaillant* as replete with valuable matter, and ingenious observations; but they are so jumbled

jumbled together with fiction and romance, that none but those who have followed his steps can pretend to separate the one from the other. It is of little importance to mankind to know what exquisite amusement *Monsieur Le Vaillant* could derive from carelling his favourite ape, or to tell the world that "*Kees* was still a virgin!" It is sometimes allowable for a traveller to be "himself the hero of each little tale:" but *Monsieur Le Vaillant* is an hero on every occasion. To magnify his courage and his perseverance, to detail the prudence of his measures, and to describe in glowing language his sufferings, were soothing to his vanity; and, as most readers know how to appreciate them, the florid descriptions of his compiler can do little harm; but when he endeavours to mislead the world on subjects that are important, and to impress false notions of the people and the country he pretends to delineate, he lays himself open to censure, and ought, in justice to the public, to be exposed.

With regard to his not having crossed the Orange River, I consider the information of his best friends, the *Slabert* family, to be decisive; "he left Zwartland in July, travelled to the Orange River, and returned in the beginning of the following December." I may surely then be allowed to pronounce this part of his chart as a work of fancy, and his *Koraquas*, *Kabobiquas*, and *Hoosuanas*, as "creatures of the brain." By the first he probably meant the *Koras*, a tribe of Hottentots dwelling on the banks of the said river, considerably higher than the place where he visited it; and of whom he might have obtained some account from the *Namaaquas*; and his *Hoosuanas* might,

might, perhaps, be intended for the *Boosbuanas*, whom the two above-mentioned gentlemen visited two years ago; instead, however, of the Pigmy Hottentots, which the first are represented to be, the latter were found to be a tall athletic race of Kaffers. These gentlemen, on comparing *Monsieur Le Vaillant's* book with the country, and the natives beyond the Orange River, were decidedly of opinion that, so far from advancing to the Tropic, he had never crossed the said river. But enough of *Monsieur Le Vaillant*. As to a work lately published under the name of Dambergheer, it would be an insult to the understanding of the public, to suppose that so gross and clumsy an imposition could for a moment pass detection.

Having thus noticed some of the defects and omissions in the works of the most esteemed authors who have written on the Cape, I shall beg leave to say a word with respect to the manner in which the chart, prefixed to the former volume of this work, was constructed.

The geographical knowledge of the colony being so very imperfect, and only two partial maps in existence that could at all be depended on; one, that of *De la Rochette* already noticed; the other, a survey on a very large scale, having all the farms marked down from Zwellendam to Algoa Bay, and from the first chain of mountains to the sea-coast, comprehending, however, only a small portion of Zwellendam, Lord Macartney, in the instructions I had the honour to receive from him, enjoined me to pay a particular attention to this important subject. I furnished myself, accordingly, with a sextant of six inches

ches radius, by Ramsden ; an artificial horizon ; a good pocket chronometer ; a pocket compass ; and a measuring chain. Having been able, in the course of a few days, to ascertain pretty nearly the usual rate of travelling with waggons drawn by oxen, I carefully noted down the time employed from one halting place to another, with the direction of the road, as pointed out by the compass.

The uniform pace of the oxen, the level surface of the great Karroo or desert, and the straightness of the road, were *data* that might alone have supplied a sketch of tolerable exactness ; but, in order to ascertain any little deviation that might have been made, either to the northward or the southward, a meridional altitude of the Sun was regularly taken every day, the constant clearness of the weather being favourable for such observations. A series of latitudes thus obtained, at intervals of about twenty miles of distance, supplied a correction by which the route might be reduced to a great degree of certainty.

The stations or resting-places of each day being verified by these means, I then took the bearings, and made interfections, of any remarkable point in the distant mountains, as long as it could be seen, for the purpose of determining its position upon the chart. The uninterrupted lines, in which the chains of mountains generally run on the south part of the continent of Africa, are particularly favourable for laying down a sketch of the country, without going through the detail of a regular survey.

Having

Having proceeded, in this manner, to mark down the route and the chains of mountains on each side of it, as far as the drofdy of Graaf Reynet, and from thence to the sea-coaft at Algoa Bay, I here joined Lieutenant Rice of the navy, an able and intelligent navigator, who had been sent in his Majesty's brig the Hope, under the instructions of Rear-Admiral Pringle, to make a survey of this bay, and of the coaft and bays from hence to the Cape. Here we made repeated observations for the latitude, but had no opportunity, during our stay, of taking the angular distance of the Sun and Moon, in order to determine the longitude. I therefore retained the longitude arising from the *data* I procured in the manner already mentioned, although it differed a little from Mr. Rice's, being about a degree more easterly. His longitude was the result of the log-reckoning; but as the currents that, at all seasons of the year, are found to set in one direction or another upon the Bank of L'Aguillas, render the log-reckoning very uncertain; and, as the result of observations, afterwards made, gave about the mean longitude between ours, it did not appear important to make any change in the chart. I was moreover induced to retain the longitude, brought out by computation of the distance and direction travelled, on perceiving that it differed not half a degree with that of Algoa Bay, as laid down in the excellent chart of the Bank L'Aguillas, published by Major Rennell.

A disagreement, however, will be found in some of the longitudes, as given in the text, and those marked in the chart, for the knowledge of which I am indebted to the writers of the Critical Review. This difference, which is not material, must

must have arisen, I suppose, from adopting, in the manuscript, the longitudes of Mr. Rice after the chart had been finished and sent to England, on the return of the Earl of Macartney; whereas, the manuscript was not transmitted for publication till twelve months afterwards. For I observe that the bays, on the south coast of the chart, are a little more easterly than they are said to be in the text; but in all the other parts, except the bays, the one exactly corresponds with the other.

That the relative situations of the several parts of the chart are correct, or pretty nearly so, I can venture to pronounce, as no pains were spared, nor precautions neglected, to make it as complete as the means I employed would admit; I have, indeed, received the flattering testimony of Brigadier (now Major-General) Vandeleur who, after travelling from the Cape of Good Hope to the Great Fish River, and from thence to Graaf Reynet, with a copy of the chart in his hand, and a good perambulator, observes, that he had not been able to discover an error amounting to ten miles in any part of the country over which he had passed. It may be right to mention, however, that I cannot be very certain as to the sea-coast between Saint Helena Bay and the Khamiesberg, as I could only obtain a sight of that coast from these two points; but the error cannot be considerable, nor of much importance, as charts of this description are not used for nautical purposes. The great object was to ascertain the extent of the settlement; the natural productions it afforded; and the relative position of its boundaries to the neighbouring tribes of natives; points, important as they were, that had hitherto not been determined.

The imperfect and partial accounts that have been given of the Cape may, in some measure, explain the jarring and contradictory opinions that have been held with regard to its importance, as connected with our Indian trade and settlements, and as a territorial acquisition. This remarkable promontory, the doubling of which formed a new æra in the annals of navigation, and on that account alone ought to be well known, has been variously represented. Whilst some have held it out as a terrestrial paradise, where nature spontaneously yielded all that was necessary, not only for the supply of the ordinary wants and conveniences, but also of the luxuries and superfluities of life; others have described it as a barren peninsular promontory, connected by a sandy isthmus to a still more barren continent.

In this instance, as in most cases, we may, perhaps, discover the truth to lie in the middle. It offers nothing very peculiar, either in the productive quality of the soil, or in its sterility. Where there is moisture the warmth of the climate promotes vegetation, without the preparation of an artificial soil by the aid of composts or manures; hence, one crop of grain in the year may be procured from the shallowest soil and even in sheer sand. But, unfortunately for the country, in the hottest months of the year, from the beginning of December to the end of March, and sometimes to the middle of April, there scarcely falls a single shower of rain. In these months, the verdure totally disappears; and the whole surface of the country presents to the eye either large tracts of white sand dotted with shrivelled heaths and other shrubs, struggling as it were to maintain

maintain the living principle, or regions covered with that brown sickly hue in which an angry poet, with more wit than justice, has dressed the surface of that part of our island to the northward of the Tweed :

“ Far as the eye could reach no tree was seen,
 “ Earth clad in ruffet, scorn'd the lively green.”

To persons arriving from a long sea voyage, and immediately meeting with most of the European, and some of the tropical, fruits, the Cape must, no doubt, appear a most delightful spot ; and such persons, making a short stay, and loaded with refreshments for the succeeding part of their voyage, are apt to extol and to exaggerate the pleasantness and the value of the country. Botanists, also, and florists, are so taken up with the beauty, and vast variety, of flowering shrubs and bulbous rooted plants, that they are apt to overlook the sandy surface out of which they grow, entirely bare of any kind of grass, and destitute of that verdant turf which is so distinguishing a feature of our happy island. Beautiful as the heaths of the Cape most unquestionably are, yet those who have been accustomed to look at them nurtured in the green-houses of England, where all or most of the numerous species, and variety of the species, are collected into one groupe, and arranged so as to convey the most striking effect, would be greatly disappointed if they expected to meet with them, in the same state of perfection, in their native soil. They would here behold whole tracts of country covered, in the same manner as our heath lands, with one or two species, shattered and jagged by the force of the

winds, shrivelled by the drought, or stubbed by the cattle. Even in the boggy grounds, where they grow to a size of which no idea can be formed from seeing the same species in England, they are neither so elegant in their habit, nor flower so freely, as in their cultivated state.

Those tracts, however, on which the shrubby plants are found, barren as they are, may be considered among the best that the settlement affords; the mountains generally exhibit masses of naked rock; and the Karroo deserts are wide expanded beds of compact clay tinged with iron, and mixed with pebbles of quartz and comminuted sand-stone. A piece of Karroo earth is not unlike, in appearance, to that of puzzoli, but entirely different in its nature, water which renders the latter hard, converting the former into a greasy marl. If these elevated plains were blessed with showers, which never happen in the winter season, nor indeed in summer, unless by occasional thunder storms, they would become the most fertile tracts of land in the whole settlement. If, by any accident, a stream of water has passed over Karroo ground, the productive quality of the soil, and the luxuriance of vegetation, are almost incredible. Experience, in such situations, has shewn, that, without the assistance of manure, or the labour of fallowing, returns of corn have been produced from sixty to eighty fold.

The scarcity of water, the reason of which I shall endeavour to explain in the following chapter, is, in fact, the grand obstacle to an extended cultivation at the Cape of Good Hope. Wherever a streamlet occurs, a house is sure to be erected, and,

were it not for such rills, scarcely an esculent vegetable would be produced in the summer season. The country, however, is capable of much improvement. Instead of the grounds being entirely open, and equally exposed to the winds and the Sun, trees and hedge-rows might be planted; tanks or reservoirs of water formed; wells dug; and the running streams increased by opening their sources, and clearing out their channels.

It is very remarkable that the same people, who are celebrated in Europe for their industry and frugality, should become, in all their colonies, the most indolent and prodigal of all other nations. In the fine climate of the Cape they engage in little or no manual labour. If a common soldier, having served out his time, should obtain his discharge, and, having been brought up to some trade or profession, should commence business, the moment he is enabled to purchase a slave, he ceases to work. In Batavia, the Dutch are still more indolent; even their slaves are there so helpless, that were it not for the Chinese the Europeans must literally starve. These industrious people exercise all manner of trades and handicraft work, cultivate the ground, supply the market with vegetables, with butcher's meat, and with poultry; raise rice, pepper, coffee, and sugar, for consumption and exportation; carry on the whole commerce of the island both internal and coastways; act as brokers, factors, and interpreters between the Dutch government and the natives; farm, and collect, the taxes and revenues, both for the former and the latter; in a word, they possess among themselves the monopoly of the whole island. Yet, useful as these people are, and indispensably necessary to the Dutch in this settlement, their numbers

bers are regarded with an eye of jealousy, and their growing wealth with that of avarice. It is calculated that not fewer than one hundred thousand Chinese reside within the territories of the Dutch East India Company in this island, on each of whom it was proposed to lay a capitation tax of five rix-dollars; which, impolitic as it may appear, is still better than to put them to death in cold blood as they did, on the most frivolous pretext, about the middle of the last century, to the amount of many thousand souls. Ten thousand Chinese, transported to the Cape of Good Hope, would prove a more valuable gold mine to the colony, than those which are supposed to exist; but which most probably exist only in the imaginations of the settlers.

It is not, however, in the light of a settlement, capable of producing articles of valuable export to the mother country, on which the real importance of the Cape of Good Hope depends. Whatever its claims may be as a territorial possession, or a commercial emporium, in the hands of other powers, England ought to consider it in no other view than as a point of *security* or of *annoyance* to her possessions in the East Indies, and to her commerce with China. On this ground I shall endeavour to state the solid advantages to be derived from the Cape, as dependent on the crown of England; and the very serious consequences that may result from its remaining in the hands of an enemy.

The first, as being the most important consideration, will be the advantages it possesses as a military station; after which, I shall

shall attempt to point out its value as a port and naval station ; and, in the last place, as a commercial emporium and territorial acquisition. These considerations will lead me to enquire into its real intrinsic value as a colony, in its present state, and to what extent it seems capable of further improvement. And, as the information on this head is most deficient, and opinions various and contradictory, it may not be unacceptable, and it certainly is not unimportant, to draw up, from authentic documents, a statistical sketch of the settlement, which will enable the reader to form a competent judgment of its value, as a country capable of supplying provisions, at a cheap rate, for the army and navy ; of producing articles of export for Europe and America, in exchange for British produce and manufactures ; and as a general depôt or central point for the southern whale fishery, which has now become so great an object of British trade and navigation.

If any of the hints thrown out in this volume should prove beneficial to my country, by suggesting such measures as may avert the evils which now threaten our trade and settlements in the East, I shall consider the labour and application of three months not to have been bestowed in vain.

C H A P. II.

Military Expedition to the Kaffer Frontier.

Occasion of this Expedition.—Affairs of Graaf Reynet.—Gordon's Bay.—Hottentot Holland's Kloof—Obstinacy of the Colonists.—Cruelty to Animals, bad Effects of.—Palmiet and Bott Rivers.—Temperature of the Air.—The Shoemaker's Hovel.—Rapid Vegetation after Rain—Plants first appearing.—Sweet Milk's Valley—wild Animals there.—Establishment of HERNHUTERS or MORAVIANS—good Effects of.—Hottentots discouraged by the Colonists—Sir James CRAIG'S Testimony of—other Missionaries.—Instance of Zeal in Mr. KICHERER—Reflection thereupon.—Instance of savage Cruelty in the Boors—a Boor taken into Custody.—Two of our DRAGOONS lost in a River.—Scarcity of Water attempted to be explained from the Nature and Antiquity of the Mountains—FACTS adduced in Proof of the Theory.—Cape Isthmus never covered with the Sea—Reasons for such Conjecture.—L'AGUILLAS Bank once Part of the Continent.—Antiquity of Africa.—Muscle Bay—Chart and Description of.—Cross ATTAQUAS Kloof into Lange Kloof.—Wine—Raisins—Brandy—all of bad Quality.—Experiment for making good Wine.—Appearance of Lange Kloof—cross the Mountains to Plettenberg's Bay—Reason why Forest Trees are more abundant there than elsewhere.—Mr. CALANDER'S Account of the KNYFNA—and surrounding Country.—Condition of a Cape Boor.—Anchor found on Table Mountain.—Plants near Plettenberg's Bay—and Animals.—Instance of Ingenuity in a deaf and dumb Man.—Appearance of the Country between Camtoos River and Algoa Bay.—Engagement between La Preneuse and the Rattlesnake.—Change of Circumstances favourable to the Boors—rebellious Boors sent to the Cape—tried by the Court of Justice there—Constitution of this Court—bad Character of undeserved. Boors plundered by the Hottentots—Justification of these People—their cruel Treatment by the Boors—Examples of in a Hottentot Woman and Child cut with Shamboos—in a Boy with Iron Rings clenched on his Legs—Punishment of the Boor—Another Instance of the sanguinary Character of the Boors—its Cause explained.—People

of

of Cape Town.—The Burgher and the Whale.—Character and Mode of Life—tenacious of Rank.—Hottentot Corps—Character of.—Condition of the Slaves.—Imprudence of the Whites.—Administration of Justice between the Whites and Blacks.—Rencontre with the Kaffer Chief Congo.—Comparison between the Persons of Boors and Kaffers.—Reflection.—Food of the Kaffers.—Boosbuanas.—City of Leetakoo.—Conjecture of the Kaffer Origin—Extent of their Country—their Dogs not subject to Canine Madness.—Small Pox not endemic in South Africa—Origin of.—High Situations favourable to the Growth of Animals.—Uncommon Instance of Bulk in a Woman—Fate of this hapless Creature.—Attack of the Kaffers upon the British Troops—a wounded Kaffer taken.—Rencontre of Boors and Hottentots at Algoa Bay.—Kaffers storm the British Camp.—Melancholy Fate of Lieutenant Chumney and sixteen Men.—Ill-judged Conduct of the Boors—Consequences.—Hatred of Kaffers and Hottentots against the Boors—Conduct of the latter at Plettenberg's Bay.—Horrid Murder committed in Lange Klooff.—Curious Articles of Instructions proposed for the Boors in their Wars with the Kaffers.—Return to the Cape.—Change of Conduct in the Colonists—reconciled to the British Government—indifferent as to the Return of their own—little Rejoicing shewn at this Event—Reasons of it—final Evacuation.

FROM the moment that the departure of the Earl of Macartney for England was made known in the distant parts of the colony, the ignorant and misguided boors, excited by that party of mischievous, and not less ignorant, persons in Cape Town, who had long shewn themselves averse to all government, seemed to think that with his Lordship had departed all authority and the means of bringing them to legal punishment. Their restless and turbulent minds, and, above all, their avaricious and iniquitous views upon the harmless Kaffers, could no longer brook restraint; and they determined, at a select meeting, as one of them observed in a letter to his friend at the Cape, "Now that the old Lord was gone away, to prove themselves true patriots."

The first act of their patriotic spirit was an attempt to take by violence, out of the hands of justice, a criminal whom the Landroft, or chief magistrate of the district, had forwarded, under the escort of a dragoon, towards the Cape. His crime, which was an act of forgery on orphan property, committed to the care of a constituted board in the Cape called the *Weefkammer*, or chamber for managing the effects of minors and orphans, had been fully proved against him before the provincial court of judicature; but being one of the patriotic party, and a very distinguished character in all the disturbances that had taken place in this district, he was considered as too valuable a subject to be taken off by a regular course of justice. Accordingly, about fourteen boors, each armed with an enormous musquet used for killing elephants and other wild beasts, were dispatched upon the Karroo, or great desert, on the meritorious enterprize of restoring the culprit to the society of which he was a member. The dragoon, however, into whose custody he had been committed, thought proper to demur, and at length told them, in a very resolute and spirited manner, that sooner than surrender him into their hands, or suffer him to be taken out of his, he should certainly blow out his brains. But the Landroft's secretary, who had also been sent in joint charge of the prisoner, no less frightened than the boors were at the determined manner of the dragoon, prevailed upon the latter, if not to relinquish the criminal, at least to convey him back to the drofsdy, and deliver him up to the Landroft; to this he reluctantly assented; the courageous boors keeping at a proper distance from the waggon.

Having,

Having, however, proceeded thus far, without displaying any extraordinary exploits of patriotism, the shame of their failure seemed to require that they should go a step farther. With the assistance of a schoolmaster, whom they found no difficulty in persuading to be of their party, they issued circular letters to their brother boors, entreating such as they knew to be well disposed to act with them, and commanding, in a menacing tone, others whose co-operation was doubtful, to assemble in arms without delay. Their first movement was to station themselves near the ford of the Sunday River, just at the entrance of the village; and to send from thence to the Landroft a threatening message, that, unless he would comply with all the demands they were about to make, they should, in the first place, seize upon his person, and either hang him before his own door, or deliver him over to some of the boors against whom he had, on a former occasion, been the instrument of obtaining a decree of outlawry, and who were now living with the Kaffers. The Landroft, by means of a few dragoons who luckily happened at this time to be stationed at the drofsdy, for the purpose of forwarding dispatches through the country, was not only enabled to hold this undisciplined rabble, though ten times the number of his forces, at defiance, but also secretly to convey to the government at the Cape speedy intelligence of the rebellious conduct of the farmers of his district.

I have already observed, in the former volume of this work, that the disorderly and riotous behaviour of the boors of Graaf Reynet, in insulting and driving away the first magistrate, and the minister of the gospel, had determined General Sir

James Craig to send a military force into the district, to compel them, by martial law if necessary, to a sense of their duty; which a just and indulgent administration of the colonial laws had failed to do:—that this force had actually marched to the feet of the first range of mountains, where a most humble and submissive address from the rebels, promising, in future, observance of good order and obedience to the laws, stopped its progress:—that Lord Macartney, thinking to conciliate by laying them under obligations, such as their former government never could have done, but which his Majesty's instructions enabled him to put in practice, not only granted a full pardon for all their manifold offences and misdemeanors, but also remitted them arrears of ground-rent, due to the treasury, to the amount of two hundred thousand rix dollars; not doubting that he should, at least, obtain from their gratitude, what their restless temper, joined to their extreme ignorance, had hitherto seemed to have rendered almost a moral impossibility—respect for his Majesty's government, and obedience to their own laws.

These gracious indulgencies, that appeared to make some impression for the moment, were however soon forgotten, and it now became obvious that nothing short of a military force could keep them in any sort of order. And as, at this time, the Cape was perfectly secure from any attack of a foreign enemy, General Dundas thought it expedient to direct that a detachment, composed of a squadron of dragoons, a few companies of infantry, and the greater part of the Hottentot corps, should march into the district under the command of brigadier
General

General Vandeleur. The rebellious boors, now collected in very considerable numbers, had stationed themselves between the drosdy and Algoa Bay, where they had formed a kind of camp, and, to a certain degree, according to the new term which their Cape friends had taught them to adopt, had *organized* their forces.

But as the courage of these people displays itself only on particular occasions, such as in acting against defenceless Hottentots, the moment they heard that troops were advancing, they thought proper to disperse, leaving, in the hands of a neutral person, a most humble petition, in which they acknowledged their error, and supplicated forgiveness. To this address the general very properly returned a verbal answer, stating, that he could hold no communication with rebels, until they had voluntarily surrendered themselves to his discretion, and laid their arms at his feet; that, for this purpose, he should name a certain place and day; and that all such as should not appear at the time and place appointed, would be considered in the light of rebels and traitors to his Majesty's government, and would be pursued accordingly.

On the day fixed, the majority of the rebels obeyed the summons; and never surely was exhibited such a motley group of armed cavalry so whimsically equipped. The greater part were such uncouth beings, so very

“ ———Huge of bulk,
“ Wallowing unwieldy, enormous in their gait,”

that

that it was morally impossible for the by-standers to observe the gravity of countenance which the occasion required; and the awkward manner in which they dismounted, with the difficulty that some of them experienced on account of the protuberance of their bellies, in grounding their arms, were sufficient to throw the most serious off their guard. The General selected nine of the ringleaders, and sent them under an escort on board his Majesty's ship the Rattlesnake, then at anchor in Algoa Bay; on the rest he levied a certain fine towards defraying the expences of the expedition, which their absurd and rebellious conduct had occasioned.

Before this termination of disturbances, which, if suffered to extend to the other districts of the colony, might have been attended with more serious consequences, General Dundas accepted my offer to proceed through the district of Zwellendam, for the purpose of cutting off any communication with Graaf Reynet, and particularly with a view of preventing any supplies of gunpowder from reaching the rebels; at the same time to send up to the Cape certain persons, who had shewn themselves active in promoting discontent in Zwellendam, and who were known to be disaffected, not only to the British government, but to every other that laid them under the restraint of laws. This journey, the extent of which was intended to be confined to the borders of the Camtoos river, dividing the two districts of Graaf Reynet and Zwellendam, was prolonged, by unforeseen circumstances, into the country inhabited by the Kaffers: and it thus afforded the principal part of the remarks and observations which are contained in the present chapter.

On

On the 8th of March 1799 I joined Lieutenant (now Captain) Smyth, of the corps of engineers and Aid-du-Camp of General Dundas, with a serjeant's party of dragoons at the foot of Hottentot Holland's Kloof, which is the only pass leading to the eastern parts of the colony, over the high chain of mountains that terminates the Cape isthmus; which chain, at a few miles to the southward of the Kloof, forms the eastern boundary of the extensive bay *Falfe*. In the north-east corner of this arm of the sea is a cove called Gordon's Bay, a place that has not hitherto obtained that attention, which the importance of its situation would seem to point out. The anchorage is said to be safe, the landing easy on a smooth sandy beach; and its proximity to the above mentioned pass over the mountains would insure an enemy the possession of it, in its present defenceless state, long before means could be taken for preventing it from the Cape, or even from Simon's Town on the opposite side of the bay. A few men with a couple of light guns, long field-pieces or howitzers, stationed in this Kloof, would require a whole regiment to drive them out; and, so long as they could hold this important pass, all supplies coming through it from the nearer parts of the district of Zwellendam would be completely cut off from Cape Town; nor would they find the least difficulty in subsisting themselves from the country in their rear. To make a diversion, in meditating an attack upon the Cape, by sending a frigate to land a company in Gordon's Bay, one at Blauwberg opposite Roben island, and another with two or three companies into Saldanha Bay, would greatly embarrass the garrison, as it would be under the necessity of detaching from the works a very superior force in order to make any impression. A post

at Blauwberg would command all the great roads leading to Cape Town from the north and north-east; Saldanha Bay is the key to Zwartland, the principal granary of the colony; and the second Kloof, that of Rhode Sand, might speedily be taken possession of from thence; nothing would then remain for the garrison but to dispute those passes, or to starve within their lines.

To understand exactly what is meant by a kloof, the reader may imagine a continued chain of mountains to be cleft, or torn asunder, so that the corresponding parts of the sides of the chasm, some projecting others retiring, if closed again, would fit to each other; and the passage is more or less steep inversely as the magnitude of the rent. In the Dutch government the one in question was so neglected as scarcely to be passable by waggons; but since the colony became English it has undergone a thorough repair. To carry into effect this useful work, a small contribution was levied on those who derived the greatest advantage from the improvement; but such is the uncouth temper of the people, and so adverse to every thing that tends to public benefit, that, rather than pay the trifling sum of a shilling, many of those who came from the distant parts preferred to avoid this kloof by making a circuit of two days journey, and passing that of *Rhode Sand* which is still worse.

And although the repair has been the means of saving the life of many a poor ox, yet, on our return, we observed two carcases of these animals that had recently been left to expire among the rocks. If, after cutting and flashing these poor creatures with their enormous whips, the phlegm of a Dutch boor

boor so far gets the better of his passion, on seeing that his beast is completely exhausted, that instead of drawing his knife, or kindling a fire under its belly, he unyokes it, the chances are still ten to one the animal never rises more. The moment it is left alone a flock of the Egyptian vultures, and the still more voracious vulturine crows, are sure to tear it in pieces, making it undergo a most cruel and protracted death. I saw an instance of this kind that was really shocking to the feelings of humanity. On the only great and public road, leading from Cape Town towards Rondebosch, a road that at least a thousand people, of one description or another, pass in the course of the day, I observed an ox lying, in the midst of the way and within two miles of the town, with part of the bowels torn out of the belly. The third day after this I passed the same way, and the ox was still alive with its head erect, and the bowels lying on the ground beside it; and thus it might have lain to linger away with pain and hunger, perhaps as many days more, had I not requested the chief officer of the police to send a person and dispatch it. The habitude which the people of this colony necessarily acquire it witnessing instances of cruelty on human as well as brute creatures, cannot fail to produce a tendency to hardness of heart, and to stifle feelings of tenderness and benevolence. In fact the rigour of justice is rarely softened with the balm of mercy. All criminals, condemned to suffer the punishment of death, are afterwards hung in chains close to the public road, to be eaten by the crows and vultures. And, under the old government, when a slave had been guilty of murdering a colonist, implacable rancour, not satisfied with putting in practice every species of torture that malignant and diabolical ingenuity could invent, as

long as any signs of life remained in the criminal, sentenced him to be torn limb from limb, and the several parts to be hung upon posts erected for the purpose in the most public parts of the high road. Many of such posts still remain, rather as deplorable memorials of what vindictive malice could invent, than as examples for preventing similar crimes.

If in any instance they relax from cruelty to the brute creation, it is in the mode of slaughtering cattle, which they learned from the Hottentots, and which I understand has lately been put in practice in England under the name of *laying*. This is done by thrusting a pointed instrument into the commencement of the spinal marrow just behind the horns. The animal drops without a groan, and dies almost without a struggle; after this the throat is cut to let out the blood, and it is pretended that the effect on the flesh is, like that of crimping fish, to make it close and firm.

The first river we had occasion to cross, beyond the mountains, is called by the Dutch the Palmiet, the name of a strong boggy plant that grows abundantly in this and some other rivers of the colony. The name arises from its resemblance to some of the palm tribe, but, if I mistake not, it is a species of *Acorus*. For eight months in the year it scarcely contains a drop of water, but is mostly impassable the other four; which is also the case with the Bott river about ten miles beyond the Palmiet. Both of these periodical streams are unsafe in the winter season, and fatal accidents have happened to persons attempting to cross them when full. Among these may be men-

tioned that of Mr. Patrick, assistant-surgeon to the 8th Light Dragoons, whose horse being unable to stem the stream, was carried down the river, and the rider perished.

The country affords tolerable good pasturage, and will yield one moderate crop of grain in the season without manure. It is thinly inhabited, consisting principally of grazing farms which belong to persons who hold estates upon the Cape side of the mountains. The first house that occurred in our route was near ten miles beyond the kloof, which, by losing our way in the dark across the wide heath, we did not reach before midnight.

The 9th of March was the hottest and most oppressive day I ever experienced in Southern Africa. I had no thermometer with me, but I afterwards learnt that, during the whole day nearly, the temperature in Cape Town was 104° of Fahrenheit's Scale. In the whole of this day's march, of about twenty miles, we were not able to procure a drop of water for the horses, except once just after starting, nor even any shade from the scorching rays of the sun; for trees of any description in this part of the country are as rare as Doctor Johnson found them to be, of as great an age as himself, in Scotland. The horse on which I was mounted was so much overcome by the heat, that it literally dropped down under me, and was unable to carry me any farther.

Wearied and exhausted we reached, at length, the hovel of a shoemaker, near which we found a few puddles of muddy
G 2 water,

water, stagnating in the clayey bed of a rivulet, but it was so much impregnated with earth and salts that the horses, thirsty as they were, would scarcely touch it. At this place we contrived to pass the night, but we experienced a most uncomfortable lodging. Unluckily for us it happened to be Sunday, and, the shoemaker being known to all his neighbours, living within the circuit of twenty miles, and particularly to his *nearest* neighbours of three or four miles, to be a jolly good fellow, who always kept a glass of wine, and a strong *sopie* to regale his friends, the house was crowded with people. There were but two apartments, one of which was filled with the company; the other we occupied. This, it seemed, was made to answer the four-fold purpose of bed-chamber, work-shop, cellar, and storehouse. The heat of the weather, the closeness of the room, which had only one small aperture to admit the light, added to the mingled odours arising from stinking leather, bunches of onions, butchers' meat swarming with flies, fumes of tobacco, dregs of wine and gin and Cape brandy, standing in pools on the clayed floor; in a word, such "a congregation of foul and pestilential vapours," were sufficient to nauseate stomachs much less squeamish than ours. Nor was the sense of feeling less annoyed by an innumerable quantity of bugs, fleas, and musquitoes. Perhaps, indeed, it might be considered as an advantage in having two or three senses tormented at once; as the pain affecting one might, in a certain degree, be deadened by the acuteness of feeling in another. How often, in the course of this night, did I bless my good fortune, in having used my waggon for my lodging house in all my former long journies through this miserable country; inhabited

bited by a still more miserable race of mortals! How many sleepless nights, and nauseous scenes, have I not avoided by adopting such a plan!

To add to our present uncomfortable situation, the guests were perpetually interrupting us in their application to the wine cask, or the brandy bottle. Our patience, at length, being quite exhausted, we resolved to barricade the door. This, however, failed of success. The votaries of Bacchus were not so easily to be disappointed of their weekly libations. After several fruitless attempts to force the door, they thought of trying the window; but this small pigeon-hole, being much too narrow in its dimensions to admit the huge carcase of an African boor, obliged them to have recourse to the expedient of sending in a thin Hottentot girl; but, on account of the peculiar shape of the women of this nation, the lower part of the body refused to follow where the head had passed, and she stuck fast in the window. This produced a prodigious burst of boisterous mirth; the girl, however, after a great deal of squeezing and pushing, effected the purpose, and procured for the tumultuous boors a supply of their favourite liquors. To prevent a return we barred in the window, and having thus completely made ourselves masters of the cellar, the boors, after several volleys of imprecations, accompanied with thundering assaults, sometimes at the door, and then at the window, thought fit about midnight to leave the house, in search of another jovial neighbour at the distance, perhaps, of eight or ten miles. This scene would have afforded an excellent subject for the pencil of
Ostade,

Oftade, who, judging from his pictures, must have been witness to many of the same kind.

The noise of the Bacchanalians was accompanied by a storm of thunder; and the rain, that fell in the course of the night, had rendered the air the next morning cool and refreshing. It was the first shower that had fallen in this part of the country for near four months, and the effects of it on the ground were very sensibly perceived in the course of four days.

At this season of the year, when the earth is thoroughly heated, the rapidity with which vegetation bursts forth, after rain, is almost incredible. Among the earliest of such plants, as by the brilliancy of their flowers captivate the sight, are the various species of the *oxalis*, the yellow star-flower, and the three-coloured *Lachenalia*, with two or three other species of the same genus. But one of the most singular among the small plants, that blossom in the beginning of winter, is the *septas*, whose name is derived from the regular septenary division of all the different parts of fructification, and is remarkable for being the only plant, yet discovered, in the seventh class and seventh order of the Linnæan System.

The refreshing coolness, occasioned by the rain, permitted us to extend our march to the river *Zonder End*, or Endless River, near the banks of which the Dutch East India Company had reserved, for its own use, an extensive tract of land called the *Sweet Milk's Valley*. It is bounded on the north side by a
range

range of hills that were once well covered with forest trees, but these have long been cut down, few of any magnitude now remaining, except in the deep chasms where they are scarcely accessible. The country, on each side of the river, is extremely pleasant, and tolerably well inhabited, in comparison at least with other parts; the dwellings being seldom removed from one another beyond the regulated distance of three miles. A few of the small kind of antelopes still remain, as *reebocks*, *springbocks*, *griesbocks*, and *duykers*, and plenty of hares and partridges; but the large *bontebucks* are almost totally destroyed, or driven to some other part of the settlement. I observed, in the former volume, that in the neighbourhood of this river was once to be found the *Leucophaea* or blue antelope, but that, for many years past, it had been lost to the colony. I understood, however, that, a few months before we evacuated the Cape, a small herd of this beautiful animal had again made its appearance among the wooded hills behind Sweet Milk Valley, where, instead of suffering them to remain unmolested, at least for some time, the farmers were lying in wait for their destruction.

Close to this river is the establishment of the *Hernhüters* or *Moravian* missionaries, who, by the protection afforded them under the British government, and its liberality, through General Dundas, in enabling them to enlarge their territory, had succeeded so far, in the object of their mission, as to bring together into one society, not fewer, at the time of the evacuation of the colony, than six hundred poor *Hottentots*; whom they not only instructed in the principles of the Christian religion, but by example, as well as precept, taught to feel, that their

their value in society was in proportion to the benefits they were able to render to that society, by their labour and moral conduct.

These men have clearly shewn to the world, by the effects of this institution, that there is not among savages, in general, that invincible aversion to labour which some have been inclined to suppose. Those, indeed, whose daily subsistence depends on the chance, may contract a disposition to rambling and to a frequent change of place, but the precarious supply of food obtained by hunting is not the reward of sluggish indolence, but of toil, of lassitude, and anxiety. The fewer the wants that man has to gratify, the less inclination will he feel to exert his corporeal powers. In a mere savage state, if these wants could be supplied without any effort, the predominant pleasures of life would consist in eating and sleeping. The propensity to inaction can only be overcome by giving the labourer an interest in the product of his labour; by making him feel the weight and value of property. The colonists of the Cape pursued no such plan with regard to their conduct towards the Hottentots. Having first held out the irresistible charm that spirituous liquors and tobacco are found to possess among all people in a rude state of society, they took the advantage of exchanging those pernicious poisons for the only means the natives enjoyed of subsisting themselves and their families; and, however extraordinary it may appear, instead of instructing and encouraging a race of men, of willing and intelligent minds, to renew the means of subsistence, of which they had deprived them, they imported, at a vast expence, a number of Malay slaves, not
more

more expert, and much less to be depended on, than the Hottentots; to whom, indeed, they even preferred the stupid negroes of Mosambique and Madagascar.

Whether it happened from real ignorance of the character of these natives, or from strong prejudices imbibed against them, or from an adherence to a narrow policy, I cannot pretend to determine; but, from the enquiries I have made, it does not appear they have at any period experienced a treatment equally favourable to that of the meanest slaves. Not many years ago it was thought expedient, for some purpose or other, to assemble a considerable number in or near the town, but the business for which they were collected, dwindling into a job for the emolument of the persons who had the management of it; and as the Hottentots were neither paid, clothed, nor fed, they exhibited a scene of filth, misery, and wretchedness; they became a nuisance to the town, and were in consequence disbanded.

The colonists were ready to predict a similar fate to the attempt of Sir James Craig, of forming them into a corps; but their predictions ended in their disappointment. Never," observes Sir James, "were people more contented or more grateful for the treatment they now receive. We have upwards of three hundred who have been with us nine months. It is, therefore, with the opportunity of knowing them well, that I venture to pronounce them an intelligent race of men. All who bear arms exercise well, and understand immediately, and perfectly, whatever they are taught to perform. Many

“ of them speak English tolerably well. We were told that
 “ so great was their propensity to drunkenness, we should never
 “ be able to reduce them to order or discipline, and that the
 “ habit of roving was so rooted in their disposition, we must
 “ expect the whole corps would desert, the moment they had
 “ received their clothing. With respect to the first, I do not
 “ find they are more given to the vice of drinking than
 “ our own people; and, as to their pretended propensity to
 “ roving, that charge is fully confuted by the circumstance of
 “ only one man having left us since I first adopted the measure
 “ of assembling them, and he was urged to this step from hav-
 “ ing accidentally lost his firelock.”—“ Of all the qualities,” he
 further observes, “ that can be ascribed to a Hottentot, it will
 “ little be expected I should expatiate upon their cleanliness; and
 “ yet it is certain that, at this moment, our Hottentot parade
 “ would not suffer in a comparison with that of some of our re-
 “ gular regiments. Their clothing may, perhaps, have suf-
 “ fered more than it ought to have done, in the time since it
 “ was issued to them, from their ignorance of the means of
 “ preserving it; but those articles, which are capable of being
 “ kept clean by washing, together with their arms and accou-
 “ trements, which they have been taught to keep bright, are
 “ always in good order. They are now, likewise, cleanly in
 “ their persons; the practice of smearing themselves with
 “ grease being entirely left off. I have frequently observed
 “ them washing themselves in a rivulet, where they could have
 “ in view no other object but cleanliness.” It will be no less
 satisfactory to the reader, than it is gratifying to myself, in
 thus having an opportunity of adding, in support of my former
 I descrip-

description of the moral character of this people, the opinion of such high and respectable authority.

None felt more sincere regret and uneasiness at that article in the treaty of peace, which ceded the Cape to its former owners, than these worthy missionaries. From the malignant spirit of the boors, they had every thing to apprehend. The friends of humanity, however, will rejoice to learn, that this asylum for an innocent and oppressed race of men continues to receive the countenance and protection of the present government; the two leading members of which appear to be actuated by views and sentiments very different from those of the majority of the people, over which they are appointed to rule. It is obvious, indeed, to every man of common understanding, that an institution so encouraged cannot fail to prove of infinite advantage to a colony where useful labour is so much wanted. If any example were capable of rousing the sluggish settlers, that of six hundred people being subsisted on the same space of ground, which every individual family among them occupies, for they had nothing more till very lately than a common loan farm of three miles in diameter, would be sufficient to stimulate them to habits of industry.

Other missionaries, but of different societies, have lately proceeded to very distant parts of the colony, and some even much beyond it, both among the Kaffers to the eastward, and the Bosjesman Hottentots to the northward. The latter they represent as a docile and tractable people, of innocent manners, and grateful to their benefactors beyond expression; but the

Kaffers, they say, are a volatile race, extremely good-humoured, but turn into ridicule all their attempts to convert them to Christianity. Mr. Kicherer, a regular bred minister of the reformed church, and a gentleman of mild and persuasive manners, proceeded, alone and totally unprotected, into the midst of the Bosjesman hordes on the skirts of the Orange River. He considered, that a solitary being without arms, or any visible means of doing injury to his fellow mortals, would be received without suspicion, and might enter into the society of the most savage hordes without danger. The event proved his conjectures to be right. He lived in the midst of a tribe, the most needy and wretched that he could discover, for many years; shared with them every inconvenience; and suffered a total privation of all the comforts, and very frequently even of the necessaries, of life; with a weak constitution, he braved the vicissitudes of an unsteady climate in scanty clothing, in temporary huts and hovels that were neither proof against wind nor water, and oftimes in the open air; on deserts wild and naked as those of Arabia; he learned their language; instructed them in the benevolent doctrines of Christianity; and endeavoured with enthusiastic zeal, to assuage their miserable lot in this life, by assuring them that there was "Another and a better world:" in a word, he became so much attached to this most indigent and deplorable race of human beings, who possess nothing they can call their own, but live from day to day on the precarious spoils of the chase, and commonly on the spontaneous products of a barren soil, that it was not without difficulty, and great distress to his feelings, he mustered resolution to tear himself from his little flock: lingering under a
disease

disease that threatened to terminate in a consumption, he could not be prevailed upon to desert them, when urged by his friends to accept of a vacant living of one of the colonial churches, which was offered to him by the government.

When one reflects for a moment on the toils and hardships, the dangers and the difficulties, that these religious enthusiasts voluntarily undergo, without any prospect of reward, or even reputation, in this world, it is impossible to withhold admiration at a conduct so seemingly disinterested, and whose motives appear to be under an influence so different from that by which most human actions are governed. Whatever degree of merit may be due to this class of missionaries, the practical philosopher will, unquestionably, give the preference to the plan of the Moravians, which unites with precepts of religion and morality a spirit of useful labour; and whose grand aim is to make their disciples comfortable in this world, as a token or earnest of that which is to come. But after all the toil and anxiety which the worthy character above mentioned cheerfully underwent in the cause of suffering humanity, what must his feelings be, if he still be living, and happens to peruse the following letter, to find that his only reward is that of being considered by the vile people of the Cape as the abettor of murder, and that he has been with others the innocent cause of fifteen of his inoffensive disciples being inhumanly butchered in cold blood by those remorseless colonists who dare to call themselves by the sacred name of Christians. This letter, which just reached me as the present work was going to the press, will serve to shew, among other facts I shall have occasion to state, of what de-
liberate

liberate and blood-thirsty ruffians the peasantry of the Cape are composed.

Extract of a letter written from the Sneeuwberg, the 29th day of January 1803, signed O. A. S. Meyer, and addressed to Cornelis de Kok, in Cape Town.

“ I am going to inform you of something that happened on
 “ the 6th of December 1802. About the evening three Bof-
 “ jsmans came to the house of the Burger Cornelis Jansen,
 “ having with them three pack-oxen (*draag-offen*); the said
 “ Jansen immediately reported it to the commandant (*Veld-*
 “ *Cornet*), who instantly sent an armed party (*commando*) to his
 “ house. On the following day, being the 7th, there came
 “ twelve more to them, having three guns and three pack-oxen;
 “ all the rest were well armed with bows, arrows, and hassagays.
 “ The commandant Berger went himself to Jansen’s in the
 “ morning to ask the reason of their coming there, when he
 “ discovered that eight of them were *Koranas* and seven Bof-
 “ jsmans. Being asked by the party what they came to do,
 “ they said that they were come to beg a little *dacha* (*bemp*) and
 “ tobacco. The commandant had the same answer, but *he*
 “ *understood the way to question them so closely, that he brought*
 “ *them to open confession* (by horrid tortures no doubt), that they
 “ came to examine how their farms (*plaatzen*) were to be at-
 “ tacked; and also to see if there was water enough to come
 “ with a *great troop*. Being asked who had sent them, they
 “ answered *Trüter* and the English missionary *Kicherer*, in or-
 “ der to spy the places, and return to the *kraal* where *Kicherer*
 “ and

“ and *Trüter* would wait their return, to furnish them with
 “ musquets, powder, and ball. On being asked how they were
 “ to execute it? they answered, by attacking the farm-houses
 “ by two and two at the same time, so that they could not
 “ assist one another. ALL THE FIFTEEN WE HAVE SHOT
 “ DEAD (*doodgeschooten*), HAVING FIRST EXTORTED THIS
 “ CONFESSION FROM THEM. The hat which *Trüter* gave to
 “ the captain we have got; it is a black one with a silver band,
 “ and a cane with a brass head, on which is engraved “ Captain
 “ Kauwinnoub.” Mark now with what murderous intentions
 “ is this *Trüter* inspired against us! To have us all massacred
 “ in our houses!

“ You may with great safety shew this to Andries Muller.

“ (Signed) O. A. S. MEYER.”

I observed in the preliminary chapter of this volume, that
 Messrs. Trüter and Somerville had penetrated farther into
 the interior of South Africa than any former Europeans. These
 gentlemen were sent in an official capacity, with a view of pro-
 curing a supply of draught oxen, on a serious alarm being en-
 tertained, and representations made to government, that the
 operations of agriculture must be suspended, on account of the
 numbers of cattle that had perished through the drought of the
 year 1800, unless a fresh supply could be obtained from some of
 the bordering tribes of the original inhabitants. Though these re-
 presentations were meant, in all probability, to be the foundation
 of a scheme similar to many of the same kind which were
 practised under the Dutch government, with no other view
 than

than that of enriching the individuals concerned, by the plunder of cattle belonging to the harmless natives, the British government thought it expedient, in order to demonstrate its readiness to attend to the interests of the colonists, to take into consideration the state of the case, being aware at the same time of the danger of entrusting any commission of such a nature to the Dutch peasantry. The disturbances raised by the boors on the borders of the Kaffer country discouraged any attempt to open a traffic with this nation, but accounts of an imperfect nature were entertained, that a nation called the *Briequas*, or more properly, as it seems, the *Bosbuanas*, about sixteen days' journey to the northward of the Orange River, were likely to furnish the necessary supply; and as this journey, over an unbeaten tract, could not fail to be productive of novelty, and might furnish new objects of curiosity, Mr. Trüter, member of the Court of Justice, and Mr. Somerville, the garrison surgeon, were immediately pointed out as two gentlemen possessing in every respect the proper qualifications for undertaking such an expedition. Mr. Trüter had been a servant of the Dutch East India Company for more than thirty years, during which period he bore an irreproachable character; and the English government is not less indebted to the zeal and fidelity with which he continued, more from principle than expectation of emolument which he did not want, to perform the laborious duties of a member of the Court of Justice, during the seven years it held possession of the Cape. To an open and generous disposition he adds the most scrupulous exactness in all transactions between man and man. His temper is cheerful, his heart benevolent, and the turn of his mind strongly inclined to acquire knowledge.

ledge. Of Mr. Somerville it is sufficient to say he is a Briton, a character far beyond the reach of any calumny that an African Dutchman can invent; and as the public, it is to be hoped, will be gratified with his account of the expedition, I leave it to him to defend himself and companions against a charge which nothing but inherent falsehood and diabolical malevolence, and their own insatiable thirst after human blood, could have conceived. It was on this expedition these two gentlemen met with Mr. Kicherer, a regular bred minister of the reformed church of the United Provinces, who, on their return, embarked for Holland; Mr. Somerville shortly afterwards for England, and Mr. Trüter remained behind, where he became the object of their brutal malice, in revenge, I suppose, for having found it expedient on their journey to discharge and turn away the eight or ten boors that accompanied them, for their idle, disorderly, and thievish conduct. For the atrocious murder of the poor wretches whom famine, in all probability, had driven to ask relief of the pitiless spoilers of their native land, it were greatly to be wished that divine wrath would manifest itself among the brutal perpetrators by some signal calamity, since neither human laws nor human feelings can restrain them. If this account should have reached the knowledge of the Commander in Chief of the settlement, which no doubt it must have done, I have to hope, from his humane and truly benevolent disposition, he will have put in execution the benignant sentiments I have heard him utter in favour of the unprotected Hottentots. “If the life of a single child be taken away, and
 “the murderer not brought to legal punishment, I shall feel
 VOL. II. I “myself

“ myself unfit for my situation and unworthy the character of
“ a human being.”

The first day's march beyond the Sweet Milk's Valley was across a tame flat country, the road winding along the right bank of the Endless River; a name whose fallacy was detected by crossing it, on the next day's journey, just where it forms a confluence with, and of course ends in, the Broad River. The latter, in the winter months, is a vast volume of water sufficient to float a ship of the line, but, in summer, not more than ankle deep. The distance from this river to Zwellendam, the seat of the Landroft and capital of the district so called, is only about nine miles, over a country that is capable of an extensive cultivation, but which is suffered to remain almost entirely an unproductive desert.

As we knew this to be the only village that would occur in the course of our long journey, we thought it prudent to halt a day, in order to refresh the horses, have their shoes removed or renewed, and the saddles repaired; after which we continued our march, for three easy days, to a tolerable good farm-house called the *Hagel Kraal*, situated at the foot of the *Attaquas Kloof*. The country we had passed was little calculated to excite any degree of interest; the dwellings, as usual, were thinly scattered; the land under no regular system of tillage, exhibiting a barren waste, without a single tree, or even a shrub, that by its size or beauty would arrest the attention of the traveller; yet the soil of the greater part of the country appeared to be superior
to

to most of the corn-lands in the vicinity of the Cape. Here too a scarcity is observable of the most ordinary game of the country, such as small antelopes, hares, partridges, and the several species of bustards.

From this place it was our intention to cross the first chain of mountains which runs parallel, or nearly so, with the sea-coast. Previous, however, to this undertaking, it was found necessary, in conformity to the instructions I had received, to take into custody, and to send up to the Cape, a certain boor who was known to have held communication with the rebels of Graaff Reynet; and strongly suspected of having assisted them with gunpowder. By escorting this person to the Landroft of the district, two fine young men of the 8th Light Dragoons unfortunately lost their lives. On their return towards the droesdy a violent thunder-storm arose, during which the rain descended in such torrents as to fill, to the brim, a small rivulet that we had passed the day before without observing a single drop of water in its channel. The Hottentot, who led the foremost pair of oxen in the team, finding himself unable to withstand the rapidity of the current, let go the rope and effected his escape as well as he could. The oxen, being thus left without a guide, turned their heads in the direction of the stream. The waggon was upset; two of the young men, who unfortunately could not swim, were seen no more; and Captain Smyth, with the rest, had a very narrow escape.

Accidents, of a similar kind, are not unfrequent in the colony. The beds of all the rivers are sunk, in a remarkable manner, to a

very great depth below the general surface of the country; so that whenever the heavy rains descend, the waters subside into these deep channels, which, on account of their narrowness, almost instantaneously become filled to the very brink. The impetuosity with which such torrents rush towards the sea is irresistible.

Whether the deep excavations, that form the beds of these rivers, may be satisfactorily explained by supposing the texture of the adjacent materials to have been of a loose and incoherent nature; or, whether a greater antiquity than to many parts of the globe may not be assigned to the continent of South Africa, on the whole surface of which there appears to be a remarkable similarity, is a question on the merits of which one would hesitate to give a prompt decision. But, on comparing the great quantity of rain that annually falls at the Cape, a quantity far exceeding that in most parts of Europe, with the general scarcity of springs, the invention is naturally exercised in endeavouring to account for a phenomenon so unusual. The following observations may perhaps assist in explaining it.

All the continued chains of mountains in Southern Africa are composed of sandstone resting upon a base of granite. This granite base is sometimes elevated considerably above the general surface of the country, and sometimes its upper part is sunk as far beneath it. In situations where the former happens to be the case, numerous springs are sure to be found, as in the instance of Table Mountain, where, on every side, copious streams of pure limpid water, filtered through the immense
mass

masses of superincumbent sandstone, glide over the impenetrable surface of granite, furnishing an ample supply to the whole town, the gardens, and the adjacent farms. But in all those places where the sandstone continues to descend below the surface, and the upper part of the granite base is sunk beneath the general level of the country, the springs that make their appearance are few and scanty.

The reasoning that suggests itself on these facts will lead to the following conclusion:—that the cisterns or cavities in the sandstone mountains, being corroded and fretted away, in the lapse of ages, to a greater depth than the openings or conduits which might, perhaps, at one time have given their waters vent, the springs can no longer find their way upon the surface, but, oozing imperceptibly between the granite and the sandstone, below the general level of the country, glide in subterraneous streams to the sea.

I am the more inclined to this opinion from the experience of several facts. When Admiral Sir Roger Curtis directed a space of ground, between the Admiralty-house and the shore of Table Bay, to be enclosed as a naval yard, the workmen met with great impediment from the copious springs of pure fresh water that rushed out of the holes, which they found necessary to sink in the sand, for receiving the upright posts. It is a well known fact, that on almost every part of the isthmus that connects the mountainous peninsula of the Cape to the continent, fresh water may be procured at the depth of ten or twelve feet below the sandy surface. Even in the side of the Tyger Hills,

Hills, at an elevation of twenty feet, at least, above the general surface of the isthmus, when the workmen were driving a level in search of coal, a copious stream of water was collected within it, in the month of February, which is the very driest season of the year. And on boring, for the same purpose, on Wynberg, they came to a rill of water at the depth of twenty feet below the surface.

I have already noticed, in my journey to the Namaaqua country, that clear subterraneous streams were every where to be found, in that district, under the sandy beds of the rivers. Water in abundance has always been found by digging wells in Cape Town. Indeed it would be an absurdity to suppose that, in a country where mountains abound, and those mountains for more than two-thirds of the year hid in dense clouds, there could be any scarcity of water. Peculiar circumstances, relating to situation or surface, may conceal that water, but it will always be discovered at or near the sea-coast.

When the late Admiral Sir Hugh Christian ordered a well to be sunk at Saldanha Bay, by directing his attention rather to the convenience of conveying the water to the shipping, than to the certainty of obtaining it, he was led into an error in fixing upon the spot for the experiment, which was so high above the level of the bay, and where the ground was one solid mass of compact granite, that, after boring and blowing up with gunpowder, for several months with little or no prospect of success, the operation was obliged to be abandoned. On the opposite side of the bay, where the shore is little elevated above
the

the high water mark, several springs have spontaneously burst out of the earth, but for want of being properly opened, so that the water may run off freely, they are suffered to stagnate, and become, as might be expected from the soil and climate, a little brackish. All circumstances here are fully as favourable as at Madras, where the purest and best water is found close to the sea shore.

These considerations are so obvious, that I should have thought it unnecessary to have dwelt a moment upon the subject, were I not persuaded that a very general opinion prevailed with regard to the difficulty, if not the impossibility, of supplying the several bays of the colony with fresh water. I shall only suggest, as another conclusion that may be drawn from what has been said, that the great depth of the commencement of the granite base below the surface may, perhaps, better account for the most considerable rivers of Northern Africa losing themselves in the sand, before they reach the sea, than by supposing the interior parts of this continent to be lower than the level of the ocean; a conjecture that has been held, but which strongly militates against the general order observed throughout the universe.

I have already expressed my doubts with regard to the Cape peninsula having originally been separated from the continent of Africa, according to the general opinion of writers, who, drawing their conclusions from a supposed retreat of the sea to prevail universally, have not given themselves the trouble to examine any further grounds for such a conjecture. The more I have

have attended to the isthmus that now unites them, the more I am persuaded that, instead of its having, in latter ages, been covered with the sea, the time is yet to come when that event will take place. I have already observed, that the surface is from twenty to thirty feet above the level of high water mark; that the sand upon it, except where it is drifted into ridges, is seldom three feet deep, and it rests upon sandstone or hard gravel. I can now add, that ridges of blue schistus and granite rocks appear on various parts of the surface so elevated. Admitting that the sandstone and the gravel, which is scarcely possible, were the fragments of the mountains by which this plain is enclosed on two sides, yet neither the schistus nor the granite could have been adventitious; these two materials must have been primeval, and they abound on the most elevated as well as on the lower parts of the isthmus; in situations that cannot be less than one hundred feet above the level of the sea. But if the sea has retreated one hundred feet, in its perpendicular height, the whole continent of Africa must have been an island at the time that the Cape promontory was an island. What changes may have taken place with regard to the canals and the inland parts of the isthmus of Suez in the course of two or three thousand years it is not necessary to inquire, but the isthmus of Suez, so long ago, was a flat sandy isthmus, not much higher, nor lower, in all probability, than at the present day.

I shall now offer my reasons for supposing the sea to be gaining upon the land in Southern Africa. The plain that skirts the Lion's Rump, and is washed by Table Bay and the sea, usually

called the *Green Point*, is lower, much lower, than the isthmus, and must consequently, at the same time, have also been covered with the sea. Now there is not one single appearance to denote that such has ever been the case. The Lion's Hill declines in a gentle and uninterrupted line into the plain, an appearance which would not have taken place had it ever been beaten by the billows of the ocean. This is further obvious by attending to the side of the plain next to the water, where (the loose materials being swept away by the violence of the surge) the rocky ridges of schistus and, in places, of granite, run like so many artificial piers, sometimes to the distance of a mile, into the sea. The whole shore of the peninsula is scolloped out in the same manner, demonstrating an encroachment, rather than a retreat, of the ocean. The two ridges also of the isthmus that bound the two bays, one to the northward and the other to the southward, are the highest parts of its surface, and seem to have served the purpose of stopping the progress, rather than marking the retreat, of the sea.

Indeed, from all the observations I have been able to make on the southern coast of Africa, I am decidedly of opinion, that the whole of L'Aguillas Bank, stretching from Cape Point across the entrance of False Bay to the mouth of Rio Infante or the Great Fish River, and to the thirty-seventh parallel of southern latitude, has at one time formed a part of the continent. The very manner in which it rounds from this extreme point of South Africa into the main land, the materials that compose it, the indentations of the coast, all formed in one direction, and the manner in which the fragile rocks break off

perpendicularly from time to time along that coast, are indications that sufficiently warrant this conclusion.

It may also be observed, with regard to the L'Aguillas Bank, that the stream of the current strikes strongest just along the outer margin, which I suppose to have formerly been the old coast of Africa, not only because the soundings along this margin are deeper than on any other part of the bank, but because the bottom is fine white sand, such as is usually found on the sea shores; and most of the interior parts of the bank, and especially where it approaches the projecting points of the coast, are composed of rock, and the coarse fragments of comminuted sandstone.

But the strong arguments advanced in favour of the Cape isthmus having, at no great period of time, been covered with the sea, rests on the sea-shells that have been discovered in the sand that is accumulated on its surface. Such shells may exist, though I never saw them except on the shores of the bays, but, as I have before observed, whole strata of these may be found buried in the sides of the Lion's Hill, many hundred feet above the level of the sea. These shells have not been brought into that situation by the waves of the ocean but by birds. There is scarcely a sheltered cavern in the sides of the mountains, that rise immediately from the sea, where *living* shell fish may not be found any day in the year. Crows even, and vultures, as well as aquatic birds, detach the shell-fish from the rocks, and mount with them in their beaks into the air; shells thus carried are said to be frequently found on the very summit even of the

the Table Mountain. In one cavern, as I have already observed, at the entrance of Mossel Bay, I disturbed some thousands of birds, and found as many thousands of living shell-fish scattered on the surface of a heap of shells that, for aught I know, would have filled as many thousand waggons. The presence of shells therefore, in my opinion, is no argument for the presence of the sea.

We should not, perhaps, be far amiss in assigning to Africa a prior creation to any of the other continents. Its vast antiquity appears in the very extraordinary manner in which the superior parts of the great chain of mountains are corroded and worn away; in the immensely deep chasms in which the rills of water trickle down to the sea; in the disappearance of the water supplied by the heavy rains; and, above all, in the complete decomposition of the felspar into a kind of semi-indurated clay or lithomarga; and, as I have seen in frequent instances, pyramidal crystals of quartz so loosely fixed by the base into masses of felspar as easily to be drawn out with the fingers, and when so drawn out, appearing corroded, and wasted in their transition to some other state.

I would not here be understood to suppose that the sea does not retreat from the shore; on the contrary, it is a well established fact, that in some parts of the world, and particularly in the creeks of the Baltic, the sea has subsided in a very remarkable manner. But this retreat is partial and owing to local circumstances. Had it been general, and in the same degree as has been observed on the shores of Bothnia, the isthmus of Suez

must have been overflown, and consequently Africa must have been an island, later than 2000 years ago, whereas there is every reason to suppose that, many ages before that period, the isthmus was pretty much in the same state in which it now is. The progressive retreat of the ocean cannot therefore be general. It is evident, at the same time, to use the language of the sacred historian, "That all the high hills, that were under the whole heaven, were covered;" mountains that are now several thousand feet above its level, and as many thousand miles removed from its shores, bear the most unequivocal indications of this truth. But this effect may, perhaps with more plausibility, be ascribed to the operation of some sudden cause, some convulsion in the globe of the earth, or some check in its diurnal or annual motion, which produced an universal change upon its surface; and by which "the waters under the heaven were gathered together unto one place, and the dry land appeared." Whether this change happened at the first creation, or the earth was deluged at some subsequent period, an idea that the history of all the civilized nations on earth seem to glance at, we must be content to remain in ignorance; for man, with all his boasted philosophy, will never be able to solve the questions which the Hebrew poet has put into the mouth of the Almighty. "Who shut up the sea with doors, when it brake forth, as if it had issued out of the womb? When I made the cloud the garment thereof and thick darkness a swaddling band for it, and brake up for it my decreed place, and set bars and doors, and said, Hitherto shalt thou come but no further, and here shall thy proud waves be stayed?"

Before

Before we crossed the mountains through the Attaquas kloof, I had occasion to visit Mossel Bay, which lies about 24 miles to the southward of it. The uncertainty of procuring an annual supply of grain, sufficient for the consumption of the town and the garrison, on account of the frequent failure in the crops, had determined the government to renew the encouragement which the Dutch East India Company had found it prudent to hold out for the cultivation of corn in that part of the district of Zwelendam which was contiguous to Mossel Bay. The building they caused to be erected for depositing grain was capable of containing ten thousand bushels, and was said to be frequently filled; but the whole quantity I was able to procure in the neighbourhood, at an advanced price, including both wheat and barley, did not exceed fifteen hundred bushels.

The Dutch were in possession of a few charts of the coast and bays, within the limits of the settlement, but they were considered by Admiral Pringle so very incorrect, that he dispatched his Majesty's brig the Hope, having on board Lieutenant Rice, as I have already observed, with instructions to survey, and take the soundings of, all the bays to the eastward, but particularly of Mossel Bay, Plettenberg's Bay, and Algoa Bay. From this survey the annexed chart of Mossel Bay was copied, as also the following observations:

The outermost point of the bay, called Cape Saint Blaize, lies in latitude $34^{\circ} 10'$ south; longitude $22^{\circ} 18'$ east (I make it in the general chart which I constructed $22^{\circ} 45'$ east). The variation of the compass in 1797 was $27^{\circ} 54'$ west. The time of

high water at full and change about 3 o'clock, and the rise and fall of the tides six or seven feet. During the summer months, when the winds blow between east and south, or directly into the bay, a heavy swell breaks upon the beach, which makes it dangerous, and frequently impracticable, for boats to land; but these winds are never so violent, nor so lasting, as at the Cape; and ships may ride at anchor in perfect security about three quarters of a mile from the landing place. The south-west winds, that frequently blow with great violence from April to September, bring into the bay a most tremendous sea, setting round Cape Saint Blaize. At this season of the year it would be highly imprudent for ships to enter Mossel Bay.

A rill of water glides over the sandy beach, where there is the best landing, and is easily conveyed into casks in the boats, by means of a hose. To the south-east of this landing place is another small cove tolerably sheltered, and deep enough to admit vessels of ten or twelve feet draught of water. At either of these coves piers for landing and shipping goods might conveniently be constructed, and at a small expence, as materials may be procured upon the spot. Boats, however, may land at every part of the bay; and the adjacent country would easily afford supplies for about five hundred men.

The mouths of the rivers that fall into the bay are generally blocked up with sand. They abound with various kinds of fish, and on the rocky parts of the coast are plenty of muscles and excellent oysters.

We

To face page 70.

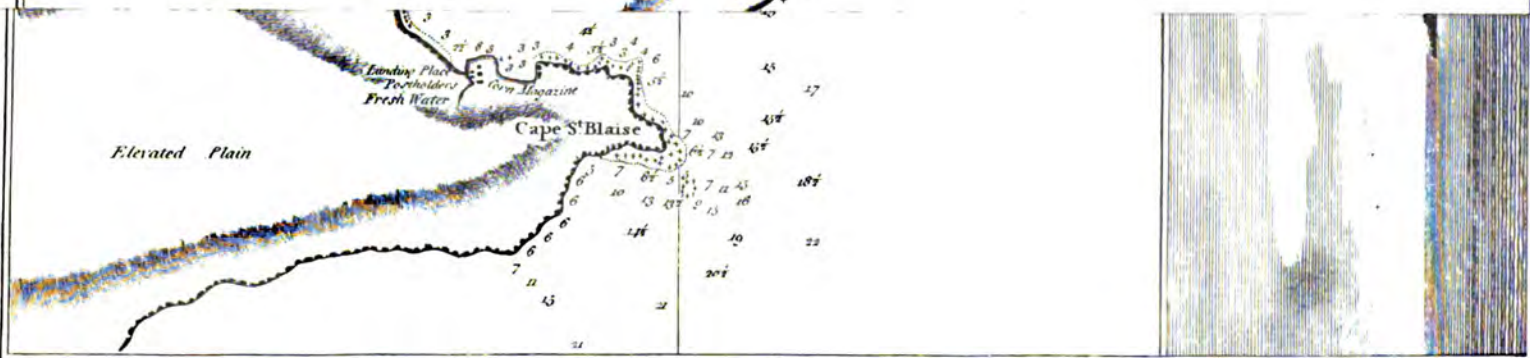
MOSSEL BAY, On the S. E. Coast of AFRICA.

Cape S^t Blaise, is in Latitude 34° 10' S. & Longitude 22° 18' E. Variation of the Compass, 27° 54' W. Tide flows full and change, 3^h 00^m rises & falls six feet perpendicular. There is a Spring of Fresh Water, near the Landing Place. Provisions may be purchased reasonably & Fish may be caught in abundance near Robben Island.

Surveyed in Sept^r 1797 by Lieu^t W^m M^r Perouse, Royal Navy.

A Scale of one League or three Nautic Miles.

Fine elevated Plains well covered with Grass.
Ridge of Sand Hills



Published, Feb^r 1st 1804 by Cadell & Davies, Strand.

C. L. Verelsteden, 2nd Edition.

We crossed the mountains, over the Attaquas Pass, on the 18th of March, and entered the *Lange Kloof* or Long Valley; very properly so called, being a slip of level ground, from a mile to two miles in width, and about one hundred and fifty miles in length, hemmed in between two high ridges of mountains. Here we met with, at almost every farm, an excellent vineyard of the Muscatel and Persian grape, both at this time fully ripe; we observed also extensive plantations of tobacco, and a variety of fruit trees. The oranges were large and remarkably good. Notwithstanding the great plenty, and the good quality of the grapes, the inhabitants made little wine, and that little was execrably bad. The distance, indeed, from a market, and the badness of the roads, hold out little encouragement to the farmer, either for extending the quantity or improving the quality of this article. Raisins, being a more transportable commodity, are more the object of their attention than wine. The making of these requires a very simple process. The bunch of grapes is first immersed in a strong solution of wood ashes, and afterwards laid upon a stage covered with rush matting, until it be thoroughly dried. The bruised grapes, the undergrowings, the stalks and expressed husks, with the lees or dregs of new wine, are thrown together into large vessels until they ferment, and are then distilled into a sort of brandy. From trash like this is most of the ardent spirit manufactured which is sold in the Cape under the name of *Brandewyn*, and which, from its cheapness and bad quality, not only poisons the bodies, but also corrupts the morals of the lower orders of the town, and the country farmers.

I have

I have already had occasion to notice the injudicious and slovenly manner that is generally practised at the Cape in the making of wine, and in the management of the vineyard. I can now venture to speak positively as to the fact, that wine of a quality equal, if not superior, to the Rhenish, may be produced in the Cape of Good Hope. Mr. Pringle, his Majesty's Commissary-General, and agent for the Honourable East India Company, purchased a small farm on which was a vineyard that, for many years, had been totally neglected. By way of making the experiment, he caused it to be dressed and properly pruned, and, depending upon the directions laid down in the *Encyclopedie des Connaissances Humaines*, and Valmont de Bomare's Dictionary, rather than upon the knowledge of the Cape boors, he succeeded, much beyond his most sanguine expectations, in obtaining a clear pleasant wine, free from any extraneous taste, and approaching so near to Hock, that very good judges might have mistaken the one for the other. The chief precautions taken by him were, to separate the ripe from the unripe fruit, the sound from the decayed, and to remove them from the stalk, which none of the wine farmers of the Cape take the pains to do: he kept the must in open vessels, until it had undergone the last degree of vinous fermentation, and then drew it off into close vessels, where it remained without molestation for twelve months. In like manner, there can be no doubt, the different wines of Europe might all be made here by proper treatment; for, I again repeat what I have before observed, that in no part of the world are better grapes produced than at the Cape. Vines grow here on any soil, and require but very little attention. Many thousand acres of
ground,

ground, now totally neglected, might be planted with vineyards within sight of the Table Mountain.

Our march along the *Lange Kloof* was delightfully pleasant. The road was extremely good, the country cheerful, being mostly covered with grass or shrubby plants, exhibiting from a distance a continuance of verdant lawns, which are not frequent in this colony, by much the greater portion of the surface being either extensive wastes of karroo almost without a vestige of vegetation, or naked ranges of mountains. Here too there was a sufficiency of water to admit of farm-houses being placed at the regulated distance of three miles. The sloping sides of the valley were covered with a great variety of splendid heaths, in the height of their blossom, of the shrub called *gnidia*, of the showy and everlasting *Xeranthemum*, and a profusion of other plants that the eye of a botanist would have feasted upon with avidity. But the nature of our expedition would only admit of a glance in passing.

Having proceeded along the Kloof to that part which is nearly opposite to Plettenberg's Bay, we found it necessary to halt a few days in order to refresh the horses. In the mean time I crossed the mountains, agreeably to my instructions, and assembled the wood-cutters in the vicinity of the bay, to enter into a contract with them for a supply of timber for the public service at the Cape. Independent of the wants of the government, it was considered advisable, at this juncture, to furnish these people with employment, in order to keep them at home; for such is the nature of an African boor, that, having nothing particular

ticular to engage his attention, he is glad of an excuse to ride to the distance of eight or ten days, whether it be to a church or to a vendue, to hunt elephants or to plunder the Kaffers.

In justice, however, to the farmers of the Plettenberg Bay district, they are the only class of people, in the whole colony, that deserve the name of being industrious. To fell the large trees, that are now only to be procured in deep glens, and then to drag them out, is a work of labour and toil; and their profits are so trifling, that few of them are enabled to purchase slaves, and of course are reduced to the necessity of working themselves.

The vast forest, commencing opposite Mossel Bay, and running along the feet of the mountains, on the south side, almost to Algoa Bay, naturally excites an inquiry into the causes that have promoted the growth of trees in this particular spot, when all the rest of the country, in comparison to this tract of land, may be considered as a barren desert. The same cause, by which I endeavoured to account for the abundance, and for the scarcity of springs, namely, the situation of the granitic base of the mountains, will perhaps explain also the growth of these forests. At the distance of every two or three miles, a current of water bursts out of this chain of mountains, whose banks are covered with trees, in some places down to the sea-shore. In like manner, the foot of the Table Mountain at the Cape was skirted with a forest, of which, at present, not a vestige remains, on the side next the town; but, in the deep glens behind the mountain, and on the side next to the isthmus, there are still exten-
five

To face page 75.

Appearance of Seal Hill when the Cape bore S.E. by E. & Gap
F. by S. distant 4 or 5 miles.

Appearance of Seal Hill when the Cape bore N. by E. & E. the Gap N. by W. & Peak within
Near-booms R.N.N.E. distant 5 or 6 miles.



Variation of the Compass - 1.31. N. Tide flows Hill & Oblique
3.30. " rise and falls 5 or 6 feet perpendicular the Landing
place is on the beach near the Government Storehouse,
where you may get Fresh Water by rolling the Casks 300
Yards but the high surf that generally breaks, makes it
, difficult to water:

Surveyed in July & Aug. 1799. by Lieut. W. McPherson For R. M. Oph.

Published by T. B. S. by Cadell & Davies Strand.

Sheet No. 151 Printed

five thickets, among which the greatest number of the trees, peculiar to Southern Africa, are to be found, and some of them of a very considerable size.

The circumstance of there being plenty of timber at Plettenberg's Bay, and abundance of unoccupied land of a good soil, well watered, and fit for any cultivation, had induced a wealthy merchant of Holland, on the restoration of the colony to its ancient possessors, to obtain permission for carrying into effect a plan that would, no doubt, have proved highly beneficial to the settlement at large in a variety of ways. He had obtained a grant from the government of the whole district of Plettenberg's Bay, on condition of paying a certain annual rent. This district he meant to divide into one hundred parcels, upon which were to be placed one hundred industrious families from Europe, Dutch or German, to be sent over with stock, utensils, implements of husbandry, and every other article that was requisite to carry on the useful trades, and to till the ground. None of them was to be allowed a single slave; but it was recommended to encourage the Hottentots to every kind of useful labour. The war, however, I imagine, has, for the present, suspended the execution of this laudable plan, which, there is every reason to suppose, would have succeeded to the height of the wishes of him who projected it.

The observations with regard to the winds, and the swell of the sea setting into Plettenberg's Bay, will equally apply to this and to Mossel Bay, the position of both being similar. It scarcely seems capable, by any expence, of being rendered secure even for small

craft, in the winter months; but, in the summer season, ships may remain without any danger. There is, however, an arm of the sea, at the distance of about 18 miles to the westward of Plettenberg's Bay, which may one day become an important station. It is called the Knysna. In a former visit to this country, I observed that the tide set into it through a narrow passage or portal, as into a dock: that this passage, though narrow, and not quite clear of rocks, would admit of small vessels. Since that time, Mr. Calandar, a gentleman formerly belonging to the navy, has made a particular survey of this arm of the sea, of which the annexed is a plan. He observes that the depth of water, and great extent, of the Knysna, running into the very centre of fine forests, render it a most eligible place for building and repairing ships. That vessels of five hundred tons and upwards, deeply laden, may pass the portal; and that much larger might be built therein and sent out light, to be completed in Plettenberg's Bay. That the forests contain several different kinds of durable and well grown timber, fit for that valuable purpose, as well as abundance of masts and yards. The native fir, called geel hout (*Ilex crocea*), grows to upwards of sixty feet in length, and to five, six, and even eight feet in diameter; which is also the case with the native oak, bearing an acorn exactly like that of Europe, but called here, on account of a strong and disagreeable smell which it emits when green, the stinkwood tree (*Quercus Africana*). That the smell, however, is attended with the peculiar advantage of preventing the worm from attacking it.

The

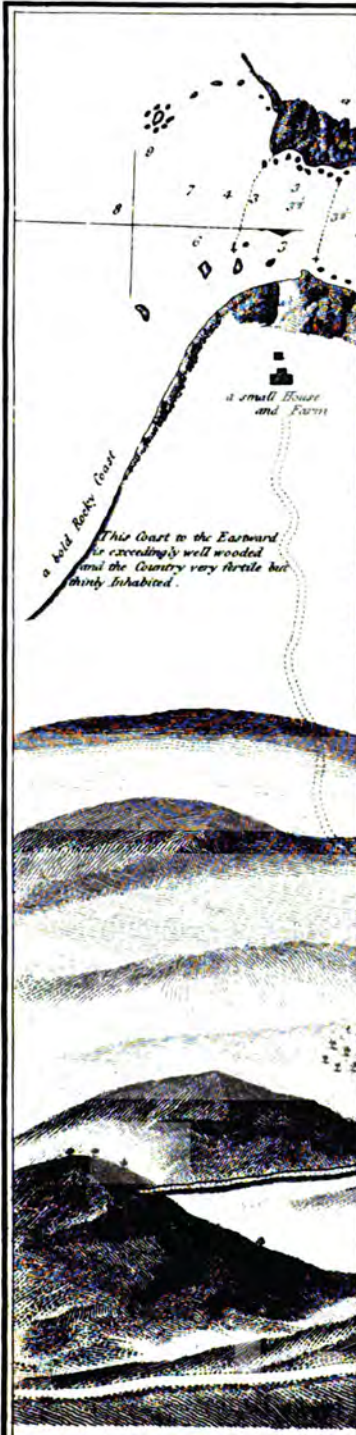
PART of the KNYSNA,
Arm of the Sea Seven Leagues
to the Westward of
PLETTENBERG'S BAY.

Surveyed by M^r. James Callander.



Remarks.

The Pier is directly in the middle in the line of the Figures which denote Low Water; the rise of the Tides at full and change is about 8 Feet. At the proposed Pier F. the same line should be kept to avoid the Rocks. The Fresh River G. might easily be conveyed to the Pier. Between C and D good passage from 40 to 280 Feet from C. at Low Water. Between C. and E. Sail of Ships might lie at Anchor. The shore between C and E. has a good Building and Launching Ships. The Waves in the narrow entrance tumultuous in bad weather.



a bold Rocky Coast

This Coast to the Eastward is exceedingly well wooded and the Country very fertile but thinly inhabited.

a small House and Farm



The Fertile and extensive Farm of M^r. Barnard.

This River rises among Bushy Mountains down which Timber of the largest dimensions may be floated.

S.J. Neuch. Reupl. 550. 1760.

T
ning
and
mou
mile
tiful
lake
for p
adds
part
held
fami
of l
sea
with
labo
a fu
surj

fir
try
an
pe
co
co
g
n

The extent of the forests, beginning at Mossel Bay, and running eastward parallel to the sea-coast, is at least two hundred and fifty English miles, and the breadth from the feet of the mountains to the sea is ten, fifteen, and in some places twenty, miles. A great part of this tract is composed of large and beautiful plains, intersected by numerous rivers, and abounding in lakes full of excellent fish. The ground is well calculated either for pasturage or tillage, and capable of complete irrigation; but, adds this gentleman, the farmers here, as well as in all other parts of the colony, are lazy beyond description; the grounds, held by each, being sufficient for a great number of industrious families. He concludes his remarks by an opinion, that the slip of land, situated between the first chain of mountains and the sea coast, and from Zwelendam to Algoa Bay, if well stocked with inhabitants, so that each would be under the necessity of labouring for a subsistence, would not only be able to furnish a supply of grain for the whole colony, but would afford also a surplus for exportation.

Although I cannot exactly subscribe to this opinion, yet I am firmly persuaded that, with the addition of the tract of country between the north range of mountains and the west coast, and from Saint Helena Bay to the Cape, the whole mass of people within the present limits of the colony might be more comfortably subsisted than they now are, and an abundance of corn and cattle, wine, and other necessaries, over and above, for a garrison of five thousand men, and for a fleet containing an equal number of souls. But in order to make the country produce this
supply,

supply, it would be necessary to procure a new race of inhabitants, or to change the nature of the old ones.

It is no easy matter to convey, by any description, an adequate idea of the condition of the peasantry of the Cape of Good Hope; so inconceivably different is it from that of the same class in Europe, or indeed in any other part of the world. The farmers in the back-settlements of North America are enabled, by hard labour, to raise a superfluity of provisions beyond their own consumption, chiefly, however, in the article of grain; of animal food they have no redundancy. The peasantry of Europe labour six days in the week, the greater part of whom can barely earn a scanty subsistence for themselves and their families. But a boor of the Cape neither knows the corroding pain of an empty stomach, nor hears his children cry for a morsel of bread,—of meat I ought to say, for bread they rarely taste. A traveller, on entering their miserable hovels, needs never despair of finding their tenants unprovided. Salted beef, or flesh of the larger kinds of game, he will generally find hanging in the chimney, and it is an equal chance that the whole or greater part of a slaughtered sheep should be suspended from the roof. A Cape boor never works. Every day throughout the whole year is to him a holiday. The greatest exertion he ever makes, and which has pleasure for its object as well as profit, is the killing of game. Nor is the exercise he takes on such occasions to be measured by the activity, energy, or the fatigue that an European sportsman must sometimes undergo. A Dutch boor, in the first instance, never
traverses

traverses the heath on foot, but generally fires from the saddle. He considers the labour even of carrying his musquet to be too fatiguing, and, therefore, has a Hottentot boy trained to ride or to run after him as his armour-bearer, an office not likely in this country ever to be productive of rank or emolument.

Such, however, are the mistaken notions imbibed by listening to persons who are either really ignorant, or interested to mislead, that the peasantry of the Cape have been represented as a poor and distressed people, overwhelmed with debt, burdened with taxes, and oppressed by the government in a variety of ways. How far such statements are founded in truth, will best be shewn in our statistical sketch of the settlement. In the mean time I shall just observe, as a position to be proved hereafter, that the peasantry of the Cape are better fed, more indolent, more ignorant, and more brutal, than any set of men, bearing the reputation of being civilized, upon the face of the whole earth.

I have frequently had occasion to notice the abundance of iron ore in almost every part of Southern Africa, some of which was so rich in metal as to contain from seventy to eighty per cent., but that the total want of fuel rendered it useless. Here, however, in the vicinity of the forests, that objection is removed; and the ores might, in all probability, be melted to advantage, as all kinds of iron work are prodigiously dear at the Cape. We were told that, in the neighbourhood of the Knysna, another large mass of native iron had been discovered,
similar

similar to that which I mentioned to have seen in the plains of the Zuure Veldt, and which I then supposed the Kaffers to have carried thither from the sea shore. I paid little attention to the report at that time; but since my return to the Cape, the discovery of a third mass, in an extraordinary situation, the very summit of Table Mountain, excited a stronger degree of curiosity. I imagined the first to have been the flat part of an anchor, although it was destitute of any particular shape, but in this of Table Mountain, which may weigh from one hundred and fifty to one hundred and sixty pounds, there appeared some faint traces of the shape of the flook, or the broad part of the arm which takes hold of the ground. It was found half buried in sand and quartz pebbles, every part, as well under as above ground, much corroded, and the cavities filled with pebbles, which, however, did not appear to be component parts of the mass, not being angular, but evidently rounded by attrition. As, in the first instance, I suppose the Kaffers to have carried the mass into the situation where it was discovered; so also, with regard to the latter, I am inclined to think it must have been brought upon the summit of the mountain by the native Hottentots, as to a place of safety, when Bartholomew Diaz, or some of the early Portuguese navigators, landed first in this country. Others, however, who have seen and examined the mass are of opinion, that it must have been placed in its present situation at a period long antecedent to the discovery of the Cape of Good Hope by Europeans. Be that as it may, the resemblance it bears to part of an anchor, with the Neptunian appearances of various parts of Southern Africa, which are particularly striking in the formation of the Table Mountain,

prefers strongly on the recollection the beautiful observation of the Latin poet.

“ Vidi ego, quòd fuerat quondam solidissima tellus
 “ Esse fretum. Vidi factas ex æquore terras,
 “ Et procul a pelago conchæ jacuere marinæ
 “ Et vetus inventa est in montibus anchora summis.”

“ The face of places, and their forms, decay ;
 “ And that is solid earth that once was sea :
 “ Seas in their turn, retreating from the shore,
 “ Make solid land what ocean was before ;
 “ Far from the shore are shells of fishes found,
 “ And rusty anchors fix'd on mountain-ground.”

It may be observed, by the way, that Mr. Dryden has reversed the idea of the poet in the first couplet of his translation, and continued the same in his second, making only the land to gain on the sea, instead of contrasting it with the opposite effect of the sea encroaching on the land. Observing this to a son of my ingenious and learned friend Doctor Tytler, a boy of twelve years of age, he requested to have the Latin lines, and immediately produced the following stanzas :

“ Turn'd into sea I've seen the earth
 “ Dissolved in the wave,
 “ And from the sea new hills spring forth,
 “ And their broad backs upheave.

“ And far from ocean's utmost bounds,
 “ Shells have discovered been,
 “ And on the tops of rising grounds
 “ Old rusty anchors seen.”

In my last journey up the mountain I observed, also, about midway, several arborizations on stones, those of the fern tribe very distinct; and in the same stratum, which is strongly coloured with iron, I discovered several large masses of pyramidal crystals of quartz, and fine specimens of hæmatite or blood-stone.

In our return over the mountains from Plettenberg's Bay little occurred to attract attention. The *Sparmannia* in the woods, with its large leaves of light green, contrasted with the dark and slender foliage of the yellow wood tree, and the still darker *Eckbergia*, with the lofty summits of the naked mountains rising far above them, afforded scenery for the pencil extremely picturesque and beautiful. The fibres of the bark of the *Sparmannia* make an excellent kind of hemp, superior in strength to that of the *Hibiscus*, which I mentioned to have found on a former visit to this bay. Saplings of this tree the second year rise in a clear stem to the height of six feet, so that in the event of any future establishment being made at Plettenberg's Bay, the *Sparmannia* may become a very useful plant. The *Gardenia Thunbergia*, or the wild Cape Jessamine, being in the height of its blossom, gave out so powerful a scent, that, in the evening, it could be felt at the distance of several miles. The *Nymphaea cerulea*, and another species of a smaller size with spear-shaped leaves (*foliis hastatis*), and rose-coloured petals, ornamented the margins of the *Keurboom* River; and the *Wachendorfia* with the *Aletris Uvaria* were common in all the boggy grounds. The stately white *Strelitzias*, which are found only on the banks of the *Pisang* River, were also now in flower.

The

The *Protea Grandiflora*, on the summit of the mountains, resembled, in their size and appearance, old stunted oaks. Heaths also were very large, and bulbous rooted plants in great abundance. We found, likewise, growing among the rocks, numbers of that singular plant the *Tamus Elephantipes*, so called from the resemblance of its large tuberous root, rising above the surface of the ground, to the foot of the elephant:—but I am deviating too far from the title I have prefixed to this Chapter, in making observations on natural history, which, indeed, the nature of the expedition was not well calculated to promote. I might, however, with more propriety, perhaps, have called it a Miscellaneous Chapter, as it is not meant to be confined to one object.

The district of Plettenberg's Bay is in fact a rich field for the naturalist. Let his favourite pursuit be what it may, botany, ornithology, or zoology, he may here indulge his inclination. The greatest part of the forest trees still remain unexamined. The birds are numerous, and have *seriously* been attacked by no other collector than Mr. Le Vaillant, of whom Mr. Meeding, for many years the postholder at the bay, speaks as being an excellent shot at small birds, and a most indefatigable pursuer of them. Of animals, from the little tailless *das* or Cavy, and the pigmy Antelope, to the huge Elephant, the woods of Sitfikamma furnish great variety. The *Plain* of *Hartebeests* abounds with that noble species of the antelope tribe from which it takes its name; and every thicket is filled with the beautiful *Bosbok*, or Bush deer, remarkable for its spotted haunches, and still more

so from the near resemblance of its cry to the barking of a dog.

On reaching our quarters in Lange Kloof we were agreeably surprized to find that the shoes of all our horses had been removed, and new ones placed on such as wanted them. This had been a matter of serious consideration from the first day of our expedition; for, as the horses of the colony are never shod, except those in the hands of the English, we could hardly flatter ourselves that we should meet with any person in the interior of the country, capable of undertaking such an operation. A young man, however, born deaf and dumb, without ever having seen a horse-shoe before, made several new ones, and replaced others with as much care and neatness, as one that had been brought up to the business of a farrier. This ingenious young man, the only one I can safely say that I ever met with in the course of my travels in this country, supported, by his labour, a worthless drunken father, and a number of brothers and sisters.

Nothing of moment occurred until we reached the borders of the Camtoos River, which divides the district of Zwellendam from that of Graaf Reynet. Being passable only by waggons at one ford, we encamped there, as the most eligible situation for keeping open a communication between Brigadier General Vandeleur and the Cape. Scarcely, however, had we arrived when an express from the General directed us to proceed to Algoa Bay.

The

The country between the Camtoos River and this bay is extremely rich and beautiful. Like a gentleman's park, or pleasure grounds, in England, the surface is diversified with thickets and knots of stately trees, planted, however, by the spontaneous and free hand of nature. The knolls are covered with thick grass, which, for want of cattle to eat it off, is suffered to rot upon the ground, or is partially burnt off towards the end of summer to make room for the young blades to shoot up with the earliest rains of winter. It is greatly to be lamented that so fine a country should be suffered to remain in total neglect. A few indolent boors grasp the whole district, which, when in the possession of the rightful owners, the Kaffers and the Hottentots, some thirty years ago, maintained many thousand families by the numbers of their cattle it was found capable of supporting. The small game, which here are plentiful, gramineous roots, the bulbs of the iris, of the wild garlick, and of the *Cyanella*, the filaments and anthers of whose stamens bear a remarkable resemblance to the fingers and nails of the human hand, together with the seeds of the *Strelitzia Reginzæ*, and a variety of wild berries, were the chief articles of subsistence of the Hottentot tribes, and milk was the principal food of the Kaffers.

Algoa Bay has little to recommend it as a resort for shipping. Like all the other Bays, upon the same coast, it is directly open to the south-east winds, which, however, are less dangerous, because less violent, than those which blow from west and south-west. The disturbances of Graaf Reynet have caused a number of ships to visit this bay from the Cape, but scarcely one that has been there has escaped accidents happening to their boats in

attempting to land. Almost a perpetual swell rolls upon the sandy beach. Being, however, so conveniently situated for an enemy to communicate with the rebellious boors of Graaf Reynet, and equally so with the Kaffers, General Dundas thought it advisable to station at the bay a few troops, and to erect a small block-house for their protection. It was, indeed, surprising that none of the enemies' cruisers from the Isle of France thought of attacking this vulnerable, and hitherto defenceless, spot, so distant from the Cape that much mischief might have been effected long before the government could have received information of it.

The French frigate *La Preneuse* was the only enemy's ship that ventured to look into this or any of the bays during the whole war; at which time the Rattlesnake sloop of war, and the Camel store ship, happened to be at anchor there. The French ship came in under Danish colours, and brought up in the dusk of the evening between two and three cables' length from the Rattlesnake, whose captain was on shore with a detachment of the crew, unable to get on board on account of the high surf running upon the beach; but Lieutenant (now Captain) Fothergill displayed, on this occasion, great judgment and bravery. Suspecting her to be an enemy, he fired a shot a-head, of which she took no notice; he then poured in a broadside, which was returned by the frigate. About midnight, the fire from the Camel being silenced, the frigate changed her position, bringing her broadside to bear directly upon the Rattlesnake. In this manner they engaged till three in the morning, when the frigate thought fit to slip her cable, and

ALGOA BAY

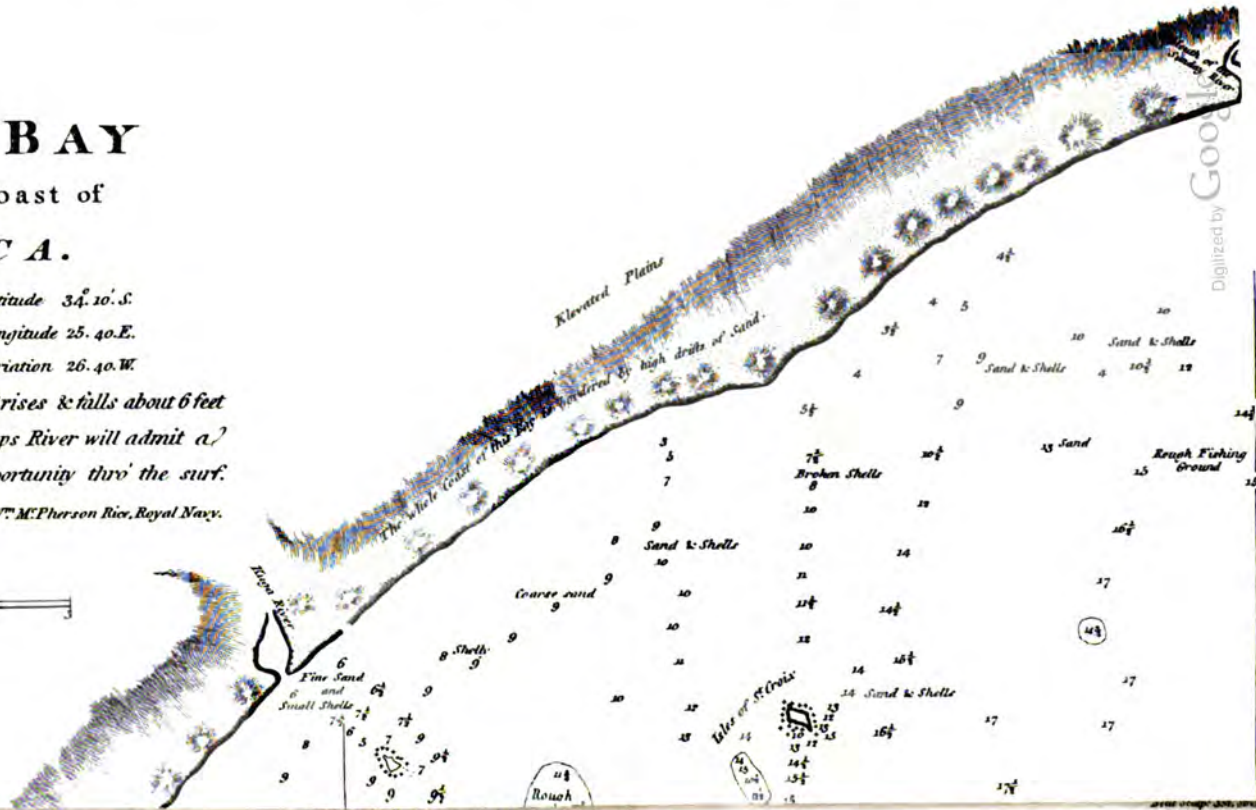
on the S. E. Coast of

AFRICA.

Cape Recife is in { Latitude 34. 10'. S.
 Longitude 25. 40. E.
 Variation 26. 40. W.

Tide flows full & change 3. 20. rises & falls about 6 feet perpendicular. N.B. The Swartkops River will admit a boat at times by watching an opportunity thro' the surf. Surveyed in Aug^r & September by Lieut^{W^m} M. P. Pearson R.N. Royal Navy.

Scale of 3 Miles or One League.



Digitized by Google

and sheer off to sea. The Rattlesnake was much damaged in her rigging, received many shot between wind and water, had three men killed and several wounded. La Preneuse mounted 44 guns, and had on board upwards of three hundred men.

This affair decided General Dundas as to the expediency of erecting a small work for the defence of the landing-place, and a block-house surrounded with a pallisade for the protection of the men to be stationed there. These precautions were the more necessary as whalers and neutral ships sometimes look into Algoa Bay and purchase refreshments from the boors in exchange for gunpowder. The mischief that an enemy might effect by landing here and putting musquets and ammunition into the hands of the Kaffers, is not to be calculated; and these people for some years back have been stationed in vast numbers upon the banks of the Sunday River, which discharges itself into Algoa Bay opposite the islands of St. Croix, where it may be seen, by the chart, there is secure anchorage and convenient communication.

From the moment this bay became a military station, the face of the surrounding country began to put on a new appearance. The slip of ground, contiguous to the landing place, was converted into gardens; and the stupid boors stared with wonder, and were struck with astonishment, at the variety and quantity of vegetables they produced. These people, also, soon found the benefit of a ready market for the consumption of their produce. Many trifling articles, such as milk and eggs, from which they had never before derived the least advantage, were
now

now commuted into money. Their sheep and cattle were sold at higher rates than the butchers were accustomed to give them; and their butter, soap, and candles, which they were always under the necessity of carrying more than five hundred miles to market, fetched now, upon the spot, double the usual prices.

This change of circumstances, so favourable to the boors in the vicinity of the bay, was extended, likewise, in some degree, over the whole country by the moving of troops. The officers, constantly passing upon the road, soon prevailed upon the farmers to take money for their accommodations, which, under the Dutch government, they would have been afraid to do. Every petty clerk of the Secretary's office, an attorney or land-measurer, travelling in the country, assumed such airs of consequence, that the ignorant boor was glad to yield the whole house to his disposal, and all that it afforded. The officers of government were also empowered to demand gratuitous teams of oxen to convey them, like paupers, from house to house. If a farmer had only a single team, and it happened to be in the plough when one of these gentry passed, it would be necessary for him to break off work, and lend his oxen to transport the *groot heer*, the great gentleman, to the next neighbour's house. In this respect they must have felt a sensible difference in the conduct of the British officers. Near ten thousand pounds were circulated, in one year, by the troops in Graaf Reynet, among more than two hundred families, and chiefly for articles of provision and forage, many of which, before this period, brought them no returns.

A few

A few days before our arrival at Algoa Bay, General Vandeleur had subdued the rebellious boors in the manner I have already described in the beginning of this chapter, and had sent the ringleaders on board his Majesty's ship the *Rattlesnake*, to be conveyed to the Cape to take their trial there by their own laws, before their own court of justice. Desirable as it might have been to punish the leaders upon the spot by martial law, as an example to a rebellious people, the General resolved to try once more what lenient measures might effect, concluding that, in the event of their own countrymen finding them guilty, the colonists must at least acknowledge the justice of the decision; whereas in the other case, as it generally happens, the public are more ready to blame the severity of martial law than to acknowledge the criminality of those upon whom it is inflicted.

This trial for sedition and rebellion caused no small degree of speculation at the Cape; and the general opinion was, that either from inclination, or the fear of offending their countrymen, the judges would acquit the prisoners. Such conjectures were founded on the very illiberal and erroneous notion, that in no instance where a colonist and a foreigner were concerned had the latter obtained his cause before this court. Such an idea might probably have taken its rise from the constitution and the practice of the court. Two-thirds of its members were chosen out of the servants of the Dutch East India Company, and one-third only from the burghers of the town. The Company, as proprietors of the settlement, directed their servants to take the ascendancy and the lead in all colonial affairs;

but by way of reconciling, in some measure, the free burghers, which were not in their employ, a certain number of these were admitted into the civil courts and boards; but the opinions and propositions of the former were, in most matters, found to preponderate.

Neither one nor the other in the Court of Justice were professional men; nor were they supposed to possess a greater share of legal knowledge than the other citizens out of which they were chosen. As members, composing a Court of Judicature, they had no salaries under the Dutch government, and therefore were supposed not to reject presents from one or both of the parties who had suits before the Court. But although they had no special salaries, most of them either actually enjoyed other employments attended with profit, or were considered as entitled to succeed to them on vacancies, in recompence for their services as ministers of justice. And as the situation, though honourable and conferring a distinction of rank, was attended with a considerable share of trouble and some expence, and as their lucrative offices, on the surrender of the settlement to the English, in a great measure ceased, it seemed but reasonable that so important a duty should be compensated by an allowance from Government, which was accordingly made to them by Lord Macartney.

One part of their practice, however, in conformity with the custom of the United Provinces, was particularly repugnant to the feelings of Englishmen and to the principles of English jurisprudence. The proceedings of the Court were always carried

ried on, *foribus clausis*, with closed doors; no oral pleading admitted, no confronting the accused with the witnesses, the deposition of each being singly taken down before two commissioners, on oath, and afterwards read to the Court; all persons were excluded from entering the Court except the parties concerned. In all criminal causes the Fiscal, or Attorney-General, directed two commissioners of the Court to examine evidences, take depositions, hold inquests over bodies that had died suddenly by the visitation of God, accident, or violence; and to draw up, in every case, preparatory information for the trial. For this troublesome part of their duty they had no remuneration, unless when the delinquent should be condemned to labour for the service of government, in which case the expences of the trial were paid out of the produce of that labour.

Such is the outline of the constitution and practice of a court that foreigners have long been accustomed to mention with obloquy and detraction. In civil causes they might, perhaps, in some instances, have leaned a little to the side of their countrymen, if the case happened to be nearly upon a balance; but in all criminal cases they act with the greatest caution and circumspection. Two irreproachable and concurring witnesses are required to substantiate a fact against the delinquent; and *one* evidence of good character, produced on the part of a person accused of felony, is considered of equal weight with *two* produced against him: and even after sentence has been passed, until the moment of execution, the condemned is allowed to bring forward evidence in his favour. Nor can circumstantial

N 2

evidence,

evidence, however strong, warrant the carrying of any sentence into execution, until a free confession be made of the crime. Such confession, it is true, was, under the Dutch government, sometimes extorted by the application of the torture; in which case, if the guilty had nerve enough, he was sure to escape, and if the innocent was feeble, he was equally sure of being hanged.

Even in civil causes, the presumption that they were generally right is in their favour; for since the establishment of an English Court of Appeal in the year 1797, to the evacuation of the colony, out of the number of cases brought before the said Court of appeal, only one sentence was reversed; and it appeared that the error committed, in this instance, by the Court of Justice was owing to their tenacity rather to the letter, than to the spirit of the law; and that by rigidly adhering to the *summa jus*, their decision was productive of the *summa injuria*. It was also supposed that, in the case alluded to, a very undue influence was employed to sway the Court; but as the affair is yet to come before a British court in England, I forbear to enter more at large into the subject. Neither are the members of the Court of Justice in the Cape so wanting in talent or in legal knowledge as might be supposed; at least, they proved to the world that they had sagacity enough to detect, and integrity and firmness enough to punish, the authors of a most nefarious and barefaced transaction, which those persons had contrived to carry through the Court of Vice-Admiralty with complete success, though the imposition was of the grossest nature.

The trial of the boors for sedition having engrossed so much of the public conversation, his Majesty's Fiscal, or Attorney-General to prosecute for the crown in all criminal cases, determined for once, though contrary to established usage, to carry on the whole proceedings with *open doors*. The prisoners were all found guilty, and three of them condemned to suffer death; but by the lenity of the British government which, in this colony was, on most occasions, carried to an extreme, the sentence was never put in execution. On the restoration of the colony the convicted boors were delivered into the hands of the new governors, who, on this occasion, could not do less than pronounce a general amnesty; in which case, they will, most probably, be allowed to return to their old connections, and to their old habits.

But to return to the affairs of Graaf Reynet. The general having thus got rid of the rebel chiefs, and thereby put an end, as he thought, to further disturbances, concluded that little now remained to be done, but to collect his scattered forces from the different parts of the district, and to assemble them at headquarters in Bruyntjes Hoogte; part of which he meant to embark on board the Rattlesnake, and the remainder to send over land, by easy marches, to the Cape.

In crossing the country from Algoa Bay to the northward, in order to put his plan in execution, to our no less surprize than mortification, we fell in with a large party of Hottentots, so disguised, and dressed out in such a whimsical and fantastical manner, that we were totally at a loss to conjecture what to
make

make of them. Some wore large three cornered hats, with green or blue breeches, the rest of the body naked; some had jackets of cloth over their sheep-skin covering, and others had sheep-skins thrown over linen shirts. The women were laden with bundles, and the men were all armed with musquets. We soon discovered, which indeed they readily confessed, that they had been plundering the boors. A Hottentot, among the many good qualities he possesses, has one which he is master of in an eminent degree,—I mean a rigid adherence to truth. When accused of a crime, of which he has been guilty, with native simplicity he always states the fact as it happened; but, at the same time, he has always a justification at hand for what he has done. From lying and stealing, the predominant and inseparable vices of the condition of slavery, the Hottentot may be considered as exempt. In the whole course of my travels, and in the midst of the numerous attendants of this nation, with which I was constantly surrounded, I can with safety declare that I never was robbed nor deceived by any of them.

On making inquiry into the particulars of the unpleasant transaction that had taken place, one of the Hottentots, called *Klaas Stuurman*, or *Nicholas the Helmsman*, whom they had selected for their chief, stepped forwards, and, after humbly entreating us to hear him out without interruption, began a long oration, which contained a history of their calamities and sufferings under the yoke of the boors; their injustice, in first depriving them of their country, and then forcing their offspring into a state of slavery; their cruel treatment on every slight occasion, which it became impossible for them to bear any longer; and

and the resolution they had therefore taken to apply for redress before the English troops should leave the country. That their employers, suspecting their intention, had endeavoured to prevent such application by confining some to the house, threatening to shoot others if they attempted to escape, or to punish their wives and children in their absence. And, in proof of what he advanced, he called out a young Hottentot, whose thigh had been pierced through with a large musquet ball but two days before, fired at him by his master for having attempted to leave his service. "This act," continued he, "among many others equally cruel, resolved us at once to collect a sufficient force to deprive the boors of their arms, in which we have succeeded at every house which has fallen in our way. We have taken their superfluous clothing in lieu of the wages due for our services, but we have stripped none, nor injured the persons of any, though," added he, shaking his head, "we have yet a great deal of our blood to avenge."

Such a rencontre at this time was extremely embarrassing, and the more so as it appeared these were a very small part of their countrymen that were then actually arming themselves against the boors, and plundering their houses. They informed us, moreover, that some of their countrymen, not willing to throw themselves on the protection of strangers, had fled among the Kaffers; but that the greatest part were on the road to Algoa Bay, to lay their unhappy situation before the English general.

The connection that had long subsisted between the boors and the Hottentots, a connection that was kept up by violence and oppression

oppression on one side, and by want of energy and patient suffering on the other, seemed now to be completely dissolved. The farther we advanced, the more seriously alarming was the state of the country. The boors, it seems, unable to restrain their savage temper, which the penalty levied upon them by the General had wrought up into a rage, with the assistance of a *sophie*, determined to wreak their vengeance on the poor Hottentots, according to their common practice, whenever infuriate passion seizes them. The representations made to us by this party were more than confirmed by our own observations in our progress through the country. Among the numerous instances of cruelty to which we bore witness, the following were particularly striking.

We had scarcely parted from these people when, stopping at a house to feed our horses, we by accident observed a young Hottentot woman with a child in her arms lying stretched on the ground in a most deplorable condition. She had been cut from head to foot with one of those infernal whips, made from the hide of a rhinoceros or sea-cow, known by the name of *jambocs*, in such a barbarous and unmerciful manner, that there was scarcely a spot on her whole body free from stripes; nor had the sides of the little infant, in clinging to its mother, escaped the strokes of the brutal monster. With difficulty we had her removed to a situation where medical assistance could be given; but the fever ran so high, and the body was bruised to such a degree, that for several days there were little hopes of her recovery. It was a punishment, far inadequate to the crime, to keep the inhuman wretch on bread and water who
had

had been guilty of such unmanly cruelty, until the fate of the sufferer was decided. Owing to a good constitution she gradually recovered; and the fellow was suffered to depart, after making her a pecuniary compensation; had the wounds proved mortal, the perpetrator would, no doubt, have afforded the first instance of retributive justice for the numberless instances of murder that have been committed with impunity on this unfortunate race of men. The only crime alleged against her was the attempt to follow her husband, who was among the number of those of his countrymen that had determined to throw themselves upon the protection of the English.

The next house we halted at upon the road presented us with a still more horrid instance of brutality. We observed a fine Hottentot boy, about eight years of age, sitting at the corner of the house, with a pair of iron rings clenched upon his legs, of the weight of ten or twelve pounds; and they had remained in one situation for such a length of time, that they appeared to be sunk into the leg, the muscle being tumefied both above and below the rings. The poor creature was so benumbed and oppressed with the weight, that, being unable to walk with ease, he crawled on the ground. It appeared, on inquiry, that they had been rivetted to his legs more than ten months ago. What was to be done in a case of such wanton and deliberate cruelty? It was scarcely in human nature to behold an innocent boy for ever maimed in so barbarous a manner; and at the same time to look upon the cold blooded perpetrator without feeling a sentiment of horror mingled with exasperation,—a sentiment that seemed to say it would serve the cause of humanity to rid

the world of such a monster. The fellow shrunk from the enquiries of the indignant general; he had nothing to allege against him but that he had always been a worthless boy; he had lost him so many sheep; he had slept when he ought to watch the cattle, and such like frivolous charges of a negative kind, the amount of which, if true, only proved that his own interest had sometimes been neglected by this child.

Determined to make an example of the author of such unparalleled brutality, the General ordered him instantly to yoke his oxen to his waggon, and, placing the boy by his side, to drive directly to head-quarters. Here he gave orders to the farrier of the 8th regiment of Light Dragoons to strike off the irons from the boy, an operation that required great nicety and attention, and to clench them as tight as he could on the legs of his master, who roared and bellowed in a most violent manner, to the inexpressible satisfaction of the by-standers, and, above all, to that of the little sufferer just relieved from torment. For the whole of the first night his lamentations were incessant; with a Stentorian voice a thousand times he vociferated, "*My God! is dat een maniere om Cbristian menscb te bandelen!*" "My God! is this a way to treat Christians!" His, however, were not the agonies of bodily pain, but the bursts of rage and resentment on being put on a level with one, as they call them, of the *Zwarte Natie*, between whom and the *Cbristian Menscb* they conceive the difference to be fully as great as between themselves and their cattle, and whom, indeed, they most commonly honour with the appellation of *Zwarte Vee*, black cattle. Having roared for three days and as many nights, at
first

first to the great amusement, but afterwards, to the no less annoyance, of the whole camp, he was suffered to go about his business on paying a heavy penalty in money for the use of the boy, whom he had abused in so shameful a manner.

Another instance occurred, since our departure from Algoa Bay, which strongly marked the little reluctance that is felt by the African boors in the shedding of human blood, even of *Christian Mensch*, for whom they affect so great a veneration. On leaving the bay it was discovered that three fine young lads of the 81st regiment had deserted with their arms; and as these deserters knew that the rest of the people were to march that morning towards the upper part of the country, *Van Roy*, from whose house we departed, concluding they might return, enquired of the General what he should do in case of such an event? The answer was, "Secure them, to be sure."—"But if they should resist?"—"You must take them at any rate; you and your sons and people about the house are more than sufficient to do that." The following day the man came galloping after us, pale and frightened, and ready to sink into the ground. He had shot the three deserters; he had been obliged to do it, as he said, in his own defence, and for the protection of his family, whom they intended to murder. "If you can make that appear to have been the case," the General told him, "you are justified in what you have done; but the fact is so extraordinary, that a very rigid inquiry will be made into it." It is wonderful how rapidly the fellow's countenance brightened up, on hearing there was some palliation in favour of what he had done. It was evident he felt

neither remorse nor compunction in having destroyed three of his fellow-creatures, but was apprehensive only of what might have been the consequences to himself.

The General immediately rode back to his house. He found the dead bodies lying on the ground, just where they had fallen, one at the distance of ten or twelve yards from the door, the other two at forty or fifty. The first had evidently been shot through the breast, but both the others *through the back*. From these circumstances it was strongly conjectured that Van Roy and his sons had waited at the door, with their loaded musquets, the approach of these unfortunate men; that, on the first being shot, the other two had attempted to make their escape; in doing which they afforded the Dutchmen an opportunity of taking a cool and sure aim. The family, of course, told the same story as the master: What then remained to be done? Desertion had already begun, and threatened to become very general. It was, therefore, deemed adviseable to let the matter rest; and to summon the troops in the neighbourhood to attend the funeral of the unfortunate men, whose fate might operate as a check to its further progress.

It would seem, by the end which this same Van Roy was doomed to make, that, as our immortal poet has finely expressed it,

“ ——— Even-handed justice

“ Returns th’ ingredients of our poison’d chalice

“ To our own lips.”

He,

He, in the subsequent wars between the boors and Hottentots, was shot through the head in his own house ; which was afterwards burnt to the ground ; his property plundered and destroyed, and his family reduced to extreme poverty.

The sanguinary character of many of the African colonists may be owing, perhaps, in a certain degree, to the circumstance of their having been soldiers in German regiments serving abroad ; where the least relaxation from a rigid system of discipline is followed up by the greatest severity of punishment. The soldier, having served out the time of his engagement, which at most is five years, is at liberty to demand his discharge. If he is able to read and write, however indifferently, he usually finds employment, as schoolmaster, in a boor's family ; if not qualified for such a situation, he either engages as a sort of servant, or hires himself to some butcher of the town, who sends him to the extremities of the colony to collect sheep and cattle. In all these situations he has the opportunity of making an intimate acquaintance with the boors, which generally leads to his marriage with one of their daughters. The parents of the girl spare him a few sheep and cattle to commence with, on condition of their receiving half the produce as interest, until he can repay the capital ; he looks out for a *place*, as it is called, no matter where, whether within or without the limits of the colony, and builds for himself a hut ; with his cattle are consigned to him, at the same time, and on the same terms, as he supposes, a few little Hottentot children to look after them ; and on these little creatures, in the plenitude of his power, subject to no controul,

controul, he exercifes the fame feverity of punifhment that his own irregularities had incurred when he was in the ranks.

A very confiderable portion of the inhabitants of the town is compofed of people of this description. Grown into affluence by the general profperity that followed the conquest of the fettlement, ferjeants, and corporals, and trumpeters, are now men of the firft confequence, keep their flaves, and horfes, and carriages, and wallow in all the luxuries that the colony affords. But though they afpire to the rank of gentlemen, they cannot difguife the cloven foot. They are grofs in their manners, and vulgar in their converfation. Their language, in the prefence of women, is fo coarfe and indecent, as would not be tolerated among civilized fociety. A fingle inftance of this will be fufficient to fhew to what a low degree of delicacy and refinement they are yet advanced. One of this vulgar herd, who is confidered as a great man in the Cape, took his wife and daughters to fee a whale, that had been thrown afhore near Green Point. It happened to be a female and was lying on its back. The burgher being ftruck with the near refemblance of certain parts to thofe of the human fpecies, with great exultation, and in the moft vulgar and indelicate terms, pointed out his difcovery to the ladies, who feemed to relifh all the good jokes the burgher faid on this occafion; and, in prefence of a number of fpectators, the old dame actually affifted him in a very clofe, and by no means *superficial*, examination into this fingular phenomenon in natural hiftory, which, among other properties, analogous to animals that fuckle their young, determined the great Linnæus
to

to assign a place to the whale in the same class with human beings.

By indolent habits, excess of food, and fondness for indulging in sleep, they become no less gross in their persons, than vulgar in their manners. A young lady described the Cape and its inhabitants in very few words. *De menschen zyn moie dik en vet de huizen moei wit en groen.* "The people are all nice and plump; the houses are prettily whitewashed and painted green." I believe there is no country in the world that affords so large a proportion of unwieldy and bulky people; and I am certain there is none where the animal appetites are indulged with less restraint, the most predominant of which are eating and drinking, or where the powers of body or mind are capable of less exertion. "When the Devil catches a man idle he generally sets him to work," is a proverb which is every day exemplified at the Cape of Good Hope. They are active only in mischief; and crimes against morality meet with applause if the end be successful. A man, who in his dealings can cheat his neighbour, is considered as a *slim mensch*, a clever fellow; even stealing is not regarded as criminal, nor does it materially affect the character of the thief. Truth is not held as a moral virtue, and lying passes for ingenuity.

There is a great want of affection among near relations; it has been observed, indeed, that there are scarcely two brothers in the Cape who will speak to each other. The manner in which children are brought up, and in which the economy of a family is managed, is little favourable to social intercourse, or
likely

likely to excite that harmony of sentiment and union of interests which, in more civilized countries, are cherished and grow to maturity by the genial warmth and cheerfulness and comfort of a family fire-side. Here the members of the same family seldom meet together. The husband, having slept the greatest part of the day, finds his bed irksome in the morning and rises with the dawn. He takes his solitary cup of coffee, or *sopie*, or both, and smokes his pipe; then lounges about the house in his *slaap mutz* and *nagt cabaay*, his night cap and gown, or parades the *stoop*, or raised platform before the door, in the same dress, with a long pipe stuck in his mouth. About nine o'clock he takes a solid breakfast, and a few glasses of wine, continues to lounge about the house till dinner-hour, which is punctually at twelve, or, if the weather be tempting, or any news stirring, he walks out to meet his comrades. Immediately after dinner he goes to bed, rises again at five or six, makes or receives visits, when he smokes tobacco and drinks wine till nine o'clock, which is the signal for every one to repair to his own house. Here a hot supper, consisting of eight, ten, or even twenty solid dishes of fish and butcher's meat, dressed in a variety of shapes, is ready to receive him, smoking on the table. This is the favourite meal, to which he considers all that he has eaten and drunken and smoked in the course of the day, as whets only to the appetite, and preparatives to the grand feast. Thus day after day,

" The lazy glutton safe at home will keep,

" Indulge his sloth, and fatten with his sleep."

The

The good woman of the house rises about the same early hour with her husband; takes her coffee alone; scolds the slaves; sets them their daily task; dresses for a *vendutie* or public sale, of which there are never fewer than three or four in the town, or its vicinity, every day of the week; comes home to dinner at twelve, and then goes to bed; rises again with her husband, receives or pays visits with him; but here they separate; the men drink and smoke in one room; the women are left to themselves in another. The poor children scramble as well as they can among the slaves, to whom they are consigned, one in one room, and another in another; each, in the better sort of families, having its proper slave, called its *aya*, a Malay term, borrowed, perhaps, from the Portuguese or Italian, signifying nurse or protectress; and, by an inevitable consequence, the *aya* is looked up to through life with more affection than the natural parents.

Little as character is regarded, they are extremely tenacious of their rank. More quarrels have arisen about ladies taking precedence in the church, or placing their chairs nearest the pulpit, than on any other occasion. In the government of Lord Macartney a serious dispute arose on this subject, between the ladies of the Landrost or Chief Magistrate of the district, and of the Minister of the parish; and memorial was presented after memorial on both sides, stating their mutual claims and mutual grievances. His Lordship, feeling the delicacy of interposing his authority between two ladies of such high rank, recommended a compromise, suggesting, in case that should not go down, that he would be under the necessity of adopting the

VOL. II. P decision

decision of the Emperor Charles the Fifth, when on a somewhat similar occasion he settled a dispute of precedency between two women of fashion at Bruffels; "Let the greatest sim-
 "pleton of the two have the *pas*;" which made the two ladies prodigiously civil to each other ever afterwards, both striving which should give, instead of take, the precedency. A Dutch nobleman, who is the only titled man in the colony, and who held in the old government one of the highest employments, felt no degradation in associating with butchers, nor in bestowing the hand of his daughter on an attorney who, for his mal-practices, had been publicly declared *infamous* by the Court of Justice; but he would have thought himself disgraced if his wife and daughter were deprived of their rank in the church.

There are, however, as must be the case in every society, a number of worthy people in the colony, to whom the above observations do not apply: men, whose talents and information, propriety of conduct, and strict integrity, would command respect in any part of the world; but the number of these is comparatively so small, as to make only an exception to the general character. I need scarcely observe, that these people met with that consideration and attention from the British government to which they were entitled; whilst those of the other class experienced the neglect and contempt they so justly deserved.—But to return to *Klaas Stuurman* and his party.

From the barbarous treatment of the boors towards the Hot-
 tentots in their service, of which we had ourselves been wit-
 nesses

nesses in many instances, it would have been an act of the greatest inhumanity to attempt to force these poor creatures back again upon their old masters; yet a very serious difficulty arose, how to dispose of them. Part of the troops, that composed the detachment under General Vandeleur, consisted of the strength of the Hottentot corps, otherwise called the Cape regiment. This body of men had been partly formed under the Dutch government, and, in fact, were the only serviceable troops that opposed the British forces in the pass of Muysenberg, where they acted with spirit, though unsupported. After the capitulation, General Sir James Craig found it expedient, for many reasons, to take them into the British service, and to increase their numbers. He considered in the first place, that, from their rooted antipathy to the boors, they could always be employed as useful agents to quell any disturbances that might arise in the distant districts. He saw, also, that they were capable of being formed into excellent soldiers. In short, after an experience of near two years, the character he gave them was that of an orderly, tractable, and faithful body of men; ready on all occasions to obey the orders of their officers with cheerfulness and alacrity. And they have since shewn themselves highly deserving of the favourable testimony of Sir James Craig. During three years' service in the distant district of Graaf Reynet, in the course of which time they were required, by an unfortunate and unavoidable train of events, to act against their own countrymen and comrades, they never shrunk from their duty, and, if I recollect right, one single man only deserted in the whole corps.

A Hottentot is capable of strong attachments ; with a readiness to acknowledge, he possesses the mind to feel, the force of a benevolent action. I never found that any little act of kindness or attention was thrown away upon a Hottentot ; but, on the contrary, I have frequently had occasion to remark the joy that sparkled on his countenance, whenever an opportunity occurred to enable him to discharge his debt of gratitude. I give full credit to all that Monsieur Le Vaillant has said with regard to the fidelity and attachment he experienced from this race of men ; of whom the natural character and disposition seem to approach nearer to those of the Hindûs than of any other nation.

Is it not then a most unaccountable circumstance, that the Dutch should have given the preference to a race of men, of talents much inferior, and whose temper, always capricious, becomes on slight provocations cruel and revengeful?—I mean the Malay slaves. The negroes of Mosambique and of Madagascar are harmless and stupid on their first arrival, but soon become cunning and dishonest by intercourse with their elder brethren. In full possession of all the vices that must infallibly result from the condition of slavery, there is yet no part of the world where the domestic slaves of every description are so well treated, and so much trusted, as at the Cape of Good Hope. They are better clothed, better fed, and infinitely more comfortable than any of the peasantry of Europe. Yet such are the bad effects, which the condition of slavery produces on the mind, that they are incapable of feeling the least spark of gratitude for good and gentle usage, whilst, under the severe hand of a rigid and cruel master, they become the best of slaves. It

is an axiom or self-evident truth, that such are and always will be the consequences of degrading man to the lowest of all conditions, that of being made the property of man.

The Dutch use little prudence or precaution with regard to their domestic slaves : in the same room where these are assembled to wait behind their master's chairs, they discuss their crude opinions of liberty and equality without any reserve ; yet they pretend to say that, just before the English got possession of the Cape, and when it was generally thought the French would be before-hand with us, the slaves who carried the sedan chairs, of which no lady is without one, used very familiarly to tell their mistresses, " We carry you now, but by-and-by it will " be your turn to carry us." The proportion of slaves to whites, of both sexes and all ages, in the town, is not more than two to one ; but that of slave men to white men is near five to one.

The field slaves belonging to the farmers are not, however, nearly so well treated as those of the town ; yet infinitely better than the Hottentots who are in their employ. The farmer, indeed, having a life-interest in the one, and only five-and-twenty years in the other, is a circumstance that may explain the difference of treatment. The one, also, is convertible property, an advantage to which they have not yet succeeded in their attempts to turn the other. The country slaves, notwithstanding, are ill fed, ill clothed, work extremely hard, and are frequently punished with the greatest severity ; sometimes with death, when rage gets the better of prudence and compassion.

In

In a country where *Christians* only are considered as human beings, and where strong prejudices prevail, the negro has little chance of obtaining justice. It has been observed, with too much truth, that if a black should only strike a white, he runs the chance of being tortured and torn in pieces, on presumptive proof that his intention was to murder; but if a white man murders a black belonging to himself, he puts him into the ground, and nothing more is said about it;—if he murders that of another, he has only to pay the owner his full value; unless, indeed, the owner should be inexorable and bring the criminal before the Court of Justice, a case which I believe has not yet happened. Such is the distribution of justice between a man compelled to be a slave, and one born to be free!

We had little doubt that the greatest number of the Hottentot men, who were assembled at the bay, after receiving favourable accounts from their comrades of the treatment they experienced in the British service, would enter as volunteers into this corps; but what was to be done with the old people, the women, and the children? Klaas Stuurman found no difficulty in making a provision for them. “Restore,” says he, “the country of which our fathers have been despoiled by the Dutch, and we have nothing more to ask.” I endeavoured to convince him how little advantage they were likely to derive from the possession of a country, without any other property, or the means of deriving a subsistence from it: but he had the better of the argument. “We lived very contentedly,” said he, “before these Dutch plunderers molested us; and why should we not do so again, if left to ourselves? Has not the *Groot* “ *Baas*

“ *Baas* (the Great Master) given plenty of grags-roots, and berries, and grasshoppers for our use; and, till the Dutch destroyed them, abundance of wild animals to hunt? And will they not return and multiply when these destroyers are gone?” We prevailed, however, upon Klaas to deliver up their arms, and, in the mean time, to follow the troops until some arrangement could be made for their future welfare.

Proceeding on our march, along the banks of the Sunday River, and among the vast thickets that almost entirely covered this part of the country, we fell in with a prodigious number of Kaffers with their cattle, belonging, as they told us, to a powerful chief named *Congo*. This man was at the head of all the other emigrant chiefs who had fled from the Kaffer country, eastward of the Great Fish River, on account of some enmity subsisting between them and their King *Gaika*, with whom I had, in vain, attempted, in company of the Landroft, to bring about a reconciliation two years before. As the position he now occupied not only encroached very much upon the territorial rights of the colony, but was also far within the line actually inhabited by the Dutch boors, we deemed it expedient to endeavour to prevail upon him to move towards the eastward; and for this purpose, we sent a messenger to request that he would give us the meeting. The answer brought back signified, that he did not care to come alone, and that he desired to know, if we had any objections to receive him at the head of a certain number of his people. The messenger being told he might bring with him any number of his attendants not exceeding thirty, he shortly made

made his appearance at the head of a party to that amount, each armed with a hassagay or spear.

On being told how necessary it was, for the sake of preserving tranquillity, that he should quit his present station among the boors, he replied, with great firmness, that the ground he then stood upon was his own by inheritance, for that his father had been cheated out of it by a Dutch Landroft of Graaf Reynet; that, however, being desirous of remaining in friendship with the English, he would remove eastward in the courfe of three days; but that it was impossible for him to cross the Great Fish River, as there was a deadly hatred, or, as he expressed it, *there was blood between Gaika and himself*; and that Gaika was then much too powerful for him.

The decided tone in which he spoke, at the head of his small party, when surrounded by British troops; his prepossessing countenance, and tall muscular figure, could not fail to excite a strong interest in his favour. An open and manly deportment, free from suspicion, fear, or embarrassment, seems to characterize the Kaffer chiefs. Though extremely good-humoured, benevolent, and hospitable, they are neither so pliant nor so passive as the Hottentot. The poorer sort are sometimes led to seek for service among the boors, and engage themselves for so many moons in consideration of so many head of cattle; and they never suffer themselves to be duped out of their hire like the easy Hottentots. The conversation with Congo ended by recommending him to withdraw his people and their cattle from
the

the banks of the Sunday River, to which he gave a kind of reluctant assent.

The whole of the party that accompanied this chief were tall, upright, and well made men; affording a clear proof that animal food is by no means necessary to promote the growth of the human species; or to add strength of fibre to the muscular parts of the body; on the contrary, reasoning from the general make and stature of the Dutch boors, who gorge themselves with animal food floating in fat, from morning till night, one would be apt to conclude, that so far from being necessary, it is not even conducive to strength of muscle; but that its only tendency was to produce a laxity of the fibres, a sluggish habit of body, and extreme corpulency; for the Dutch boors, though of a monstrous size, possess neither strength nor activity. Perhaps, indeed, these two qualities may be considered as correlatives, and that the defect of the former may be more owing to a want of the latter than to the nature of their food. Those, perhaps, who have been accustomed to observe the peasantry on the north-west coast of Ireland, a tall, strong, and brawny race of men, subsisting on butter-milk and potatoes, will think it unnecessary to produce the Kaffers as instances of the above remark; it may serve, however, to shew that difference of climate has no power to alter the general principle, and that the same cause produces the same effect in the northern parts of Europe and in the southern corner of Africa.

Milk in a curdled state is the principal food of the Kaffers. To this they sometimes add a few gramineous roots, berries of

various kinds, the seeds of the *Strelitzia Regina*, and the pith of a large palm to which botanists have given the name of *Zamia*. I observed also large tuberous roots, each the size of a man's head, of a spongy substance and an austere pungent taste, but I was not able to trace the plant of which they were the roots. They rarely kill any of their cattle unless on particular occasions. They possess no other domestic animals to yield them food. In the whole Kaffer country there is neither sheep nor goats, pigs nor poultry. They cultivate no kind of grain nor vegetables on this side of the Great Fish River, and very little on the other side; but the Kaffer tribes, more to the westward, are very considerable horticulturists. The commissioners, sent out by the British government in the year 1801, to endeavour to procure a supply of draught oxen, found extensive fields of a species of *Holcus* near the city *Leetakoo*, the capital of a tribe of Kaffers called *Boosboonas*, situate at the distance of sixteen days' journey beyond the Orange River, in the direction of north-east from the Cape.

In the official report of the commissioners, delivered to General Dundas, their entrance into this city is thus described:—
 “ Passing through several large tracts of ground, that were laid
 “ out and cultivated like so many gardens, we arrived about
 “ noon at the city of *Leetakoo*, not a little astonished to find, in
 “ this part of the world, a large and populous city. We pro-
 “ ceeded to the residence of the chief, whose name was *Moo-*
 “ *liaban*, where we found him, with the elders of the place,
 “ seated on a plain that was enclosed with wood . . . he offered
 “ us some curdled milk. After the reception he conducted us
 “ to

“ to his habitation, and introduced us to his wives and chil-
“ dren ; here also we saw numbers of women, who gazed at
“ us with astonishment. His house, like all the rest in the
“ town, was built in a circular form, being about sixteen feet
“ in diameter. The bottom part, to the height of four feet
“ from the ground, was stone laid in clay, and wooden spars
“ erected at certain distances. On the east side of the circle,
“ about the fourth part of the house was open, the other three-
“ fourths entirely closed. A round pointed roof covered the
“ whole in the form of a tent, well thatched with long reeds,
“ or with the straws of the holcus. From the centre to the
“ back part of the house, a circular apartment is made off,
“ with a narrow entrance into it, where the head of the fa-
“ mily takes his nightly rest ; the other members of the family
“ sleep in the fore part, or between the large and small circles
“ of the house. All the houses were enclosed by pallisades ;
“ and the space between these and the dwelling serves for a
“ granary and store for their grain and pulse. These granaries
“ were constructed in the form of oil jars, of baked clay, the
“ capacity of each being at the least two hundred gallons ; and
“ they were supported on tripods, composed of the same ma-
“ terial, which raised them about nine inches above the ground.
“ They were covered with a round straw roof erected on poles,
“ and sufficiently high to admit an opening into the jars, the
“ upper edges of which were from five to six feet from the
“ ground.

“ We walked through the town and observed that both
“ within it, and on every side, were plantations of that species

“ of Mimosa which constitutes the principal food of the Ca-
 “ melopardalis. We estimated the city to be, in its circum-
 “ ference, as large as Cape Town, with all the gardens of Table
 “ Valley; but it was impossible to ascertain the number of
 “ houses, on account of the irregularity of the streets, and low-
 “ ness of the buildings, but concluded they must amount some-
 “ where between two and three thousand, of the same kind,
 “ but not so large, as that of the chief. The whole population,
 “ including men, women, and children, we considered to be
 “ from ten to fifteen thousand souls. Tracing our route from
 “ the last place in the Roggeveldt, upon Mr. Barrow’s map, and
 “ continuing the same scale, we calculated the situation of
 “ *Leetakoo* to be in latitude $26^{\circ} 30'$ south, and longitude $27^{\circ} 00'$
 “ east from Greenwich.”

The women here, as well as among the eastern Kaffers,
 and indeed in all nations just emerged from a savage state,
 went through all the hard labour and drudgery that was re-
 quired for the support of the family. They not only performed
 the task of breaking up the ground with a kind of hoe made
 of iron, and afterwards planted it, but they constructed their
 habitations, and collected the materials that were necessary for
 the same. They reaped the grain, cleared it from the husk,
 and laid it up in the granaries, which, with other earthen pots
 and wooden vessels, were the work of their hands. The men
 prepare the skins and hides which serve for shoes, and make
 them up into cloaks for themselves, their wives, and children;
 they attend also the cattle, milk the cows, and hunt the ante-
 lopea

lopes and other game, with a weapon called the *Hassagai*, which is used also in battle.

I observed, in the former volume, that the Kaffers were not the aborigines of the southern angle of Africa; that they might, perhaps, derive their origin from some of those wandering tribes of Arabs known by the name of *Beduins*. I am more than ever convinced they are of Arabic origin. Their pastoral habits and manners, their kind and friendly reception to strangers, their tent-shaped houses, the remains of Islamism discoverable in one of its strongest features, the circumcision of male children, universally practised among the Kaffer hordes, all denote their affinity to the Beduin tribes. Their countenance also is Arabic; the colour only differs, which in some tribes varies from deep bronze to jet black, but most generally the latter is the prevailing colour. Nor can I suppose they owe this colour to their connection with those blacks which are usually called Negroes, as they have no resemblance, in any part of the body, to the peculiar conformation of this race of human beings. To the Ethiopians or Abyssinians they have a much closer resemblance.

The public will shortly have an opportunity of forming a better judgment, than by any description I can convey, of the Kaffer countenance and figure, from the accurate pencil of Mr. S. Daniell, who accompanied the above-mentioned commissioners, and who is preparing for publication a set of valuable prints, which are meant to describe the character and costume of the various tribes of natives that environ the Cape settlement, together

ther with accurate and spirited figures of the quadrupeds mentioned in my former volume, with others hitherto undescribed.

How far the belt of country extends in width across the southern part of Africa, inhabited by the Kaffers, is not exactly known, but the points on each coast are sufficiently ascertained to which they do not extend. To the southward of the Portuguese settlement of Rio de la Goa, the natives are Kaffers; but from the description given of them they appear to be a degenerated race. They are however *free*; nor has Portuguese avarice yet dared to attempt to make them slaves. This is not the case to the northward. At Mozambique and Soffala the black people are all negroes, not, however, at the present day, natives of the sea-coast, but such as are brought down from the interior as articles of trade. From Mozambique they have now, as appears from the information of a Portuguese slave merchant, a direct communication across the continent with their settlements of Congo, Loango, and Benguela, on the west coast, between which negro merchants are established in different parts of the country. So that there are no Kaffers in the line of this route.

The commissioners, from whose report I have above quoted, were informed at *Lectakoo* that another powerful tribe of the same nation, called the *Baroloos* dwelt at the distance of eight or ten days' journey farther to the northward. Reckoning the average of a day's journey to be twenty miles, we shall find the *Baroloos* inhabiting the country under the southern tropic; and we may conclude, from the following information which Mr. Trüter received

received of this people, that they are not the last to the northward. He was told, "That they were of a kind and friendly disposition; that their town was so extensive, that if a person set out in the morning from one extremity, and travelled to the other, he would not be able to return before the following day; that this town contained many thousand inhabitants; that the people were very ingenious in carving of wood, and that they had furnaces for smelting both copper and iron; that they were exceedingly rich in cattle; their gardens and lands were better cultivated, and their dwellings much superior to those of *Leetakoo*." The *Damaras* also, whom I mentioned in my former travels to be in possession of the art of smelting copper from the ore, as well as I could collect from report, are inhabitants of the Tropic; and they are complete Kaffers, differing in nothing from those on the eastern coast. I should suppose, therefore, that a line drawn from the 24th parallel of latitude on the east coast, to the 20th on the west, may mark the boundary, or nearly so, between the Kaffers and the negroes.

The late Colonel Gordon was of opinion, that a line from Cape Negro, on the west coast, to Cape Corientes on the east, marked the boundaries between the Kaffers and the negroes; but in this he was obviously mistaken; a line from these two points including Portuguese settlements on both sides, that on the east coast being known to be inhabited by the same kind of stupid negroes that are natives of Mosambique. Nor have we any reason for supposing that, by the Portuguese taking possession of Rio de la Goa, the Kaffers have been driven in towards

wards the Cape of Good Hope ; for Vasco de Gama found the inhabitants of this part of the coast of a copper or brown colour, clothed in cotton, in silk, and satin bonnets ; and a little further to the northward he met with Indian ships having on board both compasses and charts. The Arabs, in fact, at that time, had possession of all the coast from Cape Corientes to the Red Sea.

The tribe of Congo appeared to be very prolific ; children, in swarms, issued from the thickets ; and such as were under the age of eight or nine years were perfectly naked ; they exhibited no appearances of being scantily fed, but, on the contrary, were plump and healthful.

Just the reverse was the condition of their dogs. These animals were the most lean and miserable looking creatures I ever beheld, and their numbers seemed little inferior to those of the children. It is a fortunate circumstance for the Kaffers, and equally so for the colonists, who are no less fond of dogs than the former, that, notwithstanding the heat of the climate, the canine madness, with its concomitant and remarkable symptom the hydrophobia or dread of water, is totally unknown. One of the greatest nuisances in Cape Town is the number of dogs that prowl about the streets (acknowledging no master) particularly by night, when they quit their dens and lurking places, in quest of the offals of butchers' shops. In this respect, however, they are of use, for the lazy Dutchman conceives he has done his part by casting them out of the slaughter-house into the street. Before the English brought in a garrison of five thousand men,

the head, the heart, the liver, &c. were all included among the offals; but an increase in the consumption having caused an increase in the price of butchers' meat, these parts of the animal have, of late, been sold as well as the carcase; and the dogs have consequently less to clear away. Sometimes the wolves and hyenas descend from their dens in the Table Mountain, and dispute the spoil with the dogs: at such times the town resounds with their hideous howlings the whole night long.

The circumstance of Southern Africa being free from the canine madness, and also from the small pox, would lead one to conclude that neither the one nor the other of these diseases were of spontaneous origin; but that actual biting in the one case, and actual contact in the other, were necessary for their production. Whatever may have been the cause that first created those diseases, it should seem such cause has not yet existed here, or that the climate is unfavourable for its operation. Twice since the foundation of the colony the small pox have been brought into it, and both times have committed dreadful havock among the settlers. That such will always be the fatal effects, may readily be imagined among so gross a people, unprepared for the reception of the disease, and ignorant how to treat it; but it is not so easy to conceive in what manner they got rid of it. I believe it is now forty years since the last time it made its appearance. All the old Kaffers, I observed, were strongly marked with it; the disease, they say, was brought among them by a ship that was stranded on their coast; and I should conclude it has visited them since the time it was last brought into Cape Town, as the chief Congo, who could not,

when we saw him, be above thirty years of age, was marked with the small pox. It is rather singular that a disease, which is supposed to have originated in the northern parts of this continent, and from thence disseminated into every corner of the world, should neither be endemic in the southern extremity of the same continent, nor its contagious effects, when carried thither, of permanent duration.

I am aware that some modern authors have traced the origin of the small pox to Arabia, where it was common at the time of the flight from Mecca; but I think Doctor Mead's opinion more probable, that, at a much earlier period it prevailed, along with the plague, in Ethiopia and other inland countries of Northern Africa. For had a disease of so contagious a nature been endemic in Arabia, in the beginning of the seventh century, when the inhabitants of this country were the carriers of the eastern, and the conquerors of the western world, its baneful effects would sooner have been experienced in foreign nations. That the Saracens and Arabians were the means of dispersing it through the world, there can be little doubt. The Chinese, according to their own annals, had it from the latter in the tenth century; and as Doctor Mead has observed, in the beginning of the twelfth century it gained vast ground by means of the wars waged by a confederacy of the Christian powers against the Saracens for the recovery of the Holy Land; "This being," says the Doctor, "the only visible recompence of their religious expeditions, which they brought back to their respective countries." The Ethiopians being a race of people almost unknown, and shut out from all commerce with

with the rest of the world, will account for its long confinement to its native soil.

That canine madness is not owing to heat of climate, as we are apt to suppose in England, may be inferred from its non-existence in Egypt, in the West India islands, and other tropical situations, as well as at the Cape of Good Hope.

From the banks of the Sunday River to head-quarters in Bruyntjes Hoogté, little occurred that was worthy of notice. The observation I formerly made, that men and other animals in Southern Africa appear to increase in their bulk, in proportion to the elevation of the country of which they are inhabitants, was forcibly exemplified in our journey from the Zuure Veld to Bruyntjes Hoogté. On the plains of the former, stretching along the sea-coast, seldom subject to long drought, and well covered with grass, the cattle are generally lean and of a diminutive size, and sheep will scarcely exist. On the heights of the latter, where half the surface of the ground is naked, and the grass found only here and there in tufts, they have the finest oxen, without exception, in the whole colony, and sheep equal to those of the snowy mountains. Nor are these heights less favourable to the growth of the human species. There is scarcely a family in which some part of it has not arrived to a very unusual size. But of all the monstrous beings I ever beheld, in the shape of a human creature, was a woman of the name of *Van Vooren*. So vast was her bulk that, although in perfect health, free from rheumatic or other local complaints, and under forty years of age, she had not been

able to walk for the last twelve years of her life; nor, what was still more extraordinary, to raise herself to a sitting posture upon the bed without the help of a stick, tied by the middle with a string, and suspended from the roof. Her arm, above the elbow, measured 23 Dutch inches, or $23\frac{2}{3}$ English, in circumference. Yet, in this helpless and deplorable situation, Mademoiselle, for she was an unmarried lady, contrived to fulfil the end of her creation, by bringing into the world a fine healthy child. The fate, however, of this extraordinary person, as I have since been informed, was attended with very melancholy circumstances. In the subsequent wars between the boors and the Hottentots, the house in which she lived was attacked and set on fire. All the rest of the family effected their escape, except this unfortunate creature, whom they found it impossible, on account of her size, to get through the door, and were therefore under the necessity of leaving to perish in the flames.

From Bruyntjes Hoogté we proceeded to the Kaffer frontier. The Great Fish River was now so low, that except in those places where it stood in deep holes, we could cross it without wetting our feet. Not a single hippopotamus was now to be seen in any of those holes, where, on my former visit, they were so abundant. I suspect they occasionally migrate to other rivers, and if so it must be over land, as the sea affords no subsistence for them, nor does it appear that they can long remain in salt water near the mouths of rivers. It is certain, at least, that they always quit such situations at night, and travel over land, sometimes many miles, in search of fresh water. So that the
Dutch

Dutch name of *sea-cow* is equally improper as their ancient appellation of hippopotamus or river-horse. The river rhinosceros would be a more appropriate name than any other, although it has no horns upon its nose, which obtained for the land animal the appellation of the *nose-horn*, ρινῶς κέρασ. With the natural history and habits of this extraordinary amphibious animal (if I may be allowed to call it so), we are very imperfectly acquainted; nor have I seen any figure that conveys an accurate representation of its character, shape, and magnitude, except in a drawing made from nature by Mr. Daniell, from which a print will appear in his intended publication. Nor do I know of any good figure of the African rhinosceros, which is altogether different from that of India covered with its hide of mail. The skin of the two-horned rhinosceros is comparatively smooth, and has none of the folds so remarkable in that of the one-horned species; but it is so thick that the Dutch boors cut out of it their largest *sambocs* or horse-rods, which, if well prepared, are better than those of the hippopotamus, and transparent as amber. The head of this animal is very remarkable. Not only the horns sit upon the nose, but the eyes also are placed in it, being directly under the root of the larger horn; and they are so minute, that one would suppose them of little use to so huge a creature. But nature, always provident, has remedied this seeming inconvenience by placing them in projecting sockets, in which they turn in all directions like those of the little camelion. Had the eye been placed in the usual part of the face, just below the projecting forehead, which is very large, the visual rays would have embraced only about 180 degrees, or half of the horizon; whereas, in their present position, they

have a much greater scope, being able, I should suppose, without any motion of the head, to sweep from 260 to 270 degrees. Of two varieties of this animal Mr. Daniell has made excellent drawings, in one of which the upper horn is almost as large as the lower, and is pointed towards it.

Having collected the forces that had been stationed along the banks of the Great Fish River, we set out upon our return to Algoa Bay. On approaching the Sunday River, and perceiving that the Kaffers had made no preparations for departing, it was thought advisable to renew the message to their chief Congo. In the mean time the troops and the waggons proceeded on their march. After waiting some time the messenger returned without being able to speak to the chief. Whatever reluctance Congo had discovered to quit the station he had taken up among the colonists, it never entered into our calculations that he would be rash and imprudent enough to commence an attack against a large body of regular troops. Such, however, was the step he chose to take, at the instigation, as we afterwards found, of some of the rebel boors, who had fled amongst his people, in preference of appearing before the General in Bruyntjes Hoogté. Just as we came up with the main body a sudden alarm was raised in the rear. A Hottentot driver of one of the waggons was killed by a hassagai that had been thrown at him by some person posted in ambush. Kaffers began to appear in great numbers on all the heights, collecting, apparently, with a view to attack us; and several were observed close upon us lurking in the bushes. Being at this awkward juncture in a narrow defile, choked almost with brushwood, and surrounded with Kaffers,

we

we found it necessary to discharge two or three rounds of grape from two field-pieces, in order to clear the thickets.

The situation of the country became more and more embarrassing. It was a point that required some management to prevent a junction between the Kaffers, urged by the rebel boors to this act of aggression, and the dissatisfied Hottentots, that were every where flying from the persecutions of their masters. To get the latter down to the plains near Algoa Bay, as speedily as possible, was the most advisable measure; accordingly, accompanied by a few dragoons, I took charge of the Hottentots and their cattle, and we pursued our journey to the southward; whilst the General marched back into the Zuure Veld, in order to pick up a party of infantry that had been stationed there, with a view of cutting off a retreat of the boors into the Kaffer country.

Whether it happened that, in passing through the woods, we had picked up some of the cattle belonging to the Kaffers, or that they had a design upon those of the Hottentots that were driven before us, is not certain; but on our arrival, towards the evening, at Zwart Kop's River, a number of the Kaffers were observed lurking among the shrubbery. About the middle of the night, the centinel, which we had placed by way of precaution, gave the alarm of an enemy. Upon this a serjeant of dragoons observing something move in the dark, rushed into the bushes, and, firing his pistol, brought a man to the ground. It was a young well-looking Kaffer about six feet high. He made great efforts to remain on his feet, but weakened by loss of blood,

blood, he could not stand without support. On examining his wound, we found the ball had entered just below the shoulder blade, and passed through the right breast. With some difficulty we contrived to stop the hemorrhage, and to bind up the wound, after washing it well with milk and water. From the distortions of countenance, and the large drops of sweat that ran over his body, it was very evident that he suffered a violent degree of pain; but he neither vented a sigh nor a groan, nor could be prevailed upon to open his lips, although spoken to in his own language by a Hottentot interpreter. We caused him to be carried into a clean straw hut, and milk in a curdled state to be brought to him, but he refused it. At an early hour in the morning I went to the hut to inquire after the patient's health, but he was gone. The *coffray*, or infidel, at the point of death, thought it safer to crawl into the woods, than to remain in the hands of Christians.

From Zwart Kop's River we proceeded to a plain that is contiguous to Algoa Bay, where, to our great astonishment, we found the whole of the boors and their families assembled, who had been plundered by the Hottentots, with their cattle and waggons and the remains of their property, waiting our arrival; in order, as they said, to claim protection against the heathens. It was a painful situation to be thus placed between two parties, each claiming protection, and each vowing vengeance against the other, without possessing the means of keeping them asunder. My whole strength consisted in about a dozen dragoons; the Hottentots, great and small, amounted to upwards of five hundred; and the boors, with their families, to about
one

one hundred and fifty. Fortunately the Rattlesnake was still in the bay, and I obtained from Captain Gooch twenty armed seamen; and, the more effectually to keep the contending parties in order, I caused a swivel gun to be mounted on a post immediately between the boors and the Hottentots.

In this state, after many days anxiety, in which none passed without quarrels and bickerings between the boors and Hottentots, I received a letter from General Vandeleur, stating, that the Kaffers, instigated by the rebel boors, had been led to the bold measure of attacking his camp near Bosjesman's River, for the sake, as he supposed, of obtaining a supply of gunpowder; that the latter had kept up a pretty brisk fire from behind the bushes, but that the Kaffers finding it useless to oppose their long missile weapons against musquetry, retired for a moment but soon appeared again, rushing forward upon the open plain, with the iron part only of the Haffagai in their hands. That, however, after several rounds of grape from the field-pieces, and the fire of the infantry, by which numbers were killed, they retreated into the thickets.

These people soon perceived of how much greater advantage was a short weapon to a muscular arm, than a long missile spear, whose slow motion through the air makes it easily to be avoided. The blade of the Roman sword, which once conquered the world, was only about fifteen inches long, and such a sword would, perhaps, at this awful moment, be well suited for the nervous arm and the bold and invincible spirit of a Briton.

The same letter gave an account of an unfortunate affair that happened to Lieutenant Chumney and twenty men of the 81st regiment. This officer had been detached towards the sea-coast, and was returning to the camp at Bosjesman's River, when he was surprized among the thickets by a large party of Kaffers, who attacked them hand to hand with the iron part of their Hassagais, the wooden shaft being previously broken off. This young officer defended himself bravely till sixteen of his party were killed. The remaining four, with a Dutch boor, got into a waggon that accompanied the detachment, and arrived safe at the camp. Poor Chumney was on horseback, and when the waggon set out had three Hassagais sticking in his body. Finding himself mortally wounded, and perceiving that the whole aim of the enemy was directed towards him, he made a sign to the waggon to drive off; and turning his horse, he set off in a contrary direction, pursued by the whole body of Kaffers; affording thus an opportunity for the small remains of his party to save their lives by flight.

In this situation of affairs the rebel boors, associated with the Kaffers, contrived to circulate a report among the Hottentots at Algoa Bay, that it was the intention of the English to put them on board ship, and to send them to the Cape. Such an idea created no small degree of alarm among these poor creatures; and I observed on the following morning, that a great number had stolen away in the night; and, as we afterwards found, had joined the Kaffers. This malicious and ill-judged conduct of the boors was the cause of all the subsequent misfortunes that befel themselves and their countrymen, and ultimately brought
on

on their own destruction. For it not only defeated our intention of carrying into effect such arrangements as were likely to have reconciled the two parties to each other; but it was, likewise, the means of bringing together a collective body of Kafers and Hottentots, whose first step was to drive all the boors out of their society, to plunder them of the rest of their cattle, set fire to their houses, and put several of them to death. Having cleared the whole of the lower part of Graaf Reynet, they advanced into the district of Zwellendam. Their whole hatred was levelled against the boors. Single dragoons carrying dispatches have frequently been met by large parties of these plunderers, and suffered to pass without molestation. Even a house, which they discovered at Plettenberg's Bay to belong to an English gentleman, they left undisturbed, whilst all the rest that fell in their way were burnt to the ground.

The same house, however, was afterwards plundered by a party of boors who had been collected by the magistrates of Zwellendam to clear the district of the Kafers and Hottentots. These unprincipled men, either out of revenge, or from an irresistible impulse to mischief, broke open the house, carried away clothing and every thing that was portable, drank all the wine and spirits they could find, and made themselves completely intoxicated. Yet the very men who committed those enormities, were, at that moment, under the impression that their dearest connexions (if it were possible any thing could be dear to such men), their wives, and children, were massacred by the enemy, into whose hands they knew them to have fallen. They had been met, it seems, a few days before, in a narrow

pass by a party of Kaffers and Hottentots, and, as usual, on perceiving the enemy, mounted their horses and galloped away as fast as they could, leaving their wives and children and wag-gons in the possession of the robbers.

No outrage nor injury were offered to the prisoners, but, on the contrary, as on all similar occasions, they were treated with respect. They even dispatched a Hottentot after the fugitive boors to say, that if they chose to ransom their wives and children for a small quantity of powder and lead, and a dozen head of cattle, they should instantly be delivered up. It is natural to suppose that, under such circumstances, the ties of kindred affection would have superseded all considerations of prudence, and have stifled resentment; and that a proposal, which held out such easy terms for the recovery of their wives and children, would have been seized with avidity. This, however, was not the case. An African boor has no such feelings; his passions, uncontrolled by the powers of reason or reflection, are always predominant. One of the party, recognising the Hottentot, thus sent to them, to have once been in his service, and recollecting he was now standing before him in the shape of an enemy, and defenceless, fired at once with rage and revenge, snatched up his musquet in his hand, and shot him dead upon the spot. Intelligence of this atrocious act was speedily conveyed, by the companion of the deceased, to the Kaffers and Hottentots; and it was reported, and believed, that they had in consequence put all the women and children to death. And under this impression, as I have before observed, the husbands and fathers of these women and children broke open Mr. Cal-

lander's house, and were dancing, in a state of intoxication, upon the green. The prisoners, however, were given up, notwithstanding the murder of the messenger; for they disdained, as they told them, to take away the lives of the innocent; but that they should soon find an opportunity of avenging the death of their countryman upon their husbands, together with the many injuries and oppressions under which they had so long been labouring.

It is painful to dwell on subjects that disgrace human nature, but as the atrocities of the African colonists have hitherto escaped the punishment of the law, all that can be done is to expose them to the horror and detestation of mankind. The following act stated officially to government by Mr. Vander Kemp, a missionary in Graaf Reynet, is enough to make one shudder at the name of a Cape boor. This zealous and intelligent man, on finding the Kaffers were not disposed to profit by his instructions, established himself under the sanction of government near the Sunday River, in order to try his success with the more tractable Hottentots. His little village soon became an asylum for the poor fugitives, who, after their skirmishes with the boors, had concealed themselves among the rocks and thickets. They now fled to Mr. Vander Kemp as to a place of security, and to one on whom, being, as they considered him to be, in the service of the British government, they could place unbounded confidence. Among others, one poor fellow with his wife and child, in his way to the asylum, called at a boor's house in Lange Kloof of the name of Van Roy,

Roy, a relation of the man who shot the three deserters, to ask for a little milk for his wife and child, who were nearly exhausted with hunger. The unfeeling monster seized the man, and bringing a loaded musquet, ordered a Hottentot in his service to shoot him ; the Hottentot obstinately persisting to refuse, the exasperated boor snatched the gun and shot him dead upon the spot, and then caused the other Hottentot with his wife and child to be murdered ! If, observes Mr. Vander Kemp, atrocious deeds like these are to pass with impunity, the unfortunate Hottentots, not knowing whom to trust, would be driven to desperation, and a general insurrection would be the consequence.

It is, indeed, much less surprising that this nation should, at length, be roused to a spirit of vengeance, than that it should so long and so patiently have endured every species of injury. As pretended friends, and masters, the boors have always treated them with injustice and oppression ; as enemies, with barbarous inhumanity. In their expeditions against the Bosjesmans, of which I have spoken at large in the former volume, their chief aim is to murder the men, and make the children slaves. I cannot convey a better idea in what manner they have been accustomed to conduct their hostile expeditions against the Kaffers, than by inserting a few articles of the instructions, proposed by the Landroft of one of the districts, to be given to the commandant.

“ Article 1st. No unnecessary cruelty to be exercised on the prisoners, on pain of exemplary punishment.

“ Article

“ Article 2d. The women and children, and *especially* those
 “ of the Kaffers, that may happen to fall into the hands of the
 “ *Commando*, are not to be mal-treated, nor the children taken
 “ away ; but, on the contrary, to be safely returned by a proper
 “ person to their respective families, after the *late example*
 “ *shewn by the Kaffers at Plettenberg’s Bay.*” (This alludes to
 the circumstances I have already related.)

“ Article 3d. On the conquest of any kraal (village) the huts
 “ are not to be set on fire, as usual ; as there is every reason for
 “ supposing that, *to this practice alone*, the burning and plun-
 “ dering of our farm-houses are to be ascribed.

“ Article 4th. *The dead carcases of the enemy are not to be*
 “ *violated*, as has usually been the practice of the evil-disposed
 “ part of the *Commandos*, by *cutting them with knives, lashing*
 “ *them with waggon whips, and backing them with stones* ; as
 “ such conduct tends only to exasperate the enemy, and induces
 “ them to commit murder.

“ Article 5th. It is not, perhaps, advisable for the boors, *in*
 “ *the first instance*, to take away the cattle of the Kaffers ; be-
 “ cause, by doing this, the enemy will always be tempted to
 “ hover round the *Commando* in order to watch a favourable
 “ opportunity to retake them ; besides, to guard a consider-
 “ able number of cattle, by requiring many men, weakens the
 “ *Commando* ; they ought therefore to confine their operations
 “ to the pursuit of the enemy, and to expel them the country,
 “ by

“ by which *the whole of their cattle will, of course, fall into the hands of the boors.*”

This curious production concludes by observing that, “ although all the above points have been repeatedly urged to the Commandants, it will avail nothing unless they be enforced by the government.” He might have added that, removed as they were out of the reach and inspection of government, no recommendation nor orders would be attended to by men who were so completely under the dominion of their brutal passions. I should not have ventured to give the fourth article of these extraordinary instructions as authentic, had it not appeared before me as an official document. The British government was much too mild and moderate for a set of men of so odious a character as their own countryman has here described them, in the articles of his instructions. Such men will never become civilized until they are “ ruled with a rod of iron.” The most lenient measures, replete with every indulgence, have been tried without success. Not one sentiment of gratitude ever escaped them for a full pardon of all their offences, and the remission of a large debt ; on the contrary, rebellion raised its head in the same moment that indulgence was extended. So conscious, indeed, are they of their wickedness, that, whenever they escape punishment, they conclude that the government no longer possesses the power of inflicting it, and that it spares them only because it is convenient to let them alone. Yet to what a wretched condition might they be reduced by one single act of the government ; forbidding them all access to the Cape,
and

and depriving them of gunpowder ; both of which might easily and completely be effected by the small military post at Algoa Bay.

However desirable it might have been to apprehend and punish the rebels, who had instigated the Kaffers to acts of hostility against the British troops, yet it was by no means advisable, in order to obtain that point, to wage an unequal contest with savages in the midst of impenetrable thickets, whose destruction would have added little lustre to the British arms, and been advantageous only to the very people who had urged them on. General Vandeleur, therefore, very prudently withdrew his forces, and marched them down to Algoa Bay, where part of them were embarked on board the *Rattlesnake*, and the rest intended to proceed to the Cape by easy marches. Subsequent events, however, delayed their departure, and rendered the presence of troops necessary at Algoa Bay until the evacuation of the colony.

Having delivered over the remaining Hottentots, on the return of the General, and finding I could be of no further use, I set out for the Cape, where, after a journey of sixteen days, performed with two horses, I arrived on the 8th of June.

Little occurred on the homeward journey that was worthy of observation, unless it was the visible change that had taken place in the behaviour of the people of Zwellendam. While the boors of Graaf Reynet were still in arms, the inhabitants of this neighbouring district appeared to be wavering, but on hear-

ing of their complete reduction, they now pretended to condemn their conduct: Whatever the real sentiments of the colonists might be with regard to the British government, this was not their last attempt to effect their avaricious designs on the cattle of the Kaffers, by commencing hostilities against the magistrates and the small force left in Graaf Reynet for their protection. But these disturbances were merely local, and had plunder only for their object. All the other districts remained quiet; and long before the intelligence of a general peace had reached this country, the people were so much reconciled to the British government, as neither to expect nor wish for a return of their own.

In fact there is no natural tie between the Cape and the United Provinces. The greater part of the colonists, being the descendants of soldiers in German regiments, composed of Prussians, Hanoverians, Flemings, and Poles, and of French refugees who took shelter here after the revocation of the edict of Nantz, have neither knowledge of, nor family connections in, the states of the Batavian republic; nor have they any distinct idea of *Vaderland*, a word, however, that is constantly in their mouths. All they know is, that the Cape belonged to a company of merchants; that this company was their sovereign; and that they used to see a flag with three broad horizontal stripes, red, white, and blue, flying upon the castle, instead of the *Spinnekop*, or spider legs, as they called the British ensign. A few years more would therefore, in all probability, have rendered them, or the greatest part of them, very indifferent as to the government under which they were to remain.

Some little rejoicing might, however, naturally be supposed to take place on seeing once again the same flag hoisted on the castle walls, which they had always been accustomed to look at; and they would have shewn themselves a very worthless and despicable people not to have testified their feelings of joy on such an occasion. These rejoicings, however, were neither general nor tumultuous, nor of long duration; they were chiefly confined within the castle walls. The recollection of the miserable condition of the colony at the capture, and the general prosperity that had rapidly succeeded it, seemed forcibly to have operated at this moment. From a state of poverty, and almost general bankruptcy, they were now grown individually rich. Instead of near half a million sterling, that for the last seven years had annually been expended in the colony by the army, the navy, and English settlers, they now began to consider that half of this sum might annually be taken out of their pockets for the maintenance of their future garrison. Little care, indeed, was taken to conceal that such was the design of the Batavian government under the present exhausted state of its finances.

They saw likewise that the settlement, though nominally restored to the Batavian republic, was actually to become a colony of France. Of this they had many convincing proofs. The commandant of the troops was a Frenchman of Swiss extraction, and half of the officers were French. A native of the Cape, who had held an employ of considerable importance under the old government, happening to be in Holland

at the time when the definitive treaty of peace was signed, made application to the State Directory for a very high situation at the Cape, which, however, they thought proper to refuse. He went to Paris; obtained an audience of Buonaparte, or his minister, in consequence of which an *order* was sent to the State Government to revise their motives of refusal.

Another instance of French influence prevailing at the Cape was too striking to be overlooked. A Swiss gentleman, who had filled a high and honourable station in the service of the English East India Company in Bengal, but for some reason or other had been dismissed, passed through the Cape on his return to England, and became enamoured of its attractions. His wife, in his absence, being handsome and much younger than himself, engaged the attention of Mr. Talleyrand, and lived with him as his mistress, until the French government had found it convenient to pass a resolution *that there was a God*, and therefore that there ought to be a religion, when the former Bishop of Autun found no difficulty in obtaining a dispensation from the Pope to marry her. The husband, on his return to Europe, proceeded to Paris, where Mr. Talleyrand, to prevent his becoming troublesome, recommended him to accept of a high appointment at the Cape of Good Hope, where, I understand, he arrived within a month after the evacuation, not as plain Mr. G——, late of the English East India Company's service, but as *Monsieur Le G——, Conseiller privé et intime de la République Batave auprès du Gouverneur et Conseil au Cap de Bonne Esperance.*

It

It also appeared, from the conduct of the three commissioners that were sent out to arrange certain points with the British government, that French interest was likely to predominate at the Cape. These gentlemen, though calling themselves Dutch, made a hard struggle, though without success, that the minutes of their joint transactions, and correspondence with the commissioners that were appointed on the part of the British government, should be kept in the French language. In short, every step that was taken by the new government, clearly evinced that, although the Batavian flag might be suffered to fly, French influence was likely to prevail. Long, indeed, before the peace, it was become pretty evident that Holland was not in a condition to make any successful struggle in defence of her integrity or existence, and that an incorporation with Belgium, and becoming a department of France, would, in all probability, be the final *Euthanasia* of their *High Mightinesses*, the United Provinces.

These and other considerations produced a gloominess and melancholy on the minds of the greater part of the colonists that bordered on despondency. When the day of evacuation arrived, the castle and the road to the wharf were lined with spectators; not drawn together for the sake of expressing a boisterous joy usual on such occasions, but to take a melancholy farewell of their best friends. As General Dundas passed along with the Commissary General de Mist and the Governor Jansens, a dead silence prevailed; not a word nor a murmur was heard. And the friendly and affectionate leave the Commanders in Chief of the two garrisons took of each other, after the delicate and trying
situation

situation in which, for the two last months, they had been placed, in consequence of the order from England countermanding the restoration of the settlement, was highly honourable to their feelings as men and officers. Few places, I believe, have been ceded by one power to another with more regularity and less commotion, than what happened at the restoration of the Cape of Good Hope, by General Dundas on the part of his Majesty's Government to the representatives of the Batavian Republic.

C H A P. III.

Importance of the Cape of Good Hope considered as a Military Station.

Views of the British Government in taking Possession of the Cape—State of that Colony—Arrival of the British Forces—Behaviour of the Inhabitants—Capture of the Settlement—general Opinion of its Importance—Plans for its Government.—Lord Macartney appointed Governor.—Resolution of the Minister.—Conduct of the present Directors of the East India Company—compared with that of those in the American War.—Consequences of our Failure in the Expedition against the Cape at that Time.—Considerations proposed in a Treaty with Holland in 1787—Opinion of Lord Macartney.—Holland not desirous to have the Cape.—Order of the East India Company prohibiting their Ships to touch at the Cape—countermanded with regard to Ships navigated by Lascars.—Condition of two Regiments brought to the Cape in such Ships.—Design of the following Part of this Work.—Meaning of the Term Military Station.—Soldiers, what.—Importance of forming Men previous to Embarkation.—Inconveniences attending a Sea Voyage.—India not favourable for forming Recruits into Soldiers.—A middle Station desirable.—Cape of Good Hope, great Advantages of in this Respect—possesses all the Requisites desired by the East India Company as a Depot.—Healthiness of Climate, various Proofs of—seasons the Constitution for India—remarkable Instance of in upwards of two thousand Men sent to India—another in twelve hundred to the Red Sea.—Difficulties started against this Expedition.—Importance of the Cape on Account of the small Expence of subsisting Troops there.—Value of the Ration here and elsewhere.—Price of Provisions—of Wine.—Profits derived by the Government at the Cape from Bills on his Majesty's Paymasters— from Specie imported— from Copper Money— from issuing new Paper Money.—Expenditure in the military Department—a mere Trifle compared with the Importance of the Station—capable of being borne in Peace out of the colonial Revenues.—Importance of the Cape on account of its local Position—instanced in detecting the Views of Tippoo at

at the Isle of France—in sending Troops expeditiously to India.—Opportunities of doing this in English or neutral Ships.—General Advantages.—Importance of the Cape stated in comparison with that of Malta.—Views of the French on India—seen in the Publication of Anquetil Duperron.—Disadvantages of Malta being in the Hands of the French.—Difficulties that would attend an Expedition by Sea from Suez.—Island of Perim.—Difficulties that would occur by Land—not insurmountable.—De la Croix's Opinion of the Cape.—Defences of the Cape.—Table Bay and Site of the Town—Works—Citadel—Lines—Craig's Battery and Tower—Fort Knocke—Rogge Bay, Amsterdam, and Chavonne Batteries—the Mouillié—Camp's Bay and Batteries—Importance of the Lion's Rump—Objections against it.—Chapman and Hout Bays.—Simon's Bay.—Garrison of the Cape, Strength of.—Unprotected Coast and Bays.—Algoa Bay.—Means to be employed by an Enemy for distressing the Garrison—taken by a Coup de Main.—Garrison of the Dutch.—Disposition of the Hottentot Corps.—State of the Batavian Ships of War in the Eastern Seas.—Ammunition and Stores at the Cape.

WHEN the Prince of Orange had departed from Holland, and the subsequent affairs of that nation had rendered it sufficiently obvious that the majority of the inhabitants of the United Provinces were inclined to adopt the revolutionary principles of France, it became a measure of precaution, in our government, to take immediate possession of the Dutch colonies. Among these the Cape of Good Hope claimed the earliest attention, being considered as a settlement of too great importance to be trusted in the hands of the Dutch colonists, although it was well known the principal and greatest number of the military officers, as well as many of those who held civil appointments there, were indebted to their Prince for the situations they enjoyed in that colonial government.

An expedition was accordingly sent out to take possession of the Cape, not however in a hostile manner, but to hold it in defence

fence and security for, and in the name of, the Prince of Orange, who had furnished letters dated from London to that effect. But the misguided people of the colony, having received only imperfect accounts of affairs in Holland, and being led to expect a French force at the Cape, had already embraced the principles of Jacobinism, whose effects were the more to be dreaded on account of the consummate ignorance of the bulk of the settlers. Some French emissaries, those assiduous disturbers of the human race, who, snake like, have crept into every society and corner of the world, poisoning the springs of peace and good order, found little difficulty in urging a people, already so well disposed, to carry their principles into practice. The few officers of the government who were supposed to be attached to the cause of the Stadtholder, and friends to the old system, were completely subdued; and the weakness of the governor favoured the views of the disorderly citizens. They became clamorous to declare themselves, by some public act, a free and independent republic; they prepared to plant the tree of liberty, and established a convention, whose first object was to make out proscribed lists of those who were either to suffer death by the new-fashioned mode of the guillotine, which they had taken care to provide for the purpose, or to be banished out of the colony. It is almost needless to state that the persons, so marked out to be the victims of an unruly rabble, were the only worthy people in the settlement, and most of them members of government.

The slaves, whose numbers of grown men, as I have before observed, are about five to one of male whites who have arrived

at the growth of manhood, had also their meetings to decide upon the fate of the free and independent burghers, when the happy days of their own emancipation should arrive, which, from the conversations of their masters on the blessings of liberty and equality, and the unalienable rights of man, they were willing to suppose, could not be very distant.

In this state of things the British fleet appeared before the bay. The governor called an extraordinary council to deliberate upon the steps to be taken in this critical juncture. Some were inclined to throw the settlement under the protection of the British flag, but the governor and the greater number influenced, and perhaps intimidated, by the citizens, listened to the absurd proposals of resisting the English force, and, if successful, as they doubted not they would be, of setting up immediately a free and independent republic of their own. They talked of the thousands and ten thousands of courageous boors, who, on the signal of alarm being given, would flock to the Batavian standard; so ignorant were they of the nature and the number of their valiant countrymen. The *burgher cavalry*, a militia of country boors, who were then in the vicinity of the town, were immediately called out, and a few hundreds reluctantly obeyed the summons. The conduct and the cowardice of this undisciplined rabble, whose martial spirit had hitherto been tried only in their expeditions against the native Hottentots, might easily have been foreseen. A few shot from the *America*, man of war, striking the rocks of Muisenberg, soon cleared that important pass, and caused the regular troops to retreat to Wynberg, a tongue of land projecting from the east side of the Table

ble

ble Mountain, and about eight miles from Cape Town: the Hottentot corps still loitered about the rocks, and did some mischief, but being speedily dislodged, fell back also upon Wynberg; but the brave burgher cavalry scampered away to their respective homes without once stopping to look behind them.

The British troops, led on by General Sir James Craig, under the orders of Sir Alured Clarke, marched to attack the enemy on their elevated post; and by the assistance of the sailors, having brought his guns and artillery to bear upon them, a few shot caused them to retreat within their lines. The English encamped on the spot from which they had dislodged the enemy; who, finding it vain longer to oppose a feeble resistance, sent, in the middle of the night, a flag of truce to propose a capitulation, which was acceded to; and the next day concluded between the two parties. Most of the members of the government that were well disposed to the Prince of Orange, and had conducted themselves with propriety, were continued in office; and thus the plans of the Jacobin party were, for the present, completely defeated.

When the news of this event first reached England, the acquisition of so valuable a settlement was considered of the utmost importance to the British empire, and particularly to the East India Company, as being a barrier and grand out-work to their vast possessions in India. So forcibly was the public impressed with an opinion of the great advantages that might be derived to the nation at large from the possession of the Cape, that the

question was immediately started and discussed among persons entrusted with the management of the first political and commercial interests of the empire, under what tenure it should be held. Whether the Cape ought to be considered as a foreign dependency of the crown, and subject to the same regulations as all the other colonies are; or, annexed to the possessions under the administration of the East India Company? Those who held the latter opinion quoted the charter granted by Queen Elizabeth, by which the Company are allowed the privilege of a free and sole trade into the countries of Asia, Africa, and America, or any of them beyond the Cape of Buona Esperanza, to the Streights of Magellan. Those, who were inclined to think that the charters of the East India Company gave them no claim to the Cape, brought forward the charter they received from Charles the Second, in which no mention whatever is made of Africa.

While these questions were in agitation, two general plans floated in the mind of Mr. Dundas (now Lord Melville); both of which were so conceived as to combine the interests of the public with those of the East India Company. One of these plans supposed the Cape to be a foreign dependency of the crown, and included such provisions and regulations as were compatible with the interests and the chartered privileges of the East India Company: the other invested the territorial possession in the East India Company, but proposed such regulations as were calculated to promote the general commercial prosperity of the British empire. And, in the mean time, until one or other of these plans should be adopted, the settlement was to be

be considered as dependent on the Crown, to be administered by the executive power, as constitutionally responsible to Parliament.

Every precaution was also taken that the rights and privileges of the East India Company should suffer no infringement. The exclusive advantage of supplying the Cape with India and China goods was immediately and unconditionally granted to them. And the regulations adopted in consequence, by the Earl of Macartney, and the vigilance that was constantly employed under his government, prevented and defeated every attempt to undermine their interests, and were productive of a source of considerable profit to the Company.

It was, in fact, the well known integrity of his Lordship's character, and the able and decided measures employed by him, on various trying occasions, for promoting and combining the interests of the East India Company with the honour of the Crown, and the commercial prosperity of the British empire, that determined the minister in his choice of him as governor for this important acquisition: and his Lordship was accordingly nominated without his knowledge, whilst absent on public service in Italy.

As little doubt was entertained, at that time, either by his Majesty's ministers or the public, that the Cape would become, at a general peace, a settlement in perpetuity to England, great pains were employed in drawing up instructions and in framing regula-

regulations that were calculated to promote the prosperity of the colony, secure the interests of the East India Company, and extend the commerce and navigation of Britain. Its importance, indeed, was deemed of such magnitude, that it was a resolution of the minister from which he never meant to recede, "That no foreign power, directly or indirectly, should obtain possession of the Cape of Good Hope, for, that it was the *physical guarantee* of the *British territories* in India." Its political importance could be doubted by none; its commercial advantages were believed by all.

Yet, after every precaution that had been employed for securing the privileges, increasing the conveniency, and promoting the interests, of the East India Company in this settlement, it would seem that an inclination prevailed in some of its directors to disparage or undervalue it. What their motives could have been, which led to such an opinion, I do not pretend to determine; nor is there any reason to suppose that a body of men, who have always been remarkable for acting upon the broad basis of national prosperity, would, in the present instance, deviate from their usual line of conduct, and bend to the influence of any little jealousy about patronage or prerogative, when the welfare of the public was so nearly concerned. The opinions of men, it is true, when grounded on moral events, are fugitive, and yield to circumstances: it were difficult, however, to assign any event or circumstance that could have operated so as to produce any reasonable grounds for a change in the opinion of the directors of the East India Company, in the course
of

of the last twenty years, with regard to the value of the Cape of Good Hope: many have occurred to enhance its importance.

That they did consider it of the utmost consequence, towards the end of the American war, their own conduct will sufficiently testify. The moment that a Dutch war was found to be inevitable, towards the close of the year 1780, Lord North, whose sentiments on this point were in perfect agreement with those of the directors, lost no time in communicating to the secret committee of the East India Company the information of it; in order, that they might take or suggest such measures, without delay, as the event might render most conducive to their interests. The chairman and deputy chairman, who, if I mistake not, at that time, were Mr. Devaynes and Mr. Sullivan, lost not a moment in consulting with such of their officers as happened to be then in London, and were supposed to be qualified to give good information. The result of which was, that the first and only measure proposed for the advantage of the East India Company's concerns was, in the event of a Dutch war, that an expedition should instantly be sent out to take possession of the Cape of Good Hope; a proposal that met the concurrence of the minister, and of which the result was the squadron dispatched under the command of Commodore Johnston, who carried under his convoy their outward-bound fleet; fought an indecisive battle with Suffrein in Porta Praya Bay, which enabled the French to reach the Cape of Good Hope, and to place it in such a state of security that the Commodore did not think it prudent to make the attack, but contented himself

self with the capture of a few Dutch Indiamen in Saldanha Bay; whilst the French Admiral, having refitted and refreshed his squadron at the Cape, proceeded to Mauritius, and from thence to the Indian Seas with his ships and men in the highest order; a circumstance that was attended with no small degree of detriment and annoyance to the trade and possessions of the East India Company, as well as of expence and inconvenience to the Crown. For the failure, in the grand object of this expedition, not only gave the enemy the vast advantage of landing and refreshing their seamen and troops, who were soon recruited by the invigorating effects of a temperate climate and abundance of fresh provisions, fruits, and vegetables, but it likewise enabled him to keep a fleet almost constantly at sea, by the provisions and naval stores it received from the Cape through Mauritius by agents residing there. Their own islands of Mauritius and Bourbon furnish no such supply, their productions not being adequate to the consumption of the inhabitants and the garrisons.

The French, in fact, have always contrived to refit and provision their ships, and to send their armaments supplied with stores to the Indian Seas from the Cape of Good Hope. Had it not been for the supplies furnished from this settlement, together with the possession of the harbour of Trincomalee, it would have been utterly impossible for Suffrein to have supported his fleet, or maintained the contest with us in the manner he did.

It was not, indeed, without a full conviction of its great utility to England, as well as of encumbrance to the Dutch,
by

by the enormous expence it occasioned, that Mr. Dundas was induced, in the considerations on the treaty between Great Britain and Holland, transmitted to the British ambassador at the Hague in 1787, to propose to them the cessions of certain stations in India, which were to them of little weight, either in a political or commercial point of view. The reasoning employed on this occasion was, "That the Cape was invaluable in the hands of a maritime power, being really and truly the key to India, which no hostile fleet could pass or re-pass, as the length of the previous voyage, either from India or Europe, must have disabled such a fleet, in a certain degree, before it could reach the Cape—that it was the interest of Holland itself that the Cape and Trincomalée should belong to Great Britain; because Holland must either be the ally of Britain or of France in India; and because Great Britain only can be an useful ally of Holland in the east—that the Dutch were not able to protect their settlements in that quarter, and Britain fully competent to their protection—that the Cape and Trincomalée were not commercial establishments, and that the maintenance of them was burthensome and expensive to the Dutch—but that the force required to protect the British Indian possessions, would render the defence of the Dutch settlements much less so to Britain."

The Earl of Macartney was not less convinced of the policy, nor less persuaded of the readiness of the Dutch, to leave the Cape in our hands, provided they were allowed to have a choice of their own. In his letter to Mr. Dundas, dated Oc-

tober 1797, he observes, " The power and influence of Hol-
 " land appear to me so irremediable, that it is impossible she can
 " ever again hold an independent possession of the Cape. In-
 " deed, before the war, she was neither rich enough to main-
 " tain its establishments, nor strong enough to govern its peo-
 " ple, and, I believe, had it not been for our conquest of the
 " country, it would soon have attempted to become inde-
 " pendent. As Holland is likely to be in future less powerful
 " at home, and consequently less respectable abroad, and as the
 " Cape would be a burthen to her, not easy to bear, it would
 " not be against her interest to leave it in our hands, for in
 " such case she might derive, without any expence, all the ad-
 " vantages of its original intention, which was that of a place of
 " refreshment for her commerce to the eastward ; and there are
 " other circumstances which, were she now in a situation dispa-
 " sionately to consider, I have reason to imagine, would lead
 " her to adopt this sentiment. The French (who, to speak of
 " them in the language of truth and experience, and not in the
 " jargon of pretended Cosmopolites, are, and ever must be, our
 " natural enemies) can only wish to have the Cape either in
 " their own hands, or in those of a weak power, that they may
 " use it as an instrument towards our destruction ; as a channel
 " for pouring through it an irresistible deluge upon our Indian
 " possessions to the southward of the Guadavery. Of this I am
 " so perfectly convinced, that if it shall be found impracticable
 " for us to retain the sovereignty of the Cape, and the French
 " are to become the masters of it, either *per se*, *aut per alium*,
 " then we must totally alter our present system, and adopt such
 " measures

“ measures as will shut them out of India entirely, and render
“ the possession of the Cape and of the Isles of France and Bour-
“ bon of as little use to them as possible.”

Whatever might have been the feelings of the Dutch with regard to the Cape, under the old government, I am authorized to say that Holland never did expect, and scarcely wished for, the restoration of this colony at a peace; well knowing that they would be allowed from the English to enjoy the advantages of refreshing and provisioning their ships, without the expence of keeping it. They would have been glad even to have declared it a *free port*, under any flag except their own. But the only power that Holland possessed, in framing the treaty of peace, was a mere name; and all the territories that were nominally restored to the Batavian Republic were virtually given up to France.

I have stated thus much with regard to the opinions that have hitherto been held of the importance of the Cape of Good Hope to the British trade and settlements in India, at a time when we were made to feel the inconvenience of its being in the possession of an enemy, or even of a neutral power, because a very sensible change of opinion appears to have taken place from the very moment it became a dependency on the British crown. For it is very certain that the directors of the East India Company did not only assume an affected indifference, with regard to this settlement, but endeavoured to discourage the retention of it in the strongest terms they possibly could have thought of, by shewing and proving to the world, as they imagined they

had done, that the possession of the Cape was of no use whatsoever to their commerce, or their concerns in India. For this apparently absurd purpose the commanders of all the ships in their employ were forbid, in the most positive terms, to touch at the Cape, either in their outward or their homeward bound passage, except such, on the return voyage, as were destined to supply the settlement with Indian goods.

The strength and constitution of English seamen, corroborated by wholesome food, will support them on a passage from India to England, shortened as it now is by the modern improvements in the art of navigation, without the necessity of touching at any intermediate port. But this is not the case with regard to the Lascars, or natives of India, who, in time of war, constitute frequently more than two-thirds of the crew. These poor creatures, whose chief sustenance is rice, oil, and vegetables, are ill calculated to suffer a long privation of their usual diet, and still less to bear the cold of the southern ocean, especially in the winter season. By them the Cape was looked up to as a half-way house, where a stock of fresh supplies was to be had, and where the delay of a few days had a wonderful effect in recruiting their health and spirits. And the event shewed that such a half-way house, to such people, was indispensibly necessary; for the directors were obliged to countermand their order as far as it regarded those ships that were navigated by the black natives of India.

Whenever it has happened that government was under the necessity of sending out troops in ships navigated by Lascars, a
greater

greater degree of sickness and mortality has prevailed than in ships entirely manned by Europeans; and under such circumstances it would be highly criminal to attempt to run from Europe to India without stopping at some intermediate port, not only to procure refreshments for the troops and Lascars, but to clean and fumigate the ships in order to prevent contagious diseases. The two Boy regiments, as they are usually called, the 22d and 34th, which it was necessary to send to the Cape as a reinforcement of the garrison, after the able and effective men had been sent away to Madras, who soon after so materially assisted in the conquest of Seringapatam, arrived in a very sickly state at the Cape. Yet the same ships, after being properly washed, scoured, and fumigated, and the crews completely refreshed, carried on other troops to their destination without the loss of a single man.

How far the conduct of the directors was compatible with the interests of the East India Company, who have consigned them to their management, I shall endeavour to point out in the course of this and the following chapters; the design of which is, by general reasoning, grounded on facts, to appreciate the advantages that would have resulted to the British nation in general, and to the East India Company in particular, from annexing the Cape to the foreign possessions of England; and the serious consequences that may ensue from its being in the possession of an enemy. Opinions on this subject, it seems, widely differ; on which account a fair and impartial statement of such circumstances as may tend to elucidate a doubtful

point, can do no harm, and may, perhaps, ultimately be productive of good, by assisting those, to whose care the best interests of the country are committed, to form their judgment on facts locally collected, and brought in some order together under one point of view. It is important to premise that such facts were either taken from authentic and official documents, or fell immediately under my own observation.

I proceed then, in the first place, to consider the Cape of Good Hope in the view of a military station; by which is not only implied a garrison to act for the defence of the settlement, but likewise a depôt, or place suitable for collecting and forming, so as always to have in readiness, a body of troops, either belonging to his Majesty's regular regiments, or to the armies of the East India Company, fitted and prepared for foreign service, and seasoned for the climates either of the East or the West Indies.

A very general notion seems to have been entertained in this country in all our former wars, by people who consider only the outlines or superficialities of things, and such, by the way, constitute by far the largest portion of mankind, that if the minister can contrive to furnish money, the money will supply men, and these men will form an army. It is true they will so; just as a collection of oak timber brought to a dock-yard will form a ship. But a great deal of labour is necessary in the seasoning, hewing, and shaping of such timber, and a great deal of judgment and practice still required to arrange and adapt the several parts

parts to each other, so that they may act in concert together, and form a complete whole that shall be capable of performing all the effects that were intended to be produced. Thus is it also in the formation of an army. It is not enough to collect together a body of men and to put arms into their hands. They must be classed and arranged, seasoned and inured to a certain way of life; exercised in certain motions and positions of the body, until long practice has rendered them habitual and easy; they must be taught to act in an uniform and simultaneous movement, and in such a manner that the separate action of the individuals shall form one united impulse, producing the greatest possible effect of aggregated strength. They must also be taught to preserve their health and strength by habits of temperance and cleanliness, and to take care of themselves in the various circumstances that may occur of situation and climate.

Such a body of men, so formed and prepared, may properly be called soldiers. And no small degree of attention and judgment is required to bring a body of men to such a state of discipline. Yet it is highly important that all troops, intended to be sent on foreign service, should at least be partly formed, and instructed in the art of taking proper care of themselves, previous to their embarkation. Being once accustomed to habits of cleanliness and regularity, they are less liable to fall a sacrifice to the close confinement and want of room in a ship; and the inconveniences of a long sea voyage will always be less felt by persons thus prepared than by raw undisciplined recruits, who are apt to be heedless, slovenly, and irregular.

But

But even old seasoned troops, after a long sea-voyage, are generally found to be disqualified, during a considerable time, for any great exertion. The tone or elasticity of the mind has become relaxed as well as the habit of body. Let any one recollect how he felt after a long sea-voyage, and ask himself if he were capable of the same exertion, and of undergoing the same fatigue, immediately after landing as before his embarkation. The answer, I fancy, will be in the negative. The limbs, in fact, require to be exercised in order to regain their usual motions, and the lungs must have practice before they will play with their usual freedom in the chest. And these effects, adverse to prompt and energetic action, will generally be proportioned to the length of the voyage, and the privations to which men must necessarily submit.

The very able and intelligent writers of the *Précis des évènements militaires*, or *Epitome of military events*, seem to ascribe the defeat of the Russian column, commanded by General Hermann, in the affair at Bergen, where it was almost cut to pieces, to their marching against the enemy immediately after landing from a sea-voyage, although it had not been very long. They observe that, “ by being crowded on board transports, and other inconveniences experienced at sea, not only a considerable number of individuals are weakened to such a degree that they are incapable of any service, but whole corps sometimes present the same disadvantages—the extreme inequality of strength that, in such cases, prevails between the individuals or constituent parts of corps, is, at once, destructive of their aggregated and combined impulse.”

If

If then such be the effects produced on seasoned troops, on a sea-voyage of moderate length, they must be doubly felt by young recruits unaccustomed to the necessary precautions for preserving their health. In fact, a raw recruit, put on board a ship in England, totally unformed and undisciplined, will be much farther from being a soldier, when he arrives in India, than when he first stepped on board. The odds are great that he dies upon the passage, or that he arrives under incurable disease. And, indeed, of those who may chance to arrive in tolerable health, a great proportion dies in the seasoning, from the debilitating effects of a hot climate. India is, perhaps, the worst place in the whole world for forming an European recruit into a soldier. Unable to bear the fatigue of being exercised, his spirits are moreover depressed by observing how little exertion men of the same rank and condition as himself are accustomed to make. It cannot, therefore, be denied that, as long as it shall be found necessary to recruit our large armies in India with European troops, it would be a most desirable object to be in possession of some middle station to break the length of the sea-voyage; a station which at the same time enjoyed a middle temperature of climate, between the extremes of heat and cold, to season the body and adapt it to sustain an increased quantity of the one or the other.

The Cape of Good Hope eminently points out such a station. Its geographical position on the globe is so commanding a feature, that the bare inspection of a map, without any other information, must at once obtrude its importance and value in this as well as many other respects. Its distance from the coast

of Brazil is the voyage of a month; from the Dutch colonies of Surinam, Demarara, Berbice, and Effiquebo, with the West India islands, six weeks; the same to the Red Sea; and two months to the coasts of Malabar and Coromandel. With the east and the west coasts of Africa and the adjacent islands, it commands a ready communication at all seasons of the year. A place so situated, just half way between England and India, in a temperate and wholesome climate, and productive of refreshments of every description, would naturally be supposed to hold out such irresistible advantages to the East India Company, not only by its happy position and local ascendancy, but also by the means it affords of opening a new market and intermediate depositary for their trade and commodities, that they would have been glad to purchase, at any price, an acquisition of such immense importance; and that such great advantages, however they might be blinked by some or unknown to others, would speedily have forced a general conviction of their value, in spite of real ignorance or affected indifference.

One might also have supposed that the possession of the Cape of Good Hope would have suggested itself to the East India Company as a place which would have removed many, if not all, of the difficulties that occurred to them, on the renewal of their privileges in 1793, when a depôt for their recruits in Britain was in contemplation. The principal regulations proposed for such depositary of troops, as contained in "*Historic View of Plans for British India*," were the following:—"That the age of the Company's recruits should be from twelve to fifteen or twenty, because at this period of life, the constitution was
" found

“ found to accommodate itself most easily to the different varia-
 “ tions of climate—that the officers of the police should be
 “ empowered to transfer to the depôt all such helpless and in-
 “ digent youths as might be found guilty of misdemeanors and
 “ irregularities approaching to crimes—that the said officers of
 “ police and others should be authorized to engage destitute and
 “ helpless young men in a service, where they would have a
 “ comfortable subsistence, and an honourable employment—
 “ that the young men so procured should be retained in Great
 “ Britain, at the depôt, for a certain time, in order to be in-
 “ structed in such branches of education as would qualify for
 “ the duty of a non-commissioned officer, and in those military
 “ exercises which form them for immediate service in the regi-
 “ ments in India.”

Now of all the places on the surface of the globe, for the
 establishment of such a depôt, the Cape of Good Hope is pre-
 eminently distinguished. In the first place, there would be no
 difficulty in conveying them thither. In every month of the
 year, the outward bound ships of the Company, private traders,
 or whalers, sail from England, and the fewer that each ship
 carried, the greater the probability would be that none of them
 should die on the passage. And there is, perhaps, no place on
 the face of the earth in every respect so suitable as the Cape
 for forming them into soldiers. It possesses, among other ad-
 vantages, three that are invaluable; healthiness of climate,
 cheapness of subsistence, and a favourable situation for speedy
 intercourse with most parts of the world, and particularly with
 India. I shall make a few remarks on each of these points.

With regard to the healthiness of climate, I do not consider it as necessary to the present subject to give copies of the regular returns of deaths in the several regiments that, for the last seven years, have been stationed at the Cape of Good Hope. Such dry details furnish very little of the useful and less of the agreeable. They might, indeed, serve to shew, on a comparison with other returns sent in from different foreign stations, how very trifling has been the mortality of troops in this settlement. It will be sufficient, however, for my purpose to observe, that Lord Macartney, in order to save a vast and unnecessary expence to the public, found it expedient to break up the hospital staff, which, in fact, was become perfectly useless, there being at that time no sick whatsoever in the general hospital, and so few as scarcely worth the noticing in the regimental hospitals; and the surgeons of the regiments acknowledged that those few under their care were the victims of intemperance and irregularity. At this time the strength of the garrison consisted of more than five thousand men.

Shortly after the capture, it is true, a considerable sickness prevailed among the British troops, and great numbers died, a circumstance that was noticed, and at the same time fully explained, by General Sir James Craig in his letter to Mr. Dundas, about three months after the cession of the colony. He observes that the soldiers of the Dutch East India Company were obliged to furnish their own bedding and blankets, as well as the necessary garrison and camp furniture; so that, when the Dutch entered into the capitulation, not a single article of garrison furniture could be claimed; and the shops, at that time, furnishing

nishing no such materials, the men were obliged to sleep on the bare flag-stones in the great barrack, until a supply of blankets and camp utensils of every kind could be sent out from England.

Invalids from India recover very quickly at the Cape. The servants of the East India Company are allowed to proceed thus far on leave of absence without prejudice to their rank ; and here they generally experience a speedy recovery. The two Boy regiments, whom I have already mentioned to have suffered severely on the passage from England in ships navigated by Lascars, and who landed in fact on the height of a malignant and contagious disease, rapidly recovered ; and, in the course of two years, from being a parcel of weakly boys, unable to carry a musquet, became two very fine regiments, fit for service in any part of the world. When the orders, indeed, for the final evacuation of the Cape were countermanded, the 34th regiment, which two years before had excited the pity of every one who saw them, enfeebled as they were by disease, and unfit, from their tender years, for the fatigues of soldiers, was now a very essential part of the strength of the garrison.

It may, therefore, I think, be safely concluded, that the climate of the Cape is not only salubrious, but that it is particularly favourable for forming young and raw recruits into soldiers. And it would appear, moreover, that the salutary effects of this climate are not merely local, but that their seasoning efficacy is extended beyond the hemisphere of Southern Africa, and qualifies, in a very remarkable manner, the raw recruit
and

and the seasoned foldier for the climate of India, and the still more trying situation of the voyage thither. The constitution would seem to acquire, by a few years residence at the Cape, a strength and vigour which not only enabled it to surmount the inconveniences of the sea, but, contrary to what usually happens, to sustain the fatigue of long and continued marches in a hot climate, immediately after debarkation.

The truth of this observation was made evident by a number of instances that occurred during the seven years that the Cape remained in our possession; but in none more strongly than that, in the government of Lord Macartney, when three almost complete regiments of infantry, the 84th, the 86th, and the Scotch brigade, were embarked and sent off, at a few days' notice, under the command of Major-General Baird, to join the army of India against Tippoo Sultaun. This reinforcement, consisting of upwards of two thousand men in their shoes, arrived to a man, and in the highest state of health; took the field the day after their landing; marched into the Mysore country; co-operated with the Indian army, and contributed very materially towards the conquest of Seringapatam. The very man (Major-General Baird), under whose command they sailed from the Cape but a few months before, led them on to storm this celebrated capital of the Mysore kingdom.

One might have supposed that the facility and success of throwing reinforcements into India, exemplified in this remarkable instance, would have stamped on the minds of the directors an indelible value on the Cape. "By possessing and
" im-

“ improving the advantages of seasoning and preparing our
“ troops at the Cape,” observes Lord Macartney in his letter to
Lord Melville on the importance of the Cape, dated April the
25th, 1801, “ I had it in my power, almost at a moment’s no-
“ tice, to send to Madras, under the command of Major-Gener-
“ ral Baird, about two thousand effective men in the highest
“ health, vigour, and discipline, who eminently contributed to
“ the capture of Seringapatam, and the total subversion of the
“ power of Tippoo.”

It did not seem, however, to have made any such impression on the East India Company; at least their conduct and opinions indicated no change in consequence of it. Nor could their inflexible indifference be roused by the multiplied instances which clearly demonstrated the importance of having a suitable station for the seasoning and training of young troops to act, on any emergency and at a short notice, in their service, and for the protection of their vast possessions in India. Had not the instance above recited been considered as sufficient to stamp its value, the reinforcement of troops that was sent from the Cape, to accompany the expedition of Sir Home Popham to the Red Sea, one might have thought would have forced a full conviction of the importance of such a station. On this occasion were embarked, at almost a moment’s warning, twelve hundred effective men, composed of detachments of artillery, cavalry, and infantry, who all arrived to a man, at Cossir, a port in the Red Sea, from whence they were found capable of immediately sustaining long and fatiguing marches, notwithstanding the heat of the climate, the heaviness of the ground, and the scarcity of
water.

water. The 61st regiment, Sir Robert Wilson observes, landed at Cossir after having been near sixteen weeks on board, without having one sick man, though the strength of the regiment exceeded nine hundred men.

A thousand difficulties, it appears, were started in England with regard to the failing of this expedition, by people who derive their information only from defective books and not from local knowledge. The season of the Monsoon was stated to be unfavourable for the navigation of the Red Sea, and the desarts by which it was bordered were held to be totally impassable. But to vigorous and determined minds few things are insurmountable. "The man (Lord Melville) who projected, and persevered in, the expedition to Egypt," saw very clearly that the expedition to the Red Sea could not fail under proper caution and management, and the event proved that he was right.

Having thus sufficiently shewn, as I conceive, the importance of the Cape as a military station, or depositary of troops, with regard to the healthiness of the climate, and the effects produced on the constitution of soldiers, by being seasoned and exercised a short time there, I shall now proceed to state the comparative small expence at which the soldier can be subsisted on this station, and the saving that must necessarily ensue both to Government and the East India Company, by sending their recruits to the Cape to be trained for service either in the East or the West Indies.

The

The Cape of Good Hope is the only military station that we have possessed of late years, where government was enabled to make a saving by feeding the soldier. What I mean by this is, where the ration, or settled proportion of victuals, could be furnished for a sum of money less than that which is stopped out of his pay in consideration of it. In other parts of the globe, government is a very considerable loser by feeding the soldier; that is to say, his ration must be purchased for a sum of money more than that which is deducted from his pay. The government consents to this loss for the accommodation of the soldier, who, on most stations, could not possibly subsist on his pay, on account of the dearness of provisions. At the Cape of Good Hope each ration cost the government something less than sixpence, which was the amount of the stoppage deducted in lieu of it. At home, and in different parts abroad, as I have been informed, the ration stands the government in different sums from tenpence to half-a-crown.

At the Cape of Good Hope, some twenty years ago, two pound of butchers' meat cost one penny; at the capture by the English the price had advanced to one pound for twopence; yet, notwithstanding the increased demand, occasioned by the addition of five thousand troops and near three thousand seamen, frequently more than this number, with all the various attempts and combinations that were practised (and, on a certain occasion in the year 1800, very unwisely countenanced by high authority,) to raise the price of this article, the contract for supplying the garrison was never higher than at the rate of two and five-eighths pounds for sixpence. Two pounds of good

wholesome bread might be generally purchased for twopence. Even in the midst of a scarcity, which threatened a famine, bread rose no higher than twopence the pound; and all kinds of fruit and vegetables are so abundant, and so cheap, as to be within the reach of the poorest person. A pint of good sound wine may be procured for threepence; and, were it not for the circumstance of the licence for selling wine by retail being farmed out as one source of the colonial revenue, a pint of the same wine would cost little more than three-halfpence.

This farming out the wine licence was a subject of grievance to the soldier, as it compelled him to buy his wine in small quantities at the licensed houses, when the civilians and housekeepers were allowed to purchase it in casks of twenty gallons, at the rate of five or six rix-dollars the cask, which is just about half the retail price he was obliged to pay for it. Yet, vexatious as such a regulation appeared to be, it was still sufficiently cheap to enable the soldier to purchase fully as much as was useful to him. Numbers of the soldiers, indeed, contrived to save money out of their pay. The 91st regiment of Highlanders, in particular, were known to have remitted a good deal of money to their families in Scotland; and many of the serjeants of the different regiments, at the evacuation of the colony, had saved from one to two hundred pounds in hard money.

In the year 1800 the government, in order to bring a little more money into the treasury from the wine licence, directed, by proclamation, that the retail sellers should demand from the soldier the increased price of eightpence the bottle, instead of
 six-

fixpence, which, however, they had prudence enough to decline. The sum brought into the government treasury by tolerating this monopoly, averaged about seventy thousand rix-dollars annually. But in the event of the Cape falling again into our hands, which sooner or later must happen, if it be an object to secure our Indian possessions, it would be wise to supply this part of the revenue by some other means.

Government likewise derived other profits besides those which accrued from the cheapness of the rations. The Deputy Paymaster-General drew bills on his Majesty's Paymasters-General in England, in exchange for the paper currency of the colony, in which all the contingent and extraordinary expences of the garrison were paid. These bills, except in the first few months when there was not yet any demand for remittances, and when, perhaps, their credit was not fully established in the minds of the Dutch, always bore a premium against the paper, varying from five to thirty per cent., but fixed, for the greatest part of the time, at twenty per cent. They would, indeed, have advanced to a much higher rate; for the merchant, unable to make his remittances to any great extent in colonial produce, or in India goods, which, if permitted, might have been injurious to the interests of the East India Company, was under the necessity of purchasing these bills. Lord Macartney, however, considered it expedient to fix the premium at twenty per cent., deeming it right that government bills should bear the highest premium of bills that might be in the market, but, at the same time, not to proceed to such a height as to become oppressive either to the merchant or the public: So that if the ration was supplied to

government for fivepence-halfpenny in paper currency, the real cost was little more than fourpence-halfpenny.

The amount of bills drawn for the contingent and extraordinary expences of the army, from the 1st of October 1795, when the colony was taken, to the 28th of July 1802, the time it should have been evacuated, as appears from the Deputy Paymaster's books, is 1,045,814 *l.* 14*s.* 1*d.* upon part of which (for part was drawn at par for specie) the profit derived to his Majesty's government amounts to the sum of 115,719 *l.* 3*s.* 1*d.*

Another source of profit, which might have been very considerable, was derived from the importation of specie. The subsistence of the soldiers, it may be observed, was always paid in hard money, and not in paper currency. The Spanish dollar was issued in payment to the troops at the rate of five shillings sterling, which I imagine might have been purchased and sent out at four shillings and fourpence each, making thus a profit of more than fifteen per cent. on the pay, as well as on the extraordinaries, of the army. The sum that was thus imported amounted to 103,426 *l.* 18*s.* 3*d.* Upon which, supposing the whole sent out by government, which I understand was not exactly the case, though nearly so, the profits must have been 15,514 *l.* at home, besides an additional profit of 710 *l.* 13*s.* 3*d.* arising from a small quantity of specie bought in the Cape. The government also sent out about four thousand pounds of copper money, in penny pieces, which were circulated at twopence, from which there was consequently another profit derived of 4000 *l.*

Shortly after the capture of the Cape, General Craig, finding it impossible to raise, upon bills, a sufficient sum of paper currency to defray the extraordinaries of the army, was reduced to the bold measure of stamping a new paper issue, on the credit of the British government, to the amount of fifty thousand pounds; a sum that was never redeemed from circulation, nor brought to any account, until the final restoration of the colony. So that the interest of this sum for seven years produced a further profit to government of 17,500*l.*

By taking these sums together, namely,

Profit on bills drawn	-	£. 115,719	3	1
— on specie imported	-	16,224	13	3
— on copper money	-	4,000	0	0
— on paper money circulated		17,500	0	0
		<hr/>		
We have		£. 153,443	16	4
		<hr/>		

which may be considered as a clear gain to the government, (independent of the saving on each ration) and, consequently, a lessening of the expenditure that was occasioned at the Cape of Good Hope.

As this expenditure has been stated to be so enormous, as more than to counterbalance the advantages resulting from the possession of the settlement, and we have already seen how important these advantages are, when considered in only one point of view, it may not be amiss to point out, in as correct a manner as the nature of the subject will admit, the exact sum expended

which total amount, divided by seven, gives 255,597*l.* 7*s.* for the annual average expence incurred in the military department at the Cape of Good Hope. But it would be the height of absurdity to say, that even this sum, moderate as it is, was an additional expence to Government in consequence of the capture of this settlement; since it is not only composed of the expences of maintaining the garrison, and the contingencies and extraordinaries of the army, but it includes, likewise, the pay, the subsistence, and the clothing of an army of five thousand men. Now as these troops must have been fed, clothed, and paid in any other place, as well as at the Cape of Good Hope, and as I have shewn, at a much greater expence, it is certainly not fair to charge this sum to the account of the garrison of the Cape. Even in peace the commissioned officers would have received their half pay, which alone would amount to a sum from 100,000*l.* to 150,000*l.*

There is little reason, therefore, in reality, for considering the Cape in the light of an expensive settlement. In fact, the sums of money, that have been expended there, dwindle into nothing upon a comparison with some of the West India islands, whose importance are a feather when weighed against that of the Cape of Good Hope. Viewing it only as a point of security to our Indian possessions, and as a nursery for maturing raw recruits into complete soldiers, the question of expence falls to the ground. Of the several millions that are annually raised for the support of government at home, and its dependencies abroad, a small fraction of one of these millions may surely be allowed for

for the maintenance of a station whose advantages are incalculable.

But the article of expence, trifling even in war, could be no object whatsoever in time of peace. The fortifications, which were in the most ruinous condition when the place was taken, being finished in a complete manner, would require no further expence than that of merely keeping the works in repair, which might amount, perhaps, to an annual sum of five thousand pounds. The contingencies and extraordinaries of the army could not, at the utmost, amount to twenty thousand pounds; so that twenty-five or thirty thousand pounds would be the extent of the contingent and extraordinary expences of the Cape in time of peace; a sum that, by proper management, and a prudent application of the revenues of the colony, might easily be defrayed out of the public treasury there, and leave a surplus adequate to all the demands of the civil department, together with the necessary repairs of public works and buildings.

The manner in which I calculate is thus: from a review of the colonial revenues, I find that the average in the Dutch Government in ten years, from 1784 to 1794 was little more than 100,000 rix dollars yearly, but that by the regulations and new imposts made by the Dutch Commissaries General in 1793, the amount in the following year was 211,568 rix dollars. They afterwards experienced a considerable increase, and from the first year of Lord Macartney's administration they rose gradually as follows:

From the 1st Oct. 1797 to the 30th Sept. 1798,			
they were	-	-	<i>R. d.</i> 322,512 7 5
1st ditto 1798 to ditto 1799	-		360,312 0 0
1st ditto 1799 to ditto 1800	-		369,596 0 0
1st ditto 1800 to ditto 1801	-		450,713 2 4

And it is here not unworthy of notice, that from the moment of the preliminaries of peace being known they fell, the last year's produce, being only

From 1st Oct. 1801 to 30th Sept 1802 - 389,901 6 0

And in the following year, as far of it as was expired, they were still less productive.

In this state of progressive improvement, under the British Government, without a single additional tax being laid, but on the contrary, some taken off, and others modified, arrears of land-rent remitted and again accumulating, I think, without any danger of exaggeration, we might reckon upon a net annual revenue of half a million rix dollars, or one hundred thousand pounds currency. The annual average expenditure, including salaries and contingencies of departments, with the necessary repairs of public works and buildings, were, under the administrations of Lord Macartney and Lieutenant-General Dundas, at the most about 300,000 rix dollars or 60,000 *l.* Suppose then the contingencies and extraordinaries of the army to be 30,000 *l.* the whole sum required would be 90,000 *l.* or 450,000 rix dollars, the exact amount of the colonial revenue at the close of the year 1801.

The

The point of view, in which the importance of the Cape next presents itself to our consideration, is its local position, as being favourable for distributing troops to any part of the globe, and especially to our settlements in the east, with facility and dispatch; which is by no means the least among the advantages it possesses as a military station. For however important to a depôt of troops the benefits may be that result from a healthy climate, and cheapness of subsistence, their value would be materially diminished by great distance from, or difficulty of conveyance to, such places where their services may be wanted.

The longer the voyage the less effective will the troops be on their arrival, and delay is dangerous even to a proverb. Perhaps it is not saying too much, that we are indebted to the Cape for the conquest of Mysore and the overthrow of Tippoo; not merely from the reinforcements sent from thence to join the Indian army, though they eminently contributed to the conquest of Seringapatam, but from the vigilance of Lord Macartney in detecting the transactions of the Sultaun's agents at the Isle of France, of which, at that time, they were ignorant in India, and the active measures he took to communicate speedy intelligence thereof to the Governor-General of Bengal. "I received," the Marquis of Wellesley observes, in his dispatch to the Court of Directors, "on the 18th of June 1798, a regular authentication of the proclamation (of the Governor of the Isle of France) in a letter from his Excellency the Earl of Macartney, dated the 28th of March." And he acted, on

this intelligence, with that prudence, promptitude, and spirit, for which the character of the noble Marquis is so eminently distinguished. The object of Tippoo was to gain time in order that he might strengthen his position and augment his forces. But the rapid movement of our troops towards his capital, as soon as his hostile views were confirmed, frustrated his plans, and effected the total subversion of his country. Both the moment of attack and the reinforcement from the Cape were acknowledged to be important; in either of which a failure might have proved fatal to the campaign, and would, at all events, have postponed the day of victory.

The almost incredible celerity, with which twelve hundred effective men joined the Egyptian army in high health and spirits from the Cape of Good Hope, is another instance that must force conviction of its vast importance as a military station. Nor are the advantages afforded by its geographical position of acquiring and conveying intelligence with respect to the affairs of neighbouring nations, or of embarking troops, precarious or depending on chance; there being scarcely a week in the year in which English whalers or merchantmen, or ships of neutral powers, do not touch at the Cape, especially on their outward-bound voyage. And most of these are willing to engage as transports.

It appears from the books of the Custom-house, and the returns of the Captain of the port, that there failed from the Cape

In

In 1799	-	103 ships
1800	-	109 ditto
1801	-	130 ditto
1802	-	131 ditto

being, in four years, 473 ships,

besides the men of war and coasting vessels. Of these 82 were Americans, 66 Danes, 24 Portugueze, 15 from Hamburgh, and 6 Swedes, 4 from Prussia and Bremen, and the rest English.

The Americans, for some years past, have been establishing a very considerable carrying trade from the eastward on the ruins of the Dutch commerce, and have acquired no small portion of the India and China trade. The ships of this nation have always found it convenient to touch at the Cape, partly for the sake of refreshing their crews, but with a view, at the same time, of disposing of the whole or any part of their cargo to advantage. This cargo is generally lumber, or it is composed of what they quaintly term *notions*, from the great variety and assortment of goods which they take a fancy, or *notion*, may succeed. In payment of such a cargo they are glad to get bills on India for hard money, which they carry to China to purchase teas, nankeens, and porcelain. From the Cape to India they are always willing to be employed as transports.

The situation is pretty much the same with regard to the Danes. But the assistance of neither the one nor the other could possibly be wanted, provided the numerous fleets of our East India Company were permitted to touch at the Cape.

Without the least inconvenience to their commercial concerns, these ships might transport from England to the Cape a constant succession of raw recruits to be formed there into complete soldiers, from whence they might take on board as many of the latter as should be wanted to reinforce their vast armaments in India.

In a word, the advantages that England would acquire by retaining possession of this grand out-work of all Asia cannot sufficiently be appreciated. Nor are these advantages to be considered as exclusively confined to England. Other nations trading to the east would share the benefit arising from the Cape as a British colony. During the late war, the Danes, the Swedes, the Hamburgers, and the Americans, were allowed to refresh, and derived every advantage on the same terms as the English. The only distinction was an additional duty of five per cent. on goods brought in foreign bottoms. In all other respects the trade of the Cape was open to them in the same manner as to British subjects. There was no monopoly granted to individuals for serving foreign shipping with provisions and refreshments as was the case under the Dutch government; when it is well known they were obliged to pay at least double the price of the market for every article brought on board. Were France in possession of the Cape there is reason to suppose that, according to the commercial system which her present government was endeavouring to establish, the restrictions she would impose at this important station would amount to a total exclusion of foreign shipping.

To

To England the Cape is more valuable as a point of effectual security to her Indian trade and settlements than as a place of annoyance to other nations, or as to the means it affords of interrupting their commercial concerns. The unbounded credit of the East India Company, the immensity of its capital employed, the superior quality of British manufactures, and the low rate at which they can be afforded in foreign markets, will always ensure to them the best part of the trade to India and China, and give to England a preference before the other maritime powers of Europe, or that of America. No naval power, therefore, except France, could feel any jealousy, nor entertain reasonable grounds of objection against the Cape becoming a settlement of the British empire; but every one of them are very materially interested, and the Americans more especially, that it should not fall into the hands of France; who would not fail, on every slight occasion, to aim at excluding her numerous ships from the Indian Seas, and endeavour to annihilate her growing commerce in the east; whilst to England, I again repeat it, the Cape is to be considered as chiefly important on account of the advantages it holds forth as a point of security to her valuable possessions in the east, against the designs of an ambitious and implacable enemy.

We have already, indeed, experienced the truth of this remark. The Isles of France and Bourbon were rendered useless to the French during the late war, and incapable of giving to us the least annoyance in the Eastern Seas, from the moment that their ships of war and privateers had been destroyed by our cruizers from the Cape. They were neither able to send troops
to

to these islands from France, nor from thence to India. The trade of the Americans suffered no interruption in the Eastern Seas, nor that of the Portugueze in the Southern Atlantic. In the hands of the French it would have been a point equally convenient for assisting the Spaniards at Rio de la Plata, or attacking the Portugueze at Rio de Janeiro: whilst against us it would have furnished the most effectual means of endangering the security to our Indian trade and settlements.

The possession of this place, at an early period of the war, so completely excluded every hostile power from the Indian Seas, threw so great an increase of commerce into our hands by that exclusion, left us in such quiet and undisturbed dominion in the eastern world, and gave us so many solid advantages unexampled in any former war, that one would suppose it to be a moral impossibility for the East India Company to be unmindful of the source from whence they sprung. But things that are apparently of little value in themselves, are sometimes magnified by intense observation, swell into importance by discussion, and become indispensable by contention; whilst objects of real moment lose their magnitude when slightly viewed, or seen only at a distance, grow little by neglect, and useless without a quarrel.

The French seem to have been aware of the truth of this observation, by avoiding any discussion, in the late negotiation for peace, respecting the importance of the Cape of Good Hope. Their views, no doubt, were well known to our Government, which induced it, in the very first sketch of the conditions of
peace

peace, to propose that the Cape of Good Hope should be restored to the Dutch, or be declared a free port. The latter, however, happened to be just what France could have wished, and it was, therefore, on further consideration, restored in full sovereignty to its ancient possessors. France, finding that her purpose would be completely answered when once it was rescued out of the hands of the English, made no objection to this arrangement. Ceylon she considered as a less important sacrifice, although she knew it to be a much greater to Holland than that of the Cape. The latter has always been an expensive settlement to the Dutch, whilst from the former they derived a considerable revenue. Had the Cape been demanded on the part of England, there can be little doubt the French would have been no less tenacious in rejecting the proposal than they were with regard to Malta; being well convinced that these two possessions, in the hands of England, would be two grand points of security to her Indian empire, of which they have long been so jealous.

I have no intention to discuss the comparative importance of these two stations to England, considering them both to be essentially necessary to her independence as well as to the protection of her commerce and settlements, so long as the restless and aggrandizing spirit of the French Government shall continue to disturb the peace of Europe. It may not, however, be improper to endeavour to point out, and to compare some of the inconveniences that would necessarily have resulted to our trade and settlements in the East Indies during the late war,

from either one or the other of these places being in the hands of an ambitious enemy.

In the first place, it may be considered as a general principle that has long been rooted in the French Government, and from which it will never depart, to aim at the overthrow of our power in India, and to endeavour to erect upon its ruins an empire of their own. To accomplish this point, and in consequence thereof, in the language of the present Corsican ruler, "To strike a blow at England which will be followed up with its complete destruction," they know there are but two roads to take: the one by getting possession of Egypt and Syria, where they might collect and season their troops for the grand expedition, either by sea or land; the other by occupying the Cape of Good Hope. The former they tried in the hope of success, because they knew the other to be a desperate attempt. Had they, or their forced ally, the Dutch, kept possession of the Cape, there is no reason for supposing that the same fleet which failed for Egypt, might not have sailed, from some other port, to this station; or that they could not have slipped out from time to time almost any number of troops they might have thought proper to send. These troops, when seasoned and prepared at the Cape, for a warmer climate, could easily have been transported to the Isles of France and Bourbon, where the French would not only continue to draw supplies from the former, and to victual and provision their ships of war and transports from thence, as in the American war, but where they could not fail to have received a material reinforcement to their shipping from the

the Dutch ; for it may be recollected, that the fleet under the command of Admiral Lucas reached Saldanha Bay, in spite of the obstacles which the Southern Atlantic presented, by the Cape being then in our hands. This fleet combined with that of the French would have required a naval force, on our part, in the Indian Seas that might not have been quite convenient for us to spare. It is possible, also, they might have eluded the vigilance of our force, as their object would not have been so much to fight us, as to have put in execution a plan that many are inclined to suppose floated in the mind of Buonaparte when he took the road of Egypt, though he was soon convinced of the futility of it by that route without at least double the number of troops ; his whole army being barely sufficient to keep the conquered country in subjection.

Among many reasons, which led to this conjecture, was the work of *Mr. Anquetil Duperron* on India, which, as I have already observed, being withheld from publication for fifteen years on account of the information it contained, and of which it was supposed the English might avail themselves, was hastily issued from the press on the sailing of this memorable expedition ; being intended, most probably, as a guide for the officers on their arrival in India. This intelligent writer, who, to a mind capable of observation and deep reflection, adds the great advantage of local knowledge, fixes on the coast of Malabar as the foundation and corner-stone of their long projected empire in India. The considerations which induce him to give this coast the preference are, among others, the facility of possessing the passes of the neighbouring mountains and of thus securing

the internal commerce of Hindostan—the opportunity it would afford of entering into an alliance with the Mahrattas, whom he considers as a warlike and faithful people—the easy intercourse that might be maintained from this coast with the Persian gulph, the Red Sea, the Isles of France and Bourbon, Madagascar, and the Cape of Good Hope.

These are certainly important considerations, and demand all the vigilance and attention of our Government in India. Even a small force of French troops, had they been thrown upon the coast of Malabar, at the very moment when our forces were drawn off into the Myfore, against the Suldaun's army, might have proved fatal to our possessions on this coast. The usurper would, no doubt, have obtained his reinforcement from the Isle of France, and probably without our knowledge, rendering, by their means, the conquest of Seringapatam doubtful. If, in such a state of things, the French forces could have gained a footing at Bombay, Goa, or Guzzarat, and intrigued themselves into an alliance with the Mahratta powers, though it might not have realized their project of an Indian empire, it would, at least, have been destructive of our possessions in the west of the peninsula, to hold which, indeed, Mr. Anquetil considers as fatal to our power in India.

On this subject his opinion is not singular; before the overthrow of the Myfore kingdom, there were many of our own countrymen, whose sentiments in this respect accorded with his; and who, like himself, have not only a profound knowledge of Indian politics, but are well acquainted with the physical

fical and moral character of the natives, their several connections and relations; and who, at the same time, possess the advantage that local information so eminently affords.

These gentlemen were then fully persuaded, that if the native powers of India could once totally get rid of Europeans, they never would again admit them as inmates, if they could possibly avoid it; and that if we fairly relinquished the Malabar and Coromandel coasts, it would not be difficult to keep others out of them for ever. It might fairly be asked, indeed, if our present possessions there answer to us the advantages expected from them? Do they produce a surplus revenue, either in money or merchandize, over and above their immediate occasions and expences, to say nothing of the extraordinary charges they are exposed to from insurrection or invasion? Have they not re-absorbed, not only all their own resources, but drained Bengal of immense supplies to preserve them from perishing? Have we, or can we expect to find, interior resources there to depend on, without having recourse to Bengal for support? If we have not, and the India budget convinces us that we have not, would it be unwise to take early measures for converting our present hollow truce with the native powers of Southern India into a solid alliance with them, and (by the cession of what we can never hold at all without jealousy and envy, and never can hold long without contest,) for a valuable consideration, which, no doubt, might be had, cut away every inch of ground there, which the French might hope to stand upon. In such case the possession of the Cape or Ceylon would then be of less moment to us, our Indian force would be concentrated and invulnerable in

in the provinces of Bengal, which, with China, afford an ample revenue, and a beneficial commerce, that no enemy is likely to deprive us of for a long period of time. But these speculations would all have vanished into air, had we retained the Cape at a peace, the possession of which, from its position on the globe, would contribute greatly to secure our territories in Southern India, the danger to which is otherwise so much to be apprehended. The conquest of Mysore has certainly contributed in no small degree to our security on the Malabar coast; has consolidated our power in Southern India, and rendered the junction of foreign forces with the Mahratta powers more difficult if not altogether impracticable. On the northern parts of this coast only are we vulnerable in India by sea.

Supposing, however, the views of the enemy, on the Malabar coast, to have failed, they would, at least, have been enabled, with the assistance of the Dutch, to annoy and cut up our Indian and China trade by the multitude of cruizing vessels sent out from their islands of France and Bourbon, and from the Cape of Good Hope. Even under every disadvantage, the French frigates and the nest of privateers on the Mauritius station did much mischief at the commencement of the late war, and although they had few reinforcements from France, it required five years, with a very active and powerful squadron from the Cape and from India, before they were all taken and destroyed. What then must have been the case, if, instead of the English possessing this important station, it had been an enemy's port for assembling, refitting, and refreshing the combined fleets of the French and Dutch? It is unnecessary to observe,

serve, that neither of these powers would have found much difficulty in reaching the Cape with single ships, when we have an instance of a whole fleet of Dutch ships arriving there notwithstanding they were fifteen weeks on their passage. This single fleet, acting from the Cape, might have been productive of much inconvenience, expence, and injury to England, and especially to the trade of the East India Company. Were, indeed, the French and Dutch to keep up a proper naval force at this place, it is extremely doubtful if any of the homeward-bound fleets of the East India Company would ever reach England, or if they did, it would be under an expence of convoy so enormous, that the profits on the cargoes would be inadequate to meet it; but of this we shall have occasion to speak more particularly in the next chapter. Such are the dangers to be apprehended in consequence of the Cape being held by an enemy.

The principal disadvantages that would result to England by leaving Malta in the possession of France appear to be, in the first place, the power it would give them of excluding our ships from that port, the best, undoubtedly, in the Mediterranean, and of increasing their force there to the complete destruction of our Mediterranean trade; and secondly, the means it would afford of facilitating their views upon Egypt, by enabling them to throw into that country a force sufficient to renew their project upon India.

With regard to the extent and importance of the Mediterranean trade I speak with diffidence, but I am not apprehensive of

of hazarding much by saying that it admits not of a comparison with that of India and China, though, perhaps, too valuable to be altogether relinquished. In this respect the value of Malta is certainly less important than that of the Cape of Good Hope. But the second point is of a more serious nature. Some, however, are of opinion, that although the subjugation of Egypt may at any time be accomplished by the French, through Malta, yet, in such an event, we have every reason to expect that the vigilance and activity of a British fleet, and the valour of British soldiers, would always enable us to dispute with them the passage of Syria. That, admitting even they should succeed in collecting at Suez an army equal to their wishes, the difficulties of transporting this army to India would be almost insurmountable. If it be meant by those who support this opinion that the attempt is to be made by sea, whilst the Cape remained in our possession, I have little hesitation in agreeing with them that it would certainly fail. During the last war, when their troops had marched to Suez, they had not a single ship in the Red Sea that dared to carry the French flag, nor, with the Cape and Ceylon in our hands, could they at any future period have a fleet of any description without our permission.

But we will even allow them to have assembled at Suez a fleet of their own ships, or of the country coasters, sufficient to take on board their armament destined for the Malabar coast. The next question is, where, or in what manner, are they to victual and to provision such a fleet for a month or five weeks passage, and especially in the supply of the indispensable article of water: The fountains of Moses, it is true, furnish a supply
of

of water at all seasons of the year, but they are situated at twelve miles distance from Suez. Water may be, likewise, and is, collected in tanks or reservoirs near the town, but it soon grows fetid. The difficulty, however, of victualling and watering such a fleet, though great, is not insurmountable, and therefore may be allowed to be got over.

The dangerous navigation of the Red Sea, in which it appears not fewer than fifteen armed ships were lost between the time of the French entering Egypt, and the signing of the definitive treaty of peace, is the next obstacle that presents itself, and which may also be surmounted. But as the navigation down this sea can only be performed six months in the year, on account of the periodical winds which there prevail, we can always know, within six months, when such a fleet would attempt to pass the narrow strait of Babelmandel, and be prepared accordingly. This strait is completely commanded by the island of Perim, against which there is no other objection but the want of water. If, however, we have allowed the French to surmount so many difficulties before they can arrive at the strait of Babelmandel, we may surely give ourselves the credit of being able to overcome this single objection against the island of Perim. A reservoir to collect and preserve rain water might be constructed; or, by digging below the level of the sea, fresh water would, in all probability, be obtained; or, at any rate, water might be transported thither from the continent, sufficient for the supply of the small garrison that would be necessary to protect the strait. The possession of this island, with a few frigates, is said to be competent for the destruction of all the craft

that could possibly be collected and sent down from Suez and all the other ports of the Red Sea. Little, therefore, is to be apprehended from the designs of the French on India by the way of the Red Sea, so long as we can command the strait and victual the force necessary to be stationed there; advantages which the possession of the Cape and of Ceylon would always enable us to make use of.

But if through the Cape the French can contrive to assemble and victual a large armament in the Indian Seas, we must have an immense force to prevent such an armament from co-operating with a body of troops that may previously have been thrown into Egypt and Syria, a plan which they probably intended to have carried into effect, had not the ambitious views of the Consul put us on our guard, and rendered the present war both just and necessary. Such a plan, at any future period of peace, may easily be realized, long before any intelligence of it could reach India, or any force be sent out from England to counteract it, if Malta and the Cape of Good Hope were accessible to the French, but could not be carried into execution provided the Cape be left in our hands, and converted into a naval and military station, for which it is so peculiarly adapted.

What the consequence might be of an attempt entirely by land, from Greece or Syria to India, is not quite so certain; and under the present circumstances of the French, it is not improbable that the experiment will be made by land and not by sea. If, indeed, the emperor Paul had lived to carry into execution his wild but dangerous scheme, of assembling a large
body

body of troops on the eastern borders of the Caspian Sea, to act in concert with the French, it is difficult to say where the mischief of their quixotism might have ended. The minds of men, intoxicated with power and maddened by ambition, are not to be measured by the same motives which usually guide the actions of mankind. It is certain that neither Paul nor Buonaparte regarded the great waste of men that such a project would have occasioned. They must have known that by no precaution nor exertion could they have made sure of a constant supply of provisions for so vast a combined army ; but such knowledge would not have prevented them from making the experiment, the lives of their people being objects of little consideration with them. If, like the host of Xerxes, they should be compelled to feed on grass and the shrubs of the thicket, or, like the army of Cambyses, in their march against the Ethiopians, be reduced to the still more dreadful necessity of killing every tenth man to feed the rest, what remorse would such calamities occasion in the breast of that man, who could deliberately put to death by poison the companions of his victories, for no other fault than the misfortune of being disabled by sickness ?

Yet, although vast numbers would necessarily perish in such an enterprize, the result might, nevertheless, be the means of shaking our security in India ; and this would be considered as a most ample compensation for any loss the enemy might sustain in the expedition. The obstacles that have been urged against it were, perhaps, equally great and numerous when the Macedonian hero undertook to march his army across the same countries ; yet he overcame them all. And if Alexander could suc-

ceed in penetrating into India, why not Buonaparte, since military skill and tactics are now so much superior among Europeans to what they were in his day, whilst they have remained nearly stationary in the nations of the east? No sufficient reason can, perhaps, be assigned why the one, with the same or with increased means, and with talents, perhaps, not less suited to apply these means to the best advantage, should not be able to proceed to the same length that the other did.

That no part of his army would ever return is extremely probable. When a considerable proportion had perished by fatigue, by sickness, and by famine, the rest, in all human probability, by change of climate, manner of living, and by intermarrying with a new people, would produce a new race, and that race would cease to be Frenchmen. An army for such an expedition must, in the outset, be immense, to afford a sufficient number of men to maintain the conquered countries through which they must pass. The farther they proceeded the more formidable would be the enemies left in their rear; and on their approach to India, there are good grounds for supposing that the native powers would keep them in check, jealous, as they now must be, of admitting new European visitors, after the dearly bought experience they have already had of their old friends from that quarter. These, however, are contingencies that amount to no security of a failure in the main object of the expedition, namely, the destruction of our empire in the east. We shall, perhaps, come nearest the mark by considering the most serious, and probably the only, obstacle that would impede their progress in the countries that lie between Syria and India,

to be occasioned by the great difficulty of procuring provisions and transporting the baggage and ammunition that would be required for so large an army. But even these are difficulties which, by an enterprising and determined mind, would be surmounted.

Whether the French really intended to march an army by land, in the event of their having reduced Acre and got possession of Syria, seems to be doubtful; but it is pretty evident they entertained hopes, at one time, of being able to co-operate with the Sultaun of Myfore by the Red Sea, though it does not appear that any previous plan had been concerted for transporting their troops from Egypt to India. The whole expedition, indeed, should seem to have been, in the first instance, a momentary thought, without any further plan or design than that of diverting the original intention of an armament, which was vauntingly called the Army of England. The fact seems to be, that the power and the influence of Buonaparte, who had the command of this army, had rendered him the object of jealousy and hatred to the Directory, who were equally glad with himself to have an excuse for changing the current of these vast preparations from a hazardous, almost hopeless, enterprize, whose failure would have ended in equal disgrace both to the Directory and their general, into a romantic expedition that had the sanction of the old government for the attempt, and, at all events, was more promising of success than the pretended invasion of the British islands. The fame of Buonaparte required, in fact, to be supported, at that time, by some new and signal adventure which might be the means of rescuing him from the secondary

condary part the Directory had reserved for him, by the command of a pretended expedition against their only remaining enemy. In this situation some of his friends, it is supposed, suggested to him the conquest of Egypt, which had long been an object of the French Government under the monarchy. The brilliancy of such a conquest was well suited to the enterprising spirit and ambitious views of the Corsican. It is supposed, also, that the memoir which the philosopher Leibnitz presented to Louis XIVth was put into his hands, and that the grand objects held out therein took strong possession of his mind. "*The sovereignty of the seas—the Eastern Empire—the overthrow of the Porte—and universal arbitration,*" were all to be accomplished by the conquest of Egypt, a conquest that was reserved for his mighty arm. "Soldiers," says he, on the departure of the expedition, "you are about to undertake a conquest, the effects of which, upon commerce and civilization, will be incalculable; and the blow it will give to England will be followed up with its destruction."

But vain are often the hopes of man! The brilliancy of such a conquest, however alluring at a distance, seems to have faded on the approach. Whether his unsuccessful attempt against Acre had damped his ardour, and thrown an insurmountable barrier to any views he might have entertained against India, or whether he meant to be satisfied with annexing Egypt to the colonies of France, is still matter of conjecture; but it would seem from one of his letters, published in the intercepted correspondence, written at a time when he had not the least idea of being baffled in his schemes, and his army finally driven out by
the

the English, that the acquisition of Egypt was the end of his design, and that his intention was to return to Paris as soon as the necessary arrangements could be made for its future government. His object, no doubt, as appears from his letters to the King of England and the Emperor of Germany, was to obtain a general peace, and by certain sacrifices on the part of France or its allies, to retain possession of this new colony, from whence, at some distant period, when he had assembled a sufficient force, and prepared the necessary quantity of shipping in the Red Sea, he might have availed himself of a favourable opportunity of making a descent on the Malabar coast. In such an event he was well aware that England, at that time, would never have relinquished the Cape of Good Hope, which he might therefore have proposed as an equivalent for Egypt. The importance which the French have attached to this half-way station between Europe and India, appears from the conferences which took place between Lord Malmesbury and Monsieur *De la Croix*, wherein the latter persisted that the Cape of Good Hope was of infinitely greater importance to England than the Netherlands were to France, and that if our demands for keeping it were acquiesced in, it should be considered as a full and ample compensation for them. "If," says he, "you are masters of the Cape and Trincomalée, we shall hold all our settlements in India, and the Isles of France and Bourbon entirely at the tenure of your will and pleasure; they will be ours only as long as you choose we should retain them; you will be sole masters in India, and we shall be entirely dependent on you." On one occasion he vehemently exclaimed, "Your Indian empire alone has enabled you to sub-

" fidize

“fidize all the powers of Europe againſt us, and your monopoly
 “of the Indian trade has put you in poſſeſſion of a fund of in-
 “exhauſtible wealth !”

As the French, in all human probability, will very ſoon be deprived of all their colonies in the weſt, they will be more anxious to increaſe their eſtabliſhments in the eaſt; and however limited might have been the extent of their views on the memorable expedition to Egypt, there cannot now be a difference of opinion on the ſubject. India is, undoubtedly, their object, and to gain that object they will leave no meaſures untried, nor regard the ſacrifice of thouſands. They have now, indeed, ſtronger motives than ever for attempting the deſtruction of our power in the eaſt. Driven from the moſt valuable of their Weſt India ſettlements, by a conduct of which the conſequences might eaſily have been foreſeen, and in a fair way of loſing the reſt, they will ſeek for reparation in Egypt and in India. If, however, England can ſucceed in keeping them out of the Eaſtern Seas, the feeble remains of their maritime ſtrength muſt ſpeedily be extinguished; for without colonies they can have little or no foreign trade, and conſequently no ſeamen. To effect this deſireable end, it will be indiſpenſably neceſſary for England to regain poſſeſſion of the Cape of Good Hope, which, with Malta and Ceylon, are the beſt guarantees for the tranquillity of our Indian trade and ſettlements, and without which their ſecurity muſt always be conſidered as precarious.

It is almoſt ſuperfluous to obſerve how much every nation of Europe is intereſted, that the power of the Britiſh empire ſhould,

should, at this moment, be upheld by every possible security that may enable her to resist the overwhelming and insatiable ambition of France. Do the other powers vainly hope to meet a better fate under her triumphant arms than Holland, Hanover, or Switzerland have experienced, where, before the palsying arm of French tyranny had destroyed their health and vigour, the people were prosperous, happy, and free? Would Denmark or Sweden, Prussia or the principalities of Germany, be treated with more consideration than the Italian provinces have been? Will Spain and Portugal increase their influence, wealth, and commerce by being degraded into tributary provinces of France, and do they promise themselves a better security of their colonies by the humiliating alliance? Nothing, surely, but the most morbid apathy could prevent these and the rest of Europe from rising in a mass to wipe off the disgrace that has already fallen on some, and momentarily threatens the rest. How is it possible that those powers, who yet have the means of rescuing Europe from universal misery, can remain inactive, and insensible of their own impending danger? A little island, animated with a great soul, is their only security, and if that should fail, the tyrant's fell grasp will soon reach them all. The system, deeply rooted in the mind of the Consular Government, appears to be that of universal and arbitrary dominion—to reduce all Europe into gallic provinces as Asia fell under the yoke of Rome.

Nor would the dreadful effects of French aggrandizement be confined to Europe, were they not completely checked by the maritime power of Great Britain. Asia, Africa, and South America would soon be overrun with Frenchmen. No one can

doubt, for a moment, what the fate of Egypt would be if England should relinquish the possession of Malta. The First Consul, indeed, in an unguarded moment of frenzy, has most unequivocally avowed it. The destruction of the Ottoman Government is another object of French ambition. One of the most intelligent of the French officers, in his correspondence with the Executive Directory, observes, "The Ottoman Empire is generally regarded as an old edifice, tottering to its fall. The European powers have long been preparing to divide its scattered fragments, and many politicians conceive that the catastrophe is close at hand. In this supposition, they think it but right that France should have her share of the spoils; *and the part allotted to her is Egypt.*"

But let those professed Cosmopolites, who, from principles of pretended humanity, declare themselves friends to the dismemberment of the Turkish Empire, reflect seriously on the consequences that would inevitably ensue were France concerned in the dissolution and partition of this government. However desirable it may seem to free the Greeks from the miserable yoke under which they long have groaned, yet a sudden transition from slavery to freedom would scarcely be borne with more moderation by the Greeks, than by the French at home or the negroes in the West India islands. Nor would the horrors of a revolution be confined to the Turkish provinces. The licentious army who might effect it, trained and accustomed to rapine and plunder, led on by needy or ambitious officers, who, on their part, are spurred by the aggrandizing views of their government, would not be content to sit down with Egypt as their share

share of the plunder. As Malta was the step that led them to Egypt, so would Egypt be to Syria, and Syria to the possession of India; to the plunder of that wealth which, in their opinion, is the great support of Britain. Thus would the scourge of their inordinate ambition be felt from the Nile to the Ganges, and from thence, in all probability, to the Yellow Sea. And by adverting to the geographical position of the southern extremity of Africa, in relation to other countries, and to the advantages it commands as a military station, we shall perceive with what ease might all the ports of South America be made subservient to their ambitious views, and how speedily that great continent from the isthmus of Darien to Terra del Fuego would fall into their insatiable grasp. The accomplishment of these objects, chimerical as they may appear, are prevented only by the transcendent and invincible strength of the British navy.

As it must therefore obviously be the interest of the whole world that the restless and aggrandizing spirit of France should effectually be counteracted, and as the Cape of Good Hope and Malta in her possession would forward her views at universal dominion, there can be no reasonable objections made on the part of the other powers of Europe against these two grand points of security being left, at a general peace, in the hands of England, or, at all events, to be protected by English garrisons, as some guarantee against the designs of the general enemy of the human race.

As the importance of every military station must depend, in a considerable degree, on the sufficiency of the works that either

But even old seasoned troops, after a long sea-voyage, are generally found to be disqualified, during a considerable time, for any great exertion. The tone or elasticity of the mind has become relaxed as well as the habit of body. Let any one recollect how he felt after a long sea-voyage, and ask himself if he were capable of the same exertion, and of undergoing the same fatigue, immediately after landing as before his embarkation. The answer, I fancy, will be in the negative. The limbs, in fact, require to be exercised in order to regain their usual motions, and the lungs must have practice before they will play with their usual freedom in the chest. And these effects, adverse to prompt and energetic action, will generally be proportioned to the length of the voyage, and the privations to which men must necessarily submit.

The very able and intelligent writers of the *Précis des évènements militaires*, or *Epitome of military events*, seem to ascribe the defeat of the Russian column, commanded by General Hermann, in the affair at Bergen, where it was almost cut to pieces, to their marching against the enemy immediately after landing from a sea-voyage, although it had not been very long. They observe that, “by being crowded on board transports, and other inconveniences experienced at sea, not only a considerable number of individuals are weakened to such a degree that they are incapable of any service, but whole corps sometimes present the same disadvantages—the extreme inequality of strength that, in such cases, prevails between the individuals or constituent parts of corps, is, at once, destructive of their aggregated and combined impulse.”

If

If then such be the effects produced on seasoned troops, on a sea-voyage of moderate length, they must be doubly felt by young recruits unaccustomed to the necessary precautions for preserving their health. In fact, a raw recruit, put on board a ship in England, totally unformed and undisciplined, will be much farther from being a soldier, when he arrives in India, than when he first stepped on board. The odds are great that he dies upon the passage, or that he arrives under incurable disease. And, indeed, of those who may chance to arrive in tolerable health, a great proportion dies in the seasoning, from the debilitating effects of a hot climate. India is, perhaps, the worst place in the whole world for forming an European recruit into a soldier. Unable to bear the fatigue of being exercised, his spirits are moreover depressed by observing how little exertion men of the same rank and condition as himself are accustomed to make. It cannot, therefore, be denied that, as long as it shall be found necessary to recruit our large armies in India with European troops, it would be a most desirable object to be in possession of some middle station to break the length of the sea-voyage; a station which at the same time enjoyed a middle temperature of climate, between the extremes of heat and cold, to season the body and adapt it to sustain an increased quantity of the one or the other.

The Cape of Good Hope eminently points out such a station. Its geographical position on the globe is so commanding a feature, that the bare inspection of a map, without any other information, must at once obtrude its importance and value in this as well as many other respects. Its distance from the coast

of Brazil is the voyage of a month; from the Dutch colonies of Surinam, Demarara, Berbice, and Effiquebo, with the West India islands, six weeks; the same to the Red Sea; and two months to the coasts of Malabar and Coromandel. With the east and the west coasts of Africa and the adjacent islands, it commands a ready communication at all seasons of the year. A place so situated, just half way between England and India, in a temperate and wholesome climate, and productive of refreshments of every description, would naturally be supposed to hold out such irresistible advantages to the East India Company, not only by its happy position and local ascendancy, but also by the means it affords of opening a new market and intermediate depositary for their trade and commodities, that they would have been glad to purchase, at any price, an acquisition of such immense importance; and that such great advantages, however they might be blinked by some or unknown to others, would speedily have forced a general conviction of their value, in spite of real ignorance or affected indifference.

One might also have supposed that the possession of the Cape of Good Hope would have suggested itself to the East India Company as a place which would have removed many, if not all, of the difficulties that occurred to them, on the renewal of their privileges in 1793, when a depôt for their recruits in Britain was in contemplation. The principal regulations proposed for such depositary of troops, as contained in "*Historic View of Plans for British India*," were the following:—"That the age of the Company's recruits should be from twelve to fifteen or twenty, because at this period of life, the constitution was
" found

“ found to accommodate itself most easily to the different varia-
 “ tions of climate—that the officers of the police should be
 “ empowered to transfer to the depôt all such helpless and in-
 “ digent youths as might be found guilty of misdemeanors and
 “ irregularities approaching to crimes—that the said officers of
 “ police and others should be authorized to engage destitute and
 “ helpless young men in a service, where they would have a
 “ comfortable subsistence, and an honourable employment—
 “ that the young men so procured should be retained in Great
 “ Britain, at the depôt, for a certain time, in order to be in-
 “ structed in such branches of education as would qualify for
 “ the duty of a non-commissioned officer, and in those military
 “ exercises which form them for immediate service in the regi-
 “ ments in India.”

Now of all the places on the surface of the globe, for the
 establishment of such a depôt, the Cape of Good Hope is pre-
 eminently distinguished. In the first place, there would be no
 difficulty in conveying them thither. In every month of the
 year, the outward bound ships of the Company, private traders,
 or whalers, sail from England, and the fewer that each ship
 carried, the greater the probability would be that none of them
 should die on the passage. And there is, perhaps, no place on
 the face of the earth in every respect so suitable as the Cape
 for forming them into soldiers. It possesses, among other ad-
 vantages, three that are invaluable; healthiness of climate,
 cheapness of subsistence, and a favourable situation for speedy
 intercourse with most parts of the world, and particularly with
 India. I shall make a few remarks on each of these points.

With regard to the healthiness of climate, I do not consider it as necessary to the present subject to give copies of the regular returns of deaths in the several regiments that, for the last seven years, have been stationed at the Cape of Good Hope. Such dry details furnish very little of the useful and less of the agreeable. They might, indeed, serve to shew, on a comparison with other returns sent in from different foreign stations, how very trifling has been the mortality of troops in this settlement. It will be sufficient, however, for my purpose to observe, that Lord Macartney, in order to save a vast and unnecessary expence to the public, found it expedient to break up the hospital staff, which, in fact, was become perfectly useless, there being at that time no sick whatsoever in the general hospital, and so few as scarcely worth the noticing in the regimental hospitals; and the surgeons of the regiments acknowledged that those few under their care were the victims of intemperance and irregularity. At this time the strength of the garrison consisted of more than five thousand men.

Shortly after the capture, it is true, a considerable sickness prevailed among the British troops, and great numbers died, a circumstance that was noticed, and at the same time fully explained, by General Sir James Craig in his letter to Mr. Dundas, about three months after the cession of the colony. He observes that the soldiers of the Dutch East India Company were obliged to furnish their own bedding and blankets, as well as the necessary garrison and camp furniture; so that, when the Dutch entered into the capitulation, not a single article of garrison furniture could be claimed; and the shops, at that time, furnishing

nishing no such materials, the men were obliged to sleep on the bare flag-stones in the great barrack, until a supply of blankets and camp utensils of every kind could be sent out from England.

Invalids from India recover very quickly at the Cape. The servants of the East India Company are allowed to proceed thus far on leave of absence without prejudice to their rank; and here they generally experience a speedy recovery. The two Boy regiments, whom I have already mentioned to have suffered severely on the passage from England in ships navigated by Lascars, and who landed in fact on the height of a malignant and contagious disease, rapidly recovered; and, in the course of two years, from being a parcel of weakly boys, unable to carry a musquet, became two very fine regiments, fit for service in any part of the world. When the orders, indeed, for the final evacuation of the Cape were countermanded, the 34th regiment, which two years before had excited the pity of every one who saw them, enfeebled as they were by disease, and unfit, from their tender years, for the fatigues of soldiers, was now a very essential part of the strength of the garrison.

It may, therefore, I think, be safely concluded, that the climate of the Cape is not only salubrious, but that it is particularly favourable for forming young and raw recruits into soldiers. And it would appear, moreover, that the salutary effects of this climate are not merely local, but that their seasoning efficacy is extended beyond the hemisphere of Southern Africa, and qualifies, in a very remarkable manner, the raw recruit
and

and the seasoned soldier for the climate of India, and the still more trying situation of the voyage thither. The constitution would seem to acquire, by a few years residence at the Cape, a strength and vigour which not only enabled it to surmount the inconveniences of the sea, but, contrary to what usually happens, to sustain the fatigue of long and continued marches in a hot climate, immediately after debarkation.

The truth of this observation was made evident by a number of instances that occurred during the seven years that the Cape remained in our possession; but in none more strongly than that, in the government of Lord Macartney, when three almost complete regiments of infantry, the 84th, the 86th, and the Scotch brigade, were embarked and sent off, at a few days' notice, under the command of Major-General Baird, to join the army of India against Tippoo Sultaun. This reinforcement, consisting of upwards of two thousand men in their shoes, arrived to a man, and in the highest state of health; took the field the day after their landing; marched into the Mysore country; co-operated with the Indian army, and contributed very materially towards the conquest of Seringapatam. The very man (Major-General Baird), under whose command they sailed from the Cape but a few months before, led them on to storm this celebrated capital of the Mysore kingdom.

One might have supposed that the facility and success of throwing reinforcements into India, exemplified in this remarkable instance, would have stamped on the minds of the directors an indelible value on the Cape. "By possessing and
" im-

“ improving the advantages of seasoning and preparing our troops at the Cape,” observes Lord Macartney in his letter to Lord Melville on the importance of the Cape, dated April the 25th, 1801, “ I had it in my power, almost at a moment’s notice, to send to Madras, under the command of Major-General Baird, about two thousand effective men in the highest health, vigour, and discipline, who eminently contributed to the capture of Seringapatam, and the total subversion of the power of Tippoo.”

It did not seem, however, to have made any such impression on the East India Company; at least their conduct and opinions indicated no change in consequence of it. Nor could their inflexible indifference be roused by the multiplied instances which clearly demonstrated the importance of having a suitable station for the seasoning and training of young troops to act, on any emergency and at a short notice, in their service, and for the protection of their vast possessions in India. Had not the instance above recited been considered as sufficient to stamp its value, the reinforcement of troops that was sent from the Cape, to accompany the expedition of Sir Home Popham to the Red Sea, one might have thought would have forced a full conviction of the importance of such a station. On this occasion were embarked, at almost a moment’s warning, twelve hundred effective men, composed of detachments of artillery, cavalry, and infantry, who all arrived to a man, at Cossir, a port in the Red Sea, from whence they were found capable of immediately sustaining long and fatiguing marches, notwithstanding the heat of the climate, the heaviness of the ground, and the scarcity of water.

water. The 61st regiment, Sir Robert Wilson observes, landed at Coffir after having been near sixteen weeks on board, without having one sick man, though the strength of the regiment exceeded nine hundred men.

A thousand difficulties, it appears, were started in England with regard to the failing of this expedition, by people who derive their information only from defective books and not from local knowledge. The season of the Monsoon was stated to be unfavourable for the navigation of the Red Sea, and the desarts by which it was bordered were held to be totally impassable. But to vigorous and determined minds few things are insurmountable. "The man (Lord Melville) who projected, and persevered in, the expedition to Egypt," saw very clearly that the expedition to the Red Sea could not fail under proper caution and management, and the event proved that he was right.

Having thus sufficiently shewn, as I conceive, the importance of the Cape as a military station, or depositary of troops, with regard to the healthiness of the climate, and the effects produced on the constitution of soldiers, by being seasoned and exercised a short time there, I shall now proceed to state the comparative small expence at which the soldier can be subsisted on this station, and the saving that must necessarily ensue both to Government and the East India Company, by sending their recruits to the Cape to be trained for service either in the East or the West Indies.

The

The Cape of Good Hope is the only military station that we have possessed of late years, where government was enabled to make a saving by feeding the soldier. What I mean by this is, where the ration, or settled proportion of victuals, could be furnished for a sum of money less than that which is stopped out of his pay in consideration of it. In other parts of the globe, government is a very considerable loser by feeding the soldier; that is to say, his ration must be purchased for a sum of money more than that which is deducted from his pay. The government consents to this loss for the accommodation of the soldier, who, on most stations, could not possibly subsist on his pay, on account of the dearth of provisions. At the Cape of Good Hope each ration cost the government something less than sixpence, which was the amount of the stoppage deducted in lieu of it. At home, and in different parts abroad, as I have been informed, the ration stands the government in different sums from tenpence to half-a-crown.

At the Cape of Good Hope, some twenty years ago, two pound of butchers' meat cost one penny; at the capture by the English the price had advanced to one pound for twopence; yet, notwithstanding the increased demand, occasioned by the addition of five thousand troops and near three thousand seamen, frequently more than this number, with all the various attempts and combinations that were practised (and, on a certain occasion in the year 1800, very unwisely countenanced by high authority,) to raise the price of this article, the contract for supplying the garrison was never higher than at the rate of two and five-eighths pounds for sixpence. Two pounds of good

wholesome bread might be generally purchased for twopence. Even in the midst of a scarcity, which threatened a famine, bread rose no higher than twopence the pound; and all kinds of fruit and vegetables are so abundant, and so cheap, as to be within the reach of the poorest person. A pint of good sound wine may be procured for threepence; and, were it not for the circumstance of the licence for selling wine by retail being farmed out as one source of the colonial revenue, a pint of the same wine would cost little more than three-halfpence.

This farming out the wine licence was a subject of grievance to the soldier, as it compelled him to buy his wine in small quantities at the licensed houses, when the civilians and housekeepers were allowed to purchase it in casks of twenty gallons, at the rate of five or six rix-dollars the cask, which is just about half the retail price he was obliged to pay for it. Yet, vexatious as such a regulation appeared to be, it was still sufficiently cheap to enable the soldier to purchase fully as much as was useful to him. Numbers of the soldiers, indeed, contrived to save money out of their pay. The 91st regiment of Highlanders, in particular, were known to have remitted a good deal of money to their families in Scotland; and many of the serjeants of the different regiments, at the evacuation of the colony, had saved from one to two hundred pounds in hard money.

In the year 1800 the government, in order to bring a little more money into the treasury from the wine licence, directed, by proclamation, that the retail sellers should demand from the soldier the increased price of eightpence the bottle, instead of six-

fixpence, which, however, they had prudence enough to decline. The sum brought into the government treasury by tolerating this monopoly, averaged about seventy thousand rix-dollars annually. But in the event of the Cape falling again into our hands, which sooner or later must happen, if it be an object to secure our Indian possessions, it would be wise to supply this part of the revenue by some other means.

Government likewise derived other profits besides those which accrued from the cheapness of the rations. The Deputy Paymaster-General drew bills on his Majesty's Paymasters-General in England, in exchange for the paper currency of the colony, in which all the contingent and extraordinary expences of the garrison were paid. These bills, except in the first few months when there was not yet any demand for remittances, and when, perhaps, their credit was not fully established in the minds of the Dutch, always bore a premium against the paper, varying from five to thirty per cent., but fixed, for the greatest part of the time, at twenty per cent. They would, indeed, have advanced to a much higher rate; for the merchant, unable to make his remittances to any great extent in colonial produce, or in India goods, which, if permitted, might have been injurious to the interests of the East India Company, was under the necessity of purchasing these bills. Lord Macartney, however, considered it expedient to fix the premium at twenty per cent., deeming it right that government bills should bear the highest premium of bills that might be in the market, but, at the same time, not to proceed to such a height as to become oppressive either to the merchant or the public: So that if the ration was supplied to

government for fivepence-halfpenny in paper currency, the real cost was little more than fourpence-halfpenny.

The amount of bills drawn for the contingent and extraordinary expences of the army, from the 1st of October 1795, when the colony was taken, to the 28th of July 1802, the time it should have been evacuated, as appears from the Deputy Paymaster's books, is 1,045,814 *l* 14*s* 1*d*. upon part of which (for part was drawn at par for specie) the profit derived to his Majesty's government amounts to the sum of 115,719 *l* 3*s* 1*d*.

Another source of profit, which might have been very considerable, was derived from the importation of specie. The subsistence of the soldiers, it may be observed, was always paid in hard money, and not in paper currency. The Spanish dollar was issued in payment to the troops at the rate of five shillings sterling, which I imagine might have been purchased and sent out at four shillings and fourpence each, making thus a profit of more than fifteen per cent. on the pay, as well as on the extraordinaries, of the army. The sum that was thus imported amounted to 103,426 *l* 18*s* 3*d*. Upon which, supposing the whole sent out by government, which I understand was not exactly the case, though nearly so, the profits must have been 15,514 *l* at home, besides an additional profit of 710 *l* 13*s* 3*d*. arising from a small quantity of specie bought in the Cape. The government also sent out about four thousand pounds of copper money, in penny pieces, which were circulated at twopence, from which there was consequently another profit derived of 4000 *l*.

Shortly after the capture of the Cape, General Craig, finding it impossible to raise, upon bills, a sufficient sum of paper currency to defray the extraordinaries of the army, was reduced to the bold measure of stamping a new paper issue, on the credit of the British government, to the amount of fifty thousand pounds; a sum that was never redeemed from circulation, nor brought to any account, until the final restoration of the colony. So that the interest of this sum for seven years produced a further profit to government of 17,500*l*.

By taking these sums together, namely,

Profit on bills drawn	-	£. 115,719	3	1
— on specie imported	-	16,224	13	3
— on copper money	-	4,000	0	0
— on paper money circulated		17,500	0	0
			<hr/>	
We have		£. 153,443	16	4
			<hr/>	

which may be considered as a clear gain to the government, (independent of the saving on each ration) and, consequently, a lessening of the expenditure that was occasioned at the Cape of Good Hope.

As this expenditure has been stated to be so enormous, as more than to counterbalance the advantages resulting from the possession of the settlement, and we have already seen how important these advantages are, when considered in only one point of view, it may not be amiss to point out, in as correct a manner as the nature of the subject will admit, the exact sum expended

expended in any one year, in the military department, at the Cape of Good Hope. The year I shall take is from May 1797 to May 1798, when the garrison was strongest; consisting of

The 8th	}	Light Dragoons.
28th		
The 84th	}	Infantry.
86th		
91st		
Scotch Brigade		

In that year the estimate was made up according to the following extract :

1. Subsistence of the non-commissioned officers and privates of the two regiments of dragoons and four regiments of infantry, for one year, according to the new rate of payment, deducting for rations and hospital charges,	55,729 2 6
2. Clothing and contingent expences for ditto,	28,133 13 2
3. Full pay of the commissioned officers of two regiments of dragoons, and four regiments of infantry for one year, according to the latest regulations,	43,667 14 8
4. Staff officers and hospital establishment of one inspector, two physicians, one purveyor, four surgeons, two apothecaries, and nine hospital mates,	11,178 2 6
Carried forward	£. 138,708 12 10

	Brought forward	£.	138,708	12	10
5. Commissary-General's department, including engineers, which alone amounts to 17,225 <i>l.</i> 16 <i>s.</i> 5 <i>d.</i>	-	-	107,794	10	11
6. Ordnance department, including artillery expences,	-	-	18,536	14	4
7. Deputy Quarter-Master General's Department, including lodging money to officers, which amounts to about 4000 <i>l.</i> and bat and forage for 200 days. about 6000 <i>l.</i> in the whole	-	-	25,000	0	0
Total amount of one year's expence			£.	290,039	18 1

Or, we may, perhaps, be able to come still nearer the truth by taking the total expenditure of the whole seven years, thus:

Amount of bills drawn by the Deputy Paymaster-General for paper and specie, for the pay and subsistence of the non-commissioned officers and privates, and for the extraordinaries of the army for seven years	-	-	1,045,814	14	1
Specie imported and bought (about)	-	-	111,000	0	0
Clothing and contingent expences at the rate as above specified per year	-	-	196,935	12	2
Full pay of the commissioned officers of six regiments, as above, for seven years	-	-	305,674	2	8
Ordnance department for seven years	-	-	129,757	0	4
Total amount			£.	1,789,181	9 3
which					

which total amount, divided by seven, gives 255,597*l.* 7*s.* for the annual average expence incurred in the military department at the Cape of Good Hope. But it would be the height of absurdity to say, that even this sum, moderate as it is, was an additional expence to Government in consequence of the capture of this settlement; since it is not only composed of the expences of maintaining the garrison, and the contingencies and extraordinaries of the army, but it includes, likewise, the pay, the subsistence, and the clothing of an army of five thousand men. Now as these troops must have been fed, clothed, and paid in any other place, as well as at the Cape of Good Hope, and as I have shewn, at a much greater expence, it is certainly not fair to charge this sum to the account of the garrison of the Cape. Even in peace the commissioned officers would have received their half pay, which alone would amount to a sum from 100,000*l.* to 150,000*l.*

There is little reason, therefore, in reality, for considering the Cape in the light of an expensive settlement. In fact, the sums of money, that have been expended there, dwindle into nothing upon a comparison with some of the West India islands, whose importance are a feather when weighed against that of the Cape of Good Hope. Viewing it only as a point of security to our Indian possessions, and as a nursery for maturing raw recruits into complete soldiers, the question of expence falls to the ground. Of the several millions that are annually raised for the support of government at home, and its dependencies abroad, a small fraction of one of these millions may surely be allowed for

for the maintenance of a station whose advantages are incalculable.

But the article of expence, trifling even in war, could be no object whatsoever in time of peace. The fortifications, which were in the most ruinous condition when the place was taken, being finished in a complete manner, would require no further expence than that of merely keeping the works in repair, which might amount, perhaps, to an annual sum of five thousand pounds. The contingencies and extraordinaries of the army could not, at the utmost, amount to twenty thousand pounds; so that twenty-five or thirty thousand pounds would be the extent of the contingent and extraordinary expences of the Cape in time of peace; a sum that, by proper management, and a prudent application of the revenues of the colony, might easily be defrayed out of the public treasury there, and leave a surplus adequate to all the demands of the civil department, together with the necessary repairs of public works and buildings.

The manner in which I calculate is thus: from a review of the colonial revenues, I find that the average in the Dutch Government in ten years, from 1784 to 1794 was little more than 100,000 rix dollars yearly, but that by the regulations and new imposts made by the Dutch Commissaries General in 1793, the amount in the following year was 211,568 rix dollars. They afterwards experienced a considerable increase, and from the first year of Lord Macartney's administration they rose gradually as follows:

From the 1st Oct. 1797 to the 30th Sept. 1798,		
they were	-	-
		<i>R. d.</i> 322,512 7 5
1st ditto 1798 to ditto 1799	-	360,312 0 0
1st ditto 1799 to ditto 1800	-	369,596 0 0
1st ditto 1800 to ditto 1801	-	450,713 2 4

And it is here not unworthy of notice, that from the moment of the preliminaries of peace being known they fell, the last year's produce, being only

From 1st Oct. 1801 to 30th Sept 1802 - 389,901 6 0

And in the following year, as far of it as was expired, they were still less productive.

In this state of progressive improvement, under the British Government, without a single additional tax being laid, but on the contrary, some taken off, and others modified, arrears of land-rent remitted and again accumulating, I think, without any danger of exaggeration, we might reckon upon a net annual revenue of half a million rix dollars, or one hundred thousand pounds currency. The annual average expenditure, including salaries and contingencies of departments, with the necessary repairs of public works and buildings, were, under the administrations of Lord Macartney and Lieutenant-General Dundas, at the most about 300,000 rix dollars or 60,000 *l.* Suppose then the contingencies and extraordinaries of the army to be 30,000 *l.* the whole sum required would be 90,000 *l.* or 450,000 rix dollars, the exact amount of the colonial revenue at the close of the year 1801.

The

The point of view, in which the importance of the Cape next presents itself to our consideration, is its local position, as being favourable for distributing troops to any part of the globe, and especially to our settlements in the east, with facility and dispatch; which is by no means the least among the advantages it possesses as a military station. For however important to a depôt of troops the benefits may be that result from a healthy climate, and cheapness of subsistence, their value would be materially diminished by great distance from, or difficulty of conveyance to, such places where their services may be wanted.

The longer the voyage the less effective will the troops be on their arrival, and delay is dangerous even to a proverb. Perhaps it is not saying too much, that we are indebted to the Cape for the conquest of Mysore and the overthrow of Tippoo; not merely from the reinforcements sent from thence to join the Indian army, though they eminently contributed to the conquest of Seringapatam, but from the vigilance of Lord Macartney in detecting the transactions of the Sultaun's agents at the Isle of France, of which, at that time, they were ignorant in India, and the active measures he took to communicate speedy intelligence thereof to the Governor-General of Bengal. "I received," the Marquis of Wellesley observes, in his dispatch to the Court of Directors, "on the 18th of June 1798, a regular authentication of the proclamation (of the Governor of the Isle of France) in a letter from his Excellency the Earl of Macartney, dated the 28th of March." And he acted, on

this intelligence, with that prudence, promptitude, and spirit, for which the character of the noble Marquis is so eminently distinguished. The object of Tippoo was to gain time in order that he might strengthen his position and augment his forces. But the rapid movement of our troops towards his capital, as soon as his hostile views were confirmed, frustrated his plans, and effected the total subversion of his country. Both the moment of attack and the reinforcement from the Cape were acknowledged to be important; in either of which a failure might have proved fatal to the campaign, and would, at all events, have postponed the day of victory.

The almost incredible celerity, with which twelve hundred effective men joined the Egyptian army in high health and spirits from the Cape of Good Hope, is another instance that must force conviction of its vast importance as a military station. Nor are the advantages afforded by its geographical position of acquiring and conveying intelligence with respect to the affairs of neighbouring nations, or of embarking troops, precarious or depending on chance; there being scarcely a week in the year in which English whalers or merchantmen, or ships of neutral powers, do not touch at the Cape, especially on their outward-bound voyage. And most of these are willing to engage as transports.

It appears from the books of the Custom-house, and the returns of the Captain of the port, that there sailed from the Cape

In

In 1799	-	103 ships
1800	-	109 ditto
1801	-	130 ditto
1802	-	131 ditto

being, in four years, 473 ships,

besides the men of war and coasting vessels. Of these 82 were Americans, 66 Danes, 24 Portuguese, 15 from Hamburgh, and 6 Swedes, 4 from Prussia and Bremen, and the rest English.

The Americans, for some years past, have been establishing a very considerable carrying trade from the eastward on the ruins of the Dutch commerce, and have acquired no small portion of the India and China trade. The ships of this nation have always found it convenient to touch at the Cape, partly for the sake of refreshing their crews, but with a view, at the same time, of disposing of the whole or any part of their cargo to advantage. This cargo is generally lumber, or it is composed of what they quaintly term *notions*, from the great variety and assortment of goods which they take a fancy, or *notion*, may succeed. In payment of such a cargo they are glad to get bills on India for hard money, which they carry to China to purchase teas, nankeens, and porcelain. From the Cape to India they are always willing to be employed as transports.

The situation is pretty much the same with regard to the Danes. But the assistance of neither the one nor the other could possibly be wanted, provided the numerous fleets of our East India Company were permitted to touch at the Cape.

Without the least inconvenience to their commercial concerns, these ships might transport from England to the Cape a constant succession of raw recruits to be formed there into complete soldiers, from whence they might take on board as many of the latter as should be wanted to reinforce their vast armaments in India.

In a word, the advantages that England would acquire by retaining possession of this grand out-work of all Asia cannot sufficiently be appreciated. Nor are these advantages to be considered as exclusively confined to England. Other nations trading to the east would share the benefit arising from the Cape as a British colony. During the late war, the Danes, the Swedes, the Hamburgers, and the Americans, were allowed to refresh, and derived every advantage on the same terms as the English. The only distinction was an additional duty of five per cent. on goods brought in foreign bottoms. In all other respects the trade of the Cape was open to them in the same manner as to British subjects. There was no monopoly granted to individuals for serving foreign shipping with provisions and refreshments as was the case under the Dutch government; when it is well known they were obliged to pay at least double the price of the market for every article brought on board. Were France in possession of the Cape there is reason to suppose that, according to the commercial system which her present government was endeavouring to establish, the restrictions she would impose at this important station would amount to a total exclusion of foreign shipping.

To

To England the Cape is more valuable as a point of effectual security to her Indian trade and settlements than as a place of annoyance to other nations, or as to the means it affords of interrupting their commercial concerns. The unbounded credit of the East India Company, the immensity of its capital employed, the superior quality of British manufactures, and the low rate at which they can be afforded in foreign markets, will always ensure to them the best part of the trade to India and China, and give to England a preference before the other maritime powers of Europe, or that of America. No naval power, therefore, except France, could feel any jealousy, nor entertain reasonable grounds of objection against the Cape becoming a settlement of the British empire; but every one of them are very materially interested, and the Americans more especially, that it should not fall into the hands of France; who would not fail, on every slight occasion, to aim at excluding her numerous ships from the Indian Seas, and endeavour to annihilate her growing commerce in the east; whilst to England, I again repeat it, the Cape is to be considered as chiefly important on account of the advantages it holds forth as a point of security to her valuable possessions in the east, against the designs of an ambitious and implacable enemy.

We have already, indeed, experienced the truth of this remark. The Isles of France and Bourbon were rendered useless to the French during the late war, and incapable of giving to us the least annoyance in the Eastern Seas, from the moment that their ships of war and privateers had been destroyed by our cruisers from the Cape. They were neither able to send troops
to

to these islands from France, nor from thence to India. The trade of the Americans suffered no interruption in the Eastern Seas, nor that of the Portugueze in the Southern Atlantic. In the hands of the French it would have been a point equally convenient for assisting the Spaniards at Rio de la Plata, or attacking the Portugueze at Rio de Janeiro: whilst against us it would have furnished the most effectual means of endangering the security to our Indian trade and settlements.

The possession of this place, at an early period of the war, so completely excluded every hostile power from the Indian Seas, threw so great an increase of commerce into our hands by that exclusion, left us in such quiet and undisturbed dominion in the eastern world, and gave us so many solid advantages unexampled in any former war, that one would suppose it to be a moral impossibility for the East India Company to be unmindful of the source from whence they sprung. But things that are apparently of little value in themselves, are sometimes magnified by intense observation, swell into importance by discussion, and become indispensable by contention; whilst objects of real moment lose their magnitude when slightly viewed, or seen only at a distance, grow little by neglect, and useless without a quarrel.

The French seem to have been aware of the truth of this observation, by avoiding any discussion, in the late negotiation for peace, respecting the importance of the Cape of Good Hope. Their views, no doubt, were well known to our Government, which induced it, in the very first sketch of the conditions of
peace

peace, to propose that the Cape of Good Hope should be restored to the Dutch, or be declared a free port. The latter, however, happened to be just what France could have wished, and it was, therefore, on further consideration, restored in full sovereignty to its ancient possessors. France, finding that her purpose would be completely answered when once it was rescued out of the hands of the English, made no objection to this arrangement. Ceylon she considered as a less important sacrifice, although she knew it to be a much greater to Holland than that of the Cape. The latter has always been an expensive settlement to the Dutch, whilst from the former they derived a considerable revenue. Had the Cape been demanded on the part of England, there can be little doubt the French would have been no less tenacious in rejecting the proposal than they were with regard to Malta; being well convinced that these two possessions, in the hands of England, would be two grand points of security to her Indian empire, of which they have long been so jealous.

I have no intention to discuss the comparative importance of these two stations to England, considering them both to be essentially necessary to her independence as well as to the protection of her commerce and settlements, so long as the restless and aggrandizing spirit of the French Government shall continue to disturb the peace of Europe. It may not, however, be improper to endeavour to point out, and to compare some of the inconveniences that would necessarily have resulted to our trade and settlements in the East Indies during the late war,

from either one or the other of these places being in the hands of an ambitious enemy.

In the first place, it may be considered as a general principle that has long been rooted in the French Government, and from which it will never depart, to aim at the overthrow of our power in India, and to endeavour to erect upon its ruins an empire of their own. To accomplish this point, and in consequence thereof, in the language of the present Corsican ruler, "To strike a blow at England which will be followed up with its complete destruction," they know there are but two roads to take: the one by getting possession of Egypt and Syria, where they might collect and season their troops for the grand expedition, either by sea or land; the other by occupying the Cape of Good Hope. The former they tried in the hope of success, because they knew the other to be a desperate attempt. Had they, or their forced ally, the Dutch, kept possession of the Cape, there is no reason for supposing that the same fleet which failed for Egypt, might not have sailed, from some other port, to this station; or that they could not have slipped out from time to time almost any number of troops they might have thought proper to send. These troops, when seasoned and prepared at the Cape, for a warmer climate, could easily have been transported to the Isles of France and Bourbon, where the French would not only continue to draw supplies from the former, and to victual and provision their ships of war and transports from thence, as in the American war, but where they could not fail to have received a material reinforcement to their shipping from
the

the Dutch ; for it may be recollected, that the fleet under the command of Admiral Lucas reached Saldanha Bay, in spite of the obstacles which the Southern Atlantic presented, by the Cape being then in our hands. This fleet combined with that of the French would have required a naval force, on our part, in the Indian Seas that might not have been quite convenient for us to spare. It is possible, also, they might have eluded the vigilance of our force, as their object would not have been so much to fight us, as to have put in execution a plan that many are inclined to suppose floated in the mind of Buonaparte when he took the road of Egypt, though he was soon convinced of the futility of it by that route without at least double the number of troops ; his whole army being barely sufficient to keep the conquered country in subjection.

Among many reasons, which led to this conjecture, was the work of *Mr. Anquetil Duperron* on India, which, as I have already observed, being withheld from publication for fifteen years on account of the information it contained, and of which it was supposed the English might avail themselves, was hastily issued from the press on the sailing of this memorable expedition ; being intended, most probably, as a guide for the officers on their arrival in India. This intelligent writer, who, to a mind capable of observation and deep reflection, adds the great advantage of local knowledge, fixes on the coast of Malabar as the foundation and corner-stone of their long projected empire in India. The considerations which induce him to give this coast the preference are, among others, the facility of possessing the passes of the neighbouring mountains and of thus securing

the internal commerce of Hindostan—the opportunity it would afford of entering into an alliance with the Mahrattas, whom he considers as a warlike and faithful people—the easy intercourse that might be maintained from this coast with the Persian gulph, the Red Sea, the Isles of France and Bourbon, Madagascar, and the Cape of Good Hope.

These are certainly important considerations, and demand all the vigilance and attention of our Government in India. Even a small force of French troops, had they been thrown upon the coast of Malabar, at the very moment when our forces were drawn off into the Myfore, against the Suldaun's army, might have proved fatal to our possessions on this coast. The usurper would, no doubt, have obtained his reinforcement from the Isle of France, and probably without our knowledge, rendering, by their means, the conquest of Seringapatam doubtful. If, in such a state of things, the French forces could have gained a footing at Bombay, Goa, or Guzzarat, and intrigued themselves into an alliance with the Mahratta powers, though it might not have realized their project of an Indian empire, it would, at least, have been destructive of our possessions in the west of the peninsula, to hold which, indeed, Mr. Anquetil considers as fatal to our power in India.

On this subject his opinion is not singular; before the overthrow of the Myfore kingdom, there were many of our own countrymen, whose sentiments in this respect accorded with his; and who, like himself, have not only a profound knowledge of Indian politics, but are well acquainted with the physical

fical and moral character of the natives, their several connections and relations; and who, at the same time, possess the advantage that local information so eminently affords.

These gentlemen were then fully persuaded, that if the native powers of India could once totally get rid of Europeans, they never would again admit them as inmates, if they could possibly avoid it; and that if we fairly relinquished the Malabar and Coromandel coasts, it would not be difficult to keep others out of them for ever. It might fairly be asked, indeed, if our present possessions there answer to us the advantages expected from them? Do they produce a surplus revenue, either in money or merchandize, over and above their immediate occasions and expences, to say nothing of the extraordinary charges they are exposed to from insurrection or invasion? Have they not reabsorbed, not only all their own resources, but drained Bengal of immense supplies to preserve them from perishing? Have we, or can we expect to find, interior resources there to depend on, without having recourse to Bengal for support? If we have not, and the India budget convinces us that we have not, would it be unwise to take early measures for converting our present hollow truce with the native powers of Southern India into a solid alliance with them, and (by the cession of what we can never hold at all without jealousy and envy, and never can hold long without contest,) for a valuable consideration, which, no doubt, might be had, cut away every inch of ground there, which the French might hope to stand upon. In such case the possession of the Cape or Ceylon would then be of less moment to us, our Indian force would be concentrated and invulnerable in

in the provinces of Bengal, which, with China, afford an ample revenue, and a beneficial commerce, that no enemy is likely to deprive us of for a long period of time. But these speculations would all have vanished into air, had we retained the Cape at a peace, the possession of which, from its position on the globe, would contribute greatly to secure our territories in Southern India, the danger to which is otherwise so much to be apprehended. The conquest of Mysore has certainly contributed in no small degree to our security on the Malabar coast; has consolidated our power in Southern India, and rendered the junction of foreign forces with the Mahratta powers more difficult if not altogether impracticable. On the northern parts of this coast only are we vulnerable in India by sea.

Supposing, however, the views of the enemy, on the Malabar coast, to have failed, they would, at least, have been enabled, with the assistance of the Dutch, to annoy and cut up our Indian and China trade by the multitude of cruising vessels sent out from their islands of France and Bourbon, and from the Cape of Good Hope. Even under every disadvantage, the French frigates and the nest of privateers on the Mauritius station did much mischief at the commencement of the late war, and although they had few reinforcements from France, it required five years, with a very active and powerful squadron from the Cape and from India, before they were all taken and destroyed. What then must have been the case, if, instead of the English possessing this important station, it had been an enemy's port for assembling, refitting, and refreshing the combined fleets of the French and Dutch? It is unnecessary to observe,

serve, that neither of these powers would have found much difficulty in reaching the Cape with single ships, when we have an instance of a whole fleet of Dutch ships arriving there notwithstanding they were fifteen weeks on their passage. This single fleet, acting from the Cape, might have been productive of much inconvenience, expence, and injury to England, and especially to the trade of the East India Company. Were, indeed, the French and Dutch to keep up a proper naval force at this place, it is extremely doubtful if any of the homeward-bound fleets of the East India Company would ever reach England, or if they did, it would be under an expence of convoy so enormous, that the profits on the cargoes would be inadequate to meet it; but of this we shall have occasion to speak more particularly in the next chapter. Such are the dangers to be apprehended in consequence of the Cape being held by an enemy.

The principal disadvantages that would result to England by leaving Malta in the possession of France appear to be, in the first place, the power it would give them of excluding our ships from that port, the best, undoubtedly, in the Mediterranean, and of increasing their force there to the complete destruction of our Mediterranean trade; and secondly, the means it would afford of facilitating their views upon Egypt, by enabling them to throw into that country a force sufficient to renew their project upon India.

With regard to the extent and importance of the Mediterranean trade I speak with diffidence, but I am not apprehensive of

of hazarding much by saying that it admits not of a comparison with that of India and China, though, perhaps, too valuable to be altogether relinquished. In this respect the value of Malta is certainly less important than that of the Cape of Good Hope. But the second point is of a more serious nature. Some, however, are of opinion, that although the subjugation of Egypt may at any time be accomplished by the French, through Malta, yet, in such an event, we have every reason to expect that the vigilance and activity of a British fleet, and the valour of British soldiers, would always enable us to dispute with them the passage of Syria. That, admitting even they should succeed in collecting at Suez an army equal to their wishes, the difficulties of transporting this army to India would be almost insurmountable. If it be meant by those who support this opinion that the attempt is to be made by sea, whilst the Cape remained in our possession, I have little hesitation in agreeing with them that it would certainly fail. During the last war, when their troops had marched to Suez, they had not a single ship in the Red Sea that dared to carry the French flag, nor, with the Cape and Ceylon in our hands, could they at any future period have a fleet of any description without our permission.

But we will even allow them to have assembled at Suez a fleet of their own ships, or of the country coasters, sufficient to take on board their armament destined for the Malabar coast. The next question is, where, or in what manner, are they to victual and to provision such a fleet for a month or five weeks passage, and especially in the supply of the indispensable article of water: The fountains of Moses, it is true, furnish a supply of

of water at all seasons of the year, but they are situated at twelve miles distance from Suez. Water may be, likewise, and is, collected in tanks or reservoirs near the town, but it soon grows fetid. The difficulty, however, of victualling and watering such a fleet, though great, is not insurmountable, and therefore may be allowed to be got over.

The dangerous navigation of the Red Sea, in which it appears not fewer than fifteen armed ships were lost between the time of the French entering Egypt, and the signing of the definitive treaty of peace, is the next obstacle that presents itself, and which may also be surmounted. But as the navigation down this sea can only be performed six months in the year, on account of the periodical winds which there prevail, we can always know, within six months, when such a fleet would attempt to pass the narrow strait of Babelmandel, and be prepared accordingly. This strait is completely commanded by the island of Perim, against which there is no other objection but the want of water. If, however, we have allowed the French to surmount so many difficulties before they can arrive at the strait of Babelmandel, we may surely give ourselves the credit of being able to overcome this single objection against the island of Perim. A reservoir to collect and preserve rain water might be constructed; or, by digging below the level of the sea, fresh water would, in all probability, be obtained; or, at any rate, water might be transported thither from the continent, sufficient for the supply of the small garrison that would be necessary to protect the strait. The possession of this island, with a few frigates, is said to be competent for the destruction of all the craft

that could possibly be collected and sent down from Suez and all the other ports of the Red Sea. Little, therefore, is to be apprehended from the designs of the French on India by the way of the Red Sea, so long as we can command the strait and victual the force necessary to be stationed there; advantages which the possession of the Cape and of Ceylon would always enable us to make use of.

But if through the Cape the French can contrive to assemble and victual a large armament in the Indian Seas, we must have an immense force to prevent such an armament from co-operating with a body of troops that may previously have been thrown into Egypt and Syria, a plan which they probably intended to have carried into effect, had not the ambitious views of the Consul put us on our guard, and rendered the present war both just and necessary. Such a plan, at any future period of peace, may easily be realized, long before any intelligence of it could reach India, or any force be sent out from England to counteract it, if Malta and the Cape of Good Hope were accessible to the French, but could not be carried into execution provided the Cape be left in our hands, and converted into a naval and military station, for which it is so peculiarly adapted.

What the consequence might be of an attempt entirely by land, from Greece or Syria to India, is not quite so certain; and under the present circumstances of the French, it is not improbable that the experiment will be made by land and not by sea. If, indeed, the emperor Paul had lived to carry into execution his wild but dangerous scheme, of assembling a large
body

body of troops on the eastern borders of the Caspian Sea, to act in concert with the French, it is difficult to say where the mischief of their quixotism might have ended. The minds of men, intoxicated with power and maddened by ambition, are not to be measured by the same motives which usually guide the actions of mankind. It is certain that neither Paul nor Buonaparte regarded the great waste of men that such a project would have occasioned. They must have known that by no precaution nor exertion could they have made sure of a constant supply of provisions for so vast a combined army; but such knowledge would not have prevented them from making the experiment, the lives of their people being objects of little consideration with them. If, like the host of Xerxes, they should be compelled to feed on grass and the shrubs of the thicket, or, like the army of Cambyses, in their march against the Ethiopians, be reduced to the still more dreadful necessity of killing every tenth man to feed the rest, what remorse would such calamities occasion in the breast of that man, who could deliberately put to death by poison the companions of his victories, for no other fault than the misfortune of being disabled by sickness?

Yet, although vast numbers would necessarily perish in such an enterprize, the result might, nevertheless, be the means of shaking our security in India; and this would be considered as a most ample compensation for any loss the enemy might sustain in the expedition. The obstacles that have been urged against it were, perhaps, equally great and numerous when the Macedonian hero undertook to march his army across the same countries; yet he overcame them all. And if Alexander could suc-

ceed in penetrating into India, why not Buonaparte, since military skill and tactics are now so much superior among Europeans to what they were in his day, whilst they have remained nearly stationary in the nations of the east? No sufficient reason can, perhaps, be assigned why the one, with the same or with increased means, and with talents, perhaps, not less suited to apply these means to the best advantage, should not be able to proceed to the same length that the other did.

That no part of his army would ever return is extremely probable. When a considerable proportion had perished by fatigue, by sickness, and by famine, the rest, in all human probability, by change of climate, manner of living, and by intermarrying with a new people, would produce a new race, and that race would cease to be Frenchmen. An army for such an expedition must, in the outset, be immense, to afford a sufficient number of men to maintain the conquered countries through which they must pass. The farther they proceeded the more formidable would be the enemies left in their rear; and on their approach to India, there are good grounds for supposing that the native powers would keep them in check, jealous, as they now must be, of admitting new European visitors, after the dearly bought experience they have already had of their old friends from that quarter. These, however, are contingencies that amount to no security of a failure in the main object of the expedition, namely, the destruction of our empire in the east. We shall, perhaps, come nearest the mark by considering the most serious, and probably the only, obstacle that would impede their progress in the countries that lie between Syria and India,

to be occasioned by the great difficulty of procuring provisions and transporting the baggage and ammunition that would be required for so large an army. But even these are difficulties which, by an enterprising and determined mind, would be surmounted.

Whether the French really intended to march an army by land, in the event of their having reduced Acre and got possession of Syria, seems to be doubtful; but it is pretty evident they entertained hopes, at one time, of being able to co-operate with the Sultaun of Myfore by the Red Sea, though it does not appear that any previous plan had been concerted for transporting their troops from Egypt to India. The whole expedition, indeed, should seem to have been, in the first instance, a momentary thought, without any further plan or design than that of diverting the original intention of an armament, which was vauntingly called the Army of England. The fact seems to be, that the power and the influence of Buonaparte, who had the command of this army, had rendered him the object of jealousy and hatred to the Directory, who were equally glad with himself to have an excuse for changing the current of these vast preparations from a hazardous, almost hopeless, enterprize, whose failure would have ended in equal disgrace both to the Directory and their general, into a romantic expedition that had the sanction of the old government for the attempt, and, at all events, was more promising of success than the pretended invasion of the British islands. The fame of Buonaparte required, in fact, to be supported, at that time, by some new and signal adventure which might be the means of rescuing him from the secondary

condary part the Directory had reserved for him, by the command of a pretended expedition against their only remaining enemy. In this situation some of his friends, it is supposed, suggested to him the conquest of Egypt, which had long been an object of the French Government under the monarchy. The brilliancy of such a conquest was well suited to the enterprising spirit and ambitious views of the Corsican. It is supposed, also, that the memoir which the philosopher Leibnitz presented to Louis XIVth was put into his hands, and that the grand objects held out therein took strong possession of his mind. "*The sovereignty of the seas—the Eastern Empire—the overthrow of the Porte—and universal arbitration,*" were all to be accomplished by the conquest of Egypt, a conquest that was reserved for his mighty arm. "Soldiers," says he, on the departure of the expedition, "you are about to undertake a conquest, the effects of which, upon commerce and civilization, will be incalculable; and the blow it will give to England will be followed up with its destruction."

But vain are often the hopes of man! The brilliancy of such a conquest, however alluring at a distance, seems to have faded on the approach. Whether his unsuccessful attempt against Acre had damped his ardour, and thrown an insurmountable barrier to any views he might have entertained against India, or whether he meant to be satisfied with annexing Egypt to the colonies of France, is still matter of conjecture; but it would seem from one of his letters, published in the intercepted correspondence, written at a time when he had not the least idea of being baffled in his schemes, and his army finally driven out by
the

the English, that the acquisition of Egypt was the end of his design, and that his intention was to return to Paris as soon as the necessary arrangements could be made for its future government. His object, no doubt, as appears from his letters to the King of England and the Emperor of Germany, was to obtain a general peace, and by certain sacrifices on the part of France or its allies, to retain possession of this new colony, from whence, at some distant period, when he had assembled a sufficient force, and prepared the necessary quantity of shipping in the Red Sea, he might have availed himself of a favourable opportunity of making a descent on the Malabar coast. In such an event he was well aware that England, at that time, would never have relinquished the Cape of Good Hope, which he might therefore have proposed as an equivalent for Egypt. The importance which the French have attached to this half-way station between Europe and India, appears from the conferences which took place between Lord Malmesbury and Monsieur *De la Croix*, wherein the latter persisted that the Cape of Good Hope was of infinitely greater importance to England than the Netherlands were to France, and that if our demands for keeping it were acquiesced in, it should be considered as a full and ample compensation for them. "If," says he, "you are masters of the Cape and Trincomalée, we shall hold all our settlements in India, and the Isles of France and Bourbon entirely at the tenure of your will and pleasure; they will be ours only as long as you choose we should retain them; you will be sole masters in India, and we shall be entirely dependent on you." On one occasion he vehemently exclaimed, "Your Indian empire alone has enabled you to sub-

"fidize

“ sidize all the powers of Europe against us, and your monopoly
“ of the Indian trade has put you in possession of a fund of in-
“ exhaustible wealth !”

As the French, in all human probability, will very soon be deprived of all their colonies in the west, they will be more anxious to increase their establishments in the east; and however limited might have been the extent of their views on the memorable expedition to Egypt, there cannot now be a difference of opinion on the subject. India is, undoubtedly, their object, and to gain that object they will leave no measures untried, nor regard the sacrifice of thousands. They have now, indeed, stronger motives than ever for attempting the destruction of our power in the east. Driven from the most valuable of their West India settlements, by a conduct of which the consequences might easily have been foreseen, and in a fair way of losing the rest, they will seek for reparation in Egypt and in India. If, however, England can succeed in keeping them out of the Eastern Seas, the feeble remains of their maritime strength must speedily be extinguished; for without colonies they can have little or no foreign trade, and consequently no seamen. To effect this desirable end, it will be indispensably necessary for England to regain possession of the Cape of Good Hope, which, with Malta and Ceylon, are the best guarantees for the tranquillity of our Indian trade and settlements, and without which their security must always be considered as precarious.

It is almost superfluous to observe how much every nation of Europe is interested, that the power of the British empire should,

should, at this moment, be upheld by every possible security that may enable her to resist the overwhelming and insatiable ambition of France. Do the other powers vainly hope to meet a better fate under her triumphant arms than Holland, Hanover, or Switzerland have experienced, where, before the palsying arm of French tyranny had destroyed their health and vigour, the people were prosperous, happy, and free? Would Denmark or Sweden, Prussia or the principalities of Germany, be treated with more consideration than the Italian provinces have been? Will Spain and Portugal increase their influence, wealth, and commerce by being degraded into tributary provinces of France, and do they promise themselves a better security of their colonies by the humiliating alliance? Nothing, surely, but the most morbid apathy could prevent these and the rest of Europe from rising in a mass to wipe off the disgrace that has already fallen on some, and momentarily threatens the rest. How is it possible that those powers, who yet have the means of rescuing Europe from universal misery, can remain inactive, and insensible of their own impending danger? A little island, animated with a great soul, is their only security, and if that should fail, the tyrant's fell grasp will soon reach them all. The system, deeply rooted in the mind of the Consular Government, appears to be that of universal and arbitrary dominion—to reduce all Europe into gallic provinces as Asia fell under the yoke of Rome.

Nor would the dreadful effects of French aggrandizement be confined to Europe, were they not completely checked by the maritime power of Great Britain. Asia, Africa, and South America would soon be overrun with Frenchmen. No one can

doubt, for a moment, what the fate of Egypt would be if England should relinquish the possession of Malta. The First Consul, indeed, in an unguarded moment of frenzy, has most unequivocally avowed it. The destruction of the Ottoman Government is another object of French ambition. One of the most intelligent of the French officers, in his correspondence with the Executive Directory, observes, "The Ottoman Empire is generally regarded as an old edifice, tottering to its fall. The European powers have long been preparing to divide its scattered fragments, and many politicians conceive that the catastrophe is close at hand. In this supposition, they think it but right that France should have her share of the spoils; *and the part allotted to her is Egypt.*"

But let those professed Cosmopolites, who, from principles of pretended humanity, declare themselves friends to the dismemberment of the Turkish Empire, reflect seriously on the consequences that would inevitably ensue were France concerned in the dissolution and partition of this government. However desirable it may seem to free the Greeks from the miserable yoke under which they long have groaned, yet a sudden transition from slavery to freedom would scarcely be borne with more moderation by the Greeks, than by the French at home or the negroes in the West India islands. Nor would the horrors of a revolution be confined to the Turkish provinces. The licentious army who might effect it, trained and accustomed to rapine and plunder, led on by needy or ambitious officers, who, on their part, are spurred by the aggrandizing views of their government, would not be content to sit down with Egypt as their
share

share of the plunder. As Malta was the step that led them to Egypt, so would Egypt be to Syria, and Syria to the possession of India; to the plunder of that wealth which, in their opinion, is the great support of Britain. Thus would the scourge of their inordinate ambition be felt from the Nile to the Ganges, and from thence, in all probability, to the Yellow Sea. And by adverting to the geographical position of the southern extremity of Africa, in relation to other countries, and to the advantages it commands as a military station, we shall perceive with what ease might all the ports of South America be made subservient to their ambitious views, and how speedily that great continent from the isthmus of Darien to Terra del Fuego would fall into their insatiable grasp. The accomplishment of these objects, chimerical as they may appear, are prevented only by the transcendent and invincible strength of the British navy.

As it must therefore obviously be the interest of the whole world that the restless and aggrandizing spirit of France should effectually be counteracted, and as the Cape of Good Hope and Malta in her possession would forward her views at universal dominion, there can be no reasonable objections made on the part of the other powers of Europe against these two grand points of security being left, at a general peace, in the hands of England, or, at all events, to be protected by English garrisons, as some guarantee against the designs of the general enemy of the human race.

As the importance of every military station must depend, in a considerable degree, on the sufficiency of the works that either

are already constructed for its defence against internal or external attack, or on the local advantages it possesses of being rendered defensible, it may be expected I should here say something on this subject. Being no professional man, I am aware, in doing this, of the risk I run of laying myself open to the censure of some who are so, particularly as I have heard so many and such contrary opinions advanced as to the best means of attacking and of defending the Cape of Good Hope. The little I have to offer on the subject will be chiefly descriptive; and as to the defence of the place my ideas will be grounded on the opinion of those whose skill in their professions, and whose sound judgment in the ordinary affairs of life, joined to their local knowledge, entitle such opinion to some degree of consideration. It may be observed, however, that there are not, perhaps, two officers who perfectly agree on this subject.

By the defence of the Cape of Good Hope, is meant only that of the peninsular promontory, containing the two bays which are the usual resort of shipping, and on the northern part of which the town is situated. And for the better illustration of what follows, I have added a military map of the said peninsula, the outline of which was taken, I believe, some years ago by a French engineer, was afterwards filled up by different officers in the Dutch service, and was examined, corrected, and verified with great care and accuracy, by Captain (now Lieutenant-Colonel) Bridges of the British engineers, under whose directions several new and important works were constructed by order of Sir James Craig. For the sake of conveniency, I found it necessary to reduce the scale to half the size of the original drawing,

r-
n-
e-
e,
ne
y
of
le
as
ne
nd
al
n.
ro

ly
ys
art
of
n-
go
ent
nd
re-
of
by
nd
inal
ng,

37 Van Rensselaer Estate

38 Lachar, A.

39 Rousseau, A.

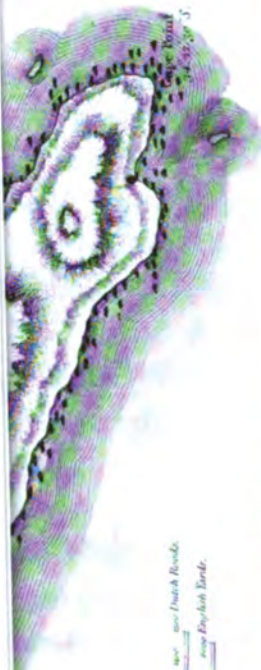
40 Lake nearly dry in summer

41 Newlands

42 Rivulet

43 Krambach

44 Van Rensselaer Estate



- 4 Bourke or River Lake
- 5 Salt River
- 6 Lachar's River
- 7 The Old Mouth
- 8 Great Road to Lake Top
- 9 Gordon's Battery
- 10 Colborne's Battery

Scale 1:25,000

Published Feb. 17, 1883, by Colwell & Day for Strand.

drawing, and have added to the Dutch scale of roeds one of English yards, the former being to the latter as $4\frac{1}{10}$ to 1.

This military plan, together with the bays, I have thought it expedient to publish, as multiplied copies of them are in the possession not only of the government and officers at the Cape, but also of French officers in Europe; and it is presumed they may be of use to those who, perhaps, may hereafter be sent on an expedition against this important settlement without possessing local knowledge, although, for such a purpose, and against so extensive a colony, it would be highly adviseable to select such as were well acquainted not only with the fortified peninsula, but also with the different bays and passes of the country, the manners of the colonists and their resources, and, above all, with the habits of the native Hottentots.

Cape Town, which may be called the capital of the colony, is situated on the south-east angle of Table Bay. It usually happens that the advantages of the bay, in forming a new settlement, determines the choice of the site for the town; but, in this instance, the convenience of a plentiful stream of pure limpid water, rushing out of the Table Mountain, was the primary object to which the bay was subservient. Had this not been the case, the first settlers would unquestionably have given the preference to Saldanha Bay, whose only defect is the want of fresh water near it; whereas Table Bay is faulty in every point that constitutes a proper place for the resort of shipping; and so boisterous, for four months in the year, as totally to exclude all ships from entering it.

As

As this, however, became the seat of the petty concerns in which the Dutch East India Company allowed its servants to traffic, and, under certain restrictions, the other settlers to carry on with foreign ships, a commerce that was chiefly confined to the supply of provisions and refreshments in exchange for Indian and European articles, they found it necessary to build a fort for the protection of their property and of the Company's warehouses against the attempts of the natives.

As the trade to India increased, and the Cape, in consequence, became more frequented, it was deemed expedient to extend the works, and to erect a citadel that should serve as a defence against any attack either by land or by sea. This citadel is the present castle, a regular pentagon fort, with two ravelins and some other outworks, and surrounded by a wet ditch; but so injudiciously placed, in the very lowest part, or sink, of the valley, that although it commands the town and part of the anchorage, itself is commanded by the ground rising from it in a slope to the Devil's Hill, which, therefore, renders it not defensible. This slope is now occupied as high as the commencement of the perpendicular rocky side of the Devil's Hill, by various redoubts, batteries, and block-houses commanding each other, and the advance ground to the castle, all of which were added by Sir James Craig.

During the American war, when the French were at the Cape, they raised lines with two redoubts to protect the approach to the castle on the land side, the expence of which they paid in paper money. These lines, however, extending no farther
ther

ther up the tongue of land that projects from the Devil's Hill, than the point, No. 12, in the map, were liable to be turned between that point and the craggy summit D, a manœuvre, I believe, which General Craig intended to put in practice, provided the Dutch, after being driven out of Wynberg, were disposed to make a stand at the French lines. He therefore, very properly, ordered a battery and block-house to be constructed immediately under D, and a second a little lower down the hill, which, with the two redoubts in the lines, and Fort de Knokke at their extremity on the shore of Table Bay, being all within the compass of 1500 yards, would enable the garrison to keep up such a cross and concentrated fire, as to prevent any moderate number of troops from attempting to force the lines in their approach to the town from Simon's Bay. And, in order to strengthen the northern extremity of the lines, and, at the same time, to cover the landing place at the mouth of, and passage across, the Salt River, he added, also, a bomb-proof tower and battery at G, both of which bear his name. Notwithstanding, however, the strength of these lines, the officers of the Dutch garrison, now at the Cape, were of opinion that the most eligible mode of attacking the town would be to force the lines, though at the hazard of losing a number of men, after which the castle must immediately fall; and many English officers are of the same opinion.

Fort Knokke is connected with the citadel by a rampart drawn along the shore, called the Sea lines, defended by several batteries, mounted with heavy guns, and furnished with ovens for heating shot. Within these lines is a powder magazine, and

and a long range of low buildings that were converted, under the English government, into a general hospital, with lodgings for the inspector, storekeeper, and apothecary to the forces.

On the west of the bay are three strong batteries at the points K, L, M, the Rogge-bay battery, the Amsterdam battery, and the Chavonne battery, the guns of which all bear directly upon the anchorage. At N is also a small battery, called the Mouillé, commanding the entrance of the bay; for all ships, when coming in, keep the point of the Mouillé close on board, and go out of the bay between Roben Island and the continent. A little farther, at the point O, where there is a small sandy cove, a work was thrown up with a few light guns and a furnace for heating shot, to prevent a landing at this place, which they have further endeavoured to impede by fixing three anchors across the inlet. A very few shot from one of our frigates soon, however, dislodged the enemy from this work.

At Camp's Bay, on the western coast of the peninsula, there are also a few small batteries, and a military post on the height above it, directly between the Table Mountain and the Lion's Head. An almost perpetual surf rolls upon the sandy beach of Camp's Bay, otherwise, this might be considered as a very vulnerable point. An army landing here, and at Three Anchor Bay, might take the town and all the batteries in their rear, or, which would still be more important, might get possession of the Lion's Rump at F, from whence, with a few howitzers, the town and citadel, and the strong batteries on the west side of Table Bay, would be completely commanded. And this hill
has

has the very great advantage of not being commanded by any other point.

So fully convinced was Sir James Craig of the vast importance of this situation, that he proposed to Government, in the event of the Cape remaining in our possession, to erect a citadel upon it, with buildings for every military purpose, such as barracks for the garrison, houses for an hospital, buildings for the ordnance department, for military stores, and for at least twelve months' provisions. Such a fortification, when properly completed, would, in the opinion of Sir James, be ably defended, in time of war, by 1200 men; and would render the town, the batteries, and the castle, untenable by an enemy, all of which might be totally destroyed from this height in four-and-twenty hours. The most intelligent of the officers of the Dutch garrison, now at the Cape, were precisely of the same opinion, and immediately pointed out the situation as the most eligible for erecting a citadel. The Government, however, are not in circumstances at present to undertake a work of such magnitude and expence, not being able to raise funds adequate to meet the subsistence of the troops, and the contingent and extraordinary expences of the garrison, consisting of about two thousand men.

The greatest difficulty, in employing this situation for such a purpose, would be the want of water; but it is by no means an insurmountable difficulty. Twelve hundred men, at a daily allowance of a quart to each man, would consume, in twelve months, 109,500 gallons, and a cistern, capable of containing

this quantity, would not be required to exceed a square of twelve yards, provided the depth be about four yards and a half. And two cisterns of these dimensions, would be fully adequate for every purpose that the garrison would require.

Another objection, however, was started, grounded on the opinion of some of the artillery officers in the service of the East India Company, who conceived the Lion's Hill to be within point blank shot of the Devil's Hill, the slope of which, below the rocky summit, is at least twice the height of the former, and consequently commanded it. These gentlemen, who are supposed to be among the best informed of the Company's officers, may be very good artillery officers, but they are certainly bad judges of distance in a mountainous country; for, as Sir James Craig has observed, the nearest point of the Devil's Hill is at the distance of 3700 yards; but that, in order to get any thing like a level with the part of the Lion's Rump, on which the most considerable part of the works would be placed, it would be necessary to go farther back on the slope of the Devil's Hill, at least five hundred yards, and even then the elevation would not be equal to that point on which the said works were situated; so that the point blank range of the Company's artillery officers is, at least, 4200 yards. Sir James observes, that a residence of fourteen months at the Cape, since he gave his opinion on this subject, and a continued and unremitting study, to render the place as defensible as possible, had only served to confirm him in it; an opinion, indeed, which perfectly coincided with that of Lieutenant-Colonel Bridges, who commanded the British engineers, as well as with that of every intelligent

telligent officer who has been on duty at the Cape, not only among the English, but also among the French, Dutch, and German officers now serving there.

Near the narrowest part of the peninsula, on the western shore, are two contiguous bays called Hout or Wood Bay, and Chapman's Bay; the latter communicating, by a defile of the mountains, about 2700 yards in length, with Vis or Fish Bay close to Simon's Bay; and the former, by another defile, with the great road leading from Cape Town to Simon's Bay. There appears to be no instance on record of any ship going into Chapman's Bay, it being completely exposed to all the prevailing winds that blow at the Cape, and, in consequence, seldom free from a heavy swell of the sea. Were it, indeed, ever so secure and convenient for landing troops, all the advantages it holds out would be obtained by a landing at Simon's Bay. This is not the case, were an enemy to effect a landing at Hout Bay to the northward of it; as, from this place, they would be enabled to make their approach to the lines, leaving Muisenberg, which, on a former occasion, I have called the Thermopylæ of the Cape peninsula, in their rear.

Hout Bay affords safe and convenient anchorage for eight or ten ships; and has a rivulet of fresh water falling into it from the back part of Table Mountain; but the getting out of the bay is supposed to be very difficult and precarious, on account of the eddy winds from the surrounding mountains when they are moderate in the Offing, or from the south-easterly winds setting into the entrance; as well as from the constant westerly

swell and wind prevailing from that quarter in the winter season. Captain Blanket, however, in the year 1784, when he commanded the *Nymph* sloop of war, ran, out of curiosity, into Hout Bay, at which the Dutch were exceedingly jealous and angry, none of them having ever seen a ship there before. It is now defended with a battery and a block-house.

As to Simon's Bay, which lies on the eastern side of the peninsula, in the great bay of False, and is the usual resort of shipping for five months in the year, it should seem the Dutch had no idea of their colony being attacked from that quarter, as the strong ground at Muisenberg was entirely unoccupied before the British expedition appeared in the bay; and all the works and batteries there were constructed between the time of its arrival and the day the troops marched to attack it.

For the defence of the various works upon the Cape peninsula, all of which I have just enumerated, a garrison of five thousand men has been considered, by all who are acquainted with the place, as the very least force that would be required; and, consequently, no part of it could, with propriety, be detached into the interior, without exposing the garrison to danger. The colony, indeed, is so extensive, having an unprotected coast of 580 miles from Cape Point to the Kaffer country on the east, and of 315 miles from Cape Point to the River Kouffie on the north, that an army of ten thousand men would scarcely be sufficient to keep out an enemy, if he were determined to effect a landing. A large force, however, landed at any great distance from the Cape, could not possibly be subsisted. At

Moffel Bay it might, perhaps, receive a small supply of corn, but no cattle; at Plettenberg's bay, neither the one nor the other. At Algoa Bay an enemy might, at all times, create a great deal of mischief, by putting arms into the hands of the Kaffers and Hottentots, who might very easily be encouraged to drive the whole colony within the limits of the Cape peninsula; a measure, by which the garrison and the settlers would immediately be starved for want of provisions. It is obvious that such a step would be attended with the present ruin of the settlement, and would not, on that account, be resorted to but by a desperate or a Machiavelian enemy.

This bay might, however, be very fairly, and successfully, made use of to land about a hundred light dragoons, from whence, by marching into Graaf Reynet, they would not only find the means of mounting and of subsisting themselves, but might effectually cut off the large supplies of sheep and cattle which are principally furnished by this district for the use of the town and garrison. A quantity of Spanish dollars would ensure the party a cordial reception from the boors, at least as long as their money lasted; nor do I believe, so long as the memory of their last campaigning is fresh in their minds, they will ever be induced again to assemble in arms, on any occasion, against Europeans. The Dutch, I understand, have stationed at this bay near three hundred troops, to keep the peace between the boors, the Kaffers, and the Hottentots, but the greater part would, undoubtedly, be withdrawn on receiving intelligence of the present war; the weakness of the garrison not admitting of so large a detachment being sent off the peninsula, especially as in the
month

month of July last they had received no reinforcements from the French, and expected none from Holland.

But the most effectual way, perhaps, of distressing the garrison, would be to land detachments at various points not very distant from the Cape peninsula; as, for instance, at Gordon's Bay, which may be done at all seasons of the year, but most conveniently from September to May. Here, as I before observed, immediate possession might be taken of Hottentot Holland's Kloof, which is but a few miles distant, and from which a small party, with field-pieces or howitzers, would not easily be driven out; at the same time a second detachment, landed at Saldanha Bay, might take possession of Roode Sand Kloof; thus totally cutting off the possibility of any supply of cattle from the interior parts of the country. A third detachment, landed near Blauwberg, at a short distance from the anchorage off Roben Island, might form a chain of posts between this hill and the party in Roode Sand Kloof, and thus cut off the supplies of grain from Zwartland Berg River, Picquetberg, Reibecks Castle, and the four-and-twenty rivers, which are the principal corn districts. The time should be the months of January and February, when the corn of the new harvest begins to be sent up to town, whither two-thirds of the quantity reaped are usually brought in the course of the two succeeding months. In January 1803, the magazines of grain were completely exhausted, which will also be the case in January 1804, the returns of the harvest being barely sufficient for the exigencies of the year.

The

The invading fleet, if superior in force to that on the station, might easily be supplied with fresh provisions, either at the anchorage off Roben Island, where they could lie in perfect security, or in Saldanha Bay. At six miles distance to the northward of this bay, there is good water at a place called *Witte Klip*, the White Rock, and not bad, though, perhaps, a little brackish, at several places on the east shore of the bay; and I have little doubt that plenty of good water might be procured by digging wells at the foot of the Blauwberg, or even on Roben Island, an operation which the Dutch have neither skill to conduct, nor industry to accomplish.

Some, however, are of opinion that the place would best be taken by a *Coup de Main*, by dashing at once into Table Bay in a south-east wind, and cutting out all the ships that may happen to be at anchor. In doing this, they would have to sustain the fire of Craig's tower and battery, Fort de Knokke, the sea lines and the castle, but the three heavy batteries, on the west coast of the bay, would pour their fire into their own ships. There are few places, however, where so great a fire can be concentrated, as can be brought to bear on the anchoring ground of Table Bay. The batteries are mounted with a considerable number of heavy guns; but, it is true, they are very old; a great part of them honeycombed, and the carriages of many completely demolished. The Amsterdam battery has also many defects, and, in the opinion of some naval officers, would soon be silenced by a single ship of the line, brought to lie close alongside of it.

Others

Others are of opinion, that a moderate force of infantry and artillery, landed at Three Anchor Bay, might easily succeed in getting possession of Amsterdam battery in the rear, as well as the Chavonne and Rogge Bay batteries, after which the castle would no longer be tenable, and the town would be at the mercy of the attacking party. Perhaps the strongest impression might be made by combining the two opinions; though a large force might probably prefer landing on the eastern beach of Table Bay, where there is nothing to interrupt them, cross the Salt River, and carry the lines by a *Coup de Main*, after which, as I have before observed, the castle must immediately fall, and the garrison surrender at discretion.

The Dutch garrison, at the evacuation of the colony by the English, in March last, were certainly not capable of opposing any very considerable resistance, or to defend the place against a spirited attack, conducted by an officer of skill and local experience. Three or four ships of the line, with four thousand men, would be fully sufficient to carry their point; provided the Dutch should receive no reinforcements from the French, which, hitherto, there are no grounds for supposing to be the case. The whole garrison, when complete, was intended to consist of three thousand men; of these were already arrived, at that time, barely two thousand, consisting in a regiment of the Prince of Waldec, about six hundred strong; three hundred cavalry; three hundred artillery; two or three companies of grenadiers, and the rest *jagers* or a light rifle corps, totally undisciplined, and composed of almost every nation on the face of the earth, being, for the most part, deserters from the German regiments.

regiments. And, with regard to the artillery, they were so miserably defective that, out of the whole corps, they could not select a sufficient number of trained men to fire the salutes intended to be made on hoisting the Dutch flag on the first of January; but made application to the commanding officer of the British artillery, for a party to assist them: yet, when the orders for the surrender of the colony were countermanded, and it became a probable event that hostilities would ensue, it was industriously circulated by the Dutch officers, or rather by the French officers nominally in the Dutch service, that their corps of artillery was in the highest state of discipline and order, the greatest part of the men having distinguished themselves at the battle of Marengo! They were commanded, however, as well as the cavalry, by active and intelligent officers.

The services of the *Burgher Cavalry* are not likely ever to be again demanded. Were they, indeed, ever so well disposed to fight, the number that it would be found practicable to raise is far from being great. Those who dwell in the interior parts of the settlement would find it extremely inconvenient to quit their homes, on account of their slaves and Hottentots, who might be induced to take advantage of their absence; and the Cape district, containing only about six thousand souls, could not be supposed to furnish more than a thousand men fit to bear arms, and, probably, not one hundred that would dare to use them.

The Hottentot corps, consisting of about five hundred men, so far from feeling any disposition to enter into the service of the

Dutch, actually declined it, and expressed the strongest wishes to return to their connections in the distant parts of the colony. What the fate of these poor creatures may be is difficult to conjecture. Convinced, as the Dutch Government would speedily be, that they would never be prevailed on to draw a trigger against the English, it will become a very serious difficulty in what manner to dispose of them. If they should desert in a body, which was generally thought would be the event, they would drive in the whole country. But if, before this happens, the colonists should be granted the prayer of either of their petitions, the government will be relieved from any apprehensions with regard to the Hottentot corps: one of these humane proposals was to surround and massacre the whole corps; the other, to put a chain to the leg of every man, and distribute them among the farmers as slaves for life.

The only chance they have of escaping, rests upon the good intentions of the Governor and Commander in Chief towards them, from whose humane disposition, and honourable character, they will receive every protection and support, as far, at least, as depends upon him; but, in a revolutionary government, the best disposed must, in some degree, swim with the torrent of popular opinion.

One single ship of war, the *Bato* of 68 guns, remained in Table Bay, preparing to follow two others of the same class, the *Pluto* and the *Kortenaar*, to Batavia. None of these three ships had any of their lower-deck guns on board, and were only
half

half manned ; being intended, though under the command of an Admiral, to take on board, and carry to Europe, cargoes of coffee. Three frigates had failed a few months before for the same purpose, under the command of Commodore Melisse, and two others formed part of Rear-Admiral Dekker's squadron ; so that the Dutch had, at that time, in the Eastern Seas, three ships of the line and five fine frigates, which, however, were in no condition to add much lustre to the Batavian flag.

The ammunition and stores that were found at the capture, together with those that were given over by the British Government, at the surrender, to the amount of about twenty thousand pounds value, will serve for many years, not only as a supply of the garrison, but also of the Isles of France and Bourbon. The great barrack, situated between the town and the castle, was put into thorough repair, and fitted up with bedding and other necessaries for the reception of two thousand men ; and the citadel, capable of containing one thousand men, with lodgings for the officers, was intended to be put into the same condition.

Recent accounts mention the deplorable state of the colony under its new government. The revenues are so reduced as to be totally inadequate to meet the expences of the garrison, and they have no hope of any supply from Holland. New taxes were imposed on the inhabitants, which they refused to pay. The troops were in a complete state of insubordination ; several

were under trial for mutiny, and numbers were daily deserting with their arms. Universal discontent and general distress prevailed. In such a state of things, it is not unreasonable to conclude that the Cape would fall an easy conquest to a British force.

CHAP. IV.

Importance of the Cape of Good Hope, considered as a Naval Station.

Comparative small Space occupied by the British Islands—their Weight among Nations accounted for.—Commerce the Source of British Wealth.—Precariousness of the mere Carrying-trade.—Colonies improve Navigation.—Character of French Seamen—of Dutch Seamen.—Treatment on board their own Ships.—Mortality.—The Cape necessary to the Dutch Trade to India—an intermediate Port desirable to other Nations—least so to England—Reasons of it.—Incidents to which maritime Transactions are liable make friendly Ports always desirable.—Convenience of the Cape.—Portuguese the first Visitors—then the English and Dutch—taken Possession of by the latter—extend their Territory beyond the original Intention—Impediments thrown by the Company—Willingness to part with it.—Advantages as a Naval Station, not confined to the Supply of Refreshments—Resort for Ships in Distress—the Countess of Sutherland Indiaman.—Cape proper for assembling Convoys—Provisions to be procured.—Importance as commanding the Entrance of the Indian Seas.—Isles of France and Bourbon dependent on the Cape.—France unable to disturb India without a Fleet.—Trade of India subject to the Masters of the Cape—Healthiness of the Climate for Seamen.—Moderate Expence of subsisting a Fleet—Sailors' Ration of fresh Provisions—Brandy cheaper than West India Rum—Consumption of colonial Produce by the Fleet—about one-fourth of the usual Expence—Wear and Tear of the Ships considerable.—Importance of the geographical Position of the Cape—commanding a speedy Intercourse with most Parts of the World.—Disadvantages to Britain in the Hands of an Enemy.—Three Points of Annoyance to our Trade—comparative Danger of the outward and homeward bound Passages—that of passing the Straits of Sunda—of Manilla—of L'Aguiilas Bank—of Saint Helena.—Inefficacy of Convoys.—Difference of Circumstances between this and the American War.—Present Aim of France.—

The

The comparative Estimate of the Cape and Ceylon.—French jealous of our Commerce.—Necessity of re-possessing the Cape or destroying the Enemy's Shipping there.—Bays of the Cape—Table Bay—Robben Island—Loss of the Sceptre—Simon's Bay—Saldanha Bay—Objections to it—obviated.—Saint Helena Bay.—Conclusion.

WHEN one reflects, for a moment, on the diminutive space that the British islands occupy on the surface of the globe, in comparison with the large portions that some nations enjoy, and considers their detached and remote situation by which their inhabitants were, in the opinion of the ancients,

"Toto ab orbe divisos,"

"Cut off from the rest of mankind ;"

when, at the same time, one bears in mind the vast weight and preponderance these little islands have long maintained in the history and transactions of most of the numerous societies that constitute this world of human beings, it is impossible to withhold our admiration and astonishment at a phenomenon which, at first sight, wears the appearance of being so much out of the ordinary course of things. In vain should we search for a parallel in the history of the world, because the history of the world affords no example of a country where property has so much weight, affords so much enjoyment, and is so well secured by just and equal laws, as in Great Britain.

Exertions to amass wealth will, generally, be proportional to the stability given to property. Hence, the enterprising spirit of Britons has collected the riches of the world within their fortunate islands. Hence, the great and stupendous works of convenience,

venience, utility, and magnificence, that embrace the shores of the Thames, the Mersey, the Severn, and most of the navigable rivers of the empire which, whilst they facilitate the purposes of commerce, add splendor and ornament to the country, and serve as notable monuments of a powerful and opulent nation. But, although the seat of empire, the central point of power and wealth, is fixed in the British islands, yet, if we cast our eyes on the map of the world, and skim along the western shores of the Atlantic, thence descend to the Southern Pacific, and return easterly to the Indian Seas, we shall there find that the possessions of Britain comprise "a vast empire on which the sun never sets, and whose bounds nature has not yet ascertained."

Whatever philosophers may advance on the subject of the wealth of nations depending on the encouragement given to agriculture, none will deny that the wealth and the influence of the British empire derive their source and their main-spring from commerce. It is to commerce we owe our colonies, and to our colonies the perfection of navigation. For, after all the objections that have been urged against the colonizing system, it is pretty evident that, without foreign possessions, we should have few seamen. The mere carrying-trade is precarious, and liable to be affected by every little incident that may involve the nation carrying it on, in its relations with contending powers. So long as the Portuguese maintained their territories and their dominion in the East, the Portuguese navigators stood the first in reputation; but no sooner had the Dutch deprived them of the best part of their possessions, than the whole of the carrying-trade

trade fell into the hands of the Dutch; and the Dutch flag maintained the superiority in the East, and was respectable in the West.

When the Dutch lost their colonies, the Americans snatched the remains of their carrying-trade, which, to a certain degree, they will preserve and, perhaps, improve, as long as they can remain in a state of neutrality; but, having no foreign possessions, the instant they go to war with a nation that has, their carrying-trade must fall to the ground. Such will be the case also with the Danes and the Swedes; and such has France found, by experience, to be her fate from the moment she lost her best colonies.

The number of hands required to work the ships that are employed in transporting to England the produce of our colonies, furnish for the navy, in time of war, an immediate supply of skilful and able-bodied seamen; giving it, at once, a decided superiority over that of all other nations. The French, the Dutch, and the Spaniards, can construct their ships fully as well as, and some of them, perhaps, better than, the English; but none of them can make such good seamen. The rough and resolute character that is necessary to form good sailors, would appear to be incompatible with the frivolous and flexile tempers of Frenchmen. Their natural versatility disqualifies them for situations that require steady perseverance; and the trifling gaiety of their disposition is ill suited to the order and discipline that are indispensable on board of a ship. In a gale of wind, it is said to be a matter of the greatest difficulty to prevail on a suf-

ficient number of Frenchmen, in a whole ship's company, to go aloft for the purpose of taking in the sails; and if the gale comes on suddenly, the odds are great that the masts are carried away, or the sails blown from the yards.

Both men and officers are averse to long voyages; and are seldom inclined to pass a friendly port. To possess the advantage of having such ports, in different parts of the world, is of the first importance to their navigation and commerce. They pay little attention to cleanliness, either in their persons or ships, and they are generally very much crowded; hence, a long voyage, without refreshments, is seldom unattended with disease and mortality.

The Dutch seamen are steady, persevering, and intrepid; and, of all nations, have maintained the hardest struggles with the English; but they are habitually slow and inactive. That they are not physically so, the crew of the *Rattlesnake*, a great part of which were Dutchmen, afforded a sufficient proof, when they engaged, in a gallant and active manner, the *La Preneuse* frigate in Algoa Bay. By example and a little practice, they overcome the dull and sluggish motion to which they have been accustomed, and soon become capable of prompt and vigorous action.

The Dutch sailors, it seems, are always glad of an opportunity to serve in English ships, where they have the reputation of being a quiet, orderly, and obedient people. The manner in which they are fed, in their own ships, is little calculated to give

them encouragement. The captains of the men of war are, at the same time, the purfers; and they feed their men by contract, which, stipulating for quantity only, leaves the quality to the discretion and the conscience of the captain. The Dutch ships of war that were sent out, with the governor and troops on board, to take possession of the Cape, had a remarkable long passage, which occasioned the Dutch sailors on board our ships, to observe, that the captain's musty peas, rancid pork, and black bread were not consumed, before which it would not be his interest to come into port where better articles were to be had. The same sailors got hold of some of their bread, which they carried through the streets of Cape Town, tied to the end of a stick, by way of a joke, it being so very black as to have more the appearance of animal excrement, baked in the sun, than of bread.

On the present plan of navigating their ships, the Dutch would find it impracticable to proceed from Europe to India without breaking the voyage. The unfavourable form of their vessels for moving quickly through the water, the little sail they carry, especially by night, the economical plan in which they are fitted out, forbidding the use of copper sheathing, and the bad provisions laid in for the people, are all against a long continued voyage. The mortality that sometimes prevails on board their Indiamen, even on short passages, is almost incredible. Mr. Thunberg informs us, and his veracity may be depended on, that the mortality on board the ship which carried him to the Cape, after a voyage of three months and a half from the Texel, amounted to one hundred and fifteen; that three other ships in
the

the same fleet suffered still more, the *Hoenkoop* having buried one hundred and fifty-eight; the *William Vtb* two hundred and thirty; and the *Jonge Samuel* of *Zeeland* one hundred and three men!

It may be considered, indeed, as next to a physical impossibility, for a Dutch ship to run from the Texel to Batavia without stopping. The possession we held of their old half-way house, the Cape, was so severe a blow to their navigation in the Eastern Seas, that, after the capture of Lucas's fleet in Saldanha Bay, there was not, in the course of five years, a single Dutch ship of any description to the southward of the line. The convenience of refreshing at the Cape is absolutely necessary to, and inseparably connected with, the Dutch trade to India. The Spaniards and Portuguese are equally averse to long passages, without refreshing, as the French and Dutch. The Danes, the Swedes, and Americans less so, because their provisions, in general, are more wholesome, and their ships more cleanly: yet, to all these, an intermediate port is always considered as an object worthy of attention.

To the English the intervention of a port, in the longest voyages, is the least important; and many commanders, of late years, have been so little solicitous on this point, as to prefer making the run at once, rather than suffer the delay and impediment occasioned by calling for refreshments on the passage. The commanders, indeed, of the British ships, in general, are so well acquainted with the nature of the fixed and periodical winds (the Trades and Monsoons), and with making the most

of those that are variable, that distant voyages are now reduced almost to a certain duration. The old system, still, perhaps, too rigidly adhered to in the navy, of endeavouring to place the ship's head in the direction of her intended port, is entirely exploded by the commanders of ships in the employ of the East India Company. It may answer the purpose in the British Channel, and near land, but is ill suited for a long voyage, through climates where the wind undergoes but little change. The squadron of men of war, which brought away the garrison, on the evacuation of the Cape, were twelve weeks on their passage, whilst the Sir Edward Hughes Indiaman, which left the Cape a week later, was three weeks in England sooner, than the said squadron. A passage from China, which formerly was reckoned from ten to twelve months, is now reduced to four months, and has been made in a hundred days.

This rapidity in skimming over the ocean, reduced, as nearly as the nature of such a loco-motion will allow, to a certainty, added to the superior quality, as well as abundance, of provisions that are laid in for the voyage, has rendered it a matter of perfect indifference to English seamen, in point of health, whether the run be made at once, or the voyage be broken for the sake of obtaining refreshments at some intermediate port. This being the case, the former method is usually preferred, and much delay, as well as expence, is thereby avoided.

Since, however, all maritime expeditions and transactions are, in a very peculiar degree, liable to accident and misfortune, it must always be considered as a desirable object to have some

neighbouring port to resort to in case of urgent necessity. In the short voyage to the ports of the Levant and others in the Mediterranean, Malta, and a number of other islands, present themselves as places of refuge for ships in distress. The bay of Madeira lies open to the outward bound ships in the West India trade, and the Western Islands, if necessary, may be approached on the return-voyage. And, although the Portuguese settlement of Rio de Janeiro in South America is not greatly out of the way of ships, in their outward-bound passage to the East Indies and China, nor the island of Saint Helena on their return, yet it cannot be denied that the Cape of Good Hope is infinitely preferable to both of these places, since it not only divides the passage more equally, but supplies, in general, better refreshments, and in greater plenty, and is alike convenient for shipping to touch at, whether in their outward or homeward-bound voyage.

In the early periods of foreign navigation, the ships of every nation, trading to the East Indies, found it convenient to call at the Cape for water and fresh provisions, long before it was taken possession of, in form, by any European power. The native Hottentots, at that time, were numerous in the Cape peninsula, and rich in cattle, which they supplied to passing ships on easy terms.

In the reign of John IId of Portugal, Bartholomew Diaz made the first successful attempt to reach the southern promontory of Africa, which he effected in the year 1487; but whether he quar-

quarrelled with the natives, and was driven away by them, as some historians have pretended, seems to be doubtful. Vasco-de-Gama, ten years afterwards, touched at the Cape, but made no attempt to form a settlement there. Next to Vasco-de-Gama, was the Portugueze Admiral Rio d'Infanté, who strongly recommended to his Government the establishment of a colony on the southern coast of Africa; and fixed upon the mouth of a river for that purpose, to which was given his own name, and which is now called the Great Fish River. Some other attempts, by different Portugueze navigators, were made to colonize the Cape, but they all failed.

After this the English and the Dutch were frequent visitors to the bays of the Cape.

The English, in their outward bound voyage, had a custom of burying their dispatches for the directors, and to point out where they were to be found by cutting a sentence, to that effect, on some large blue stone laid on a particular spot. The intelligence, engraven on the stone, was usually limited to the name of the ship and captain, the date of her arrival and departure, and it ended with "Look for letters (in such or such direction) from this stone." Two or three stones of this kind are built into the castle wall, and are still legible. The Dutch used to bury, on a certain spot on Robben Island, a register of the state of their vessels and Cargoes, outward bound, which the next ship, in coming home, took up and carried to Holland for the information of the Directors.

In

In this manner the English, the Dutch, and the Portuguese, continued, for more than a century, to refresh at the Cape, without any design, on the part of the two former, of appropriating the soil; until the year 1620, when, as I have before observed, Andrew Shillinge and Humphrey Fitzherbert, two commanders of two fleets of English ships bound for Surat and Bantam, took a formal possession of the soil for, and in the name of, King James of Great Britain, because they discovered that the Dutch intended to establish a colony there the following year; and “because they thought it better that the Dutch, or any other nation whatsoever, should be his Majesty’s subjects in this place, than that his subjects should be subject to them or any other.” It was not, however, until a period of more than thirty years had expired after this event, that the representations of Van Riebek, stating the richness of the soil, the mildness of the climate, the advantage it would give to the Dutch, as a colony, over other nations, whose ships would all be obliged to touch there, and, above all, the barrier it would afford to their Indian dominions, prevailed on the directors of the Dutch East India Company to form a regular establishment at the Cape.

Their original intention was to limit their possessions to the Cape peninsula, and the two bays that are divided by the isthmus; considering it only, as it had hitherto been, as a place for refreshing and refitting their ships. But the number of settlers that crept in, from time to time, made it necessary to cross the isthmus, and, by presents and promises, to obtain from the natives the cession of a tract of land to which they gave the name of Hottentot’s Holland. The natives, it would seem, had no idea of

of resigning, for ever, to a foreign nation, the ground that was necessary for feeding their own cattle; but conceived it could only be intended for temporary use, and that, in time, they would depart from the country as other Europeans had hitherto done for the last century and an half; but, when they observed them building houses and fortifications, sowing and planting the ground, and rearing their own cattle, they began to be jealous of the encroachments of their new neighbours, and commenced hostilities with a view to expel them. These hostilities terminated, as is usual in such cases, in the further extension of the Dutch settlement, and in an increase of troops and colonists from Europe.

Still, however, the Dutch East India Company endeavoured to limit the Cape to the original design of a port for refreshing their ships. They threw every obstacle in the way of its becoming a flourishing settlement; allowed no trade whatsoever but what passed through the hands of their own servants, and made it dependent on the Governor-General of Batavia; concluding, that the settlers would thus be made equally submissive to their orders from Europe, and from the seat of their influence and wealth in the East.

A colony, in such a state, with their declining commerce, became a burden and an expence too heavy for them to bear; and little doubt was entertained of their willingness to dispose of it for a moderate sum of money, just before the French revolution and its destructive consequences unsettled the affairs of all Europe. As it never produced any surplus revenue, but, on the
contrary,

contrary, was attended with considerable expence ; and, as they never applied it to any other use themselves, but that of refreshing their ships, which they could always continue to do, in time of peace, when in the hands of another power, it could not be supposed they would be averse to part with it ; and, accordingly, overtures to this effect were intended to be made by England about the time when the above unfortunate event took place.

Having shewn the necessity that the ships of most of the maritime powers of Europe find of refreshing at the Cape, it is obviously the interest of all these powers that it should remain in the hands of that nation which would have the least motive for imposing restrictions on foreign visitors ; and it is scarcely necessary to observe, that, from the general policy of England, and the favourable circumstances in which her commerce and navigation are now placed, the Cape in her possession would always be open to foreign shipping, and refreshments supplied to them on equal terms as to her own.

I have stated its vast importance to England in a military point of view : it now remains to consider it as a naval station. First, as a port for refreshing and refitting the ships of the East India Company : secondly, as a station for ships of war, commanding the entrance into the Indian Seas : thirdly, as affording, by its geographical position, a ready communication with every part of the globe. After which, I shall endeavour to point out the disadvantages that may result to the East India Company, in the

present war, from the French or Dutch retaining possession of the Cape.

If, in the first place, the advantages resulting from the possession of this settlement were confined to the furnishing of refreshments for the shipping of the East India Company, either on their outward or their homeward-bound voyage, I am willing to suppose the importance of them, however great, might be considered as inadequate to counterbalance the expence of keeping up the necessary establishment, although I have shewn that, under a prudent administration of the revenues, this expence would be reduced to a mere trifle. The directors, indeed, thought they had sufficiently proved, by the measures they adopted with regard to the Cape, that it was by no means necessary for their trade as a place of refreshment. The directors, however, happened to be mistaken; for they soon discovered that, although English seamen could bear the run between England and India, the native blacks, which they are under the necessity of employing, in time of war, could not do it; and it is to be apprehended they will but too soon discover that unseasoned troops, sent directly from England, are no more able to bear an uninterrupted voyage, than the Lascars. It will remain, therefore, for the directors to find out some other place, in lieu of the Cape, since their exclusion from it, a circumstance which, indeed, their conduct seemed to invite.

But, as I have already observed, all maritime affairs are peculiarly liable to casualties, and, on this consideration, one would
be

be led to conclude that a friendly port must always be held as a valuable acquisition to all who are concerned in such affairs; and more especially to the East India Company, whose concerns are of such vast magnitude. The number of ships that meet with stress of weather, and suffer from the tremendous storms that are frequent in the winter season, on L'Aguillas bank, must always stamp a value on the Cape, and make its ports and bays particularly desirable on the homeward-bound voyage.

That instances of distress do happen, and not unfrequently, in situations where the only hope of safety can be placed on the Cape, or in some of its bays, might be proved in a number of cases that happened while it remained in the hands of Great Britain; but I will content myself with mentioning one single instance. The Countess of Sutherland Indiaman experienced a most violent gale of wind between Madagascar and the coast of Africa, in which, after losing all her masts, she became a wreck at the mercy of the winds and waves for several days; and, at length, was momentarily expected to sink, when, on the weather clearing up, they descried the land of Africa to the southward of the spot where the Grosvenor was lost; and being now in the stream of the current, they contrived to fetch into Kromme River's Bay, a small Cove in Camtoos, or Saint Francis, or Content Bay, for it has a variety of names.

Having here procured a supply of water and other refreshments, and rigged up a kind of jury masts, she endeavoured to proceed to Simon's Bay for the purpose of undergoing a more thorough repair; but, unfortunately, she met with a second gale

of wind, just as she was approaching the entrance of the bay; and in this gale she must inevitably have perished, had not Captain Hotham, with his Majesty's ship the *Adamant*, gone out to her immediate assistance, and succeeded in towing her off the rocky coast, towards which she was rapidly drifting. Now this single ship and her cargo were said to be estimated at the value of three hundred thousand pounds; a sum of money equal to the maintenance of the civil, military, and contingent expences of the Cape, for a whole year.

Had the Cape, at this time, been in the hands of the Dutch, the fate of the Countess of Sutherland must have been inevitable. In war she would have been taken; and in peace she would have been suffered to go on shore; for the Dutch possess neither the activity nor the willingness to give speedy assistance to ships in cases of distress.

There is no place, in the homeward-bound voyage from India, so proper or so convenient for the valuable fleets of the East India Company to assemble at for convoy, in time of war, as the Cape of Good Hope. Here, at a very reasonable rate, their crews might be refreshed with fruits, vegetables, and fresh provisions. Salt beef, for the rest of the voyage, might here also be laid in, affording, thus, a considerable increase of tonnage in each ship for stowing goods.

I took notice, in the former volume of this work, of the salt provisions that might be prepared at Algoa Bay for victualling the fleets of the East India Company. Since that was written I

have again visited this bay ; and, having paid particular attention to the surrounding country, and the state of the cattle, I have no hesitation in saying, that when once the disturbances between the boors and the Kaffers are terminated, which in time of peace would easily be effected, large quantities of good salt beef might be cured there at a very moderate rate. The cattle that could conveniently be brought down from the valuable districts of the Snowy Mountains and Bruynjes Hoogté, would arrive at the bay in a very different condition from those that are driven from the same districts to the Cape, across a desolate and barren tract of country, some hundred miles in extent, on which a blade of grass is not produced.

We procured, at Algoa Bay, as good beef, in every respect, as the markets of London supply ; and, at the distance of a few miles, there is an inexhaustible fund of strong bay salt. The sheep are also good of the kind, being the broad-tailed breed, similar to those of the upper regions of Asia, which, however, are inferior to any of ours, both in the weight of the carcase, the flavour of the meat, and the quality of the wool. Corn might also be raised, to any amount, in the lower districts of Graaf Reynet, bordering on the sea-coast ; and salt butter, soap, and candles, procured on moderate terms.

An establishment at this bay for curing salt provisions would, no doubt, be a prodigious saving, as well as convenience, to the East India Company. The products of the coast might easily be transported to the Cape, in the summer season, in small coasting vessels, and deposited in their warehouses there. The saving
of

of a third of the expences of bread and salt provisions, which would, at least, by these means be effected, must certainly be an object in so vast a concern as theirs, and more than counterbalance the supposed great expence of supporting the settlement.

If, in the second place, we consider the Cape as a naval station, commanding the entrance into the Indian Seas, its importance, in this respect, will be no less obvious. The present superiority of our navy would render a small squadron fully adequate to guard the passage round the Cape, and effectually to defeat any attempt of an enemy to disturb the peace of India, as well as to prevent them from giving the least annoyance to our trade in the Indian Seas. If foreign ships, in their voyage from Europe to India, find it necessary to refresh their crews at the Cape, how much more urgent would the necessity be when the same ships were crowded with troops. The French, in all their former wars, in the short voyage to the Isles of France and Bourbon, refreshed and refitted at the Cape. These islands, as I have already observed, instead of being able to victual a fleet, barely furnish provisions sufficient for the inhabitants and a small garrison. By the supply of provisions and naval stores sent to them from the Cape, Suffrein was enabled to maintain his ground in the Indian Seas, without which he would very soon have been obliged to give up the contest. In the late war our cruizers from the Cape kept the Southern Ocean completely clear of the enemy's ships, and allowed the Indian squadron to make such choice of their cruising ground, that between the two, not a French frigate escaped, nor scarcely a single privateer remained
on

on the Mauritius station for some time before the close of the war.

It is to be hoped, but by no means certain, that France, without the loss of an incalculable number of men, a loss, indeed, to which she would pay little regard, will never be able to make any impression on India but by the assistance of a fleet; and it will be our own fault if we allow them any such fleet in the Eastern Seas; for if the Cape should be in our possession, she will find it utterly impracticable to assemble, much more to victual, any such fleet. The want of a suitable place to refresh at must render every attempt to cope with us in those seas abortive. So well were they aware, in the late war, of the futility of any expedition from the Isles of France and Bourbon, without the assistance of the Cape of Good Hope, that they preferred the fatal experiment of colonizing Egypt, in the hope, perhaps, of proceeding at some future time by the Red Sea to India. They knew that, even if they had succeeded in getting out to these islands a sufficient number of ships and troops, yet without the supplies which they have usually on such occasions drawn from the Cape, any such expedition must necessarily here have ended.

By our holding the Cape, the trade of every other nation to India and China may be considered as entirely at the mercy of England, an advantage, however, of which she is under no necessity of availing herself. During the northern confederacy, several Danes came in to refresh, although they knew they would be taken, or at least detained. With respect to the Americans,
who,

who, of late, by their carrying-trade alone, have worked themselves into the greatest portion, next to England, of the India and China trade, notwithstanding the favourable situation of their country to an extended commerce with India, they would find it extremely inconvenient to be obliged to relinquish the accommodation of refreshing their crews, and disposing of part of their cargoes, at the Cape of Good Hope; from whence, indeed, in case of any rupture, their trade might, at any time, be completely checked, a circumstance which would operate as a security for the preservation of amity and a good understanding with that commercial nation. Had we, indeed, been fortunate enough to have retained this settlement, there is every reason to believe the indulgencies granted to their trade here might have been an important consideration with them, in the renewal of a commercial treaty with England.

After what has been stated with regard to the healthiness of the climate, exemplified in the small degree of mortality among the troops, and in the vigour and stability that their constitutions acquired, it is scarcely necessary to add that the same salutary effects equally prevailed in the navy on this station. The mortality, indeed, among the seamen, was still less, probably on account of their being less exposed to the summer heats, and to their having fewer opportunities of committing irregularities. There was generally a difference of six or eight degrees in the temperature of the bay and the town. When the thermometer, for instance, in Cape Town was at 84° , it stood no higher than 76° on board the ships in Table Bay.

The

The moderate expence at which a fleet can here be maintained is, likewise, an advantage not to be overlooked. The sailor may be subsisted equally cheap with the soldier. It has been calculated, after making the usual allowances for waste, damage, and interest of money, on ships provisions sent out from England, to say nothing of the premium received on bills given in exchange for paper currency, that the sailor at the Cape can be furnished with his ration of fresh beef or mutton, biscuit, and wine, at one-fourth part of the rate which the same ration costs the government in salt provisions and biscuit sent out from England. A pint of wine, as I have already stated, costs no more than threepence, and might be reduced to half that price by abolishing the monopoly; and the Cape brandy, though at present bad, on account of the defective manner of distillation, and the improper ingredients employed, may be had at a much cheaper rate than West India rum, and would, in a little time, under the encouragement of the British Government, have been made in its quality equally good of its kind.

I am not provided with sufficient documents to give the annual expenditure of the Squadron that was stationed at the Cape; but I am convinced it must have been much more moderate, in the articles of fresh meat, biscuit, and wine, than for the same number of ships and men, on any other station whatsoever. In the year 1797 the Squadron consumed 1,085,266 pounds of fresh meat, and 1,167,995 pounds of biscuit, or about 3000 pounds of each a day; besides 184,358 pounds of soft bread, 217,813 pounds of flour, and 1066 bushels of wheat; it consumed, moreover, 1,226,738 pints of wine, and 244,904

pints of spirits; together with a considerable quantity of butter, vinegar, raisins, peas and beans, all the produce of the colony, and all of them articles which were to be procured at a moderate rate. I conclude, from the quantity expended, that, in this year, the squadron, supposing it to consist of three thousand men, was subsisted mostly on Cape produce; and, therefore, that it cost the Government little more than one-fourth part of what it would have done on most other stations.

With respect to the wear and tear of the tackle and furniture, I have understood it to be very considerable on this station, owing to the frequent gales of wind, and the exposed situation of the ships. Admiral Pringle used to say, that every south-easterly gale, of a week's duration, cost his Majesty some thousand pounds. But this expence might, probably, be obviated by forming an establishment at Saldanha Bay.

The geographical position of the Cape of Good Hope, throws a vast weight into the scale of its importance to England. Its happy situation, with regard to climate, and the productions of the soil, stamp its value as a depositary of troops and seamen; and its relative position on the globe enhances that value by the ready communication it commands with almost every part of the world. We have seen with what expedition more than two thousand troops were thrown from hence into India, to the very walls of Seringapatam; and, on another occasion, twelve hundred effective men into Egypt. With equal facility and dispatch could the same, or a greater, number have been conveyed to the east coast of North America, the West India islands, or the
west

west coast of South America. At a month's notice, the whole coast of Brazil could be lined with cruisers from the Cape. The whole eastern coast of Africa, and the various islands contiguous to it, are at the mercy of the power who holds the Cape; and the large island of Madagascar may be approached in ten or twelve days, those of France and Bourbon in much less than a month, the Red Sea in five or six weeks, and the coasts of Malabar and Coromandel in seven or eight weeks. These passages will certainly depend much on the season of the year in which they are made, but when this is properly chosen, the different places may be arrived at within the periods here mentioned.

If, at any time, troops might be wanted in the West Indies, the homeward-bound East Indiamen might be employed to transport them thither from the Cape without retarding their passage more than sixteen or eighteen days, as the common practice of crossing the line is now as far to the westward as 26° west longitude. Detachments of the Hottentot corps would be well calculated for service in the West India islands. Should, at any future period, the French resume their projects on India by the Red Sea (which they will certainly not fail to do whenever an opportunity presents itself), in three months from the time it was first known in England, a force from the Cape might be in possession of the straits of Babelmandel, and, by thus anticipating, completely frustrate their designs, which, with the Cape in their possession, or in that of the Dutch, they might easily accomplish.

But if the geographical position of the Cape gives it the pre-eminence, as a great naval and military station, as the barrier and master-key of our Indian possessions, it still derives other advantages from this very circumstance, which, though they are to be considered as of a subordinate nature, are highly deserving of notice: these are the turn it is capable of giving to the commerce of India and China; and the encouragement and protection it might afford to the Southern Whale Fishery; but as these considerations are too important to be slightly passed over, it may be proper to reserve the observations that occur on them for a subsequent chapter; and, in the mean time, proceed to point out the disadvantages that may result to Britain, and particularly to the East India Company, from the Cape being placed in the possession of the Dutch, or, which must be considered as the same thing, of the French, the former being so much reduced and degraded by the latter, that they no longer are, and in all probability never can revive as, a separate and an independent nation.

We have already seen the vast advantages that Great Britain derived to her trade and possessions in India, during the late war, by holding this barrier in her own hands; let us now consider what our situation is, in these respects, in the present state of things. The Cape of Good Hope is in the possession of an enemy; Rio de la Plata belongs to Spain, who, when she has been plundered of all she can give, will, most probably, be forced into acts of hostility against us; and the Isles of France and Bourbon now derive their usual supplies from the Cape, for
the

the use of the Squadron which, we may presume, is already there. These three important stations, all hostile to us, form a triangle, within the boundary lines of which every ship, bound to or from the Indies, must necessarily pass; and the respective positions of these three points are so favourable for annoying our trade, that, were the skill and activity of the enemies who hold them commensurate with our own, which, fortunately for us, they certainly are not, it would be almost an hopeless attempt for a ship to escape.

It may be urged, perhaps, that the great extent which may be taken in crossing the equator from eighteen to twenty-six degrees of longitude, leaving it to the discretion of the commanders of our East India Company's ships to keep the American shore close on board, or to pass it at a distance; and the equally great extent that may be chosen in doubling the Cape, from the thirty-fourth to the forty-second degree of latitude, would render the cruising of the enemy so precarious, that the odds of escaping them are greatly in our favour. It is granted that it may be so; and I am, moreover, persuaded that neither the French nor the Dutch would attempt to intercept our outward-bound ships, for these two reasons; first, because their value is so much less on the outward than on the homeward-bound passage; and secondly, on account of the uncertainty of falling in with them, as well as in consideration of the violent storms their cruisers would be almost sure to encounter off the Cape of Good Hope.

But

But these circumstances take a very different turn on the homeward-bound voyage. The danger is then increased in a much greater proportion than the value of the ships is augmented. If, indeed, we are willing to allow the enemy to employ the same means that we should ourselves do, in a like situation, the capture of many of our ships may be considered as inevitable.

In the first place, the danger of the straits of Sunda presents itself to our homeward-bound China ships. A small squadron from Batavia, stationed at Nicholas Point on the north of Java, where there is good anchorage, or at Anjerie Point in the middle of the Strait, at both of which places it may receive a constant supply of refreshments, would be able to intercept every ship that attempted to pass the Strait.

These straits, it is true, may be avoided by taking the eastern passage; but here a new and no less danger presents itself from the port of Manilla. As all ships, making this passage, must go within sight of Luconia, it would be difficult for them to avoid an active squadron cruising off this island. Thus,

“ Incidit in Scyllam cupiens vitare Charybdim ;”

by avoiding one danger they fall into a greater.

Admitting, however, that either through the exertions of our cruisers, or the inactivity of the enemy, the China fleet should escape both Scylla and Charibdis; the next dangerous
point

point that occurs is the L'Aguilla's Bank, where we can have no cruizers to protect our trade, on account of the heavy storms that prevail there, and the want of a friendly port to refit and refresh our ships. The current, that sets along the outer margin of this bank, moves at the rate of forty or fifty miles a day, in the winter months, in direct opposition to the north-westerly winds; a circumstance so well known, that all our ships strive to keep in the stream of the current, which sweeps them round the Cape against the wind. The enemy's cruizers would find no difficulty in running from False Bay, in the winter months, close along shore as far as Algoa Bay, which our ships have frequently done in three or four days; and, by skirting the outer margin of L'Aguilla's Bank, they can, at any time, return by the stream of the current, even against a gale of wind. Thus might their ships of war from the Cape track our homeward-bound Indiamen, and greatly annoy our trade; for, on the return-voyage, they have much less scope in doubling the Cape than when outward-bound. Indeed, in the winter season, it is almost impracticable to double the Cape at any great distance from it. The attempt to do it has generally failed, and always been attended with the greatest danger of losing the ships.

Supposing them, however, to have escaped all these dangers; admitting them to have passed the island of Manilla, the Straits of Sunda, and the Cape of Good Hope; there still remains one point against which nothing can protect them but a superior fleet from England. In whatever degree of latitude the Cape of Good Hope may be doubled, in the homeward-bound passage, all our ships run nearly upon the same line to Saint Helena, so
nearly,

nearly, indeed, that I suppose they scarcely deviate twenty leagues from the same track. If then a squadron of the enemy's ships from the Cape should cruize to windward of this island, and within sight of it, our India fleet must necessarily fall into their hands. And on this cruizing ground, where the wind is fixed and steady, the water smooth, and the weather always fine, the enemy's vessels may remain for any length of time.

The enormous expence, and, indeed, the impracticability, of affording effective convoys to our Indian trade, under such unfavourable circumstances, must be obvious to every one. The expence of one effective convoy to be stationed off Saint Helena, as long as the Cape remains in the possession of the French, to say nothing of the serious inconvenience of detaching ships of war from more important stations, would be much more than sufficient to maintain the whole establishment of the Cape for a twelvemonth; and, in all probability, more than the profits might amount to of the cargoes so convoyed. Saint Helena, besides, is not adequate to furnish any supplies for such a convoy. With the greatest exertions a few refreshments are raised for the use of the island, and the surplus is disposed of at a most extravagant rate for the use of the ships of the East India Company. They have few horned cattle, and not one of these can there be killed without the consent of the Governor. Yet this is the only place we now have left where a convoy can be assembled. How incalculable then were the advantages of possessing a middle point between India and Europe, where every necessary refreshment might be had in the greatest abundance; and which, instead of being a point of danger and annoyance as it now

is, was the bulwark of security to our Indian trade and possessions.

Those who may feel inclined to console themselves for the loss of the Cape, by reflecting that nothing of serious moment happened to our Indian fleets and possessions during the American war, should recollect the great change of circumstances that has taken place since that event. Holland, at that time, though an impoverished and declining nation, was independent on France, and had her own possessions in India to protect; and France, though equally then, as now, zealous to accomplish the ruin of our wealth and power in India, which she had long in vain endeavoured to emulate, had but just the means of giving a feeble protection to her territorial possessions in that quarter. Armies were not raised, nor fleets equipped, with that facility under the monarchy, as under republican tyranny, or consular despotism. Mr. Delacroix took great pains to impress on the mind of Lord Malmesbury the accession of strength that France had acquired by her republican form of government. "Nous ne sommes plus dans la décrépitude de la France monarchique, mais dans toute la force d'une république adulescente."

France having now no such possessions in India to protect, her grand object will be, in co-operation with the Dutch, to endeavour to hold in their hands, by rendering it impregnable, the barrier of all India. When this is once effected, she will find little difficulty in assembling, at her own islands of

France and Bourbon, a sufficient number of troops and transports to disturb the peace of our Indian settlements. Her aim will not be that of fighting our fleets of war, nor of making a direct attack on our Eastern possessions, but to abet and assist the native powers against us, with a view rather of destroying our empire in India, than any hope she can possibly form of establishing one of her own. Without funds and without credit she can have little prospect of amassing wealth by fair trade and honest industry; and will therefore attempt, by every means she can think of employing, to effect the ruin of ours; by disturbing the peace of our settlements through her intriguing agents; by forming alliances with those who are disposed to be hostile towards us; and by assisting them with her troops.

It was in this point of view that the French considered the Cape of Good Hope to be more important than the Isle of Ceylon, the cession of which, I have reason to believe, they never meant to dispute vigorously in negotiation, being rather determined to stand a contest for the restoration of the Cape *nominally* to its ancient possessors. If, however, in order to obtain a peace, we were reduced to the necessity of accepting the alternative of either, as probably was the case, it became, no doubt, a very serious and interesting consideration, to estimate their comparative value and importance. The one rated as yielding a revenue of nearly a million a year, with a harbour not surpassed in the whole world; the key of all India; and a place, in the hands of a powerful enemy, from whence all India might be assaulted—the other, a barren promontory (for such it was generally

generally esteemed) at a great distance from our Indian territories, affording little or no revenue, and maintained at a great expence.

“ If we give up Ceylon,” has observed Lord Macartney, “ being situated at the extremity of the peninsula of India, it “ would become an immediate and terrific enemy to us in that “ quarter, as commanding the power of invading from thence “ both the coast of Malabar and Coromandel. To a maritime “ power the excellent harbour of Trincomalée is a jewel of in- “ estimable value ; it holds the bay of Bengal at its mercy, and “ affords every facility of overawing and controuling the navi- “ gation of the Straits of Sunda and Malacca. Our Asiatic “ possessions, commerce, and marine, would consequently lie “ open to the depredations of the masters of Ceylon.... Ad- “ mitting then that Ceylon should preponderate, if put into “ the scale against the Cape, let it not be forgotten, however, “ that *the Cape in an enemy's hands may become a powerful in- “ strument for their recovering Ceylon.*”

There can be no question that the French were extremely glad we gave up the worse, under the idea of its being an instrument in their hands of taking from us the better. Ceylon to them was of no great value. It furnishes no supplies for an army or a navy, and would always be at the mercy of that power which could bring a superior fleet into the Indian Seas ; and we have shewn that no such fleet of an enemy could be assembled there, nor victualled, nor provisioned, whilst the Cape

of Good Hope remained a British colony. It would have been a desirable object then to retain possession of a station which would effectually have excluded them from the Indian Seas; and which always would have enabled us to confine them to their useless islands of France and Bourbon.

Of one thing England may be well assured, that the destruction of its commerce, as the source from whence its power and affluence are derived, is a sentiment so deeply rooted in the mind of the Corsican that, so long as it continues to flourish, his frascible and vindictive temper will not allow him to keep on any terms of friendship with us. He is well aware that our commerce is our great support, that, as Mr. Delacroix observed, it enabled us to subsidize all Europe against them; and that if he could once break up our commerce to India and China, and shut us out from the Mediterranean, the grand bulwark that now stands between him and universal sovereignty would, in a great degree, be removed.

Should his views, unhappily for the world, ever be accomplished, an age of barbarism would return, ten times darker than that which followed the irruption of the northern hordes. A deadly blow would be struck at once to the liberty of the press; nothing would be written, nor printed, nor tolerated, but what the sovereign despot should find conducive to his universal sway. The time would then come when *legit ut clericus*, instead of saving a man from death would be the sure means of bringing him to his end.

It

It behoves his Majesty's Government then to be upon its guard, and to watch the points where we are most vulnerable, in this respect, with unremitting attention; but above all, after providing for the security of the empire, to crush, in the cradle, the designs of the French upon India. The first step to this desirable object will be the recovery of the Cape of Good Hope; or, which would answer pretty nearly the same purpose, the destruction of the shipping that, from time to time, might be assembled there. An expedition for this purpose would require no troops; and, having once established our security at home, so that we can venture to detach a squadron sufficient for such an enterprize, this is an object not unworthy the consideration of Government. I have already observed that Table Bay, in the opinion of naval people, is favourable for putting such a design in execution. I should imagine that Simon's Bay is still more so, there being no works, or none of any consequence, to annoy our shipping from the shore.

There are two small forts only, one on each side of the anchorage, both of which would be immediately silenced by a ship of the line. The wind, in the winter season, when shipping frequent Simon's Bay, is always favourable for running directly into it, and equally so for standing out into the Great Bay False, in every part of which there is good anchorage. A superior fleet will, therefore, at all times, take or destroy every ship that may be found there; and the shipping on the Cape station are under an absolute necessity of going either into Simon's or Saldanha Bay in the winter months, and of remaining there from May to

September inclusive. Salween Bay has yet no defences whatever, but I understand it was the intention of the Dutch Government to fortify the entrance.

Having now pointed out some of the principal conveniences that the Cape possesses as a naval station, it will be right to mention the disadvantages under which it labours in this particular view. The most serious of these, which, indeed, is the only material one that I am acquainted with, is the want of a secure and convenient harbour for receiving, repairing, or ballasting ships. The two principal bays that are visited by shipping, one in the summer, the other in the winter months, are entirely open, and exposed to the two prevailing winds, the north-west and the south-east; nor does it appear to be practicable, by any expense, to render them secure and sheltered, nor to construct any kind of dock or harbour for the reception of large ships, and scarcely even of small craft.

If any thing of this kind were to be attempted it could only extend to the accommodation of the latter, and the only place for this purpose would be at Rogge Bay, where nature has laid an excellent foundation of rock, and to which there is a considerable depth of water, where the swell of the sea is broken by the jutting points on which are erected the Amsterdams and the Constantia batteries. In all events, this would be a much better and more convenient landing place than at the present wooden wharf, which is barely kept up at an enormous annual expence.

1875

1875

1875

September inclusive. Saldanha Bay has yet no defences whatsoever, but I understand it was the intention of the Dutch Government to fortify the entrance.

Having now pointed out some of the principal conveniences that the Cape possesses as a naval station, it will be right to mention the disadvantages under which it labours in this point of view. The most serious of these, which, indeed, is the only material one that I am acquainted with, is the want of a secure and convenient harbour for refitting, repairing, or building ships. The two principal bays that are resorted to by shipping, one in the summer, the other in the winter months, are entirely open, and exposed to the two prevailing winds, the north-west and the south-east; nor does it appear to be practicable, by any expence, to render them secure and sheltered, nor to construct any kind of dock or harbour for the reception of large ships, and scarcely even of small craft.

If any thing of this kind were to be attempted it could only extend to the accommodation of the latter, and the only place for this purpose would be at Rogge Bay, where nature has laid an excellent foundation of rock, close to which there is a considerable depth of water, where the swell of the sea is broken by the jutting points on which are erected the Amsterdam and the Chavonne batteries. At all events, this would be a much better and more convenient landing place than at the present wooden wharf, which is barely kept up at an enormous annual expence.

In

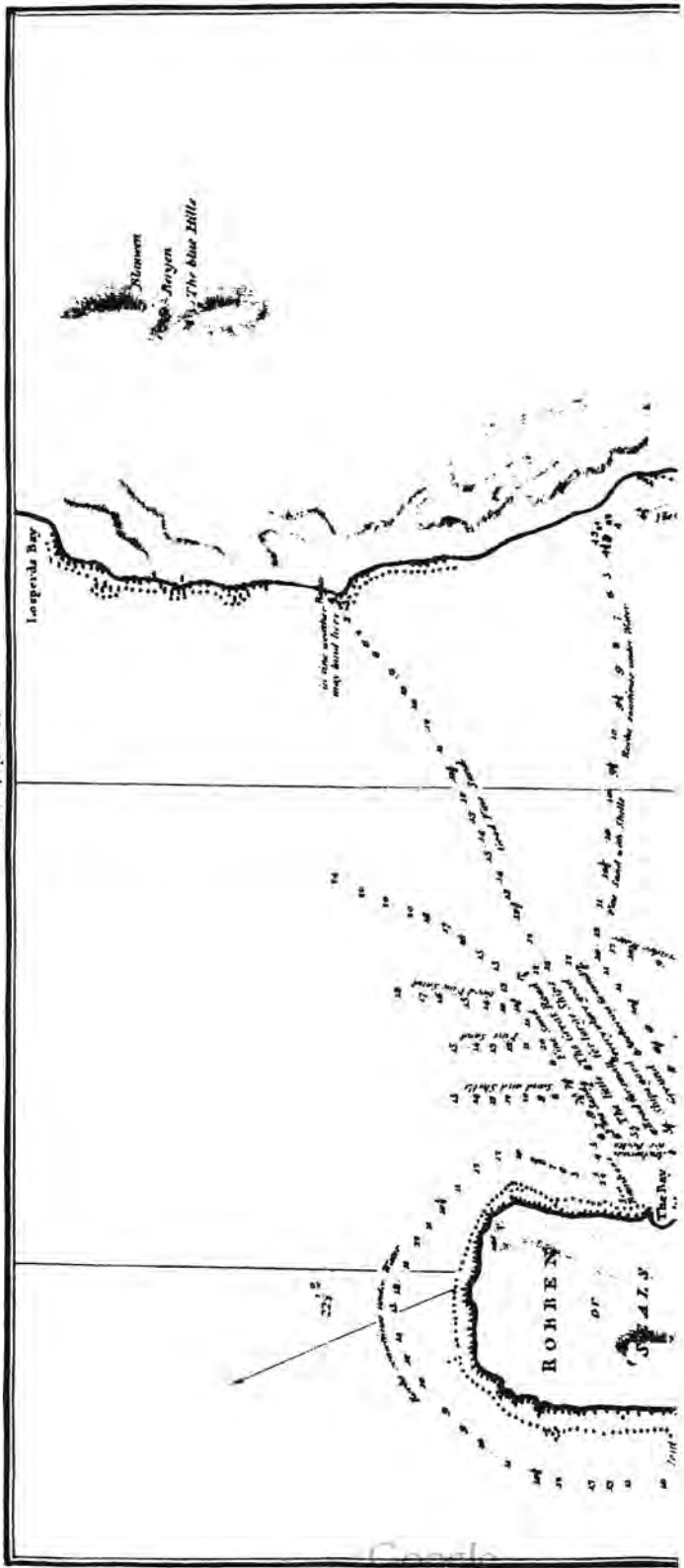
what-
h Go-

iences
o men-
oint of
e only
secure
; ships.
one in
open,
ft and
y ex-
t any
s, and

d only
place
s laid
con-
oken
and
uch
tent
ual

In

To face page 255.



In all other parts of the bay an attempt to make any kind of harbour would be fruitless. The tide barely rises five feet, and the constant rolling swell in the winter season would always choak the entrance of any dock with sand. Thus the mouth of the Salt River is alternately open and blocked up with sand.

The annexed chart of Table Bay was constructed by order of Governor Van de Graaf in the year 1786, and has been found, by a diligent examination, to be extremely accurate. The anchoring-ground in general is tolerably good, but the shifting of the sand leaves bare sometimes whole ridges of the same kind of hard blue schistus that appears every where on the west shore of the bay. These ridges are so sharp, that a cable coming across them is sure to be cut in pieces. This has happened so frequently that the bay is full of anchors, which have never been fished up; and these contribute equally with the rocks, to cut and chafe the cables of other ships. If some pains be not taken to remove the anchors, the number of which increase every year, there will not, in time, be a clear anchorage for a single large ship. When the Dutch Admiral Dekker's squadron was blown out of Table Bay in February last they left six or eight anchors behind.

Admiral Pringle, I understand, was of opinion that the inconvenience arising from the rocks and the lost anchors was in some degree remediable, by sinking mooring-chains for the large ships, instead of their lying at anchor. In the south-east winds, which blow from September to the end of April, and which is the season when all ships bound for the Cape resort to Table Bay, there

there is no other danger than that of being driven out to sea from the wear and tear of the cables; though the water is not smooth; yet the sea is not high, and it is next to impossible for a ship to go on shore, unless on the south point of Robben Island, which they have always time enough to avoid, the distance being seven or eight miles. Within this island and the continent there is excellent anchorage, where ships so driven out usually bring up. Here, too, ships intending to come into Table Bay generally wait the abatement of a south-east wind, if it should happen to blow too strong for their working up against it. This island is too small, and at too great a distance, to afford the least shelter to Table Bay in the north-west winds that blow in the winter months.

The frequency, the strength, and the long duration of the south-east winds are attended with considerable disadvantage to commerce, it being sometimes impracticable to ship or to land goods for many successive days.

These winds are very uncertain in their duration, there being scarcely two years in which their periods do not vary. The Dutch used to bring their ships round about the beginning of September; but as Simon's Bay is safe, at all times of the year, for a few ships, the English protracted the time of entering Table Bay to the beginning of October, yet, in the year 1799, his Majesty's ship the Sceptre, with seven others, were driven on shore on the fifth of November.

The

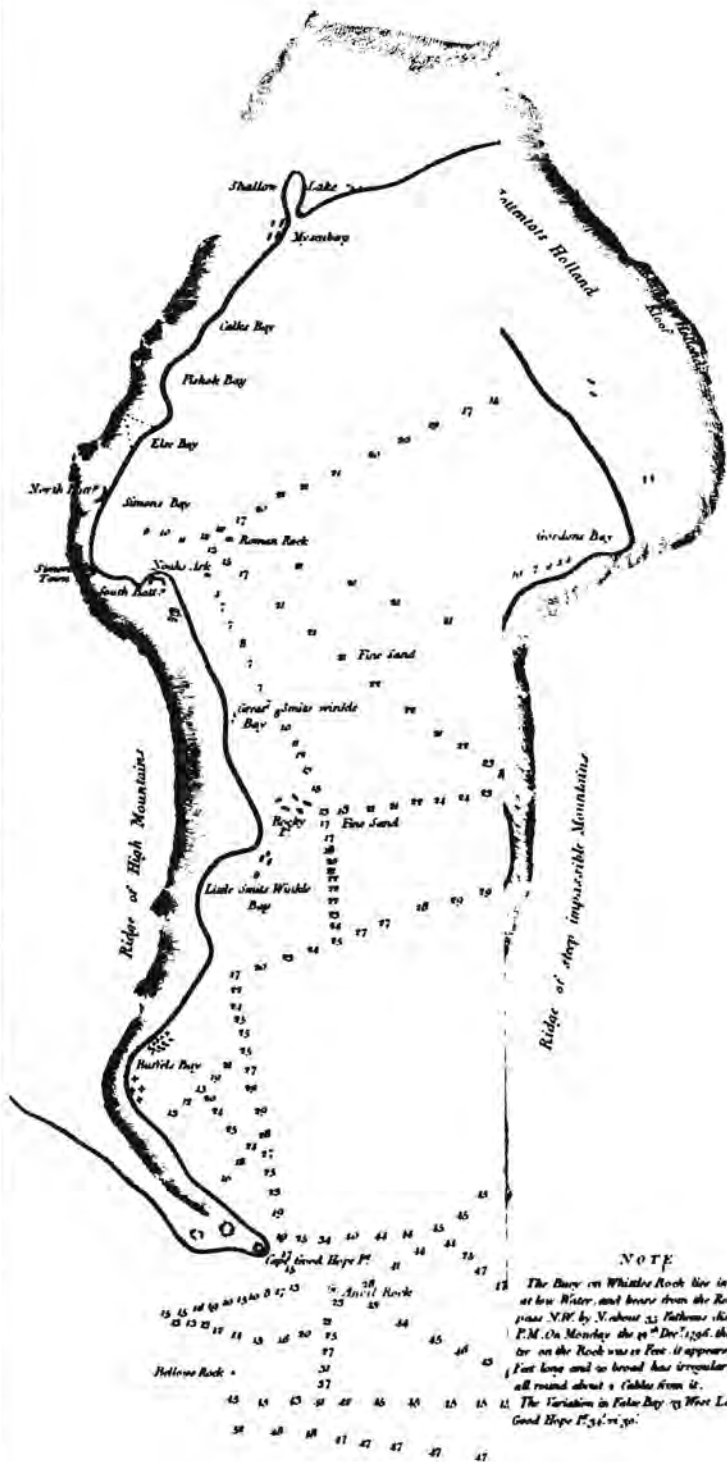
The loss of this ship was attended with many distressful circumstances. At one o'clock she fired a *feu-de joye*, in commemoration of the anniversary of the popish plot; at ten the same evening scarcely a vestige was to be seen, but the fragments of the wreck scattered on the strand, in myriads of pieces, not a single plank remaining whole nor two attached together. Captain Edwards, his son, with ten other officers, and near three hundred seamen and marines perished on this melancholy occasion. Young Edwards, a fine boy of about fourteen years, was found the next day with a bible in his bosom; the father not till several days after. The following morning exhibited a dismal scene of distress. The strand was strewn with dead carcasses, most of them mangled in so shocking a manner by the shattered fragments of the ship, that they were obliged to bury them in holes upon the beach; the bodies that could be taken up whole were placed in waggons and carried to the usual burying-ground.

The Oldenburg, a Danish man of war of 64 guns, went on shore the same day, but having drifted upon a smooth sandy beach, the crew were saved, as were those of all the other ships. The Sceptre was unfortunately thrown upon a ledge of rocks near the mouth of the Salt River. Captain Edwards, it seems, conformably to the custom of the navy, employed every means to bring her up while drifting, and, having lost their last anchor, bent even the fore-castle guns to the cable. The Dutch, knowing from experience how ineffectual is every attempt when once a ship has parted her cables, pay no further attention to her

safety but, setting some of the head sails, they run her ashore between the wharf and the centre of the sea-lines, upon a smooth sandy beach, by which means, though the ship be lost, the crew are saved.

Our officers seem to be divided in opinion as to the preference of Table Bay or Simon's Bay. They are certainly both defective, but the latter would appear to be the more secure, from the circumstance of few, if any, ships having ever been known to drive on shore from their anchors, whilst scarcely a season passes without some being lost in Table Bay. In the winter months, when the wind blows from north to north-west, forty or fifty ships may lie at anchor perfectly secure in Simon's Bay; and eight or ten may be sufficiently sheltered in the strongest south-easters. The Great Bay False, of which this is an indent or cove, was so little known at the time of the capture by the British forces, that Rear-Admiral Pringle, in the year 1797, directed it to be surveyed and sounded, in consequence of which the exact situation was ascertained of a very dangerous rock, placed directly in the passage of ships into Simon's Bay; a rock, of the existence of which the Dutch were entirely ignorant. The annexed chart with the soundings is a copy of the said survey.

The usual months in which ships resort to Simon's Bay are from May to September inclusive. The distance from Cape Town, being twenty-four miles, and the badness of the road, mostly deep sand and splashes of water, render the com-
munica-



NOTE

The Bay on Whistler Rock lies in 2 fathoms at low water and bears from the Rock by true pass N.W. by N. about 23 fathoms distant at 1 P.M. On Monday the 29th Dec. 1861 the boat was on the Rock was 15 feet. It appears about 30 feet long and so broad has irregular sounding all round about 1 cables from it.

The Variation in Fishok Bay 23 West Lat. Cape Good Hope 17.54. 11.50.

munication at all times difficult; but more especially so in the winter; and few supplies are to be had at Simon's Town; a name with which a collection of about a dozen houses has most unworthily been dignified.

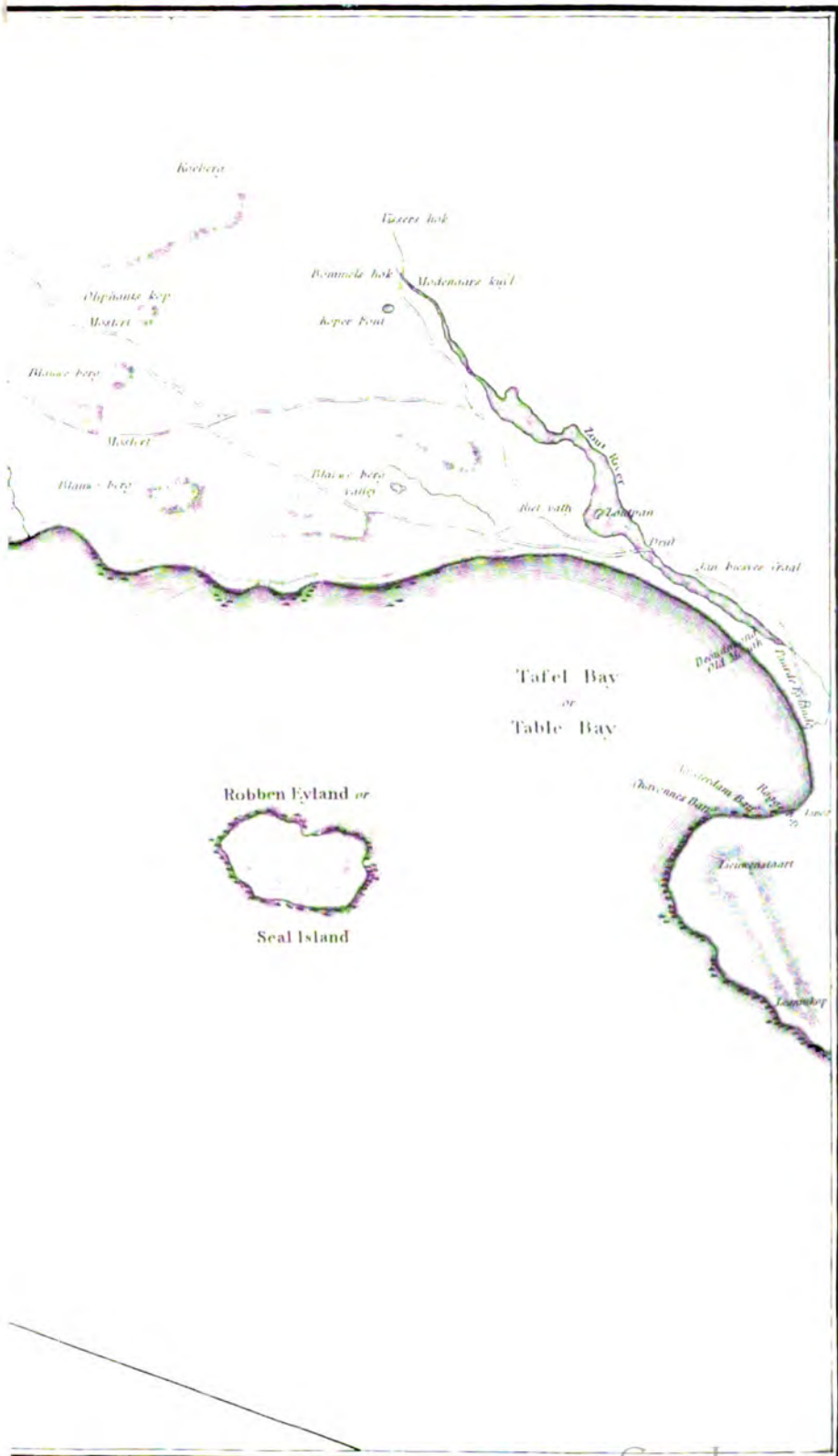
The necessity of ships of war being sent round into Simon's Bay for five months in the year might be attended with very serious consequences to the safety of the colony, as far, at least, as depended on the exertions of the navy belonging to the station. Being a lee port, the chances are greatly against their being able to work up to Table Bay, and still less to Saldanha Bay, to afford any assistance in the event of an attack by an enemy's fleet; which, without any interruption or molestation, might disembark troops, and land artillery, stores, and ammunition at Robben Island, or any of the windward bays.

This being the case, it would seem more desirable that the ships of war upon the station should winter in Saldanha Bay, being not only a windward port with respect to Cape Town, but one of the best harbours, perhaps, in the whole world. Here any number of ships may lie in perfect security at all seasons of the year, either to the northward of the entrance in Hoetjes Bay, from whence they can at all times get out in the winter months, or to the southward in summer, when, with equal facility, the south-easterly winds will at any time carry them out. On the west side of Hoetjes Bay, nature has erected a granite pier, against the sides of which ships may be brought as to the

side of a quay; and it terminates to the northward in a fine smooth sandy beach, where boats may always land with safety. The position of Marcus Island, in the entrance, a solid block of granite, is peculiarly happy for protecting the bay, to which a battery erected upon it and mounted with heavy cannon would be fully competent. The different points also jutting into the bay are well calculated to provide for its defence.

The situation of Saldanha Bay is much more convenient than that of the peninsula for receiving the supplies afforded by the country. The deep sandy isthmus, whose heavy roads have been the destruction of multitudes of cattle, would be entirely avoided; and its distance from the corn districts, which is the most material article of consumption, is much less than that of the Cape. Its situation, with regard to all the northern parts of the colony, is much more convenient than Cape Town; and equally so for those who inhabit the distant district of Graaf Reynet, and who usually pass over the Roode Sand Kloof.

It may be asked, then, how it has happened, at the first foundation of the settlement, that the preference was given to Table Bay, which possesses not a single convenience for shipping; and is, at the best, no better than an open and dangerous road? The answer has already been given in the last chapter, where it was observed, that the clear and copious stream of water rushing out of the Table Mountain, had determined the site of the Town. Unfortunately, no such stream of water falls
into



In two parts 1811

into Saldanha Bay; nor has any spring yet been discovered in the vicinity of its shores, that has been considered as sufficient to supply the demands of a small squadron for fresh water. I must observe, however, that the trials hitherto made have been very insufficient. Indeed, I know of none but that of the late Sir Hugh Christian, whose failure in this attempt I have already had occasion to notice. It may be observed, in the annexed chart of the coasts from Table Bay to Saldanha Bay, that in every part there are abundance of springs spontaneously bursting out of the ground, for not one of these have ever been dug for, nor a spade put into the ground in order to open the conduits and suffer them to run more freely. If, indeed, we consider for a moment the situation of this low sandy belt of land, stretching along the northern coast, common sense must convince us that there is plenty of water at no great distance below the surface. It is bounded on the east, at the distance only of seventy miles by a chain of mountains, whose summits are from two to nearly five thousand feet high; and all the waters, from both sides of these mountains, fall upon this narrow plain. A great part of them, it is true, sink into the Berg River, but the Berg River itself is on a level with Saldanha Bay, into which, indeed, the whole body of it might, with great ease, be carried, as I mentioned in the first volume, where I also noticed the objections against such a measure. The spring at *Witte Klip*, the White Rock, about six miles to the northward of Hoetjes Bay, seems amply sufficient for the supply of a large fleet of ships, if collected and brought to the bay in pipes, the expence of which could not exceed a few thousand

and pounds. Even should this not be found sufficient for the purposes of the fleet and the necessary establishment consequential to its becoming the naval station, a measure might be adopted which could not fail of securing a constant supply of fresh water to any amount. This would be effected by bringing it in pipes from the Berg River, which never fails in the driest weather, and the surface of which, contrary to almost all the other rivers of the colony, is very little sunk below the general surface of the country. I should think that ten thousand pounds would go a great way towards accomplishing this object, so important to every nation whose shipping trade to the eastward of the Cape of Good Hope. Were this once effected, the interest of the capital expended in the undertaking would be more than defrayed by an additional port duty of ten dollars or two pounds sterling for each ship; a mere trifle, when compared to the ease and security in which ships would here ride at anchor, and thus avoid the wear and tear of Table Bay, besides the conveniency of careening and repairing; and, above all, the perfect safety in which they would remain in all winds and at all seasons of the year.

There can be little doubt, if a naval establishment was once formed at Saldanha Bay, that many coasting vessels and fishing ships would be constructed here, as it affords every convenience that could be required for building ships, which would be the means of increasing the coasting trade, and especially in the article of timber, the produce of the colony. Whether any of the forest trees of South Africa are suitable for building ships
seems

seems, as yet, a doubtful matter. Hitherto they have not had any trial. With respect to size and form they are liable to no objections, and there can be little doubt that, by felling them at a proper time, and seasoning them in such a manner as the climate may require, they would be found to answer all the purposes that might be wanted, not only for the hull of a ship but also for masts and yards. So little did they know, in the Cape, of the resources of the colony, with respect to the timber, that of the forty-four distinct species of forest trees, of the wood of which I procured specimens, that were delivered to Government by Lord Macartney, not more than six or eight were in partial use; of the rest the names even were unknown.

The only bay within the limits of the colony, to the northward, is that of Saint Helena, which, by land from Hoetjes Bay is little more than fifteen miles. In shape and situation it resembles Table Bay, but wants the attractions of the latter both in respect of the quality of the contiguous land and the quantity of water. Whalers sometimes anchor in this bay, where, from the remote and undisturbed situation, so many whales constantly resort in the winter months, that they seldom find any difficulty of making up the deficiency of their cargo. It might be prudent, however, in the power who possesses the Cape, to have a guard frigate stationed in this bay, and another in Algoa Bay. The other parts of the coast are of less consequence. They are frequented only by the whale fishers of America, and adventurers from London.

With

With all the imperfections of this southern angle of Africa, with regard to its bays and conveniences for shipping, its geographical position on the globe will always render it a powerful instrument in the hands of a maritime nation to direct the commerce of India and China into new channels, to enrich its owners, and to distress their enemies.

CHAP. V.

Importance of the Cape of Good Hope, considered in a commercial Point of View, and as a Depôt for the Southern Whale Fishery.

Intention of the United States in forming the Settlement.—Commerce discouraged.—Rising Prosperity of the Colony checked.—Consequences of its becoming a Free Port.—American Trade.—Ships under neutral Flags and British Capitals.—Situation of Batavian Republic respecting the Cape.—Interests of the East India Company.—Cape considered as an Emporium of Eastern Produce—Objections to it—attended with Loss to the Crown—and Injury to the London Market.—Remedy.—Trade from the Cape—to the West Indies—to the Brazils—at the Discretion of the Company.—America—Holland—France—Advantages of the Cape as furnishing Exports—Grain and Pulse—Wine and Brandy—Wool—Hides and Skins—Whale Oil and Bone—dried Fruits—salt Provisions—Soap and Candles—Aloes—Ivory—Tobacco.—Total Value of Exports in four Years.—Imports from England what—from India and China—by foreign Nations.—Table of Imports.—Balance of Imports over Exports.—State of the Colony.—Relapse into Poverty.—Commercial Advantages not Important to Great Britain—considered as a Depôt for the Southern Whale Fishery.—Establishment of this Fishery—might be exclusively in our Hands through the Cape—Black Whale—Spermaceti.—Bounties.—Seal Fishery in the Hands of Americans—Inducement for them to dispose of their Skins.—Conclusion.

THE original intention of the United Provinces, in forming a settlement at the Cape of Good Hope, was that of its being a place of refreshment for the shipping of their East India Company, beyond which they thought it not prudent to

extend its use till very lately, after they had perceived the advantages it possessed as a military depôt for forming and preparing their troops, which were intended to serve in their Indian settlements. It was, at the same time, permitted to foreign ships to refit and refresh at the Cape, on payment of certain port fees that were by no means extravagant. But as the supplying of such ships with provisions was a lucrative monopoly, acquired by favour or purchased for a sum of money, the prices paid by foreigners were never less than double, and oftimes treble, of those paid by the inhabitants. Hence little encouragement was held out for foreign ships to call at the Cape, beside that of getting water and a few refreshments for their crews.

All commerce, except such as was brought in Dutch bottoms, was deemed clandestine and contraband; yet, such illicit trade was not only winked at, but encouraged, by the servants of the Company, whose salaries, indeed, were so small, that they could not subsist their families upon them. The supplies, also, for the Cape, of which the Company reserved to itself the exclusive privilege of furnishing, both from Europe and India, were sometimes so scantily and so tardily brought in, that the inhabitants were under the necessity of smuggling certain articles of daily consumption out of foreign ships for their immediate use.

As the East India Company considered the Cape in no other light than as a conveniency to their commerce and their settlements in the East Indies, to which point all their regulations respecting it tended, their system of policy seemed to require that

that every impediment should be thrown in the way of its becoming a flourishing settlement. The petty traffic they reserved for themselves, or allowed their servants to carry on, at this place, consisted in an exchange of colonial produce for the manufactures of Europe and India. And this traffic was not only a monopoly in the hands of the Company or some of its servants, but a fixed price or what is usually called a *maximum* was imposed both on imports and exports. Other regulations, that were adopted for the government of the colony, were little calculated to promote its prosperity; and, although many of these were altered and modified from time to time, on the representations and remonstrances of that part of the inhabitants, not engaged in the service of the Company, yet few of them were productive of public benefit. The influence of the Company's servants was always sufficient to counteract the operation of any measure that promised to be more advantageous to the general interests of the colony, than to the individual benefit of those entrusted with the government.

There cannot be a stronger proof of this being the case than the general prosperity that prevailed under the British Government; when, in the course of six years, with the administration of the same political system reserved to them by the capitulation, except in so far as regarded the abolishment of monopolies, which were nearly done away, the public revenues were more than doubled, without an additional tax or increase of rents; and property in the town was also raised to nearly the double of its former value.

The Dutch East India Company, in fact, were jealous of establishing a power at the Cape which, by too great encouragement, might, in time, shake off their yoke in Europe, and overawe their settlements in India. For, although the whole population of the colony, exclusive of slaves and Hottentots, barely amounted to 20,000 souls, men, women, and children, which were scattered over an extent of country whose dimensions are not less than 550 by 230 English miles, yet, as it was not convenient for the Government to keep up a great force at the Cape, these colonists, few as they were, felt themselves sufficiently strong to give it, at least, a good deal of trouble. Nor, indeed, could it always place a firm dependence on the forces that were stationed there, these being chiefly hired troops, of which both officers and men entered frequently into family connections with the inhabitants. Thus circumstanced, it would have been no difficult matter for the colonists to cut off, at any time, those refreshments, without which the ships of their East India Company would be unable to proceed on their voyage to India.

The Dutch settlers seemed to be fully aware of their advantage in this respect in making their late weak attempt at independence, which, though then unsuccessful, they may again feel themselves inclined to renew, if, at a peace, their old masters should be allowed to retain the colony. The present weakness and exhausted finances of the Batavian Republic, will not be able to support even the same degree of authority over its subjects here as before; and the Asiatic Council, on finding themselves no longer capable of holding the government of the Cape, as a
con-

conveniency to their trade, might, probably, be the less scrupulous in rendering it a mischievous agent against us. Indeed, exclusive of any vindictive motives, they might, perhaps, be tempted by the brilliant idea of establishing a free mart of import and export at the extremity of Africa; which, like another Tyre or Alexandria, should concentrate in itself the resources and supplies of every other region of the globe.

The idea of declaring the Cape of Good Hope a free port was suggested, and, in all probability, might have been carried, at the late negotiations at Amiens, had not the interference of the British cabinet wisely counteracted a measure which, though profitable to speculators and the inferior nations of Europe trading to the East, must infallibly have proved ruinous to the concerns of the English United Company of merchants trading to the East Indies. The sales of Leadenhall-street would suffer beyond calculation, were such a measure to be adopted by the Dutch; and of all nations the English would be the last to benefit by it; whilst the Danes, Swedes, Spaniards, and Portuguese would find their advantage in purchasing cargoes of India and China goods at the Cape of Good Hope, at a moderate advance and without duties, in preference of applying to the London market, where they are liable to duties or puzzled with drawbacks; or rather than prosecute the long and expensive voyage through the Eastern Seas.

In like manner it is to be apprehended that, at a general peace, the French, having neither credit nor capital of their own, will not only, by means of the Cape, consolidate a force in the Isles of
France

France and Bourbon to be ready to act against us and to disturb the tranquillity of our Indian settlements, but that they will likewise oblige the Dutch to allow an emporium of Eastern produce at this extremity of Africa for the supply of foreign nations, and particularly of the Spaniards and Portuguese on the Brazil coast, to the prejudice of the interests of the British East India Company.

It was an opinion, at one time, pretty generally entertained, that by reason of the long and expensive voyage to India, and of the moderate profits with which the Company was satisfied, the throwing open of the India trade would be less injurious to the interests of the Company than ruinous to the concerns of the private merchant who might be induced to engage in it. Yet we see great numbers of ships every year proceeding, even as far as China, under foreign flags, but with British capitals; and it is certain that the Americans, with very small ships and proportionate capitals, find their account in the India and China trade, exclusive of that part which employs them in carrying home the private property of individuals, who have enriched themselves in India. The Americans, with the returns of their lumber cargo, which they can always dispose of at the Cape, and the produce of their South Sea Fishery in oil and seal-skins, will always be able to purchase a cargo of China goods, part of which they may find convenient to dispose of at the Cape on the return-voyage, in exchange for wine and brandy. With the rest they not only supply the West Indian and American possessions of foreign powers, as well as the markets of their own extensive country, but it is well known they have, of late years,
very

very materially checked the re-exportation of India and China goods from England to our own islands in the Atlantic.

It is obvious, then, that the Americans, by trading direct to India and China, can afford to undersell the English West India merchants in our own islands, notwithstanding the drawbacks allowed on export from Leadenhall-street; and, consequently, that they may find their advantage in being allowed to dispose of the whole or part of their cargoes at the Cape of Good Hope; to the prejudice of the British East India Company and the encouragement of English smugglers, of which, indeed, the directors were not without their apprehensions, even whilst the Cape remained in our hands as a dependency of the crown.

And if the Americans can contrive to make this a beneficial commerce, under all the disadvantages of working up a capital to trade with in the course of a long protracted voyage, how much more so will ships, under neutral flags and English capitals, carry on a lucrative trade to and from the southern emporium of Africa; more injurious, in proportion as they are more active, than the ships actually employed by foreign merchants?

Here, then, is another cogent reason that, one might suppose, would have had some influence on the minds of the directors, and have operated so far, at least, as to have compelled them to state to Government the danger to their concerns of relinquishing the Cape; whereas the indifference they thought fit to assume,

fume, though too affected to be real, unfortunately had the ill effect of disparaging and undervaluing it in the eyes of the nation. If they should be inclined to plead a want of information with regard to the treaty of peace, let them recollect that, under the administration of Lord Bute, after the preliminaries of peace had been signed by the Duke of Bedford, the latter was instructed, at the instance of the Court of Directors, to alter an article that related to the Carnatic, or to break off the negociation; and the article was altered accordingly. Thus might it also have been with regard to the Cape of Good Hope, had the directors consulted the real interests of the East India Company. But, as there is reason to believe that, though late, they have seen their error, and that they are now convinced the Cape must either become a British territory, or their interests will very materially suffer; it is to be hoped they will shew themselves as solicitous to remove the evil as they were before indifferent in preventing it; for should the present opportunity be allowed to slip, *Tempus erit magno cum optaverit emptum.*

What the Dutch meant to have done with it, had not the present war broken out, is uncertain. I was told, from good authority, that their intention was to give it a fair trial of ten or twelve years, unclogged and unfettered; to endeavour to raise it, by every encouragement, to its greatest possible value as a territorial possession; to admit the commerce of all nations on equal terms with their own, and to allow an influx of settlers from Europe; if, at the end of that time, the revenues were not so far improved as not only to meet the ordinary and contingent

tingent expences of the establishment and the garrison, but to produce a surplus for the use of the State, that they should then consider how to dispose of it to the best advantage.

All ships were, accordingly, admitted to an entry of European, American, or Indian produce and manufactures, on payment of a duty of 10 per cent. on the invoice prices; and all Indian goods, teas and spices excepted, were suffered to be again exported on a drawback of the same amount as the duty. How far such a regulation may interfere, in time of peace, with the interests of our East India Company, I am not sufficiently acquainted with the subject to determine; but it would seem to open a wide door for smuggling Indian commodities into Europe, under English capitals, to an amount that must be alarming to the Directors themselves.

The operation of this measure will be checked, to a certain degree, by the present war, which, it is to be hoped, may ultimately be the means of once more annexing the southern extremity of Africa to the dominions of Great Britain. In such an event, the determination of securing it, at a peace, will be a more important object than the consideration how its government is to be administered; whether as a dependency of the crown, or as a territorial possession of the East India Company. The interests, indeed, of the two, are so intimately connected, that any question of privilege, in a matter of such national importance, is a mere secondary consideration, and ought, therefore, to bend to circumstances. The interests of the Company, during our late tenure, were, as I have shewn, secured and

promoted in every respect. They had their agent established at the Cape, and not the smallest article of Eastern produce, not even the most trifling present, was allowed on any consideration to be landed, without a positive declaration, in writing, from their said agent, that the landing of such article did not interfere with, nor was in any shape injurious to, the concerns of his employers. It was, indeed, one of the first objects of the crown, after taking possession, to consult the interests of the East India Company in every point of view; not only in providing for their conveniency and security, by its happy position and local ascendancy, but by opening a new market and intermediate depositary for their trade and commodities. It was even proposed to place the custom-house under their sole direction, in order to preclude any grounds of complaint. In a word, in every point of view, except that of appointing the civil establishment, the Cape might have actually been considered as a settlement of the East India Company.

Leaving, however, the question of privilege to be discussed by those who are better informed, and more interested in its decision than myself, I proceed to enquire,

To what extent the Cape of Good Hope might have been rendered advantageous to the interests of the British empire, as an emporium of Eastern produce?—as furnishing articles of export for consumption in Europe and the West Indies?—as taking, in exchange for colonial produce, articles of British growth and manufacture?

And,

And, lastly, to consider the important advantages that might be derived from it, as a central depôt for the Southern Whale Fishery.

It is a point of too intricate and nice a nature for me to decide, how far it might be adviseable for Great Britain to establish at the Cape an entrepôt for Indian produce, in the hands, and under the direction, of the East India Company, and shall, therefore, content myself with barely suggesting some of the probable consequences that might result from such a measure.

The grand objection against making the Cape an emporium between Europe and the East Indies, and between the West Indies, America, and Asia, is the prejudice it would necessarily occasion to the sales of Leadenhall-street, and the consequent diminution of his Majesty's customs; for, though the East India Company might be made responsible to the crown for the duties on the amount of its sales at the Cape, yet the intention of the emporium would entirely be defeated, if the duties demanded there so far enhanced the value of the Indian commodities, as to make it equally eligible for foreign shipping to proceed to India, or to resort to the London market. And if these duties were reduced, it would obviously be attended with a loss to the revenues of the crown; unless, indeed, the augmentation of the sales, in consequence of the measure, should be found to be adequate to the reduction of the duties.

It is liable also to another objection, grounded on the detriment that would ensue to the London market in general. It is certain that foreign merchants, purchasing goods at Leadenhall-street, find their advantage by laying in, at the same time and sending in the same ship, an assorted cargo, the produce of our colonies and the manufactures of Britain. Now if these merchants could contrive to purchase Indian articles at a cheaper market than that of London, they might also be induced to make up their cargo with other articles at the same place, to the prejudice of the London trader.

These objections may, perhaps, lose much of their weight by the following considerations. The East India Company's trade, according to the Directors' own account, is fully competent to the whole supply of the East India and China markets, in commodities of European growth and manufacture: and they are satisfied in supplying the demands of those markets merely without a loss, in order to monopolize the trade and cut out foreign nations, who are thus obliged to purchase cargoes chiefly in exchange for specie. Even the privilege of 3000 tons allowed to the private merchant, by the terms of the Company's late charter, is said never to be filled up; to such a low rate have they reduced the prices of European articles in India and China, that the private trader finds no advantage in sending goods on his own account, on a moderate freight, to the eastward of the Cape of Good Hope. The Americans are the only nation who, by their fisheries, are enabled to work themselves into a cargo to exchange for India and China goods; with which they supply

supply their own colonies and the West India islands, to the prejudice of the sales of the British East India Company.

It will result, from these considerations, that the East India Company, upon the same plan, could supply their emporium at the Cape with the produce and manufactures of Great Britain to any amount, and at so cheap a rate as to underfell any other nation. That the Americans, finding no longer a market at the Cape for their lumber cargoes, would confine their export trade to articles of peltry and ginseng, which they might be induced to bring to the emporium in exchange for teas, nankeen cloth, and mullins, at a moderate advance price, such as would not make it worth their while to proceed to India and China. That other foreign nations, trading to this emporium, might be accommodated there with British goods and manufactures, nearly on the same terms as in London, to make up an assorted cargo. That a very extensive trade might be opened with the coast of Brazil and the ports of South America, both in Indian commodities and articles of the growth and manufacture of Great Britain; those ports, on that continent, belonging to Portugal being now supplied through Lisbon at an enormous high rate; and those of Spain, frequently without any supply at all, but what they receive from English whalers and others in a clandestine manner.

The amount of European and Indian goods (the latter chiefly prize articles) exported from the Cape in the last four years, generally in Portuguese ships by English adventurers, or in English whalers, for the coast of Brazil, the West India islands, and Mozambique,

zambique, was about 850,000 rix dollars, or 170,000 pounds currency. On the articles of European growth and manufacture, whose value might amount to about half of the above sum, there must have been a very considerable profit to the private merchant at the Cape, beyond what would be required by the East India Company, and consequently they must have been sold at a high rate. Yet, under these disadvantages, the trade to the coast of Brazil might have been extended to many times the amount.

As in the case of the Cape becoming a commercial depôt in the hands of the East India Company, the consumption, in Spanish and Portuguese America, of Eastern produce, would increase to a very great extent, for all which they would pay in specie; and as the Company feel the greatest want of specie for their China trade, and still more for the necessary uses of their Indian empire, the supply of hard money they would thus obtain, would considerably lessen, if not entirely put an end to, the difficulties under which they now labour on that account. And the additional quantities of Indian produce and manufactures that would be required for this new channel of trade might prove, in some degree, an indemnity to the natives of India for what the Company draw from them in the shape of revenue to be sent to Europe.

The quantity of European and Indian produce consumed in South America is by no means trifling. I observed in Rio de Janeiro a whole street, consisting of shops, and every shop filled with Indian muslins and Manchester goods, which, having

come through Lisbon, were offered, of course, at enormous high prices. The trade, it is true, that subsists between England and Portugal, might render it prudent not materially to interfere with the Portuguese settlements; but the case is very different with regard to those of Spain. The Mother Country, more intent upon drawing specie from the mine than in promoting the happiness of its subjects in this part of the world, by encouraging trade and honest industry, suffers them to remain frequently without any supply of European produce and manufacture. It is no uncommon thing, I understand, to see the inhabitants of Spanish America with silver buckles, clasps and buttons, silver stirrups and bits to their bridles, whilst the whole of their clothing are not worth a single shilling. The whalers, who intend to make the coasts of Lima and Peru, are well acquainted with this circumstance, and generally carry out with them a quantity of ready made second-hand clothing, which they dispose of at a high rate in exchange for Spanish dollars. All this branch of trade might, with great advantage to both parties, be carried on from the Cape of Good Hope.

The emporium, therefore, being supplied by the East India Company with European goods, as well as with India and China commodities, the first to be sold at a very small advance on the London market price, and the latter exempt, or nearly so, from all duties, might be the means of putting a stop to the clandestine traders upon British capitals, but navigating under neutral colours, which has long been a subject of unavailing complaint. The Directors of the East India Company would, no doubt, be able to decide as to the rate at which it would be worth

worth the while of these adventurers to make their purchases at the Cape, rather than continue their voyage to India or China.

Such an entrepôt might likewise be the means of opening a lucrative branch of trade with the West Indies; a trade that would not only put a stop to that which, of late years, the Americans have so successfully carried on, but might open a new source for colonial produce, especially for its wines, which, with a little more attention and management in the manufacture, might be made to supersede those of Madeira, that are now consumed there to a very considerable amount, notwithstanding their enormous prices, which limit their consumption to the higher ranks of the islanders. Good Cape Madeira might be delivered, at any of the West India islands, at less than one-fourth of the expence of real Madeira.

A new branch of trade might also be opened between the Cape and New South Wales, the latter supplying the former with coals, of which they have lately discovered abundant mines, in exchange for wine, cattle, butter, and articles of clothing.

If, however, the East India Company, after making the experiment, should find it injurious to its interests to continue the Cape as an emporium for Indian produce; it will always be in its power to reduce it to the same state in which it remained whilst in the hands of the Dutch; to clog it as much as possible with duties and difficulties, sufficient to deter all ships, except their

their own, from trading to it; and, in short, to allow them no other commerce than the purchase of provisions in exchange for bills or hard money. It will always be at their discretion to admit or to send away all foreign adventurers. By the existing laws of the colony, no person can reside there, but by special licence; and the Governor is authorized to send away whomsoever he may be inclined to consider as an improper person to remain in the settlement.

If the experiment should succeed, the obvious result would be an exclusive trade to India and China vested in the English East India Company. The commerce carried on by the Americans, their only dangerous rivals at present, would be diverted into another channel, or, at all events, would suffer a considerable reduction. Should the Dutch ever rise again as an independent nation, they would find it expedient to court the friendship and alliance of Great Britain in the East; and, in the present low state of their finances, would be well satisfied with the exclusive privilege of the spice-trade, and with any portion of the carrying-trade that Great Britain might think proper to assign to them. Any encroachment on the part of this nation might easily be checked by a refusal of the usual accommodations at the Cape, without which their trade and navigation to the Eastern Seas must totally be superseded. If, at a peace, they are to become a dependency of France, directly or indirectly, the Cape in our hands will always enable us to cramp their commerce to the eastward. As to France, having neither credit nor capital, without shipping and without manufactures,

its trade to the East will, in the nature of things, be inconsiderable for a long time. Her first object will be to send out troops and stores to endeavour to destroy, at some future period, our trade and possessions in India, which she has long regarded with envy and jealousy—and we have already shewn how far the Cape may be instrumental in checking or in forwarding, according to the power who holds it, her projects in this part of the world.

I now proceed to inquire to what extent the Cape of Good Hope may be considered as advantageous to the interests of the British nation, by furnishing articles of export for general consumption in Europe and the West Indies. Its importance, in this point of view, will readily be decided from the statement of a few simple facts collected from the custom-house books, together with the supplies that were consumed by the army, the navy, and the inhabitants during our possession. It may be observed, however, that no true estimate can be formed from such statement of what the colony is capable of producing, cramped as it always has been by restrictive regulations, which the indolent dispositions of the settlers tended but too much to cherish; and, therefore, that the following account of colonial produce actually consumed and exported, is not to be taken as the standard measure of its worth, as a territorial possession, nor considered as any comparative quantity of what it might supply, when governed by a system of salutary laws, and inhabited by an industrious and intelligent race of men.

The

The chief articles of colonial growth and produce, consumed upon the spot and exported to the East Indies, Europe, and America, may be comprized under the following heads :

<i>Grain and Pulse</i>	<i>Salt Provisions</i>
<i>Wine and Brandy</i>	<i>Soap and Candles</i>
<i>Wool</i>	<i>Aloes</i>
<i>Hides and Skins</i>	<i>Ivory</i>
<i>Whale Oil and Bone</i>	<i>Tobacco</i>
<i>Dried Fruits</i>	

I shall take a short view of each of these articles separately.

GRAIN and PULSE.

The wheat produced at the Cape is said to be as good and heavy as that of most other parts of the world. A load of this grain consists of ten *muids* or sacks, equal to 31 Winchester bushels: and a *muid*, or $3\frac{1}{8}$ Winchester bushels, usually weighs 180 Dutch pounds, which is equal to 191 $\frac{1}{4}$ pounds English. The returns are from 10 to 70, according to the nature of the soil, and the supply of water. Mr. Duckitt, the English farmer, informed me that he obtained seventy for one from a new sort of wheat, of a small hard grain, at the farm of Klapmutz, near the Cape, where the returns of the ordinary kind, sown under similar circumstances, were only eighteen and twenty. A small quantity of wheat only is raised on such farms as are within the distance of one day's journey from the Cape, the best part of the ground in those contiguous to the peninsula

being chiefly employed in extensive vineyards; and still less grain is cultivated beyond the distance of a three days' journey from the town, where the inhabitants are all graziers. The quantity of grain that might be raised may be considered as indefinite; but the great distance from any market, the badness of the roads, and the weak state of the cattle, will always operate against an extended cultivation. In addition to these obstacles, the farmer had no encouragement given to him to raise more than a limited quantity, as the prices were always fixed by the Government, and bore a proportion to the state of the harvest. If, therefore, the harvest happened to fail, it was an advantageous circumstance to the farmer; as he received the same money for a smaller quantity, and had less trouble and less expence in bringing it up to town.

The surplus, purchased by Government, in fruitful years, was laid up in magazines against a season of scarcity. At the time of the capture there was found in store near 40,000 muids, part of which was sent to England; but the following year not affording a productive crop, the scarcity was so great, that Government found it necessary to prohibit the use of white bread; nor, since that period, has it been able to lay up in store a single bushel of wheat; nor to allow any exportation, beyond what was necessary for the consumption of the crews of the several ships during their voyage; and this was generally sent on board in biscuit and flour.

The Dutch seldom paid more than from 20 to 40 rix dollars the load; the English never less than from 40 to 60 rix dollars,

five of which make a pound currency, which, being paper money, was generally 20 per cent. under a pound sterling. The bakers of the Cape were required to take out a licence annually, and their number was limited; so that, by the regulations of the police, which, in this respect, were excellent, the inhabitants had always bread at a reasonable price.

Barley is a productive grain at the Cape of Good Hope. If the rains happen to fall early, in the month of April for instance, there is no soil, however impoverished by a continual succession of crops, none, however shallow and poor, that will not yield a tolerable crop of barley; or, to speak more correctly, of *beer* or *big*; for the only trial of flat-eared barley I ever saw in the colony, was at the Governor's seat of *Ronde-bosch*, and it did not seem to promise much success. The former is just as good as the latter at this place; for the Cape boor, having always plenty of animal food, would disdain to eat bread mixed with barley-meal. The only use that is made of it is to feed their horses. For this purpose a great part of that which is grown in the vicinity of the Cape is cut down when green, just as the ear begins to shoot; the dry barley and the chaff is brought from the opposite side of the isthmus. The number of horses kept by the English, and the superior manner in which they were fed, encouraged the cultivation of barley to the prejudice of that of wheat. At the capture of the colony, the market price of barley was $1\frac{1}{2}$ rix dollar the muid, but General Sir James Craig, seeing the necessity of keeping up a certain number of cavalry as part of the garrison, and knowing that this grain would necessarily rise in consequence of it, made a voluntary offer of $2\frac{1}{2}$ rix

six dollars the muid in order to secure a certain portion from each farmer for the use of the garrison, which they instantly accepted. The following year barley rose to five dollars the muid, and, at one time, was not to be had for less than ten. A brewer of the name of Van Reenen, employs a small quantity, but the beer he makes is so execrable, that none drink it but such as cannot afford to purchase European beer.

Rye is a thriving grain at the Cape, but is little used except for cattle, and then only while it is green; and oats run so much into straw, that they are fit only for horses as green fodder.

Peas, beans, and kidney beans are abundantly productive, and might be supplied to any amount; but they are in little demand except by ships that touch at the Cape. Indian corn or maize grows here fully as well as in any part of the world, and might be cultivated to any extent; the plant for cattle, and the prolific heads for hogs and poultry. The same may be observed with regard to the various kinds of millet, three of which I cultivated here with the greatest success, but neither one nor the other are much known beyond the Cape peninsula.

The different kinds of grain and pulse that are brought up to Cape Town, except oats, are subject to a certain toll at the barrier, which, at the prices they bore under the Dutch Government, amounted to about the tythe or one-tenth of their value. The following table shews the quantity of each that passed the barrier, and which, of course, includes the consumption

tion of the Town, the garrison, and the navy, as well as the exportation, in four successive years.

Years.	Muids of Wheat.	Muids of Barley.	Muids of Rye.	Muids of Peas.	Muids of Beans.
1799	34,951	17,130	184	435	344 $\frac{1}{2}$
1800	35,685	25,641 $\frac{1}{2}$	444	366	326 $\frac{1}{2}$
1801	32,322 $\frac{3}{4}$	21,054	835 $\frac{1}{2}$	808 $\frac{1}{2}$	471
1802	28,402 $\frac{1}{2}$	21,084	441 $\frac{1}{2}$	168	216
Total of 4 years	131,361 $\frac{1}{2}$	84,909 $\frac{1}{2}$	1905	1777 $\frac{1}{2}$	1358

Of the above quantity of wheat were annually required,

For the use of the inhabitants	-	18,000
Army	-	8,000
Navy	-	4,000
		<hr/>
Total Muids		30,000
		<hr/>

So that in none of the above years could a greater quantity be spared, for ships calling for refreshments, than four or five thousand muids; and in the last year the inhabitants and the garrison were reduced to an allowance. It may, therefore, be fairly concluded that the Cape, in its present state, is not capable of exporting any grain.

WINE

WINE and BRANDY.

These two articles, with those above mentioned, may be considered as the staple commodities of the Cape of Good Hope. Grapes grow with the greatest luxuriancy in every part of this extensive colony ; but the cultivation of the vine is little understood, or, to speak more properly, is not attended to with that diligence which in other countries is bestowed upon it. Hence the wines are susceptible of great improvement, and the quantity of being increased indefinitely.

Ten or twelve distinct kinds of wine are manufactured at the Cape, and each of those have a different flavour and quality at the different farms on which they are produced. From difference of soil, from situation, and management, scarcely any two vineyards, of the same kind of grape, give the same wine. By throwing under the press the ripe and unripe grapes, together with the stalk, most of the wines have either a thinness and a slight acidity, or, for want of a proper degree of fermentation, and from being pressed when over ripe, acquire a sickly saccharine taste. An instance of the former is perceptible in that called *Steen*, which resembles the Rhenish wines; and of the latter, in that which is known by the name of *Constantia*. It is generally supposed that this wine is the produce of two farms only, of that name; whereas, the same grape, the muscadel, grows at every farm; and at some of them in Drakenstein the wine pressed from it is equally good, if not superior, to the
Con-

Constantia, though sold at one-sixth part of the price; of such importance is a name.

This wine sells at the Cape for 70 or 80 rix dollars the *half-aum*, a cask which ought to contain 20 gallons; but the avaricious propensity of the proprietors, increasing with the demands for their wine, has led them to fabricate false casks, few of them that come to England being found to measure more than seventeen or eighteen gallons; many not above sixteen. And if they find out that the wine applied for is to be sent abroad, they are sure to adulterate it with some other thin wine. For, according to their own returns, the quantity exported and consumed in Cape Town, as in the case of Madeira wine, greatly exceeds the quantity manufactured.

By a settlement made between the Dutch Commissaries General, in the year 1793, and the owners of the two farms of Great and Little Constantia, the latter were bound to furnish, for the use of Government, 30 aums each, every year, at the rate of 50 rix dollars the aum; which was regularly taken, after being tasted and sealed up in presence of persons appointed for that purpose, by the English Government, to the no little annoyance of the Great Lord of Constantia, who is the son and successor to the man of whom Mr. Le Vaillant has drawn a very entertaining portrait. The wine was paid for out of the Colonial Treasury, and the whole of it, under Lord Macartney's government, sent home to the Secretary of State, for the disposal of his Majesty.

The quantity of Constantia wine exported in four successive years was,

	Years.	Half Aums	Value.
In	1799	157	11,752
	1800	188	14,070
	1801	173	13,007
	1802	210	15,745
In four years		728	54,504 R. D.

The best bodied wine, that is made at the Cape, is the Madeira, considerable quantities of which were usually sent to Holland and to the Dutch settlements in India. The Americans, also, have taken small quantities, of late years, in exchange for slaves, a trade that seems susceptible of very considerable augmentation. The English merchants at the Cape have made up cargoes of the different sorts of wines, both to the East and the West Indies, and they have been tried in the northern nations of Europe. But they universally complain that the wines seldom agree with the samples, and that they frequently turn sour; so little regard for reputation have the *Koopmen* of the Cape. Confined to this spot from their birth, they have had little opportunity of improvement from education and none from travel, and are consequently ignorant of the nature of foreign trade. If their wines are once on board ship, they conclude there is an end of the transaction, and, if previously sold, whether they arrive in good or bad condition, is no concern of theirs.

The

The country boor, having no surplus stock of casks, is under the necessity of selling to the merchant in the town his new wine; and here it is mixed and adulterated in a variety of ways. The pipe is called a *legger*, and contains 8 *half-aums* or 160 gallons, and each legger pays to Government a duty, on entering the town, of three rix dollars. The price paid to the farmer is generally from 20 to 30 rix dollars the *legger*, which, after adulteration, is sold again from 40 to 60 rix dollars, and frequently at the rate of 80 to 100 rix dollars.

The article of brandy might become a very important commodity in the export trade of this settlement, provided the cultivators of the vine were instructed in, and would take the trouble of, carrying the manufacture of it to that state of improvement of which it is susceptible. At present they have no proper distillatory apparatus, nor knowledge to conduct those which they have. The filth that is usually thrown into the still with the refuse of the wines, is disgusting; and the imperfect process is not sufficient to destroy the extraneous and disagreeable taste communicated by the loathsome materials. This spirit has been tried in the East Indies, but it seems they give the preference to arrack. If distilled with proper care, and under proper management, it might become a valuable article for the navy; and would, no doubt, find a market in both North and South America. Brandy is exported at 80 to 160 rix dollars the *legger*, and is subject to the same toll, on entering the town, as wines. And both wine and brandy are liable to a further duty of 5 rix dollars the legger on exportation. The following table shews the quantity of wines and brandy that passed the

P P 2

barrier,

barrier, and which, of course, includes the consumption of the town, of the army, and navy, as well as the exportation in four successive years.

Years.	Leggers of Wine.	Leggers of Brandy.
1799	6953 $\frac{1}{4}$	598 $\frac{1}{2}$
1800	5199 $\frac{7}{8}$	472 $\frac{3}{4}$
1801	5463 $\frac{7}{8}$	320 $\frac{1}{4}$
1802	4031 $\frac{7}{8}$	273 $\frac{7}{8}$
In four years	21,649 $\frac{1}{4}$	1665 $\frac{1}{4}$

Of the above quantity have been exported from 400 to 800 *leggers* of wine, and from 30 to 100 of brandy, annually, beside the Constantia; the rest has been consumed in the town. So that the whole export value of wines, including the Constantia, and the brandy, may amount, one year with another, to about 50,000 rix dollars, or 10,000 *l.* currency.

The gradual reduction of the quantity brought up to town, as appears in the table, is no proof of the diminution of the quantity manufactured, but shews rather that the wine farmer, by being in a condition to increase his stock of casks, is enabled to keep his wine at home, and not obliged, as he usually was, to deliver it to the wine merchants in the Cape at their own price. This circumstance has contributed not a little to the melioration of the colonial wines.

WOOL.

WOOL.

This article is likely to become a source of colonial revenue, which, till of late years, was never thought of; and certainly never turned to any account, before the Deputy Paymaster's bills on his Majesty's Paymasters-General became so scarce, and bore such high premiums, that the private merchant was glad to make his remittances in any kind of merchandize rather than paper. The wool of the common broad-tailed sheep of the Cape is little better than hair, and is considered of no value whatsoever; but there is a mixed breed in the colony, of Spanish and English, introduced by the late colonel Gordon, the wool of which is extremely beautiful, and seems to improve by every cross. A family of the name of Van Reenen has paid some attention to this subject, and by procuring European sheep, from time to time, out of ships that called for refreshments, has succeeded in improving their stock beyond their expectations.

No trouble whatsoever is bestowed upon the sheep; they neither wash nor salve them, nor, till they were instructed by the English agriculturist, did they know how to shear them. Yet, the wool taken off in this rough condition has sold, as I have been informed, in the London market at 3*s.* to 3*s.* 6*d.* the pound. By a proper degree of attention being paid to the sheep, and by obviating any degeneracy in the breed from a cross with the common Cape sheep, this article bids fair to become, in the course of a few years, one of the most valuable and productive exports that the settlement is capable of furnishing.

nishing. The mutton of the Cape sheep is also of a very inferior quality, being coarse and void of flavour; and they have little intestine or net fat, nor, indeed, any other except what is accumulated on the tail, which is of too oleaginous a nature to be employed alone as tallow. In every respect, therefore, the mixed Spanish breed is preferable to that which, at present, constitutes the numerous flocks of the greater part of the farmers.

HIDES and SKINS.

The exportation of these articles, both dried and salted raw, has been increased to a very considerable degree under the British Government, and the price has consequently augmented in proportion to the demand for them. Ox hides, which formerly might be purchased at half a dollar a piece, rose to two dollars. They are subject, on exportation, to a duty of threepence-halfpenny a piece. The quantity exported may amount to between 2000 and 3000 annually. Those that are taken off the cattle, killed in the country, are employed by the farmers in various uses, but principally as harness for their waggons, and as thongs to supply the place of cordage. The skins of sheep, that are killed in the country, are converted into small sacks and other articles of household use, and employed as clothing for the slaves and Hottentots, and are still worn by the farmers themselves, after a rude kind of dressing, as pantaloons. In the Cape they are somewhat better prepared, and are used for clothing of slaves, for gloves and other purposes. Few of them are exported. Skins of the wild antelopes and of the leopard are brought occasionally to the Cape market, but the quantity

tity is so small as scarcely to deserve mentioning as articles of export.

The same may be observed with regard to ostrich feathers, the value of which, exported annually, amounts to a mere trifle. The boors, very imprudently, rob every nest of this bird that falls in their way; preferring the immediate benefit of the eggs to the encouragement of a future source of profit. The boors, indeed, derive little advantage from ostrich feathers, being presents generally expected by the butchers' servants, who go round the country to purchase cattle and sheep for the Cape market. The whole value of one year's exportation of this article does not exceed 1000 rix dollars; of hides and skins of every denomination not more than 5000 or 6000 rix dollars.

WHALE OIL and BONE.

The vast number of black whales that constantly frequented Table Bay induced a company of merchants at the Cape to establish a whale fishery, to be confined solely to Table Bay, in order to avoid the great expence of purchasing any other kind of craft than a few common whale boats. With these alone they caught as many whales as they could wish for; filling, in a short space of time, all their casks and cisterns with oil. Having gone thus far they perceived that, although whale-oil was to be procured to almost any amount at a small expence, they were still likely to be considerable losers by the concern. The consumption of the colony in this article was trifling; they had no ships of their own to send it to Europe, nor casks to

put on board others on freight. Their oil, therefore, continued to lie as a dead stock in their cisterns, till the high premium of bills on England induced some of the British merchants to purchase and make their remittances in this article. The price at the Cape was about 40 rix dollars the *legger*, or tenpence sterling per gallon. Sometimes, indeed, ships from the Southern Whale Fishery took a few casks to complete their cargoes, but, in general, they preferred to be at the trouble of taking the fish themselves, in or near some of the bays within the limits of the colony, where they are so plentiful and so easily caught, as to ensure their success. It is remarked that all the whales which have been caught in the bays are females; of a small size, generally from 30 to 50 feet in length, and yielding from six to ten tons of oil each. The bone is very small, and, on that account, of no great value.

The Whale Fishing Company, finding there was little probability of their disposing of the oil without a loss, thought of the experiment of converting it into soap. The great quantity of sea-weed, the *fucus maximus*, or *buccinalis*, so called from its resemblance to a trumpet, which grows on the western shore of Table Bay, suggested itself as an abundant source for supplying them with kelp or barilla; and from the specification of a patent obtained in London, for freeing animal oils of their impurities, and the strong and offensive smell that train-oil in particular acquires, they endeavoured to reduce to practice this important discovery. The experiment, however, failed; for though they succeeded in making soap, whose quality, in the most essential points might, perhaps, be fully as good as was desired,

desired, yet the smell was so disgusting that nobody would purchase it. Unluckily for them there came in, also, just at that time, a cargo of prize soap, which was not only more agreeable to the smell, but was sold at a rate lower than the Company could afford to manufacture theirs of train-oil. Being, thus thwarted in all their views, they sold the whole concern to an English merchant, who was supposed to be turning it to a tolerable good account, when it was signified to him, by the present Dutch Government, that the exclusive privilege of fishing on the coasts of Africa, within the limits of the colony, was granted to a company of merchants residing in Amsterdam; and, therefore, that he could not be allowed to continue the concern.

DRIED FRUITS.

Under this head the most important articles are almonds and raisins; of which a quantity might be raised sufficient for the consumption of all Europe. I have already observed that many thousand acres of land, now lying waste, might be planted with vineyards, within sight of Table Mountain. In like manner might the whole sea-coast, on both sides of Africa, be planted with vines. In no part of the world are better grapes produced than at the Cape of Good Hope; and it is unnecessary to observe that good grapes, under proper management, cannot fail to make good raisins; but with respect to this, as well as most other articles, little care and less labour are bestowed in the preparation. As in the making of wine the whole bunch is thrown under the press, so, in the process for converting grapes

into raisins, neither the rotten nor the unripe fruit is removed ; the consequence of which is, that the bad raisins soon spoil those that otherwise would have been good.

The almonds are, in general, small, but of a good quality. The trees thrive well in the very driest and worst of soils ; in no situation better than among the rocks on the sides of mountains, where nothing else would grow ; and they will bear fruit the fifth year from the seed. The quantity, therefore, of these nuts might be produced to an indefinite amount. The consumption in the Cape of both these articles is very considerable, as furnishing part of the desert, without which, after supper as well as dinner, few householders would be contented ; the omission might be considered as a criterion of poverty, a condition which the weakness of human nature leads men generally to dissemble rather than avow. Ships also take considerable quantities of almonds and raisins as sea-stock ; but few have hitherto been sent to India or to Europe as articles of trade. Before the capture the prices might have admitted of it, almonds being then not more than from a shilling to eighteenpence sterling the thousand, and raisins from twopence to threepence a pound ; but the increased demand, in consequence of the increased number of shipping, as well as of inhabitants, raised the price of the former from two shillings to two shillings and sixpence the thousand, and of the latter from fourpence to sixpence a pound.

Walnuts and Chesnuts are neither plentiful nor good ; and the latter will barely keep a month without decaying, so that
these

these are never likely to become articles of general consumption or of exportation.

But dried peaches, apricots, pears, and apples, are not only plentiful, but good of their kind. The peaches and pears are used in the desert, but apricots and apples are intended for tarts; the latter, indeed, are nearly as good as when fresh from the tree. All the others are squeezed together and dried whole, but the apples are sliced thin and dried in the sun, till they take the consistence and appearance of slips of leather, of that kind and colour usually called the York tan. These, when soaked in water, swell out and make very excellent tarts; and are sold chiefly as an article of sea stock. The whole value of dried fruit, shipped in the year 1802, amounted only to 2542 six dollars, as appears by the Custom-house books, on which every pound is entered, being subject to a duty on exportation of 5 per cent.

SALT PROVISIONS.

This is an article, as I have already taken occasion to observe, that is susceptible of great improvement; not, however, to be prepared in Cape Town, after the cattle have been harassed and famished for two months in travelling over a barren desert, but cured at Algoa Bay, and brought down in small coasting vessels to the Cape. Salted mutton, and mutton hams, might, however, be, and are, indeed, to a certain degree, prepared at the Cape, but not to that extent of which they are capable.

It is remarkable that the Dutch, being so fond of fat, should not pay more attention to increase the breed of hogs. Except a few, that are shamefully suffered to wallow about the shores of Table Bay, where, indeed, they are so far useful as to pick up dead fish and butchers' offals, that are scattered along the strand, the hog is an animal that is scarcely known as food in the colony. Yet, from the vast quantities of fruit, the productive crops of barley, of peas, beans, and other vegetables, they might be reared at a small expence; whereas, from the manner in which they are at present fed in Cape Town, no one thinks of eating pork.

Salt, in the greatest abundance, is spontaneously produced within a few miles of Cape Town, by the evaporation of the water in the salt lakes that abound along the west coast of the colony. Two kinds of fish, the *Hottentot* and the *Snook*, are split open, salted, and dried in the sun in large quantities, principally for the use of the slaves who are employed in agriculture, to correct the bilious effects of bullocks' livers and other offals that constitute a great part of their food. They are eaten also by the inhabitants of the town, when boisterous weather prevents the fishing-boats from going out; for a Dutchman seldom makes a meal without fish. Small quantities are sometimes taken as sea-stock, but so inconsiderable as hardly to deserve mentioning.

Salt butter is a very material article both for the consumption of the town, the garrison, and the navy, as also for exportation. The quality greatly depends on the degree of cleanliness that has
I
been

been employed in the dairy, and more particularly on the pains that have been taken in working the butter well, to free it from the milky particles, which, if suffered to remain, very soon communicate a strong rancid taste that is highly offensive. That which comes from the Snowy Mountains is accounted the best; but, to say the truth, very little deserves the appellation of good. Under the Dutch Government it was usually sold from fourpence to sixpence a pound, but, of late years, it was seldom to be purchased under a shilling a pound.

SOAP and CANDLES.

The first of these articles is manufactured by almost every farmer in the country, and, in some of the districts, furnishes a considerable part of their surplus revenue, which is appropriated to the purchase of clothing and other necessaries at their annual visit to Cape Town. The unctuous part is chiefly derived from the fat of sheeps' tails, and the potash or barilla is the lixiviated ashes procured from a species of *Salsola* or salt wort that grows abundantly on those parts of the *Karoo*, or deserts, that are intersected by periodical streams of water. The plant is known in the colony by the Hottentot name of *Canna*. With this alkaline lye and the fat of sheep, boiled together over a slow fire for four or five days, they make a very excellent soap, which generally bears the same price as salt butter. Being mostly brought from the distant district of Graaf Reynet at the same time with the butter, they rose and fell together according to the quantity in the market, and the demand there might happen to be for them.

them. The great distance from the market limited the quantity that was manufactured, and not the scantiness of the materials.

This distance is a serious inconvenience to the farmer, and a great encouragement to his natural propensity to idleness. If he can contrive to get together a waggon load or two of butter or soap, to carry with him to Cape Town once a year, or once in two years, in exchange for clothing, brandy, coffee, a little tea and sugar, and a few other luxuries, which his own district has not yet produced, he is perfectly satisfied. The consideration of profit is out of the question. A man who goes to Cape Town with a single waggon from the Sneeuwberg must consume, at least, sixty days out and home. He must have a double team, or 24 oxen, and two people, at the least, besides himself to look after, to drive, and to lead the oxen and the sheep or goats, which it is necessary to take with them for their subsistence on the journey. His load, if a great one, may consist of fifteen hundred weight of butter and soap, for which he is glad to get from the retail dealers at the Cape, whom he calls *Semaus* or Jews, sixpence a pound, or just half what they sell the article for again. So that the value of his whole load is not above 37*l.* 10*s.* But as he has no other way of proceeding to the Cape, except with his waggon, it makes little difference in point of time whether it be laden or empty. And the more of these loose articles he can bring to market, the fewer cattle he has occasion to dispose of to the butcher. These constitute his wealth, and with these he portions off his children.

Candles

Candles being an unsafe article to transport by land carriage are seldom brought out of the country; but a vegetable wax, collected from the berries of a shrubby plant, the *myrica cerifera*, plentiful on the dry marshy grounds near the sea-shore, is sometimes sent up to the Cape in large green cakes, where it may be had from a shilling to fifteenpence a pound. The tallow to be purchased at the Cape is barely sufficient for the consumption of the town and the garrison, and the candles made from it are seldom lower than fifteenpence a pound.

ALOES.

This drug is extracted from the common species of aloe known by the specific name of *perfoliata*, and is that variety which, perhaps on account of the abundant quantity of juice it contains, botanists have distinguished by the name of *succotrina*, though vulgarly supposed to have taken the name from the island of Socotra, where this drug is said to be produced of the best quality, in which case, at all events, it ought to be *socotrina*.

Large tracts of ground, many miles in extent, are covered with spontaneous plantations of this kind of aloe, and especially in the district of Zwellendam, at no great distance from Mossel Bay. In this part of the country the farmers rear few cattle or sheep, their stock consisting chiefly of horses; and they formerly cultivated a certain quantity of corn, which they delivered at a small fixed price, for the use of the Dutch East India Company,

at

at Mossel Bay; but since this practice has been discontinued, they find it more advantageous to bring to Cape Town a load of aloes than a load of corn; the former being worth from 18*l.* to 20*l.*, the latter only from 8*l.* to 10*l.* The labour employed in collecting and inspissating the juice is ill repaid by the price it bears in Cape Town, which is seldom more than threepence a pound; but it is usually performed at a time of the year when the slaves have little else to do; and the whole strength of the family, slaves, Hottentots, and children, are employed in picking off, and carrying together, the leaves of the aloes. Three or four pounds, I understand, are as much as each person can collect and prepare in a day.

This drug, it seems, has of late years been much employed in the porter breweries of London, which occasioned an increased demand, and which may one day be extended almost to an indefinite amount, if the partial experiments of the ingenious Sigr. Fabroni on the juice of this plant can be realized on the great scale; experiments that promise a no less valuable acquisition to the arts than a colouring substance which may be used, with advantage, as a substitute for cochineal. The quantity of inspissated juice brought to the Cape market was eagerly bought up by the English merchants, and sent to London as a remittance. The amount of this article entered on the Custom-house books, in the course of four years, was as follows:

Years.

	Years.	Lbs. Weight.	Value R. D.
	1799	126,684	9361 1
	1800	71,843	5217 0
	1801	52,181	4258 3
	1802	91,219	6829 0
	Total of 4 years	lbs. 341,927	R. D. 25,665 4

It is subject to a small exportation duty of sixteen-pence for every hundred pounds.

IVORY.

However abundant this article might once have been in the southern part of Africa, it is now become very scarce, and, in the nature of things, as population is extended, must progressively disappear. Except in the forests of Sitfikamma and the thickets in the neighbourhood of the Sunday River, no elephants are now to be found within the limits of the colony. Of those few which the Kaffers destroy, the large tusks are always cut up into circular rings and worn on the arms as trophies of the chase. The small quantity of ivory that is brought to the Cape market is collected chiefly by two or three families of *bastaard* Hottentots (as the colonists call them) who dwell to the northward, not far from the banks of the Orange River. The whole quantity exported, in the course of four years, as appears by the Custom-house books, amounted only to 5981 pounds, value 6340 rix dollars.

The Hippopotamus or sea-cow is now no longer within the limits of the colony; and, though the teeth of this animal are considered as the best ivory, yet the quantity of it procured was always comparatively small with that of the elephant. We may safely conclude then, that ivory is not to be reckoned among the valuable exports which the Cape can supply for the markets of Europe.

TOBACCO.

I mention this article not so much on account of the quantity exported, which, indeed, is very trifling, as of the great abundance the colony is capable of producing. It is impossible the plant can thrive better in any part of the world than in this climate, or require less attention; and I have understood from persons, qualified to give an opinion on the subject, that the Cape tobacco, with a little art in the preparation, is as good in every respect as that of Virginia. As all male persons, old and young, smoke in the Cape, from the highest to the lowest, and as American tobacco generally bears a high price, the consumption of that of native growth is considerable. The inferior sort is used by slaves and Hottentots.

I have now enumerated the most material articles of export which the Cape either does, or easily might, furnish for foreign markets. There still remain a few trifling things, as preserved fruits, garden seeds, salt, vinegar, &c., which, though valuable as refreshments for ships calling there, are of no consequence as exports. The total value of every kind of colonial produce collectively,

lectively, that has actually been exported from the ports of the Cape in four years, is as follows :

		Value.
In 1799	—	R. D. 108,160 0
1800	—	85,049 2
1801	—	50,519 6
1802	—	57,196 0
		<hr/>
In four years		R. D. 300,925 0
		<hr/>
		or £. 60,185 0 Currency.
		<hr/>

The obvious conclusion to be drawn from the view now taken of the amount of exports in colonial produce is, that the Cape of Good Hope, in its present condition, is of very little importance to any nation, considered as to the articles of commerce it supplies for exportation to foreign markets. The surplus produce, beyond the supply of its own inhabitants, a garrison, and navy of eight or ten thousand men, and the refreshments furnished to ships trading and casually calling there, is so trifling as to merit no consideration. But that, by a new system of things, it is susceptible of great improvement; and the supply of the most important articles of being extended to an almost indefinite amount.

The next point that comes under consideration is the advantages that may result to the British Empire by the increased consumption of goods, the growth and produce of Great Britain

and her colonies, from the acquisition of the Cape of Good Hope. The commodities imported from England into this settlement consisted in,

Woollen cloths, from the first sort down to woollen blankets.

Manchester goods of almost every description.

Hosiery, haberdashery, and millinery.

Boots, shoes, and hats.

Cutlery, iron tools, stationary.

Bar and hoop iron.

Smiths' coals.

Household furniture.

Paint and oils.

Earthenware.

Naval stores.

Tongues, hams, cheese, and pickles.

From India and China were imported,

Bengal, Madras, and Surat piece goods; the coarse ones for the slaves.

Tea, coffee, sugar, pepper, and spices.

Rice.

In addition to these the Americans were in the habit of bringing lumber-cargoes, of deal plank, staves, balk, salt fish, pitch, turpentine, &c. ; and the Danes, Swedes, and Hamburg ships assorted cargoes of iron, plank, French wines, beer, gin, Seltzer water, coffee, preserves, pickles, &c. in exchange for refresh-

ments, to defray the charges of repairs and other necessaries, or for hard money to carry to India or China.

As it is not material to state the exact amount of each kind of goods imported, I shall subjoin an abstract account of the whole importation into the Cape by British or foreign bottoms, from Europe, Asia, and America, in the course of four years, including the value of the prize goods brought in, and of the slaves imported within the same period.

Years.	British goods on British bottoms, duty free.	India goods on British bottoms, 5 per cent. duty.	European prize goods, 5 per cent. duty.	Indian prize goods, 10 per cent. duty.	Prize slaves and others imported by British merchants.	Total produce imported in British bottoms.	European and American goods on foreign bottoms, 10 per cent. duty.	Indian goods on foreign bottoms, 10 per cent.	Total produce imported in foreign bottoms.
	Rd. s.	Rd. s.	Rd. s.	Rd. s.	Rd.	Rd. s.	Rd. s.	Rd. s.	Rd. s.
1799	674,009 6	104,124 0	20,623 5	100,487 0	245,600	1,144,844 3	118,244 0	64,219 6	122,463 6
1800	474,706 0	212,446 0	17,797 0	45,335 0	184,000	934,284 0	51,258 0	109,490 0	160,748 0
1801	587,023 4	290,117 0	568,425 0	129,642 6	271,200	1,846,408 2	136,394 5	3,337 2	139,731 7
1802	532,366 4	455,397 4	93,788 2	130,720 6	198,205	1,410,478 0	142,684 6	15,892 7	158,577 5
In 4 years	2,268,105 6	1,062,084 4	700,633 7	406,185 4	899,005	5,336,014 5	448,581 3	192,939 7	641,521 2
Total importation, Six dollars					5,977,535 7 Stk.				
					or £. 1,195,507 3 6 Currency.				

It will naturally be demanded how, or in what manner, has the colony contrived to pay this apparent enormous balance of imports over the produce exported, especially when it is known that most of the European articles were sold at an advance of from 50 to 100 per cent. on the invoice prices, which, indeed, could not well be otherwise, considering the high premium on bills, and the small quantity of colonial produce to be had for remit-

remittances. The following rough statement will serve to explain this matter :

The army, independent of the clothing and stores, &c. sent from home and money remitted by the officers, could not expend less, in European and Indian goods, and in colonial produce, than 180,000 <i>l.</i> per annum, which in four years is	—	£. 720,000	0	0
The navy expenditure might, perhaps, amount to half that sum	—	360,000	0	0
The re-exportation of India prize goods, and of European goods to the West India islands, the coast of Brazil, and Mozambique, in four years, about	—	170,000	0	0
Surplus colonial produce exported as above		60,185	0	0
		<hr/>		
Making in the whole	£.	1,310,185	0	0
Value of the imports as above		1,195,507	3	6
		<hr/>		
Balance in favour of the colony and the merchants residing there	—	£. 114,677	16	6

Besides this balance, which may be considered as the joint profit of the colonists and English merchants on that part of colonial produce and imported goods, which have been disposed of, the shops and warehouses at the evacuation of the colony were so full, that it was calculated there were then European and Indian articles sufficient for three years' consumption, and the

the capital of slaves imported was augmented nearly to the amount of 180,000 *l*.

It appears, then, that five-sixths of the trade of the Cape of Good Hope has been occasioned by the consumption of the garrison and the navy. And, consequently, that unless a very considerable garrison be constantly stationed there, or some other channel be opened for the export of their produce, the colonists, by having increased their capitals in the days of prosperity, and especially of slaves, which is a consuming capital, will rapidly sink into a state of poverty much greater than they were at the capture of the colony. The present garrison are only about one-third of the garrison and navy kept there by Great Britain; and they will, most assuredly, not consume one-fifth of the quantity of colonial produce and imports; so that some new vent must be discovered for the remaining four-fifths, or the colony will be impoverished. What then must be the condition of this place if the garrison, small as it is, should be supported at the expence of the inhabitants? It must, obviously, very speedily consume itself, and the majority of the inhabitants will be reduced to the necessity of clothing themselves with sheep-skins. It is, therefore, the interest of the colonists that the Cape should remain in the hands of the English; the truth of which, indeed, they felt and loudly expressed, before the Dutch flag had been flying two months. A total stagnation to all trade immediately followed the surrender of the place. The merchant of the town was clogged with a heavy capital of foreign goods, for which there was no vent; and the farmer had little demands for his produce. Every one was desirous to sell, and, of course, there
were

were no buyers. The limited amount, for which the Government was authorized to draw on the Asiatic Council of the Batavian Republic, had long been expended; and the arrears of pay and allowances, still due to the garrison, inflamed it to mutiny. The great depreciation of the paper currency held out no encouragement for the Government to try its credit by extending the capital already in circulation. All hard money had totally disappeared, except English copper penny pieces, to the amount of about four thousand pounds. The addition of a French garrison, under the present circumstances, would, in all probability, hasten the destruction of the colony, in so far as regarded a supply of foreign articles in exchange for colonial produce. For, it is not to be supposed, after their treatment of the Dutch at home, they would be inclined to shew more consideration for their colonies.

As a dependency on the Crown of Great Britain, in the natural course of things, it became a flourishing settlement; but the commercial advantages derived to Britain, in consequence of the possession of it, are not of that magnitude as, considered in this point of view only, to make the retention of it a *sine qua non* to a treaty of peace; not even when carried to the highest possible degree of which they are susceptible. Taken in this point of view only, England might very well dispense with the possession of the Cape.

It now remains to consider, in the last place, the important advantages that might result to England, by establishing at the Cape a kind of central depôt for the Southern Whale Fishery.

It

It is an univerfally acknowledged truth that, with the promotion of navigation, are promoted the ftrength and fecurity of the Britifh empire ; that the fea is one great fource of its wealth and power ; and that its very exiftence, as an independent nation, is owing to the preponderancy of its navy ; yet, it would feem that the advantages offered by this element have hitherto been employed only in a very partial manner. Surrounded as we are, on all fides by the fea, every fquare mile of which is, perhaps, not much lefs valuable than a fquare mile of land in its produce of food for the fufenance of man, how long have we allowed another nation to reap the benefit of this wealthy mine, and to fupport from it, almoft excluſively, a population which, in proportion to its territory, was double to that of our own ; a nation which, by this very fource of induftry and wealth, was once enabled to difpute with us the ſovereignty of the feas ? A nation of fifhermen neceffarily implies a nation of feamen, a race of bold and hardy warriors. The navy of England has defervedly been long regarded as the great bulwark of the empire, whilft the moft certain fource of fupplying that navy with the beft feamen has been unaccountably neglected. Our colonies and our commerce have been hitherto confidered as the great nurfery of our feamen, but in times like the prefent, when civilized ſociety is convulſed in every part of the world, our colonies may fail and our commerce may be checked. From what fource, then, is our navy to be manned ? The glorious feats that have been performed in our ſhips of war, from the firft-rate down to the pinnace, were not by men taken from the plough. Courage alone is not fufficient for the accomplifhment of ſuch actions ; there muſt be activity, ſkill, and management,

such as can be acquired only by constant habit from early youth. The cultivation of the fisheries would afford a never failing supply of men so instructed; would furnish the markets with a wholesome and nutritious food; and would increase our conveniency, extend our manufactures, and promote our commerce.

For, independent of the important consideration of reducing the present high price of butchers' meat, by a more ample supply of fish to the several markets of England, whale oil is now become so valuable an article of consumption in Great Britain, not only for the safety and conveniency it affords by lighting the streets of our cities and great towns at a moderate expence, but as a substitute for tallow and grease in various manufactures, that it may be considered as an indispensable commodity, whose demand is likely to increase in proportion as arts and manufactures are extended, and new applications of its use discovered. We ought, then, to consider both the home fishery for supplying the markets with food, and the whale fishery for furnishing our warehouses with oil, as two standing nurseries for the education of seamen.

One would scarcely infer, from the state of the fisheries at the present day, that our legislature has ever regarded them in this point of view. They have hitherto been carried on in a very limited and partial manner, with encouragement just sufficient (and but barely so) for the supply of our own markets; when common policy should induce us to open foreign markets to take off the surplus of our depôts. Hence it happens, and especially in

in time of war, that oil so frequently experiences a fluctuation in its price, which, however favourable it may be to certain individuals who can command large capitals, to whom this limited policy confines the adventure, is discouraging to those who look only for a fair and reasonable, but certain, profit on their industry. If beyond the demands of the market, there was always a redundancy of oil on hand, the price would find its level, and the profits of the adventure be reduced more to a certainty; and, in such case, there is no reason for supposing to the contrary, that England might not supply a considerable part of the continent of Europe with whale oil. The advantage of extending the markets would be an increase of native fishermen without resorting to foreign fishermen.

For many years our fisheries of Greenland were carried on by means of captains, harpooners, and other officers from Holland or the Hans Towns; even for near a century, after the bounties allowed by Government held out a sufficient degree of encouragement to bring up our own seamen to the trade, who are now in skill inferior to none who frequent the Northern Seas. In like manner the Americans, settled at Nantucket, almost exclusively carried on the South Sea Fishery, before the American war; and after the peace, which ceded Nantucket to the United States, they continued to supply our southern adventurers, as the Dutch had done the Northern Fishery, with captains, harpooners, and other officers.

In one out-port of this kingdom, the obvious policy of establishing a nursery of southern fishermen has been successfully attempted.

attempted. Seven families wishing to remain British subjects, and to derive the benefit of the English markets, had migrated to Nova Scotia, where they were discouraged from extending their colony, and were invited by the Right Honourable Charles Greville to settle at Milford in Milford Haven. They fitted out their ship and had a successful voyage, and the respectable family of Starbuck's have extended the concern to four ships.

Parliament wisely continued the limited invitation to foreign fishermen to settle at Milford, and the accession of Mr. Rotch has increased the Milford Fishery to eight ships. And the very extensive connexion of that gentleman in America, is likely to make the port of Milford important to the mutual benefit of commerce between Great Britain and America, for which its situation is so eminently suited. The Southern Whale Fishery, from this place, has not a less capital afloat at this time than 80,000*l.* nor has any whaling ship from the port of Milford the least concern whatsoever with any adventure except the fishing for whales.

It is singular enough that one of the noblest ports in England, whether it be considered in point of situation, commanding, at all times, a free and speedy communication with Ireland and the Western Ocean, and favourable for distribution of merchandize, or regarded as to the conveniencies it possesses as a port and harbour, should so totally have been neglected by the British legislature, that when the families above mentioned first settled there, the place did not afford them a single house for
their

their reception. At this moment, by the removal of artificial obstructions and the unremitting attention of Mr. Greville, there is a town, with suitable protections of batteries, and two volunteer companies; a dock-yard in which three King's ships are now building, a quay, and establishments of the different tradesmen and artificers, which a sea-port necessarily requires. Having proceeded thus far, there can be little doubt that, in the course of half a century, it may class among the greatest of the out-ports.

I mention this circumstance as a striking instance, to shew the importance of the South Sea Fishery, and as a proof that, contrary to the generally received opinion, it may be carried on by skill and management, and without the adventitious aid of trading, so as fully to answer the purpose of those who are properly qualified to embark in the undertaking. For where men, by industry in their profession, rise from small beginnings into affluence, such profession may be followed with a greater certainty of success than many others which appear to hold out more seducing prospects. The American fishermen never set out with a capital, but invariably work themselves into one; and the South Sea Fishery from England may succeed on the same principle, as the above example clearly shews, under every disadvantage, when properly conducted.

It is difficult to point out the grounds of justice or policy in giving tonage bounties to the Greenland Fishery, and only premiums to successful adventurers in the Southern Fishery.

A voyage

A voyage to Greenland is four months, the outfit of which is covered by the tonnage bounty and, if wholly unsuccessful, the same ship can make a second voyage the same year to some of the ports of the Baltic. A voyage to the South Sea is from twelve to eighteen months, and must depend solely on the success in fishing. A Greenland ship sets out on a small capital, and builds on a quick return; but a South Sea whaler must expend a very considerable capital in making his outfit, for which he can reckon on no returns for at least eighteen months. Hence the usual practice of sending them out in the double capacity of fishers and contraband traders, in order that the losses they may sustain by ill success in fishing may be made good by smuggling.

If by extending the fishery we should be enabled to supply the continent of Europe, two objects should never be out of the view of the Legislature—the exemption from duty of all the produce of the fisheries, and particularly spermaceti, which, if manufactured into candles, and subject only to the same duty as tallow candles, would produce much more to the revenue than when taxed as it now is, as wax.—I have heard it asserted that the extension of the premium system, by doubling its present amount, which never could exceed 30,000*l.* a year, would be adequate encouragement to supply the home market with spermaceti and black whale oil, and that the bonding of foreign oil in Great Britain would throw the whole agency of American fishery on England with greater advantage to both countries than by any other system.

But

But when we consider that the home market is necessarily secured to British subjects by high duties on foreign oil, we should also consider that every means to lessen the charges of outfit should strengthen our adventure in this lucrative branch of trade. Among others that would seem to have this tendency, are the facilities that might be afforded by the happy position of the Cape of Good Hope. If at this station was established a kind of central depôt for the Southern Whale Fishery, it might, in time, be the means of throwing into our hands exclusively the supplying of Europe with spermaceti oil. To the protection of the fisheries on the east and west coasts of Southern Africa, the Cape is fully competent, and the fisheries on these coasts would be equally undisturbed in war as in peace. From hence they would, at all times, have an opportunity of acquiring a supply of refreshments for their crews, and of laying in a stock of salt provisions at one-fourth part of the expence of carrying them out from England.

In the wide range which, of late years, they have been accustomed to take, from the east, round Cape Horn, to the west coast of America, partly for the sake of carrying on a contraband trade with the Spanish colonies, and partly for fishing, they are destitute, in time of war, of all protection. Hitherto they have suffered little inconvenience from this circumstance, because the Cape of Good Hope gave us the complete and undisturbed possession of the Southern Ocean; but will this be the case in the present war, when the French and Dutch are in possession of the bays and harbours of the Cape? Whilst, from
Europe

Europe to the Indian Ocean, if we except the Portugueze islands and Rio de Janeiro, whose admission to us is extremely precarious, we have not a creek that will afford us a butt of water, a biscuit, or a bullock.

It is by no means necessary to resort to the coasts of South America to succeed in the Southern Whale Fishery. The whales on the east and west coasts of Africa are of the same kind, of as large a size, and as easily taken, as those on the shores of the opposite continent. The black whales, indeed, are caught with much greater ease, as they resort in innumerable quantities into all the bays on the coasts of South Africa, where there is no risk in encountering them, and less expence as well as more certainty in taking them, than in the open ocean. The spermaceti whale, whose oil is more valuable, and of which one half of the cargo at least should be composed, in order to meet the expences of a long voyage, is equally abundant on the coasts of Southern Africa as on those of America. No objection can therefore lie on the ground of taking the fish.

If policy requires the encouragement of all our fisheries by bounties, and that with a view of increasing the nursery of seamen to Great Britain and Ireland; it may, perhaps, be expedient to extend that encouragement to the inhabitants of the Cape of Good Hope, a measure which could not fail to bring together the South Sea fishers to its ports to complete their cargoes, giving, by their means, an increased energy and activity to the trade and industry of the settlement.

The situation, the security, and the conveniences of the *Knyfna*, are admirably adapted for carrying into execution a fishery on such a plan. Every material either is, or might be, produced upon the spot for equipping their ships. The land is here the very best that the colony affords, and it so happens, that the six months in which it might be dangerous to fish on this coast, are the suitable season for cultivating the land. Such small craft might also find their advantage in running down to the islands in the South Seas and picking up a cargo of seals, and thus anticipate the Americans, who, by means of their fishery and ginseng, and the produce of their lumber cargoes, have worked themselves, as we have already had occasion to notice, into a valuable portion of the China trade. Whereas if oil taken on the coast by the small craft of the inhabitants of the Cape, which might also include oil taken by foreign fishermen and exchanged by them for India or China goods, were admitted to entry in British bottoms into Great Britain at a low colonial duty, the foreign fishermen, who never can be excluded from fishing on the coasts of Africa, might find a market for their oil there. And the Americans would, probably, under such regulations, find it their advantage to supply themselves with Indian produce at the Cape, and extend their fishery only when they could not obtain a vent for their native produce of skins, drugs, and lumber. The situation of the Cape, properly stocked, might thus be an important depôt for British trade with America, and, perhaps, supersede expensive voyages to China in their small ships. This, however, is mere matter of opinion and not of fact. That the

plan they now pursue does answer their expectations, may be inferred from the number of their ships, progressively increasing, which navigate the Indian Seas.

Some few of their ships resort to the bays within the limits of the Cape colony to take the black whale; but as those bays are accessible only at certain seasons of the year, it would be no difficult matter, if an exclusive fishery could be deemed politic, with a single frigate, to clear the coast of all fishers except our own. They sometimes, also, run into Saint Helena Bay to the northward, or into Algoa Bay to the eastward, to complete their cargoes, a privilege that policy would require to be allowed only with moderation even to our own ships; for it has been observed that constant fishing in any one place, never fails to chase the fish entirely away.

There can be little doubt, therefore, that the Cape of Good Hope might be rendered essentially useful to the Southern Whale Fishery, so important to the commerce and navigation of Great Britain; but that during the war, the same place in the possession of an enemy, may be the means of obstructing this valuable branch of trade, and must, at all events, render it forced and precarious.

Having thus endeavoured to state the different points of view in which the Cape of Good Hope may be considered of importance to the British nation, as a military and naval station, as a seat of commerce, and a depôt for the Southern Whale
Fishery,

Fishery, it remains only to inquire how far it is, or may become, value as a colony, or territorial acquisition, intrinsically, and independent of other considerations. This point will best be ascertained by a topographical description and a statistical sketch of the settlement, which will be the subject of the following chapter, and with which I shall close the present volume.

C H A P. VI.

Topographical Description and Statistical Sketch of the Cape Settlement.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.—*Dimensions.—Extent.—Soil.—Climate.—Winds.—Scarcity of Water.—Permanent Rivers enumerated and described.—Mountains.—Divisions, Population, and Produce.—Provincial Judicature.—DISTRICT OF THE CAPE—Extent of and Quantity of Land under Cultivation.—Cape Town.—Stock, Produce, and Population ascertained by the Opgaaff.—Births and Mortality.—Criminals.—Natural Products of the Cape District.—DISTRICT OF STELLENBOSCH AND DRAKENSTEIN—Extent and Divisions of.—The Droefdy or Village—Situation and Produce of the other Divisions of this District—Stock and Population of, according to the Opgaaff.—DISTRICT OF ZWELLENDAM—Dimensions, Extent, and Divisions of—the Droefdy or Village of—Situation and Produce of the other Divisions—Stock and Population according to the Opgaaff.—DISTRICT OF GRAAF REYNET—Dimensions, Extent, and Divisions of—Droefdy or Village of—Situation and Produce of the other Divisions of this District—Stock and Population according to the Opgaaff.—TENURES OF LANDS.—Loan Farms, Nature and Number of.—Gratuity Lands.—Quit Rents.—Freeholds.—Reasons against Improvement of Estates in the Cape.—Property frequently changes Hands.—CONDITION OF THE INHABITANTS.—Necessaries of Life obtained without Exertion.—Four Classes of Colonists—Those of the Town, Condition of.—Taxes and Assessments moderate.—Tythes or Church Rates none—no Poor Rates.—Police conducted by a College of Burgbert—their Functions—Neglect and Abuses of.—Improvement suggested.—Indifference of the Colonists for rational Amusements.—The Wine Growers, Condition and Resources of—State of their Outgoings and Returns.—Easy Terms of purchasing Estates.—Corn Boors, Condition of—State of their Outgoings and Returns.—Graziers, indolent and helpless Condition of—their bad Character—subject to no Taxes—State*

of

of Outgoings and Returns.—REVENUES OF GOVERNMENT—*Nature of the thirteen Heads of, and Table of their Amount for four successive Years.*—JURISPRUDENCE.—*Nature and Constitution of the Court—its Members.*—*Civil Causes.*—*Attornies.*—*Office of Fiscal.*—*Court of Commissaries for petty Suits, and matrimonial Affairs.*—*The Weeskammer, or Chamber for managing the Effects of Minors and Orphans—its Functions.*—RELIGION, *that of the Reformed Church.*—*Lutherans and others barely tolerated.*—*Condition of the Clergy—Duties of—direct the Funds raised for the Relief of the Poor—are Curators of the public School.*—*Amount of Church Funds.*—IMPROVEMENTS SUGGESTED, *by the Introduction of Chinese—easily effected by the British Government—by Moravian Establishments of Hottentots in the distant Parts—by enclosing the Farms—leading their Vines up Props or Espaliers.*—*New System in the Tillage of Corn Lands.*—*Establishment of Fairs or Markets, and erecting of Villages—Consequences of these.*—Conclusion.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

IF from the southern point of the Cape peninsula, which, however, is not the southernmost point of Africa, a straight line be drawn in the direction of east by north, it will cut the mouth of the Great Fish River, the *Rio d' Infanté* of the Portuguese, which is now considered as the eastern boundary of the colony. The length of this line is about five hundred and eighty miles.

If from the same point a straight line be drawn in the direction of north, with a little inclination westerly, it will fall in with the mouth of the River *Kouffie*, the northern boundary of the colony, at the distance of about three hundred and fifteen miles.

And, if from the mouth of the Great Fish River a line, drawn in the direction of north-north-west, be continued to the distance of

of two hundred and twenty-five miles, to a point behind the Snowy Mountains called *Plettenberg's Landmark*, and from thence be continued in a circular sweep inwards to the mouth of the River *Kouffie*, upwards of five hundred miles; these lines will circumscribe the tract of country which constitutes the colony of the Cape of Good Hope.

By reducing this irregular figure to a parallelogram, it will be found to comprehend an area of at least one hundred and twenty thousand square miles. And as it appears that the whole population of whites, blacks, and Hottentots, within this area, amounts only to about sixty thousand souls, though it cannot boast that

“ Every rood of ground maintains its man,”

yet every two square miles may be said to have at least *one* human creature allotted to it. If, therefore, the Dutch at home occupy one of the most populous countries in Europe, they possess abroad the most desert colony that is certainly to be met with upon the face of the globe. But as this is less owing to the natural defects of the country, than to the regulations under which it has been governed, the comparative population with the extent of surface ought not be taken as the test of the intrinsic value of the settlement, as the population of any country, under a moderate climate, will, in the natural course of things, always rise to a level with the means of subsistence.

As the best soil for vegetable growth is unquestionably produced from a decomposition of vegetable matter, it amounts
to

to a pleonasm to say, that the richest soil will invariably be found where vegetation is most abundant and most luxuriant; the soil and the plant acting reciprocally as cause and effect. Hence, if climate were entirely out of the question, we should have an infallible criterion for determining the quality of soil in any country by the abundance or scarcity, the luxuriance or poverty, of the native plants. Measuring the soil of the Cape settlement by this scale, it would be pronounced among the poorest in the known world; for I may safely venture to say, that seven parts in ten of the above mentioned surface are, for a great part of the year, and some of them at all times, destitute of the least appearance of verdure. The upper regions of all the chains of mountains are naked masses of sandstone; the valleys at their feet are clothed with grass, with thickets, and sometimes with impenetrable forests. The inferior hills or knolls, whose surfaces are generally composed of loose fragments of sandstone, as well as the wide sandy plains that connect them, are thinly strewed over with heaths and other shrubby plants, exhibiting to the eye an uniform and dreary appearance. In the lowest parts of these plains, where the waters subside and, filtering through the sand, break out in springs upon the surface, vegetation is somewhat more luxuriant. In such situations the farm-houses are generally placed; and the patches of cultivated ground contiguous to them, like the *Oases* in the sandy deserts, may be considered as so many verdant islands in the midst of a boundless waste; serving to make the surrounding wilderness more dreary by comparison. Of such plains and knolls is the belt of land composed that lies between the first chain of mountains and the sea-coasts.

The

The soils, in general, on this tract of country, are either of stiff clay, into which there is no possibility of entering with a plough till well soaked by heavy rains, or of a light and sandy nature, commonly of a reddish tinge, and abounding with small round quartzose pebbles. Seldom any free black vegetable mould appears except in the small patches of garden ground, vineyards, and orchards that surround the habitations, where, by long culture, manure, and the fertilizing influence of springs or a permanent rill of water, the soil is so far mellowed as to admit the spade at all seasons of the year.

But those vast plains, which are known in the colony by the Hottentot name of *Karoo*, and which are interposed between the great chains of mountains, wear a still more dismal appearance than the lower plains that are chequered with patches of cultivated ground. Out of their impenetrable surfaces of clay, glistening with small crystals of quartz, and condemned to perpetual drought and aridity, not a blade of grass, and scarcely a verdant twig, occurs to break the barren uniformity. The hills, by which the surface of these plains are sometimes broken, are chiefly composed of fragments of blue slate, or masses of felspar, and argillaceous ironstone; and the surfaces of these are equally denuded of plants as those of the plains.

Yet, as I have already had occasion to observe, wherever the Karroo plains are tinged with iron, and water can be brought upon them, the soil is found to be extremely productive. The same effect is observable in the neighbourhood of the Cape, where the soil is coloured with iron; or where masses of a

brown ochraceous stone (the oxyd of iron combined with clay) lie juſt below the ſurface, where they are ſometimes found in extenſive ſtrata. In ſuch ſituations they have the beſt grapes and the beſt of every ſort of fruit, which may be owing, probably, to the manganese that this kind of dark brown iron-ſtone generally contains, and which modern diſcoveries in che-miſtry have aſcertained to be particularly favourable to the growth of plants.

There is neither a volcano nor a volcanic product in the ſouthern extremity of Africa, at leaſt in any of thoſe parts where I have been, nor any ſubſtances that ſeem to have undergone the action of fire, except maſſes of iron-ſtone found generally among the boggy earth in the neighbourhood of ſome of the hot ſprings, and which appear like the ſcoriæ of furnaces. Pieces of pumice-ſtone have been picked up on the ſhore of Robben Iſland, and on the coaſt near Algoa Bay, which muſt have been waſted thither by the waves, as the whole baſis of this iſland is a hard and compact blue ſchiſtus, with veins of quartz running through it, and of the eaſtern coaſt iron-ſtone and granite.

The climate of the Cape may be conſidered as not unfriendly to vegetation; but by reaſon of its ſituation, within the influence of a kind of Monſoon or periodical winds, the rains are very unequal, deſcending in torrents during the cold ſeaſon, whiſt ſcarcely a ſhower falls to reſreſh the earth in the hot ſummer months, when the dry ſouth-eaſt winds prevail. Theſe winds blaſt the foliage, bloſſom, and fruit of all thoſe trees that

are not well sheltered from their baneful gusts, which, for about six months, almost constantly blow from that quarter. Nor is the human constitution more proof against the painful sensation of the south-east winds of the Cape than the plants. Like the south-east Sirocco of Naples they relax and fatigue both the body and mind, rendering them utterly incapable of activity or energy. During their continuance the town appears to be deserted. Every door and window is closed to keep out the dust and the heat, both of which diminish with the continuance of the gale; the air gradually cools, and every small pebble and particle of dust in the course of four-and-twenty hours is carried into the sea.

The necessity of protecting the fruit groves, vineyards, and gardens from these winds, has led those colonists who dwell on the nearer side of the first chain of mountains, for they are not much felt beyond them, to divide that portion of their grounds, so employed, by oak skreens, a plant that grows here much more rapidly than in Europe; but their corn-lands are entirely open. A Cape boor bestows no more labour on his farm than is unavoidable; and as grain is mostly reaped before the south-east winds are fairly set in, the enclosure of the arable land did not appear to be necessary, and was consequently omitted.

The climate of the Cape is remarkably affected by local circumstances. In the summer months there is at least from 6 to 10 degrees of Fahrenheit's scale in the difference of temperature between Cape Town and Wynberg, whose distance is only about seven or eight miles, owing to the latter being on the windward

ward side of the Table Mountain, and the former to leeward of it; from whence, also, the rays of the meridian sun are thrown back upon the town, as from the surface of a concave mirror. The variation of climate, to which the Table Valley is subject, led one of the British officers to observe that those who lived in it were either in an oven, or at the funnel of a pair of bellows, or under a water-spout. On the Cape side of the mountains the thermometer rarely descends below 40° ; but on the elevated Karroo plains, within the mountains, it is generally, in the winter months, below the freezing point by night, and from 70 to 80 in the middle of the day.

I think this intense cold of the Karroo plains, beyond what might be expected from their parallel of latitude or elevation, may satisfactorily be accounted for from the ingenious experiments of Mr. Von Humboldt, on the chemical decomposition of the atmospheric air. He proves that fat and clayey earths are strongly disposed to attract the oxygen from the atmosphere, by which the azotic gas is let loose; and this gas, entering again into combination with fresh oxygen, of the superincumbent stratum, in an increased proportion, forms nitric acid, from which saltpetre is generated. That saltpetre is abundantly formed on those plains is an indisputable fact, as I have fully shewn in the second chapter of the first volume; and the consequence of such formation must necessarily be a great diminution of temperature in those places where the operation is most powerfully carrying on. Hence may be explained those columns of cold air through which one frequently passes upon the Karroo plains.

The north-west winds of winter have a moist and cold feel even in Cape Town, where, though thermometer seldom descends below 40° , and then only about an hour before sun-rise, all the English inhabitants were glad to keep constant fires during the months of July, August, and September. Even in October it is not unusual to observe the summits of the mountains to the eastward of the Cape isthmus buried in snow.

But as I have taken particular notice of the remarkable changes of temperature in different seasons and situations in the former volume, I must beg leave to refer the reader to it for further information on this subject.

The great scarcity of water in summer, the reason of which I have endeavoured to account for in the second chapter, is much more unfavourable to an extended cultivation than either the soil or climate. The torrents of rain that descend for about four months in the year, deluging the whole country, disappear suddenly, for the reasons therein stated, leaving the deep sunken beds of the rivers nearly dry, or so far exhausted as to be rendered incapable of supplying the purposes of irrigation. The periodical rivulets, and the streams that issue from the mountain springs, are either absorbed or evaporated before they arrive at any great distance from their sources. In the whole compass of this extensive colony, one can scarcely say that there is a single navigable river.

The two principal rivers, on the western coast, are the *Berg* or Mountain River, which takes its rise in the mountains that

enclose the Vale of Drakenstein, and falls into Saint Helena Bay; and the *Oliphant* or Elephant's River, which, after collecting the streamlets of the first chain of mountains in its northerly course along their feet, empties itself into the Southern Atlantic in $31^{\circ} 30'$ south. Though both these rivers have permanent streams of water, sufficiently deep to be navigable by small craft, to the distance of about twenty miles up the country, yet the mouth of the former is choaked up with a bed of sand, and across the latter is a reef of rocks.

On the south coast of the colony the permanent rivers of any magnitude are, the *Broad River*, the *Gauritz River*, the *Knyfna*, the *Keurboom River*, the *Camtoos River*, the *Zwartkops River*, the *Sunday River*, and the *Great Fish River*; the last of which terminates the colony to the eastward.

The *Broad River* is discharged into Saint Sebastian's Bay, which the Dutch consider as a dangerous navigation, though there have been instances of their ships taking shelter there in the north-west monsoon at no great distance from the mouth of the river, which is here a sheet of water more than a mile in width; but, like every other river on this coast, except the *Knyfna*, it is crossed by a bar of sand. Within this bar it might be navigated by small craft about thirty miles up the country, an extent, however, in which there are scarcely half a dozen farm-houses.

The *Gauritz River* is a collection of water from the Great Karroo plains, the Black Mountains, and the chain that runs parallel,

parallel, and nearest, to the sea-coast. The branches to the northward of this chain are periodical, but it flows, to the southward, throughout the year, though, in the summer months, with a very weak current. In the rainy season it is considered as the most rapid and dangerous river in the whole colony. Its mouth opens into the sea, where the coast is straight, and it is crossed by a bar of sand which, in summer, is generally dry.

The Knyfna, being altogether different from the other rivers in the colony, is particularly noticed, and a sketch of it given, in the second chapter, to which I must beg leave to refer the reader.

The Keurboom River, like the Knyfna, runs up into the midst of tall forests, and might be navigated by boats to a considerable distance, but its mouth, in Plettenberg's Bay, is completely sanded up by the almost perpetual rolling swell of the sea, from the south-eastward upon the sandy beach.

The Camtoos River is a collection of waters from the same parts of the country as, but more easterly than, the Gauritz River. It falls into a wide bay of the same name, in which the only secure anchorage is opposite the mouth of a small stream called the *Kromme* or Crooked River. Though Camtoos River, just within the mouth, is a wide basin deep enough to float a ship of the line, yet the bar of sand across the mouth is fordable upon the beach at high water, and frequently dry at low water.

The

The Zwart Kops River is a clear permanent stream of water flowing down one of the most beautiful and fertile valleys in the colony ; and is among the very few of those that, by damming, may be turned upon the contiguous grounds. Mr. Rice, whom I have had occasion to mention, succeeded by a great deal of perseverance in getting a boat over the bar, and failed about eight miles up this valley, to which distance only the tide flows. The whole country in the vicinity of the river and the bay of the same name, into which it falls, is among the most fertile parts of the colony.

The Sunday River, likewise, falls into Algoa* or Zwart Kop's Bay, opposite to the islands of Saint Croix. It rises in the midst of the Snowy Mountains, and continues a permanently flowing stream, broad and shallow in the middle part of its course, and narrow and deep towards the mouth, which, like the rest, is choaked with a bed of sand.

The Great Fish River takes its rise beyond the Snowy Mountains, and, in its long course, collects a multitude of streamlets, most of which are constantly supplied with water. On each side of its mouth is a wild, rocky, and open shore, but the projecting cheeks form a small cove or creek, which, it seems, was frequented by the Portugueze shortly after their discovery of the Cape ; though, from the boisterous appearance of the sea, upon the bar that evidently crosses the entrance of the river, it is difficult to conceive how they dared to trust their ships in such an exposed situation, unless, indeed, they were so small as
to

to be able, at high water, to cross the bar, in which case they might lie, at all seasons, in perfect security.

All these rivers are well stocked with perch, eels, and small turtle, and, to a certain distance from the sea-coast, they abound with almost every kind of sea-fish peculiar to this part of the world.

Beside the rivers here enumerated, the whole slip of land, stretching along the sea-coast, between the entrance of False Bay and the Great Fish River, is intersected by streamlets whose waters are neither absorbed nor evaporated; but they generally run in such deep chasms as to be of little use towards the promotion of agriculture by the aid of irrigation.

The mountains, as I have before observed, generally run in chains, parallel to each other, and most commonly in the direction of east and west. At a distance they possess neither the sublime nor the beautiful, but the approach to their bases and the passages of the kloofs are awfully grand and terrific; sometimes their naked points of solid rock rise almost perpendicularly, like a wall of masonry, to the height of three, four, and even five thousand feet, resembling the Table Mountain on the Cape peninsula; sometimes the inclination of the strata is so great, that the whole mass of mountain appears to have its centre of gravity falling without the base, and as if it momentarily threatened to strew the plain with its venerable ruins; in other places, where the looser fragments have given way, they are
irregu-

irregularly peaked and broken into a variety of fantastic shapes. In short, all the chains of mountains in the southern part of South Africa, may be considered to be made up of a repetition of parts similar to those of the Devil's Hill, the Table Mountain, and the Lion's Head, and of the same materials, but generally of a more gigantic size; and all their summits are entirely destitute of verdure.

DIVISION, POPULATION, and PRODUCE.

When the Dutch East India Company perceived their settlement extending far beyond the bounds they had originally prescribed, they found it expedient to divide the country into districts, and to place over each a civil magistrate with the title of *Landroft*, who, with his council called *Hemraaden*, was authorized to settle petty disputes among the farmers, or between them and the native Hottentots, levy fines within a certain sum, collect and apply the parochial assessments, and enforce the orders and regulations of Government. His district was distributed into a number of subdivisions, over each of which was appointed a *Feldtwagtmeeſter* or country overseer, whose duty was to take cognizance of any abuses committed within his division, and report the same to the Landroft, to adjust disputes about springs or water-courses, and to forward the orders of Government.

Little as the authority was which Government had thus delegated to the Landroft and his assistants, that little was subject

sometimes to abuse, sometimes to neglect, and very often to contempt.

In fact, all systems of provincial judicature seem liable to the same objections. If too much power be confided in the hands of the magistrates, the temptation to corruption is proportionally great, and to attempt to execute the law without the power would seem a mockery of justice. The latter was very much the case in the distant parts of the Cape colony.

For want of such a power the laws have certainly, in most cases, proved unavailing. The Landroft had only the shadow of authority. The council and the country overseers were composed of farmers, and were always more ready to screen and protect their brother boors, accused of crimes, than to assist in bringing them to justice. The poor Hottentot had little chance of obtaining redress for the wrongs he suffered from the boors. However willing the Landroft might be to receive his complaints, he possessed not the means of removing the grievance. To espouse the cause of the Hottentot was a sure way to lose his popularity. And the distance from the capital was a sufficient obstacle to the preferring of complaints before the Court of Justice at the Cape. Whenever this has happened, the orders of the Court of Justice met with as little respect, at the distance of five or six hundred miles, as the orders of the Landroft and his council. If a man, after being summoned, did not chuse to appear, there was no force in the country to compel him; and they knew it would have been fruitless to
dispatch

dispatch such a force from the Cape. Hence murders and the most atrocious crimes were committed with impunity; and the only punishment was a sentence of outlawry for contempt of Court; a sentence that was attended with little inconvenience to the criminal, who still continued to maintain his ground in society, as if no such sentence was hanging over him. It debarred him, it is true, from making his usual visits to the capital, but he found no difficulty in getting his business done by commission. Numberless instances of this kind occurred, yet the system remained the same. Perhaps, indeed, it would be difficult to suggest a better, till a greater degree of population shall compel the inhabitants to dwell in villages, or the limits of the colony be contracted into a narrower compass.

This extensive settlement, whose dimensions have been given above, is divided into four districts, namely,

1. The district of the Cape.
2. ——— of Stellenbosch and Drakenstein.
3. ——— of Zwellendam.
4. ——— of Graaf Reynet.

CAPE DISTRICT.

Of these the Cape district is by much the smallest, but the most populous. It may be considered as divided into two parts; one consisting of the peninsula on which the Town is situated, the other of the slip of land extending from the shore of Table Bay to the mouth of the Berg River in Saint Helena Bay, and

X X 2

separated

separated from Stellenbosch and Drakenstein, on the east, by the Little Salt River, Deep River, and Mossel Bank River, being about eighty miles from north to south, and twenty-five from east to west; containing, therefore, about two thousand square miles. The Cape peninsula is about thirty miles in length and eight in breadth, or two hundred and forty square miles. According to an account of his stock, produce, and land under cultivation, which every man is obliged annually to give in to the police officers, and which is called the *Opgaaff* list, it appears that, notwithstanding the comparative short distance of every part of the Cape district from a market, not one fifteenth part of the surface is under any kind of tillage.

Cape Town is built with great regularity, the streets being all laid out with a line. The houses are generally white-washed, and the doors and windows painted green; are mostly two stories in height, flat-roofed, with an ornament in the centre of the front, or a kind of pediment; a raised platform before the door with a seat at each end. It consists of 1145 dwelling-houses, inhabited by about five thousand five hundred whites and people of colour, and ten thousand blacks. The first class is composed of those who fill the several departments of Government, the clergy, the members of the Court of Justice, and of the Police. The next are a sort of gentry who, having estates in the country, retail the produce of them through their slaves; then comes a number of petty dealers, who call themselves merchants, and, lastly, the tradesmen, who carry on their several professions through their blacks. Many of the people of colour are fishermen.

Besides

Besides the castle and the forts, the other public buildings are, a large well-built barrack for 2000 men; a quadrangular building, with an area in the centre, where the Government slaves are lodged to the number of four hundred nearly; the Reformed Church, which is a spacious and neat structure; the Lutheran Church; the town-house; the Court of Justice; and a theatre.

Towards the northern extremity of the district, in that part of it which is called *Zwartland*, there is a small church with a very neat and comfortable parsonage-house, garden, vineyard, and corn-land, but no village near it.

The produce of the Cape peninsula is grapes, with all the European and many of the tropical fruits, vegetables of every description, barley for the use of horses, and a small quantity of choice wine. Of the other parts of the Cape district, wheat, barley, pulse, and wine.

By a regulation of the Dutch Government, every householder was obliged annually to give in the number of his family, the amount of his live stock, and the produce of his farm. As this had been done in a loose and slovenly manner, and as the augmentation of ten thousand souls rendered it important to ascertain the means afforded by the colony for their subsistence, Lord Macartney required that, for the future, every man should give in his statement upon oath. When this new regulation was made, the *Opgaaff*, for that year, had already been taken in the usual way, but, on being repeated, the numbers, in some articles,
were

were found to exceed those in the former account in a threefold proportion.

The following is an abstract of the *Opgaaff* for the Cape district in the year 1797, when it was first required to be given in on oath.

<i>Population.</i>			
Men	-	-	1566
Women	-	-	1354
Sons	-	-	1451
Daughters	-	-	1658
Servants	-	-	232
			—Christians 6261
Men slaves	-	-	6673
Women slaves	-	-	2660
Slave children	-	-	2558
			—Slaves 11,891
Total population of the Cape district			18,152

Of the above number of Christians or free people, 718 are persons of colour, and one thousand, nearly, are Europeans.

Stock and Produce.

Horſes (his Maſteſty's cavalry not included)	8334
Horned cattle	20,957
Sheep and goats	61,575
Hogs	

Hogs	-	-	758
Vine plants	-	-	1,560,109
Leggers of wine made (each 160 gallons)	-	-	786 $\frac{1}{2}$
Muids of wheat sown in 1796, 3464—reaped	-	-	32,962
Muids of barley sown in 1796, 887—reaped	-	-	18,819
Muids of rye sown in 1796, 39—reaped	-	-	529
Quantity of land employed in vineyards and gardens	-	-	580 morgen
In grain	-	-	3089 ditto
			Total
			3669 morgen or 7338 acres.

The quantity of land occupied, as given in, amounts to 8018 morgen, or 16,036 acres; but as land-measuring is very little understood or attended to, this part of the *Opgaaff* may be considered as incorrect.

The consumption of Cape Town in the same year was,

	Head of Cattle.	Head of Sheep.	Leggers of Wine.	Muids of Wheat.	Muids of Barley.
Army	4562	22,812	2000	10,000	19,460
Navy	1810	9044	1000	6,000	
Inhabitants	5000	130,000	3000	16,900	10,000
Total consumption	11,372	161,856	6000	32,900	29,460

The following table shews the number of marriages, christenings, and burials in Cape Town for eight years.

Years.	Marriages.	Chrittenings.	Burials.
1790	130	350	186
1791	97	354	146
1792	174	360	144
1793	158	288	116
1794	211	308	111
1795	213	308	145
1796	249	257	168
1797	217	364	157
In 8 years	1449	2589	1173

Making 1416 the excess of christenings above burials in eight years. As all marriages must be performed in Cape Town the column of marriages are those in the whole colony. By comparing the average number of deaths with the population, it will appear that the mortality in the Cape district is about $2\frac{1}{8}\%$ in the hundred. Of the slaves the mortality is rather more, but less, perhaps, than in any other country where slavery is tolerated. The number, as we have seen, in the Cape district is 11,891; and the number of deaths, on an average of eight years, was 350, which is after the rate of three in the hundred.

Capital crimes in the Cape district are less frequent than they might be supposed among such a mixed multitude, where a great majority have no interest in the public prosperity or tranquillity. The

The strength of the garrison contributed materially to keep the slaves in order; and instances of capital crimes were less numerous under the British Government than in any former period of the same duration for the last thirty years. In six years 63 were sentenced to suffer death, of which 30 were publicly executed, and the rest condemned to work at the fortifications in chains for life. The sentence of such as escaped execution was not changed on account of any palliative circumstance or insufficient testimony, but because confession of the crime is indispensably necessary to the execution of the sentence; and this confession being now no longer extorted by the application of the torture, most of them persist to deny the crime of which they are accused; preferring a life of hard labour, with a diet of bread and water, to an untimely death.

With respect to the natural produce of the Cape district, what has yet been discovered is of little or no importance, except its fisheries. The wax-plant grows abundantly upon the sandy isthmus, but the berries are not considered to be worth the labour of gathering. The collecting of shells to burn into lime, and of heaths and other shrubby plants for fuel, furnish constant employment for about one thousand slaves. The great destruction of the frutescent plants on the Cape peninsula and the isthmus will be very severely felt in the course of a few years. The plantations of the silver-tree on that brow of Table Mountain which is next to the isthmus, are experiencing the same destruction for the sake of a temporary profit, and so thoughtless, or so indolent, are the proprietors of the land, that little

pains are bestowed to keep up a succession of young trees. No further trials have yet been made for coal.

In the first chapter of the former volume, I suggested several articles that appeared to be suitable to the climate of the Cape, and in the last chapter mentioned the success that had attended the trial of many of them. Since that was written I had an opportunity, among many other English gentlemen, of giving a fair trial to the common Lucern, the *Medicago sativa*, and found it to answer beyond all expectation, whether thinly sown in drills or transplanted. It was cut down and grew again, to the height of eighteen inches every six weeks throughout the year, except in the months of July, August, and September, when it remained nearly stationary. Mr. Duckett, the agriculturist, found the common burnet, *Poterium Sanguisorba*, to succeed equally well on dry grounds. The advantages of these two plants, as summer food for cattle and sheep, would be incalculable to a people who knew how to avail themselves of them, and in a country where all verdure disappears for four months in the year. But it may be observed, with regard to the introduction of these and other foreign articles, that until a fuller population of white inhabitants shall oblige them to habits of industry, it would be in vain to expect any encouragement to additional resources, or improvement of those they have long possessed.

DISTRICT

DISTRICT of STELLENBOSCH and DRAKENSTEIN.

Stellenbosch and Drakenstein, though one district under the jurisdiction of one Landroft, have distinct Hemraaden or Councils. After deducting the small district of the Cape, Stellenbosch and Drakenstein include the whole extent of country from Cape L'Aguillas, the southernmost point of Africa, to the River Kouffie, the northern boundary of the colony; a line of 380 miles in length; and the mean breadth from east to west is about 150 miles, comprehending an area, after subtracting that of the Cape district, equal to fifty-five thousand square miles. Twelve hundred families are in possession of this extensive district, so that each family, on an average, has forty-six square miles of land, a quantity more than five times that which the Dutch Government thought to be extensive enough to keep the settlers asunder, and sufficient to allow the houses to stand at more than twice the regulated distance of three miles from each other. The greater part, however, of this extensive surface may be considered as of little value, consisting of naked mountains, sandy hills, and Karroo plains. But a portion of the remainder composes the most valuable possessions of the whole colony; whether they be considered as to the fertility of the soil, the temperature of the climate, or their proximity to the Cape, which, at present, is the only market in the colony where the farmer has an opportunity to dispose of his produce. The parts of the district to which I allude, are those divisions beginning at False Bay and stretching along the feet of the great chain of mountains,

tains, on the Cape side, as far as the mouth of the Olifants River. These divisions are,

1. *The Drosdy of Stellenbosch.*
2. *Jonker's Hoeck.*
3. *Bange Hoeck.*
4. *Klapmutz.*
5. *Bottelary's Gebergte.*
6. *Saxenberg's Gebergte.*
7. *Eerste River.*
8. *Hottentot's Holland.*
9. *Moddergat.*
10. *Drakenstein* and its environs, consisting of
 - a. *Little Drakenstein.*
 - b. *Fransche Hoeck.*
 - c. *Paarl Village.*
 - d. *Dall Josephat.*
 - e. *Waagen Maaker's Valley.*
 - f. *Groeneberg.*
11. *Pardeberg.*
12. *Riebeck's Casteel.*
13. *East Zwartland.*
14. *Four-and-twenty Rivers.*
15. *Piquetberg.*
16. *Olifants' River.*

The transmontane divisions are,

17. *The Biedouw.*
18. *Onder Bokkeveld.*
19. *Han-*

19. *Hantum.*
20. *Kbamijsberg.*
21. *Roggeveld*, consisting of Upper, Middle, and Little Roggeveld.
22. *Neiuvveld and the Gbowp.*
23. *Bokkeveld*, warm and cold.
24. *Hex River.*
25. *Breede River.*
26. *Ghoudinee and Brandt Valley.*
27. *Roo de Sand or Waveren.*
28. *Bot River.*
29. *Zwarteberg.*
30. *Drooge Ruggens.*
31. *River Zonder End.*
32. *Uyl Kraal.*
33. *Soetendal's Valley.*

1. The *drofdy of Stellenbosch*, or the residence of the Landdroft, is a very handsome village, consisting of an assemblage of about seventy habitations, to most of which are attached offices, out-houses, and gardens, so that it occupies a very considerable space of ground. It is laid out into several streets or open spaces, planted with oaks that have here attained a greater growth than in any other part of the colony, many of them not being inferior in size to the largest elms in Hyde Park. Yet, a few years ago, the most beautiful of these trees were rooted out in order to raise a paltry sum of money towards the exigencies of the parish; and paltry, indeed, it was, the very finest tree being fold

sold at the low price of 20 rix dollars, or four pounds currency, and most of them for not a fourth part of this sum. For such a barbarous act the villagers, in some countries, would have been apt to have hung both the Landroft and Hemraaden upon their branches. How far they were suffered to proceed I cannot say, but I saw at least half a hundred of these venerable ruins lying in the streets.

The village is delightfully situated at the feet of lofty mountains, on the banks of the *Eerste* or First River, at the distance of twenty-six miles from Cape Town. In it is a small and neat church, to which is annexed a parsonage house with a good garden and very extensive vineyard. The clergyman has a salary from Government of 120 *l.* a year, with this house, garden, and vineyard free of all rent and taxes, in lieu of other emoluments received by the clergy of Cape Town. The condition, therefore, of the country clergy is at least equal and perhaps preferable to that of those who reside in the town. Provisions of every kind are much cheaper; they have the advantage of keeping their own cattle; sowing their own grain; planting vineyards and making their own wine; and, in a word, they possess the means of raising within themselves almost all the necessaries of life. In addition to these advantages, if the clergyman should have the good fortune to be popular in his district, which, however, is no easy matter to accomplish, he is sure to be laden with presents from day to day. Nothing, in such case, is thought too good for the minister. Game of all kinds, fat lambs, fruit, wine, and other "good things of this life,"
are

are continually pouring in upon him. His outgoings are chiefly confined to the expence of clothing his family and a little tea and fugar.

The establishment of the Landroft is still more sumptuous. He has the enjoyment of a salary and emoluments that seldom fall short of 1500*l.* a year; a most excellent house to live in, pleasantly situated on a plain at the head of the village, before which are a couple of venerable oaks, scarcely exceeded in England; and an extensive garden and orchard, well planted with every kind of fruit, and a vineyard.

Most of the grounds in or near the village are what they call *Eigendoms* or freeholds, though they are held by a small recognizance to Government, but they are totally different from loan-farms, which are the usual kind of tenure in the colony, and of which we shall have occasion to speak hereafter.

2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9. *Jonker's Hoeck, Bange Hoeck, Klapmutz, Bottelary's Gebergté, Saxenberg's Gebergté, Eerste River, Hottentot's Holland, and Moddergat,* are small divisions surrounding the droefdy, and lying between it and False Bay. They consist chiefly of freehold estates, and produce wine, brandy, fruit, fresh butter, poultry, and a variety of articles for the Cape market, and for the supply of shipping whilst they continue to lie in Simon's Bay. They yield, also, a small quantity of corn, but this article without manure, or a better system of tillage, is scarcely worth the labour of cultivating so near the Cape, where they can employ the land to better advantage. The best farm

at Klapmutz was granted in loan to Mr. Duckett, the English agriculturist, for the purpose of making his experiments, for the instruction of the African boors.

10. *Drakenstein* and its environs consist of a fertile tract of country, situate at the feet of the great chain of mountains, at the distance of 30 to 40 miles from the Cape. The whole extensive valley of *Drakenstein* is well watered by the Berg River and its numerous branches; the soil is richer than in most parts of the colony, and the sheltered and warm situation is particularly favourable to the growth of the vine and different kinds of fruit.

a. This subdivision of Little *Drakenstein* occupies the middle of the valley, and contains many substantial farms, most of them freehold property; in fact, the two *Drakensteins* and the next subdivision supply two-thirds of the wine that is brought to the Cape market.

b. *Fransche Hoeck*, or the French Corner, is situated in the south-east angle of the valley among the mountains, and took its name from the French refugees having settled there, when they fled to this country after the revocation of the edict of Nantz. To these people the colony is indebted for the introduction of the vine. The estates here are mostly freehold property, and produce little else than wine and fruits.

c. The village of the Paarl is situated at the foot of a hill that shuts in the Valley of *Drakenstein* on the west side. It consists
of

of about thirty habitations disposed in a line, but so far detached from each other, with intermediate orchards, gardens, and vineyards, as to form a street from half a mile to a mile in length. About the middle of this street, on the east side, stands the church, a neat octagonal building covered with thatch; and at the upper end is a parsonage house, with garden, vineyard, and fruit-groves; and a large tract of very fine land. No attention seems to have been omitted by Government in providing comfortably for the country clergy. The blocks of granite, the paarl and the diamond, that overhang this village, are particularly noticed in the second chapter of the first volume.

d. e. Dall Josephat and Waagen-maaker's Valley are two small dales enclosed between the hilly projections that branch out towards the north or upper end of the valley of Drakenstein; the best oranges, as well as the best peaches, and other fruit, are said to be produced in these dales; and the wines are among the first in quality.

f. Groeneberg is the largest of these projecting hills that run across the northern extremity of the valley, and the soil is productive in fruit, wine, and corn.

The whole valley, comprehending the above subdivisions, is comparatively so well inhabited, that few animals, in a state of nature, are now to be found upon it. Of hares, however, there is no scarcity; and two species of bustards, the red-winged and the common partridge, and quails, are in great plenty. The *Klip-springer* antelope, and the *reebok* are plentiful in the

mountains, and *duykers*, *greijsboks*, and *steenboks* not very scarce among the hills towards the northern extremity of the valley. The inhabitants are also annoyed with wolves, hyænas, and jackalls, which descend in the nights from the neighbouring mountains.

11. *Paardeberg*, or the Horse Mountain, so called from the number of wild horses or zebras that formerly frequented it, is a continuation of the Paarl Mountain to the northward. The produce of the farms is chiefly confined to wheat, which, with a sprinkling of manure, or a couple of years rest, or by fallowing, will yield from fifteen to twenty fold. They cultivate, also, barley and pulse, but have few horses or cattle beyond what are necessary for the purposes of husbandry.

12. *Riebeck's Caasteel*, or the Castle of Van Riebeck, may be considered as a prolongation of the Paardeberg, terminating to the northward in a high rocky summit. It took its name from the founder of the colony having travelled to this distance from the Cape, which is about sixty miles, and which, in that early period of the settlement, was as far as it was considered safe to proceed, on account of the numerous natives, whose race has now almost disappeared from the face of the earth. The produce is the same as that of the farms of the last division, in both of which there are as many loan-farms as freehold estates.

13, 14. *East Zwartland* and *Twenty-four Rivers*. These two divisions consist of wide extended plains, stretching, in width,
from

from the Berg River to the great chain of mountains, and to the Picquet Berg, in length, to the northward. They are considered as the granaries of the colony. The crops, however, in Zwartland, are as uncertain as the rains, on which, indeed, their success almost entirely depends. In the Four-and-twenty Rivers the grounds are capable of being irrigated by the numberless streamlets that issue from the great chain of mountains, in their course to the Berg River. Many of these, in their progress over the plain, form large tracts of swampy ground that have been found to produce very fine rice. Wheat, barley, and pulse are the principal articles that are cultivated in these two divisions, but they have plenty of fruit, and make a little wine for their own family use. Should the Bay of Saldanha, at any future period, become the general rendezvous of shipping, these two divisions will be more valuable than all the rest of the colony.

15. The *Picquet Berg* terminates the plains of the Four-and-twenty Rivers to the northward. Here, besides corn and fruit, the inhabitants rear horses, horned cattle, and sheep. And from hence, also, is sent to the Cape market a considerable quantity of tobacco, which has the reputation of being of the best quality that Southern Africa produces.

16. *Olifant's River* is a fine clear stream, flowing through a narrow valley, hemmed in between the great chain of mountains and an inferior ridge called the *Cardouw*. This valley, being intersected by numerous rills of water from the mountains on each side, is extremely rich and fertile; but the great

distance from the Cape, and the bad roads over the Cardouw, hold out little encouragement for the farmer to extend the cultivation of grain, fruit, or wine, beyond the necessary supply of his own family. Dried fruit is the principal article they send to market, after the supplies, which they furnish, of horses, horned cattle, and sheep. The country on each side of the lower part of the river is dry and barren, and for many miles from the mouth entirely uninhabited. A chalybeate spring of hot water, of the temperature of 108° of Fahrenheit's Scale, flows in a very considerable stream out of the Cardouw Mountain into the Olifant's River. And a bathing-house is erected over the spring.

All the smaller kinds of antelopes, jackalls, hares, and partridges, are very abundant in the four last-mentioned divisions.

These divisions of Stellenbosch and Drakenstein, above enumerated, lie on the west or Cape side of the great chain of mountains, and comprehend the most valuable portion of the colony. The transmontane divisions of Stellenbosch are,

17. The *Biedouw*, which is the slanting side of the great mountains behind the Olifant's River, a cold, elevated, rugged tract of country, covered with coppice wood, and very thinly inhabited. The stock of the farmers consists of sheep and horned cattle.

18. *Onder Bokkeveld* is the elevated flat surface of a Table Mountain, whose sides on the west and north are high and almost

most perpendicular rocks, piled on each other in horizontal strata like those of Table Mountain at the Cape; but it descends with a gentle slope to the eastward, and terminates in Karroo plains. The grasses on the summit are short but sweet, and the small shrubby plants are excellent food for sheep and goats. The horses, also, of this division, are among the best which the colony produces, and the cattle, as is the case in all the mountainous situations, thrive very well. In some of the valleys, where the grounds will admit of irrigation, the common returns of wheat are forty, and of barley sixty, for one, without any rest for twenty years, without fallowing, and without manure. In such situations the soil is deeply tinged with iron, and abounds with masses of the same kind of iron-stone which I have already mentioned.

The *Spring-bok*, or the springing antelope, once so abundant in this division, as to have been the cause of its name, is now but an occasional visitor, and seen only in small herds of a few hundreds. *Steenboks* and *orbies* and *griseboks* are still plentiful and large. The *korbanes* or bustards, of three species, and hares are so plentiful that they were continually among the horses feet in riding over the country. On the Karroo plains, close behind the Bokkeveld, are found the two large species of antelope, the *eland* and the *gemsbok*, but their numbers are rapidly diminishing in consequence of the frequent excursions of the farmers on purpose to shoot them; not so much for the sake of their flesh, which, however, is excellent, but for their skins alone.

19. The *Hantam* is a Table Mountain, rising from the surface of the Bokkeveld Mountain, on its eastern extremity, and is surrounded by a number of farms that receive a supply of water from rills issuing out of the base of the mountain. Horses and cattle are the produce of the Hantam, and the former have been found to escape a very fatal disease that is prevalent over the whole colony, by being sent upon the summit of the Hantam Mountain. The inhabitants of this division are liable to the depredations of the Bosjesman's Hottentots, against whom they make regular expeditions in the same manner as from the Sneuwberg.

20. The *Khamies Berg* is a cluster of mountains situated in the middle of the country that formerly was inhabited by the Namaaqua Hottentots, at the distance of five days' journey north-west from the Hantam, over a dry sandy desert almost destitute of water. This cluster of mountains being the best, and, indeed, almost the only habitable part of the Namaaqua country, has been taken possession of by the wandering peasantry, who, to the advantage of a good grazing country, had the additional inducement of settling there from the easy means of increasing their stock of sheep from the herds of the native Hottentots, who, indeed, are now so reduced and scattered among the Dutch farms as scarcely to be considered as a distinct tribe of people.

The copper mountains commence where the Khamiesberg ends, the whole surface of which is said to be covered with malachite, or the carbonate of copper, and cupreous pyrites.

But the ores of these mountains, however abundant, and however rich, are of no great value on account of the total want of every kind of fuel to smelt them, as well as of their very great distance from the Cape, and from there being neither bay nor river where they could be put on board of coasting vessels. In the Khamiesberg is also found, in large blocks, that beautiful species of stone to which mineralogists have given the name of Prehnite.

21. *Upper, Middle, and Little Roggevelds*, or rye-grass countries, are the summit of a long extended Table Mountain, whose western front rises out of the Karroo plains behind the Bokkeveld, almost perpendicularly, to the height of two or three thousand feet. Stretching to the eastward this summit becomes more broken into inequalities of surface, and rises at length into the mountains of Nieuweld, the Camdeboo, and the Sneuwberg, which may be considered as one extended chain. The great elevation of the Roggeveld, and its being surrounded by Karroo plains, make the temperature in winter so cold, that for four months in the year the inhabitants are under the necessity of descending to the feet of the mountains with their horses, cattle, and sheep. The strongest and largest breed of horses in the whole colony is that of the Roggeveld.

22. *Nieuweld and the Gboup* are continuations of the Roggeveld Mountain, and join the divisions bearing the same name in the district of Graaf Reynet. They have lately been deserted on account of the number of Bosjesman Hottentots dwelling close behind them.

23, 24.

23, 24. *Warm and Cold Bokkeveld and Hex River*, are a chain of valleys lying close behind the great mountains, consisting of meadow-land abundantly supplied with water, and appear as if they had once been lakes. They are thinly inhabited, and every kind of cultivation almost totally neglected.

25. *Breede River* is to the southward of the Hex River, and extends to the borders of the Zwellendam district. It is productive in corn, and the part called *Bosjesveld*, or the heathy country, is favourable for sheep and cattle.

26. *Ghoudinie and Brandt Valley* are two small valleys close behind the Fransche Hoek, extremely rich, and well watered. Through the Brandt Valley runs a stream of hot water, whose temperature at the spring is 150° of Fahrenheit's Scale. With this stream several thousand acres of meadow-ground are capable of being flooded.

27. *Roode Sand or Waveren* is an extensive division behind the mountains of Drakenstein, and produces abundance of grain, pulse, fruits, and wine. The pass of Roode Sand is the only waggon-road into this division, and is distant from Cape Town about seventy miles. In this division there is a small neat church, and a very comfortable parsonage-house, with extensive vineyards, orchards, garden, and arable land; and contiguous to the church is a row of houses, the number of which has lately increased.

28, 29, 30, 31. *Bott River, Zwarte Berg, Drooge Ruggens,* and *River Zonder End* are interposed between Hottentot Hollands Kloof and the borders of Zwellendam; the chief produce of which is corn and cattle, with a small quantity of wine of an inferior quality, cultivated chiefly for the supply of the more distant parts of the colony.

32, 33. *Uyl Kraal* and *Soetendal's Valley* are two divisions stretching along the sea-coast from Hanglip, the east point of Bay False, to the mouth of the Breede River, beyond Cape L'Aguillas, comprehending excellent corn-lands and good grazing ground for horses. The smaller kinds of antelopes are very abundant, as are also hares, partridges, and bustards; and towards the Cape L'Aguillas are a few *Zebbras, Hartebeests,* and *Bonteboks.*

The greater part of this extensive district, beyond the mountains, consists of loan-farms, as that on the Cape side is chiefly composed of freehold estates. The population and produce were ascertained from the Opgaaff list being taken on oath in the year 1798, and were as follows :

		<i>Population.</i>	
Men	-	-	1970
Women	-	-	1199
Sons	-	-	1845
Daughters	-	-	1818
Servants and people of colour			424
			7256
	Carried over		Christians

	Brought over	7256
Slave men - - -	7211	
Slave women - - -	3411	
Slaves and people of colour	81	
	<hr/>	
	Slaves	10,703
To these may be added, Hottentots in the white district, about - - -	-	5000
		<hr/>
Total population of Stellenbosch and Drakenstein		22,959

Stock and Produce.

Horses - - -		22,661
Horned cattle - - -		59,567
Sheep - - -		451,695
Wine plants - - -		11,500,000
Leggers of wine in 1797 - - -		7914
Muids of corn - - -		77,063
— of barley - - -		32,872
— of rye - - -		2053

Quantity of land under cultivation in vineyards and grain, 19,573 morgen, or 39,146 English acres.

DISTRICT OF ZWELLENDAM.

The district of Zwellendam is that tract of country which lies upon the sea-coast between the Breede River on the west,

and Camtoos River on the east, and extends northerly to the second chain of mountains called the Zwartte Berg or Black Mountains. Its length is about 380, and breadth 60, miles, comprehending an area of 19,200 square miles, which is occupied by 480 families, so that each family, on an average, has forty square miles of land. This is more than four times the quantity assigned to each loan-farm by the Government. Except in the drofsdy the whole district is composed of loan-lands, and may be considered to consist of the following divisions :

1. The *Drofsdy* or *Village of Zwellendam*.
2. The *Country between the Drofsdy and Gauritz River*, named according to the rivers that cross it.
3. *Cango*.
4. *Zwartte Berg*.
5. *Trada*.
6. *Moffel Bay*.
7. *Autinieguas Land*.
8. *Plettenberg's Bay*.
9. *Olifant's River*.
10. *Kamnaasie*.
11. *Lange Kloof*.
12. *Sitsikamma*.

1. The *Drofsdy of Zwellendam* is situated at the foot of the first chain of mountains that runs east and west or parallel to the sea-coast, and is distant from Cape Town about one hundred and forty miles. It is composed of about thirty houses, scat-

tered irregularly over a small but fertile valley, down the middle of which runs a plentiful stream of water. At the head of the valley stands the house of the Landroft, to which is annexed a large garden well stocked with a variety of fruits, and a spacious vineyard; the whole enclosed and planted with oaks and other trees. In the middle of the village a large church has lately been erected, which is the only place of worship in the whole district.

2. This division comprehends the whole tract of country that lies between the Gauritz River and the droedy, and is well watered by a number of streams issuing from the mountains, upon the banks of which the farm-houses in general are placed. The produce of these is corn, wine, and cattle, but few sheep; the whole district of Zwellendam being unfavourable to this animal, except the three following divisions.

3, 4, 5. *Cango, Zwarte Berg, and Trada*, are Karroo plains, situated between the first and second chains of mountains, but being well watered by the mountain streams, contain fertile patches of ground. The great distance, however, from the Cape, and the excessive bad roads, operate against an extensive tillage. On these plains are an abundance of ostriches, herds of *Quachas, Zebras, and Hartbeests*. Behind the first chain of mountains, in these divisions, are two hot springs of chalybeate water.

6. *Moffel Bay* division, sometimes called the *Droogveldt*, or Dry Country, extends from the Gauritz River to the Great
Brakke

Brakke River that falls into Mossel Bay. The surface is hilly and composed of a light sandy soil, which, when the rains are favourable, is sufficiently fertile in corn. The only natural product in the vegetable kingdom, that is useful as an article of commerce, is the aloe, but the heathy plants along the sea-shore are more favourable for sheep than in the other parts of this division. The shores of the bay and the sea-coast abound with excellent oysters; and muscles are equally plentiful, but they are very large, and of a strong flavour; and the mouths of all the rivers contain plenty of good fish. The bay itself has already been described.

7. *Autiniequas Land* is the next division to Mossel Bay along the sea-coast, and extends as far eastward as the Kayman's River. The Dutch Government reserved to itself about twenty thousand acres, which is nearly half the division, of the finest land, without exception, in the whole colony, being a level meadow always covered with grass. The mountains approaching near the sea, and being covered with large forest trees, attract the vapours and cause a considerable quantity of rain to fall in the *Autiniequas Land* in the summer months. The overseer calculated that the land held by Government in this division was fully sufficient for the maintenance of a thousand horses, a thousand head of cattle, and for raising annually ten thousand muids of corn.

8. *Plettenberg's Bay* division begins at the Kayman's River, and continues to the inaccessible forests of *Sitfikamma*. The whole

whole of this tract of country is extremely beautiful, agreeably diversified by hill and dale, and lofty forests. Within seven miles of the bay are large timber trees, and the surface is almost as level as a bowling-green, over which the several roads are carried. The peasantry, who inhabit this district, are mostly wood-cutters, and they earn a very hard subsistence. The great distance from the Cape, being 400 miles of bad road, leaves them little profit on a load of timber, when sold at the dearest rate in the Cape market, so little, indeed, that they prefer to dispose of it at the bay for a mere trifle. Plank of thirteen or fourteen inches wide, and inch thick, may be purchased on the spot at the rate of threepence the foot in length.

The bark of several of the creeping plants in the forests might be employed as substitutes for hemp. The iron ores near the base of the mountains might be worked by clearing the wood, of which there is an inexhaustible supply. The timber is, undoubtedly, suitable for many purposes, notwithstanding the prejudices that have been entertained against it very undeservedly, and very ignorantly, because about one-eighth part only of the different kinds have ever undergone a trial, and these few by no means a decisive one. The climate is trying for the best timber; and English oak even gives way much sooner here than in its native country, by the alternate exposure to wet weather, dry winds, and scorching sun. Where such exposure has been guarded against, one of the lightest Cape woods, the geel hout or yellow wood, has been known to stand a hundred years without shewing symptoms of decay.

The

The native trees of the Cape are many of them of quick growth, and advance to a large size, but they are much twisted and shaken by the wind, and generally hollow at heart. Many, however, are perfectly sound, and every way suitable for baulk, rafters, joists, and plank, but, I again repeat it, they have never yet met with a fair trial. The bay has already been noticed, as has also the Knysna, which is in this district, and closer to the forests than even the bay itself.

9. *Olifant's River* runs at the foot of the second chain of mountains or the Zwarteberg to the westward, and falls into the Gauritz River. The soil is Karroo, and strongly tinged with iron, and as in some places there is plenty of water, vegetation here is remarkably luxuriant. At each extremity of this division are hot springs of chalybeate water, the temperature from 98° to 110° of Fahrenheit's scale. The inhabitants cultivate the vine for home consumption, and distil from peaches, as well as from grapes, an ardent spirit. But the articles brought to the Cape market are chiefly butter and soap. The *falsola* grows here much more luxuriantly than I have seen it in any other part of the colony. The *mimosa Karroo* grows also along the valley, through which the river flows, to a very large size, and produces a great quantity of gum-arabic; the bark too is superior to that of oak for tanning leather. Small antelopes and hares are sufficiently plentiful, and the beautiful *koodoo* is sometimes shot among the groves of mimosas. Leopards, tyger cats, and different species of the *viverra* genus, as also the river otter, are not uncommon along the wooded banks of the Olifant or Elephants' River.

10. *Kam-*

10. *Kamnaasie* is a rough hilly tract of country surrounding a high mountain so called, situate between the Olifant's River and the Kange Kloof. The inhabitants are comparatively poor and few.

11. *Lange Kloof* is the long pass which has been particularly noticed in the second chapter.

12. *Sitsikamma* commences at Plettenberg's Bay, and continues along the sea-coast to the Camtoos River. It is chiefly covered with impenetrable forests, on the east of which, however, there are extensive plains equally good for the cultivation of grain and the grazing of cattle. No direct road has yet been made through the forests along the sea-coast, so as to be passable by waggon, but the inhabitants are obliged to go round by the Lange Kloof. They bring little to the Cape market on their annual visit, except salted butter and soap. In the forests of Sitsikamma are elephants, buffaloes, and rhinoscerofes; and on the plains the large *bartebeest* and *koodo* antelopes, besides an abundance of small game.

The population and produce of Zwellendam, as ascertained by the Opgaaff, taken on oath in the year 1798, are as follows:

Population.

Population.

Men	-	-	1070
Women	-	-	639
Sons	-	-	971
Daughters	-	-	987
Servants and free people of colour			300

Christians 3967

Men slaves	-	-	} 2196
Women slaves	-	-	
Slave children	-	-	

Hottentots in the service of the peasantry, on a calculation - 500

Slaves and Hottentots 2696

Total population of Zwelendani 6663

Stock and Produce.

Horses	-	-	-	-	9,049
Horned cattle	-	-	-	-	52,376
Sheep	-	-	-	-	154,992
Leggers of wine made		-	-	-	220 ¹ / ₂
Muids of wheat reaped in 1797		-	-	-	16,720
— of barley	}				10,554
— of rye					

DISTRICT OF GRAAF REYNET.

The district of Graaf Reynet extends to the eastern extremity of the colony. The Great Fish River, the Tarka, the Bambofsberg, and the Zuureberg divide them from the Kaffers on the east; the Camtoos River, the Gamka or Lions' River, and Nieuwveld Mountains, from the districts of Zwellendam and Stellenbosch on the west; Plettenberg Landmark, the Great Table Mountain, and the Karreeberg from the Bosjesman Hottentots on the north; and it is terminated by the sea-coast on the south. The mean length and breadth of this district may be about 250 by 160 miles, making an area of 40,000 square miles, which is peopled by about 700 families; consequently each family may command 57 square miles of ground, which is more than six times the quantity regulated by Government. Great part, however, has been occasionally abandoned on account of incursions made both by the Kaffers and Bosjesmans. The inhabitants, indeed, are a sort of Nomades, and would long before this have penetrated with their flocks and herds far beyond the present boundaries of the colony, had they not met with a bold and spirited race of people in the Kaffers, who resisted and effectually repelled their encroachments on that side. Their persecution of the Hottentots in their employ has at length roused this people, also, to make an effort for their former independence. Should they succeed, and it is their own fault if they do not, for it appears they are superior in point of numbers, and much so in courage, the whole or the greatest part of the district of Graaf Reynet must, in consequence, be abandoned by the Dutch African peasantry.

The

The boors of this district are entirely graziers ; few attempting to put a plough or a spade into the ground, except in Zwart Kop's Bay, or in some parts of the Sneuwberg, preferring a life of complete indolence and a diet of animal food to the comfort of procuring a supply of daily bread, and a few vegetables, by a very trifling degree of exertion. In Sneuwberg, indeed, the depredations of the locusts are discouraging to the cultivator, as the odds are great he reaps nothing, while this devouring insect remains in the country. About the drofsdy, also, they cultivate a little grain, which they exchange with the grazier for sheep and cattle.

The district of Graaf Reynet is entirely composed of loan-farms, and it is divided as follows :

1. The *Drofsdy*.
2. *Sneuwberg*, consisting of three parts.
3. *Swagers Hoek*.
4. *Bruyntjes Hoogté*.
5. *Camdeboo*.
6. *Zwarte Ruggens*.
7. *Zwarte Kop's River*.
8. *Zuure Veldt*.
9. *Bosjesman's River*.
10. *Tarka*.
11. *Sea-cow River and Rhinoscerosberg*.
12. *Zwarte Berg*.
13. *Nieuwveld* and the *Ghowp*.

1. The *Drofsdy*, or residence of the Landroft, is a small village in the centre of the district, and rather more than 500 miles from Cape Town. It consists in about a dozen mud-houses covered with thatch. That of the Landroft is of the same description, to which is annexed a garden and vineyard; but the grapes here seldom come to perfection, on account of the cold blasts from the Snowy Mountains, at the feet of which the village is situated. The land is red Karroo, and uncommonly fertile where the Sunday River can be brought to flood it. I observed here seventy distinct stems from one single grain of corn.

Under the idea of civilizing the rude boors of this district, Lord Macartney made suitable provision for a clergyman, and the foundation was laid for a large church. Long, however, before the outer walls were built, they thought fit to expel the clergyman that had been sent down to them; and the building was only just finished when the English evacuated the place.

2. *Voor, Middle, and Agter Sneeuwberg*, the fore, middle, and posterior Snowy mountains may be considered as the grand nursery of sheep and horned cattle, particularly of the former. Of these many families are in possession of flocks from two to five thousand. Between the people of these divisions and the Bosjesman Hottentots there is a perpetual warfare, which is imprudently fomented by the former making prisoners for life of the children they take from the latter.

In

In no part of the colony are such immense flocks of the *springbok* as in the divisions of the Snowy Mountains. Five thousand in one group are considered only as a moderate quantity, ten, twelve, or fifteen thousand being sometimes found assembled together, especially when they are about to migrate to some other part of the country. The *bontebok*, the *eland*, the *bartebeest*, and the *gemsbok* are also plentiful, and small game in vast numbers. On the banks of the Fish River are two wells of hepatized water, of the temperature of 88° of Fahrenheit's scale. They are considered to be efficacious in healing sprains and bruises, and favourable to rheumatic complaints, to which the great changeableness of the climate renders the inhabitants subject. In several of the mountains of this division are also found, adhering to the sandstone rocks, large plates of native nitre, from half an inch to an inch in thickness, but not in quantities sufficient to make it an object of attention as an article of commerce.

3. *Swaager's Hoek* is a small division within the mountains at the head of Bruyntjes Hoogté, tolerably well watered and fertile in grain, which, however, is very sparingly cultivated.

4. *Bruyntjes Hoogté* lies upon the banks of the Great Fish River, and is considered as the best division in the whole district for horses and horned cattle, and equally suitable for the cultivation of grain and fruits; but the enormous distance from any market holds out no encouragement to the farmer to sow more grain than is necessary for family use, and many of them take

not the trouble of sowing any. The *bosch bok* and pigmy antelope are common in this district; and buffaloes and rhinoceroses haunt the thickets upon the banks of the Great Fish River.

All the disturbances of Graaf Reynet have originated in this division. Its proximity to the Kaffers held out an irresistible temptation to the boors to wage war against them for the sake of plundering them of their cattle; yet none of the boors are in better circumstances than those of Bruyntjes Hoogté. The very man who was most active in promoting a Kaffer war, according to his *Opgaaff*, had between 800 and 900 head of cattle, and more than 8000 sheep, all of which, in their late disturbances with the Kaffers, he very deservedly lost.

5. *Camdeboo* extends along the feet of the Snowy Mountains, from the drosdy to Bruyntjes Hoogté, and is chiefly composed of Karroo plains, which, however, are extremely fertile in the chasms down which the streams of the mountains constantly flow. The oxen are large and strong, and the sheep little inferior to those of the Snowy Mountains. The beautiful animal the *gnoo* is frequently seen bounding over the plains of Camdeboo, and *springboks* and *hartebeests* are very plentiful.

6. *Zwarte Ruggens* is a rough stoney tract of country to the southward of Camdeboo, very scantily supplied with water, and producing little except succulent plants, among which are two or three species of euphorbia. Few families are found in this division,

division, but here and there in the neighbourhood of the Sunday River, which runs through it. The cattle and sheep are small, but generally in good condition, notwithstanding the apparent scarcity, I might almost say total absence, of grass.

7. *Zwarte Kop's River* is a fertile and extensive division, lying to the southward of the *Zwarte Ruggens*, and is capable of producing an abundant supply of grain, convenient to be delivered at a trifling expence at the bay, which we have already had occasion to notice. About fifteen miles to the westward of the bay are large forests of timber trees, near which there is every appearance of a rich mine of lead, as I particularly noticed in the former volume. I had occasion also to speak of the salt lake near the bay, and the plentiful supply of that article which it produces. Wax from the *myrica cerifera* and aloes might be furnished by this division as articles of commerce.

8. *Zuure Veldt* is an extensive plain country stretching from the Sunday River in *Zwart Kop's Bay* to the *Great Fish River*, and is the same kind of good arable or pasture land as the plains of the *Autiniquas* division in *Zwellendam*, but it is now exclusively in the possession of the *Kaffers*, from whom, indeed, it was originally taken forcibly by the boors. The great chasms towards the sea-coast, that are filled with thickets, abound in elephants and buffaloes; and in the *Great Fish River* are occasionally, at least, a few of the hippopotamus or river horse.

9. *Brs-*

9. *Bosjesman's River* joins the *Zuure Veld* to the northward, and is a dry hilly country without any verdure, except in the hollows. It is thinly inhabited.

10. The *Tarka* is a small division at the north-eastern extremity of the colony, almost entirely deserted on account of its proximity to several hordes of *Bosjesman* Hottentots. It was in the mountains that terminate this division that I found the drawing of the unicorn on the caverns. The *bontebok*, the *eland*, and the *gnoo* are common in the *Tarka*.

11. *Sea-cow River* and *Rhinocerosberg* lie to the northward of the *Snowy Mountains*, and consist of detached hills rising out of extensive plains, and are well covered with grass. All kinds of game are particularly abundant in these divisions, and there is scarcely a species of antelope within the limits of the colony that may not be met with here. The inhabitants are in a state of perpetual warfare with the *Bosjesmans*, and are frequently obliged to desert this part of the country.

12. *Zwarte Berg* is a portion of the mountain of the same name in the district of *Zwellendam*, to which, indeed, this also ought properly to belong. Sheep and horned cattle are the chief produce of the farmers.

13. *Nieuwveldt* and the *Ghoep* are also portions of the mountains of the same names, in the *Stellenbosch* district, and extend from thence to the *Sneuwberg*. They are occasionally deserted on account of the incursions of the *Bosjesman* Hottentots.

The

The Opgaaff list taken on oath at the droefdy of Graaf Reynet, in the year 1798, was as follows :

<i>Population.</i>			
Men	-	-	940
Women	-	-	689
Sons	-	-	1170
Daughters	-	-	1138
Servants, school-masters with their families	-	-	189
Persons of colour and their families			136
			4262
		Christians	4262
Men slaves	-	-	445
Women slaves	-	-	330
Slave children	-	-	189
			964
		Slaves	964
Hottentots in the whole district (taken in the Opgaaff)	-	-	8947
			14,173
		Total population of Graaf Reynet	14,173

Stock and Produce.

Horses	-	-	-	7,392
Horned cattle	-	-	-	118,306
Sheep	-	-	-	780,274
				Leggers

Leggers of wine made	-	-	187, $\frac{1}{8}$
Muids of wheat reaped 1797	-	-	11,283 $\frac{1}{2}$
— of barley	-	-	5,193 $\frac{1}{4}$

TOTAL AMOUNT of the Opgaaff Lists of the four Districts, being the exact State of the *Population, Stock, and Produce* of the whole Colony (the British Army and Navy, and British Settlers not included) in the Year 1798.

Population.	Cape.	Zwellendam.	Stellenbosch.	Graaf Reynet.	Totals.
Christians	6261	3967	7256	4262	21,746
Slaves	11,891	2196	10,703	964	25,754
Hottentots		500	5000	8947	14,447
Total	18,152	6663	22,959	14,173	61,947
Stock and produce					
Horses	8334	9049	22,661	7392	47,436
Heads of cattle	20,957	52,376	59,567	118,306	251,206
Sheep	61,575	154,992	451,695	780,274	1,448,536
Hogs	758				758
Wine plants	1,560,109		11,500,000		13,060,109
Leggers of wine	786 $\frac{1}{2}$	220 $\frac{1}{2}$	7914	187 $\frac{1}{8}$	9108 $\frac{1}{8}$
Muids of wheat	32,962	16,720	77,063	11,283 $\frac{1}{2}$	138,028 $\frac{1}{2}$
— of barley	18,819	10,554	32,872	5193 $\frac{1}{4}$	67,438 $\frac{1}{4}$
— of rye	529		2053		2582

TENURES OF LANDS.

The Dutch Government having obtained a tract of country from the Hottentots, at first by purchase and extended afterwards by force, made grants of land to the settlers on the four following tenures:

1. Loan

1. *Loan lands.*
2. *Gratuity lands.*
3. *Quit rents.*
4. *Freeholds.*

1. The most ancient tenure is that of Loan lands. These were grants, made to the original settlers, of certain portions of land to be held on yearly leases, on condition of paying to Government an annual rent of twenty-four rix dollars. Every farm was to consist of the same quantity, and be subject to the same rent, without any regard being paid to the quality of the land. And though the lease was made out for one year only, yet the payment of the rent was considered as a renewal; so that the tenure amounted, in fact, to a lease held in perpetuity. And the buildings erected on it, together with the vineyards and fruit groves planted, called the *upstals*, were saleable like any other property, and the lease continued to the purchaser.

When application was intended to be made for the grant of a leasehold farm, the person applying stuck down a stake at the place where the house was meant to be erected. The overseer of the division was then called to examine that it did not encroach on the neighbouring farms, that is to say, that no part of any of the surrounding farms were within half an hour's walk of the stake; or, in other words, that a radius of about a mile and half, with the stake as a centre, swept a circle which did not intersect any part of the adjoining farms. In such case the overseer certified that the loan farm applied for was tenable, otherwise not. And as it generally happened that the site of

the house was determined by some spring or water-course, the stake was so placed that the circumference of the circle described left a space between the new, and some adjoining, farm of one, two, or more miles in diameter. This intermediate space, if less than three miles in diameter, was considered as not tenable, and, consequently, if any person (willing to pay the established rent for a smaller quantity of land than Government allowed) applied for such intermediate piece of ground, his application was sure to be rejected. Whether the Government had any design of dispersing the people by such an absurd system, under the idea of keeping them more easily in subjection, I can't pretend to say, but it thought proper to encourage the continuance of the system, which is in full force to this moment.

The disputes about these stakes or *baakens*, as they call them, are endless; and partly through accident, but frequently by design, the stakes are so placed that, on an average throughout the whole colony, the farms are at twice the distance, and consequently contain four times the quantity of land allowed by Government.

The number of these loan farms registered in the office of the receiver of the land revenue, on closing the books in 1798, were,

In the the district of the Cape	-	110
— Stellenbosch and Drakenstein	-	689
		<hr/>
Carried forward		799

	Brought forward	799
In Zwelldam	- -	541
— Graaf Reynet	- -	492
	Total	<u>1832</u>

Supposing each farm to consist only of the usual allowance, or a square of three miles the side, the quantity of land in all the loan farms will amount to 10,552,320 acres; and the annual rent they produce is about 44,000 rix-dollars, which is at the rate of about eight-tenths of a farthing an acre. Yet, moderate as these rents are, the Dutch Government could not prevent their running in arrears, the amount of which, at the capture, was upwards of 200,000 rix dollars. From the payment of this arrear they were excused by the British Government. Yet, nevertheless, they pay the small rent reserved so unwillingly and irregularly, that new arrears are every day accruing.

2. Gratuity lands are such as were originally granted in loan, but, on petition of the holders, in consequence of some supposed services done to Government, have been converted into a sort of customary copyhold liable to a certain rent, which, like the loan-lands, is continued at 24 rix dollars a-year. Such estates, except a few in Zwelldam, are at no great distance from the Cape, and, in general, are in a better state of cultivation than the loan farms. Their number, as registered in the Land Revenue Office, are,

TRAVELS IN

In the district of the Cape	-	-	43
— Stellenbosch and Drakenstein	-	-	46
— Zwellendam	-	-	18
			<hr/>
		Total	107
			<hr/>

3. The quit-rents arise from pieces of waste ground which, from their contiguity or convenience to an estate, have been allowed by Government to be occupied by the owners of such estates upon a lease of fifteen years, on condition of their paying an annual rent of one shilling an acre. Before the expiration of the lease a prolongation of the term for another fifteen years is petitioned, and the renewal seems now to have become a matter of course. Of such grants there are,

In the Cape district	-	-	25
— Stellenbosch and Drakenstein	-	-	10
			<hr/>
		Total	35
			<hr/>

4. Real estates held in fee-simple and subject to no rent are chiefly situated in the Cape district or its vicinity. These are the choicest patches of land, and have originally been sold or granted to the early settlers in parcels of about 60 morgen, or 120 English acres. It is natural to suppose that lands held in fee-simple should be in a higher state of improvement than those held

held by any other tenure, and so, in fact, they are, though by no means brought to that degree which might be expected. A Cape farmer has no idea of bestowing much labour or employing his capital in the prospect of a distant profit. He is unwilling to plant trees, because he may not live to reap the benefit of them. Yet, in this climate, there is no great interval of time between dropping the seed into the ground and the growth of the tree. The oak, the stone-pine, the poplar, and the native silver tree are all of quick vegetation. One *Van Reenen*, a brewer at the foot of the Table Mountain, on the east side, planted a wood of the silver tree twelve years ago, on waste ground, from which he now supplies the town and garrison with fuel; and for which he refused the offer of between three and four thousand pounds as it stood on the spot.

Estates in the Cape remain but a short time in the same family. Their descent is seldom settled, as by the laws of the colony all the children are entitled to equal shares of the property at the death of the parents. The advantages to which primogeniture in some countries entitles, are here entirely unknown. Superior in point of equity, as such a rule must be acknowledged, the consequence of it is an indifference to all improvement of estates beyond what will be productive of immediate profit. The proprietor endeavours to enrich himself by lending out money, increasing his stock of slaves, of cattle, and furniture, or by purchasing other estates, but he rarely thinks of improving them. He is little ambitious of leaving a name behind him, or of settling any branch of his family upon the same spot that raised him to independence and affluence. Old

Gloete,

Cloete, the late proprietor of Constantia, forms a solitary exception from this remark. Having raised himself from the situation of trumpeter to a regiment into affluence, his whole attention was directed to the improvement of his estates, which he divided among his children. His favourite Constantia he left to the son who bore his own name, and it is provided, in his will, that this estate shall descend directly in the male line to him who bears his christian name, or collaterally to the nearest of kin to his own christian name and a *Cloete*. The consequence of which is, that Constantia is the most improving estate in the colony.

There are, perhaps, few countries where property so frequently changes hands as at the Cape of Good Hope. Not only do estates go out of a family at the death of the parents, when they are sure to be sold in order to make a division of the property among the children, but there seems to be an universal propensity to buy, sell, and exchange. Of this the Government has taken the advantage, and imposed a duty of four per cent. on all immovable property that is transferred from one person to another. Two-thirds of the property, disposed of at the Cape, is by public auction, on which the vendue master charges two per cent., $1\frac{1}{4}$ per cent. for Government, and $\frac{1}{4}$ per cent. for himself; so that the duty on transferring an estate amounts to 6 per cent. upon the value. In fifteen sales, therefore, by adding the expence of stamps and writings, Government runs away with the whole capital; and I have been informed, there are instances, within the memory of many persons, of estates being sold this number of times. I, myself, purchased a small estate that, within the last eight years, has changed hands six times;

times; paying thrice a duty to Government of 6 per cent. and thrice of 4 per cent., making a tax of 30 per cent. on the value of the property. It may be observed, that this rage for buying and selling makes the transfer and the public vendue duties two of the most productive branches of the public revenue.

CONDITION OF THE INHABITANTS.

If the condition of mankind was to be estimated entirely by the means it possessed of supplying an abundance, or preventing a scarcity, of the necessary articles of life, and it must be confessed they constitute a very essential part of its comforts, the European colonists of the Cape of Good Hope might be pronounced amongst the happiest of men. But as all the pleasures of this world are attended with evils, like roses placed on stems that are surrounded with thorns, so these people, in the midst of plenty unknown in other countries, can scarcely be considered as objects of envy. Debarred from every mental pleasure arising from the perusal of books or the frequent conversation of friends, each succeeding day is a repetition of the past, whose irksome sameness is varied only by the accidental call of a traveller, the less welcome visits of the Bosjesmans, or the terror of being put to death by their own slaves, or the Hottentots in their employ. The only counterpoise to this wearisome and miserable state of existence, is a superfluity of the necessaries of life, as far as regards the support of the animal functions, which all, of every description among the colonists,

have the means of acquiring with little exertion either of body or mind.

A short sketch of the circumstances and resources of the several classes of the colonists will be sufficient to convey a general idea of their respective conditions. The 22,000 Christian inhabitants that compose the population of this colony may be reduced into four classes.

1. *People of the town.*
2. *Vine-growers.*
3. *Grain-farmers.*
4. *Graziers.*

1. The people of the town we have already observed to be an idle dissolute race of men, subsisting chiefly by the labour of their slaves. In order to derive a fixed income and to avoid any trouble, they require each slave to bring them a certain sum at the end of every week; all that he can earn above this sum is for himself, and many are industrious enough to raise as much money in a few years as is sufficient to purchase their freedom, and sometimes that of their children. The price of provisions and the price of labour bear no sort of proportion. Butcher's meat is only about twopence a pound, and good brown bread, such as all the slaves eat, one penny a pound. A common labouring slave gets from two shillings to half a crown a day, and a mechanic or artificer five and six shillings a day. The people of Cape Town are almost all of them petty dealers, and they have a remarkable propensity for public vendues. Not
a day

a day passes without several of these being held both before and after dinner. And it is no uncommon thing to see the same identical articles exposed at two different sales the same day. In fact, a vendue is a kind of lottery. A man buys a set of goods in the morning, which he again exposes to sale in the evening, sometimes gaining and sometimes losing. Yet all moveable property, on sale by public auction, is liable to a duty of 5 per cent., $3\frac{1}{2}$ of which the auctioneer is accountable for to Government; the remainder is for himself. I cannot give a stronger instance of the rage for vendues than by observing that in four successive months of the year 1801, the amount of property sold by public auction was 1,500,000 rix dollars, a sum equal to the whole quantity of paper money in circulation, which, indeed, may be considered as the only money, of late years, that has circulated in the country. In what manner, therefore, these articles were to be paid for is a sort of mystery, which, however, the declining state of the colony may before this have explained.

The better sort of people are those who are employed in the different departments of Government, but their salaries were so small that most of them were petty merchants. Others have estates in the country and derive a revenue from their produce. Others again are a sort of agents for the country boors, and keep houses to lodge them when they make their annual visit to the town. These are a kind of Jew brokers, who live entirely by defrauding the simple boors in disposing of their produce, and purchasing for them necessaries in return. A boor in the Cape can do nothing for himself. Unaccustomed to any

society but those of his family and his Hottentots, he is the most awkward and helpless being on earth, when he gets into Cape Town, and neither buys nor sells but through his agent. The emancipated slaves and people of colour are generally artificers; many of them support their families by fishing. During the whole year there is great plenty and variety of fish caught in Table Bay, and cheap enough for the very poorest to make a daily use of.

House-rent, fuel, and clothing are all dear; yet, I will be bold to say, there is no town nor city in all Europe, where the mass of the people are better lodged or better clothed; and fire is less necessary here than in most parts of Europe. The keep of a horse in Cape Town was never less, under the English Government, than 25*l.* sterling a year, yet every butcher, baker, petty shopkeeper, and artificer, had his team of four, six, or eight horses and his chaise. It is true, his horses were lent out for hire one day, and drew himself and his family another; but still it seemed inexplicable how they contrived to keep up an establishment so much beyond their apparent means. Their creditors, I imagine, long before this, will best be able to give a satisfactory explanation, since British money has ceased to circulate among them.

It is true they are neither burthened with taxes nor assessments. Except on public vendues and transfer of immoveable property, Government has been remarkably tender in imposing on them burthens, which, however, they might very well afford to bear. Their parochial assessments are equally moderate. At

the first establishment of the colony a kind of capitation tax was levied under the name of *Lion and Tyger money*. The fund so raised was applied to the encouragement of destroying beasts of prey, of which these two were considered as the most formidable. But as lions and tygers have long been as scarce in the neighbourhood of the Cape, as wolves are in England, the name of the assessment has been changed, though the assessment itself remains, and is applied to the repairs of the roads, streets, water-courses, and other public works. The sum to be raised is fixed by the police, and the quota assigned to each is proportioned to the circumstances of the individual; the limits of the assessment being from half a crown to forty shillings. The persons liable must be burghers, or such as are above sixteen years of age, and enrolled among the burgher inhabitants. The ordinary amount is fixed at about 5000 rix dollars a year.

Another assessment to which heads of families are liable is called *Chimney and Heartb money*. This is, properly speaking, a house tax, fixed at the rate of eighteenpence a month, or 4½ rix dollars a year, for every house or fire-place. This should seem to be an unfair assessment, as the richest and the poorest inhabitant, the man with a large house and he who possesses only a cottage, are liable to the same contribution; as it is presumed that every house has its kitchen fire-place and no other. The amount of this assessment is about 5200 rix dollars, which, at the above rate, corresponds very nearly with the number of houses in the town.

They

They are subject to no tythes nor church-rates whatsoever, towards the maintenance of the clergy; these being paid in the most liberal manner out of the treasury of Government. Nor is any demand made upon them for the support of the poor. The very few that, through age or infirmities, are unable to maintain themselves, are supported out of the superfluities of the church. Where the mere articles of eating and drinking are so reasonably procured as in the Cape, it is no great degree of charity for the rich to support their poor relations, and, accordingly, it is the common practice of the country. Those who come under the denomination of poor are, for the most part, emancipated slaves, who may not have the benefit of such relations. Nor does the church provide for such on uncertain grounds. Every person manumitting a slave must pay to the church fifty six dollars or ten pounds, and at the same time give security that such slave shall not become burdensome to the church for a certain number of years.

The police of the Town is committed to the management of a board consisting of six burghers, called the Burgher Senate. The functions of this board are various and important, but they are performed in that careless and slovenly manner which is ever the case where men are compelled to accept an office to which there is annexed neither pay nor emolument. The only exception that I know of is in the situation of an English justice of peace. In every public employment of a permanent nature, like that of the Burgher Senate, if the emoluments are not such as to make it worth a man's while to keep his place, the odds
are

are great that the duties of it will be neglected. This was the rock upon which the Dutch, in all their East India settlements, split. The appointments of their servants were so small, that those who held them could not live without cheating their employers; and this was carried on to such an extent, as to become a common observation that, in proportion as the Company's finances were impoverished, their servants were enriched.

The business of the Burgher Senate consists in seeing that the streets be kept clean and in proper repair; that no nuisance be thrown into the public avenues leading to the town; that no encroachments be made on public property; that no disorderly houses be suffered to remain; no impositions practised on the public; no false weights nor measures used. They are authorized to regulate the prices of bread; to enquire from time to time into the state of the harvest; and to take precautions against a scarcity of corn. They are to devise measures and suggest plans to Government that may seem proper and effective for keeping up a constant succession of coppice wood for fuel in the Cape district. They are directed to take particular care that the tradesmen of the town, and more especially the smiths and cartwrights, impose not on the country boors in the prices of utensils necessary for carrying on the business of agriculture. They are to report such crimes, trespasses, and misdemeanors, as come within their knowledge, to the Fiscal, who is the Chief Magistrate of the police, and Attorney-General of the colony.

It would be in vain to expect that such various and important duties should be faithfully fulfilled for a number of years with-

cut

out any consideration of profit or hope of reward; or that every advantage would not be taken which the situation might offer. Some of the members of the Burgher Senate sent their old and infirm slaves to work at the public roads, and received for them the same wages as were paid to able-bodied men; others had teams of horses and waggons that never wanted employ. These things are trifling in themselves, but the public business suffered by it. When the English took the place, the streets were in so ruinous a condition as scarcely to be passable with safety. A small additional assessment was laid upon the inhabitants, and in the course of five years they had nearly completed a thorough repair of the streets to the great improvement of the town. If they should be induced to light the streets with lamps, it would not only add greatly to the embellishment of the town, but prevent a number of accidents that happen in the night time among the slaves. It would also tend to the encouragement of the whale fishery there. But the greatest of all improvements, and one easily to be accomplished, would be to conduct the water into the houses. The head of the spring, where it flows into the pipes which conduct it to the present fountains, is higher than the roof of the highest house in the town; yet, by a strange piece of ignorance or perverseness, they have carried it down to the lowest point on the plain leading to the castle, so that those who live at the upper end of the town have half a mile to fetch water, which is done by two slaves, who consume many hours in the day in this employ, and are a great annoyance at the public fountain, where they are quarrelling and fighting from morning till night.

The

The pleasures of the inhabitants are chiefly of the sensual kind, and those of eating, drinking, and smoking predominate; principally the two latter, which, without much intermission, occupy the whole day. They have no relish for public amusements. They have no exercise but that of dancing. A new theatre was erected, but plays were considered to be the most stupid of all entertainments, whether the performance was English, French, or German. To listen three hours to a conversation was of all punishments the most dreadful. I remember, on one occasion only, to have observed the audience highly entertained; this was at an old German soldier smoking his pipe; and the encouragement he met with in this part of his character was so great, and his exertions proportioned to it, that the whole house was presently in a cloud of tobacco smoke.

There is neither a bookseller's shop in the whole town, nor a book society. A club called the *Concordia* has lately aspired to a collection of books, but the pursuits of the principal part of the members are drinking, smoking, and gaming. Under the direction of the church is a library, which was left by an individual for the use of the public, but the public seldom trouble it. In this collection are some excellent books, particularly rare and valuable editions of the classics, books of travels and general history, acts of learned societies, dictionaries, and church history. Books are rarely found in Cape Town to constitute any part of the furniture of a house. So little value do they set on education, that neither Government nor the church, nor their combined efforts, by persuasion or extortion, could raise a

sum sufficient to establish a proper public school in the colony ; and few of the natives are in circumstances to enable them to send their children for education to Europe. But those few who have had this advantage generally, on their return, relapse into the common habits of the colonists. I repeat, that if the measure of general prosperity was to be estimated according to the ease of procuring abundance of food, the people of the Cape may be considered as the most prosperous on earth, for there is not a beggar in the whole colony, and no example of any person suffering for want of the common necessaries of life.

2. The wine growers, or as they are usually called at the Cape the wine boors, are a class of people who, to the blessings of plenty, add a sort of comfort which is unknown to the rest of the peasantry. They have not only the best houses and the most valuable estates, but, in general, their domestic economy is managed in a more comfortable manner than is usually found among the country farmers. Most of them are descendants of the French families who first introduced the vine. Their estates are mostly freehold, in extent about 120 English acres, and the greater part is employed in vineyards and garden grounds. Their corn they usually purchase for money or in exchange for wine. Their sheep also, for family use, they must purchase, though many of them hold loan farms on the other side of the mountains. The produce of their farms, however, is sufficient for keeping as many milk cows as are necessary for the family ; and they have abundance of poultry. The season for bringing
their

their wine to market is from September to the new vintage in March, but generally in the four concluding months of the year, after which their draught oxen are sent away either to their own farms or others in the country till they are again wanted. The deep sandy roads over the Cape isthmus require fourteen or sixteen oxen to draw two leggers of wine, whose weight is not $2\frac{1}{2}$ tons.

The tax upon their produce is confined to that part of it which is brought to the Cape market, and is at the rate of three rix dollars for every legger of wine, and the same sum for every legger of brandy that passes the barrier. All that is consumed at home, or sold in the country, is free of duty. Neither are they subject to any parochial taxes or assessments, except a small capitation tax towards the repair of the streets and avenues leading to the town, and the *Lion and Tyger money* for the exigences of the district. They are equally exempt, with the people of the town, from church and poor rates; the former being liberally provided for by Government, and the other description of people not being known in the country districts. The wine farmers take their pleasure to Cape Town, or make frequent excursions into the country, in their tent waggons drawn by a team of six or eight horses; an equipage from which the boor derives a vast consequence over his neighbour, who may only possess a waggon drawn by oxen.

The following rough sketch, which was given to me by one of the most respectable wine boors, of his outgoings and returns, will serve to shew the condition of this class of colonists.

Outgoings.

The first cost of his estate was	R. D.	15,000
15 Slaves <i>a</i> 300 Rd. each	-	4,500
80 Wine leggers <i>a</i> 12		960
Implements for pres- sing, distilling, &c.		500
3 Team of oxen		500
2 Waggon	-	800
Horse-waggon, and team	-	900
Furniture, utensils, &c.		2000

Amount	25,160	Interest 6 per cent.	R. D.	1509	5
3 Sheep per week for family use, 156 per year, <i>a</i> 2½ Rd.				390	0
Clothing 15 slaves <i>a</i> 15 Rd. each per year		-		225	0
Corn for bread 36 muids <i>a</i> 3 Rd.		-	-	108	0
Tea, coffee, and sugar		-	-	150	0
Clothing for the family and contingencies		-		350	0
Duty at the barrier on 120 leggers of wine and brandy				360	0
Wear and tear 100 Rd. parochial assessments 20				120	0

Amount of outgoings carried over 3212 5

Amount

Amount of outgoings brought over R. D. 3212 5

Returns.

100 Leggers of wine brought to market *a* 30 3000

20 Ditto of brandy ditto *a* 50 - - 1000

The wine and brandy sold to the country boors, with the fruit and poultry brought to the Cape market, are more than sufficient to balance every other contingent and extraordinary expence.

	4000	4000
Amount of returns	4000	4000
Balance in favour of the farmer	R. D. 787 3	787 3
	or £. 157 8 3	157 8 3

which sum may be considered as a net annual profit, after every charge on the farm and on housekeeping has been defrayed.

The payment of an estate purchased is made easy to the purchaser. The customary conditions are to pay by three instalments, one-third ready money, one-third in one year, and the remaining third at the end of the second year; and the latter two-thirds bear no interest. And even the first instalment he can borrow of Government, through the loan bank, by giving the estate as a mortgage and two sufficient securities. So that

very large estates may be purchased at the Cape with very little money, which is the chief reason of the multiplicity of vendues.

3. The corn-boors live chiefly in the Cape district and those parts of Stellenbosch and Drakenstein that are not distant more than two or three days' journey from the Cape. Their farms are some freehold property, some gratuity land, but most of them loan farms. Many of these people are in good circumstances, and are considered in rank next to the wine-boor. The quantity of corn they bring to market is from a hundred to a thousand muids each, according to the quality of their farm, but more commonly to their skill and industry. They supply, also, the wine-boor and the grazier. The grain sold to these in the country is subject to no tax nor tythe; but a duty amounting not quite to one-tenth of the value is paid at the barrier for all grain passing towards Cape Town. Their parochial assessments are the same as those of the wine-boor.

The colonists of the Cape are miserable agriculturists, and may be said to owe their crops more to the native goodness of the soil and favourable climate, than to any exertions of skill or industry. Their plough is an unwieldy machine drawn by fourteen or sixteen oxen, just skims the surface, and, if the soil happens to be a little stiff, is as frequently out of the ground as in it; hence, in most of their corn fields, may be observed large patches of ten, fifteen, or twenty square yards without a stem of grain upon them. Such grounds, when sown and harrowed, are infinitely more rough than the roughest lea-ploughing in England. They have not the least idea of rolling the sandy
soils,

soils, which are sometimes so light as to be sown without ploughing. Sometimes, towards the end of the rainy season, they turn the ground and let it lie fallow till the next seed-time; but they rarely give themselves the trouble of manuring, except for barley.

For returns of corn in general they reckon upon fifteen fold; in choice places from twenty to thirty, and even much greater where they have the command of water. The grain is not thrashed, but trodden out in circular floors by cattle. The chaff and short straw of barley is preserved as fodder for their horses, and for sale; the rest of the straw is scattered about by the winds. They do not even give themselves the trouble of throwing it into the folds where their cattle are pent up by night, which would be the means of procuring them a very considerable supply of manure, and, at the same time, be of service to their cattle in cold winter nights.

The following rough statement will serve to shew the circumstances of an ordinary corn-boor of the Cape.

Outgoings.

The price of the opstal or buildings		
on his loan farm	-	R. D. 7000
50 Oxen a 15 Rd.	-	750
50 Cows a 8 Rd.	-	400
12 Horses a 40	-	480
		<hr/>
Carried over		8630

	Brought over	R. D.	8630		
6 Slaves at 300 Rd.	-	-	1800		
2 Waggon	-	-	800		
Furniture	-	-	1000		
Implements of husbandry	-	-	500		
			<hr/>	12,730	Interest 763 6
Clothing for slaves	-	-	-	90	0
Ditto for the family	-	-	-	150	0
Tea and sugar	-	-	-	100	0
Duty on corn brought to market	150.	Parish taxes	20	170	0
Contingencies, wear and tear, &c.			-	150	0
Corn sold to the wine-boors and graziers more than sufficient to defray all other expences					
				<hr/>	<hr/>
	Amount of outgoings			1423	6

Returns.

300 Muids of corn a 4 Rd.	R. D.	1200		
100 Ditto of barley a 3 Rd.	-	300		
6 Loads of chaff a 32 Rd.	-	192		
1000 lbs. butter a 1½ Sk.	-	250		
5 Horses sold annually a 40 Rd.		200		
		<hr/>		
	Amount of returns			2142 0
				<hr/>
	Balance in favour of the farmer	R. D.	718	2
			<hr/>	<hr/>
			or £.	143 13
				<hr/>

4. The

4. The graziers, properly so called, are those of Graaf Reynet and other distant parts of the colony. These are a class of men, of all the rest, the least advanced in civilization. Many of them, towards the borders of the settlement, are perfect Nomades, wander about from place to place without any fixed habitation, and live in straw-huts similar to those of the Hottentots. Those who are fixed to one or two places are little better with regard to the hovels in which they live. These have seldom more than two apartments, and frequently only one, in which the parents with six or eight children and the house Hottentots all sleep; their bedding consists generally of skins. Their hovels are variously constructed, sometimes the walls being mud or clay baked in the sun, sometimes rods and poles, and frequently a sort of wattling plaistered over with a mixture of earth and cow-dung, both within and without; and they are rudely covered with a thatch of reeds that is rarely waterproof.

Their clothing is very slight; the men wear generally a broad brimmed hat, a blue shirt, and leather pantaloons, no stockings, but a pair of dried skin shoes. The women have a thick quilted cap that ties with two broad flaps under the chin, and falls behind across the shoulders; and this is constantly worn in the hottest weather; a short jacket and a petticoat, no stockings, and frequently without shoes. The bed for the master and mistress of the family is an oblong frame of wood, supported on four feet, and reticulated with thongs of a bullock's hide, so as to support a kind of mattress made of skins sewed together, and sometimes stuffed with wool. In winter they use woollen

blankets. If they have a table it is generally of the boor's own making, but very often the large chest that is fitted across the end of their ox-waggon serves for this purpose. The bottoms of their chairs or stools are net-work of leather thongs. A large iron pot serves both to boil and to broil their meat. They use no linen for the table; no knives, forks, nor spoons. The boor carries in the pocket of his leather breeches a large knife, with which he carves for the rest of the family, and which stands him in as many and various services as the little dagger of *Hudibras*.

Their huts and their persons are equally dirty, and their whole appearance betrays an indolence of body, and a low groveling mind. Their most urgent wants are satisfied in the easiest possible manner; and for this end they employ means nearly as gross as the original natives, whom they affect so much to despise. If necessity did not sometimes set the invention to work, the Cape boor would feel no spur to assist himself in any thing; if the surface of the country was not covered with sharp pebbles, he would not even make for himself his skin-shoes. The women, as invariably happens in societies that are little advanced in civilization, are much greater drudges than the men, yet are far from being industrious; they make soap and candles, the former to send to Cape Town in exchange for tea and sugar, and the latter for home-consumption. But all the little trifling things, that a state of refinement so sensibly feels the want of, are readily dispensed with by the Cape boor. Thongs cut from skins serve, on all occasions, as a succedaneum for rope; and the tendons of wild animals divided into fibres
are

are a substitute for thread. When I wanted ink, equal quantities of brown sugar and soot, moistened with a little water, were brought to me, and soot was substituted for a wafer.

To add to the uncleanness of their huts, the folds or *kraals* in which their cattle remain at nights are immediately fronting the door, and, except in the Sneuwberg, where the total want of wood obliges them to burn dung cut out like peat, these kraals are never on any occasion cleaned out; so that in old established places they form mounds from ten to twenty feet high. The lambing season commences before the rains finish; and it sometimes happens that half a dozen or more of these little creatures, that have been lambed over night, are found smothered in the wet dung. The same thing happens to the young calves; yet, so indolent and helpless is the boor, that rather than yoke his team to his waggon and go to a little distance for wood to build a shed, he sees his stock destroyed from day to day and from year to year, without applying the remedy which common sense so clearly points out, and which requires neither much expence nor great exertions to accomplish.

If the Arcadian shepherds, who were certainly not so rich, were as uncomfortable in their cottages as the Cape boors, their poets must have been woefully led astray by the muse. But Pegasus was always fond of playing his gambols in the flowery regions of fancy. Without a fiction, the people of the Cape consider Graaf Reynet as the Arcadia of the colony.

Few of the distant boors have more than one slave, and many none; but the number of Hottentots amounts, on an average in Graaf Reynet, to thirteen to each family. The inhumanity with which they treat this nation I have already had occasion to notice*. The boor has few good traits in his character, but
this

* In the second chapter of this work I have given an account of fifteen innocent Hottentots that were inhumanly butchered by the boors. A pamphlet has just been put into my hands which was published in the Cape by Baron de P., private Secretary to the Governor, and in which the same fact is noticed in the following words:—" Le Capitaine des Hottentots, nommé *Kouwinnoub* revetu des marques
" distinctives de son grade militaire, par un baton orné d'une pomme d'airain où
" les armes du Gouvernement étoient gravés dessus, muni de plus d'un pasport
" signé par un des membres du Gouvernement, cherchoit avec quinze Hottentots
" des feuilles de tabac dans les plaines de Sneuwberg; les payfans se rappelloient
" peutêtre que trois années passées, ces fidèles soldats avoient servis le Gouverne-
" ment, pour les contraindre à l'obéissance, et que le moment étoit favorable
" pour se venger de ses malheureux. Conduits par un *Veld-cornet*, nommé *Burgers*,
" ils se saisirent de la troupe qui ne suspectoit aucun mal, et non obstant toutes les
" preuves qui parloient pour eux on convint qu'ils étoient criminels, et qu'ils
" falloit les traiter en conséquence; ainsi la *Cour de Justice russe* résolut de les
" attacher à un arbre, et les forcer par la torture à une confession de crimes, qu'ils
" n'avoient eu aucune intention de commettre; les coups redoublés et les souff-
" rances inhumaines auxquels ils oppoïent les promesses s'ils vouloient avouer ce
" qu'on leur demandoit, fit qu'on leur arracha la déclaration malheureuse, qu'ils
" étoient venus dans l'intention de piller les campagnes avoisines des colons; la cour
" n'eut de plus grand empressement que de coucher par écrit un aveu que la
" torture, et l'espoir de regagner la liberté avoit arraché à ces victimes innocentes;
" ils ajouterent leurs signatures à cette déclaration pour attester la vérité du fait,
" la cour passa à la conclusion, et les membres voterent généralement pour la
" mort; l'exécution de la sentence suivit le moment après, et les Hottentots
" furent fusillés.——Une demi année s'écoule depuis cet événement, et la
" justice ne s'en est point mêlée jusqu'ici je n'oserois en dire les raisons."

" A Hot-

this is the worst. Not satisfied with defrauding them of the little earnings of their industry, and inflicting the most cruel and

“ A Hottentot captain, of the name of *Kouwinnou*, bearing the distinguishing mark of his rank (a stick, on the brass head of which were engraven the arms of his Majesty), and furnished, moreover, with a passport signed by one of the members of Government, went, accompanied by fifteen Hottentots, to procure a few leaves of tobacco in the plains of Sneuwberg. The boors, recollecting, perhaps, that three years ago these faithful soldiers had served the Government by keeping them in order, thought it a favourable opportunity to revenge themselves on these unhappy creatures. Led on by a *Veld cornet*, of the name of *Burgers*, they seized the whole company, who suspected no ill; and, notwithstanding all the proofs in their favour, it was agreed that they were criminals, and that they must be treated accordingly. The *Boorish Court of Justice* resolved, therefore, to bind them to a tree, and to draw from them by torture a confession of crimes, of which a thought had never entered into their heads; to reiterate blows and inhuman tortures they held out promises of forgiveness, if they would confess all that was required of them; and by these means they forced from them the unfortunate declaration that they came with an intention to plunder the neighbourhood. The only concern of *the Court* was to write down a confession, which the application of the torture and the hope of being set at liberty had wrung from these innocent victims. The boors put their names to this declaration, as an attestation of the truth, and made an end of the business by voting for their death. The sentence was instantly put in execution, and the poor Hottentots were shot.—A whole half year has passed away since this event, and justice hitherto has not interfered, I should not dare to say wherefore.”

I shall extract another instance of the savage brutality of an African boor, recorded in this pamphlet, which, if possible, exceeds all that have yet been given. “ Des que les Anglois avoient quittés le fort un colon nommée Ferrira, de famille Portugaise s'en rendit le maitre, et en prit possession pour lors, ce qui durà jusqu'au l'arrivée du detachement que le Gouvernement y a envoyé sous les ordres du Major Von Gilten, et qui y commande en ce moment. Les
“ Caffres

and brutal punishments for every trifling fault, they have a constant practice of retaining the wife and children and turning

“ Caffres croiant que la dernière paix avoit finie tout démêlé entre eux envoyèrent une bête à tuer au nouveau commandant du fort, comme une marque d’amitié et de réconciliation ; le Caffre le fit conduire par un Hottentot et Ferreira par reconnaissance se saisit du Caffre, *le brula tout vif*, attacha le pauvre Hottentot à un arbre, *lui coupa un morceau de la chair de sa cuisse, le lui fit manger tout crue*, et le relacha ensuite.”

“ As soon as the English had abandoned the fort (at Algoa Bay) a boor named Ferreira, of a Portuguese family, made himself master of it, and kept possession till the arrival of a detachment of troops which Government sent thither, under the command of Major Von Gilten, who is still there. The Kaffers, fully persuaded that the late peace had put an end to all disturbances between them, sent to the new commander of the fort a bullock to be slain, as the test of reconciliation and friendship. The Kaffer sent on the occasion put himself under the guide of a Hottentot ; and Ferreira, by way of returning the kind intention, laid hold of the Kaffer and *broiled him alive* ; bound the poor Hottentot to a tree, *cut a piece of flesh out of his thigh, made him eat it raw*, and then released him !”

If any one should be disposed to think that I have exaggerated the cruelties committed by these inhuman brutes, I only request of them to read the pamphlet written by the private Secretary to the present Governor *Jansens*.

Nothing can be more deplorable than the state of the colony, as described in this pamphlet, which was written just before they had heard of the war ; and nothing can exceed the disappointment of the Dutch in their expectations with regard to the Cape. The Hottentot corps was disbanded ; most of them fled into the interior to join their oppressed countrymen ; the Kaffers were in arms against the boors ; the garrison in a state of complete insubordination ; the people detesting the Government and the Government afraid of the troops ; its credit destroyed, money disappeared, commerce ruined, bankruptcies without end, and they wanted only a war to complete their misery. Under such circumstances, how cheaply might England regain possession of this important settlement !

adrift

adrift the husband; thus dissolving the tender ties of social intercourse, and cutting off even the natural resources of wretchedness and sorrow. It is in vain for the Hottentot to complain. To whom, indeed, should he complain? The Landroft is a mere cypher, and must either enter into all the views of the boors, or lead a most uncomfortable life. The last, who was a very honest man, and anxious to fulfil the duties of his office, was turned out of his district, and afterwards threatened to be put to death by these unprincipled people, because he would not give them his permission to make war upon the Kaffers; and because he heard the complaints of the injured Hottentots. The boor, indeed, is above all law. At the distance of five or six hundred miles from the seat of Government he knows he is not to be compelled to do what is right, nor prohibited from putting in practice what is wrong. To be debarred from visiting the Cape is no punishment to him. His wants, as we have seen, are very few, nor is he nice in his choice of substitutes for those which he cannot conveniently obtain. Perhaps the only indispensable articles are gunpowder and lead. Without these a boor would not live one moment alone, and with these he knows himself more than a match for the native Hottentots and for beasts of prey.

The produce of the grazier is subject to no colonial tax whatsoever. The butcher sends his servants round the country to collect sheep and cattle, and gives the boors notes upon his master, which are paid on their coming to the Cape. They are subject only to a small parochial assessment, proportioned to
their

their stock. For every hundred sheep he pays a florin, or sixteenpence, and for every ox or cow one penny. With the utmost difficulty Government has been able to collect about two-thirds annually of the rent of their loan-farms, which is only 24 rix dollars a year. Under the idea that they had been dreadfully oppressed by the Dutch Government, and that their poverty was the sole cause of their running in arrears with their rent, the British Government forgave the district of Graaf Reynet the sum of 200,000 rix dollars, the amount to which their arrears had accumulated. By descending a little closer to particulars we shall be able to form a better judgment of the condition of these people, and how far their poverty entitled them to the above mentioned indulgence.

The district of Graaf Reynet, as we have already observed, contains about 700 families. Among these are distributed, according to the *Opgaaff* (and they would not give in more than they had, being liable to an assessment according to the number) 118,306 head of cattle, and 780,274 sheep, which, to each family, will be about 170 heads of cattle and 1115 sheep.

Out of this stock each boor can yearly dispose of from 15 to 20 head of cattle, and from 200 to 250 sheep, and, at the same time, keep up an increasing stock. The butcher purchases them on the spot at the rate of 10 to 20 rix dollars a head for the cattle, and from 2 to 2½ for the sheep.

Suppose then each farmer to fell annually,

15 Head of cattle <i>a</i> 12 Rd.	-	R. D.	180
220 Sheep <i>a</i> 2 Rd.	-	-	440
A waggon load of butter and soap 1200 pounds <i>a</i> 1 s.	-	-	300

Amount of his income R. D. 920 0

Outgoings.

2 Waggon 800 Rd. Interest	-	R. D.	48
Clothing for 8 persons <i>a</i> 15 Rd.	-		120
Tea, sugar, tobacco, brandy	-		150
Powder and shot	-		20
Rent to Government and stamp	-		25
Parochial assessments	-		8
Contingencies, cattle to Hottentots, &c.			80

Amount of Outgoings R. D. 451 0

Yearly Savings R. D. 469 0

or £. 93 16 0

In what part of the world can even a respectable peasant do this? much less the commonest of all mankind, for such are the generality of the Cape boors. After quitting the ranks, or running

ning away from his ship, he gets into a boer's family and marries. He begins the world with nothing, the usual practice being that of the wife's friends giving him a certain number of cattle and sheep to manage, half the yearly produce of which he is to restore to the owner, as interest for the capital placed in his hands. He has most of the necessaries of life, except clothing, within himself; his work is done by Hottentots, which cost him nothing but meat, tobacco, and skins for their clothing. His house and his furniture, such as they are, he makes himself; and he has no occasion for implements of husbandry. The first luxury he purchases is a waggon, which, indeed, the wandering life he usually leads at setting out in the world, makes as necessary as a hut; and frequently serves all the purposes of one. A musquet and a small quantity of powder and lead will procure him as much game as his whole family can consume. The *spring boks* are so plentiful on the borders of the colony, and so easily got at, that a farmer sends out his Hottentot to kill a couple of these deer with as much certainty as if he sent him among his flock of sheep. In a word, an African peasant of the lowest condition never knows want; and if he does not rise into affluence, the fault must be entirely his own.

REVENUES OF GOVERNMENT.

From what has already been stated, in the last section, it will appear, that the public burthens are not of that nature as to furnish any subject of complaint. In fact, the proportion of produce paid by the colonists for their protection is less than in most

most other countries. They pay no land-tax, no window-tax, no excise, no tax on any of the luxuries of life; no poor-rates, nor any assessment towards the maintenance of the clergy. Except the tenth on grain and wine, brought into Cape Town, and a small Custom-house duty on foreign articles imported, the duties to which they are liable are, in a great measure, optional, being levied on their extreme passion for buying, selling, and transferring property. The stamp duty, the public vendue duty, the transfer duty on sale of immovable estates, and the duty arising from the sales of buildings on loan-lands, are branches of the revenue mostly of this description.

The revenues of the colony are derived from the following sources, comprized under 13 heads:

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|---|
| 1. Land revenue,
consisting in | { | Rents of Loan farms.
——— Gratiuity lands.
——— Quit rents.
——— Places taken by the month.
——— Salt pans. |
|-----------------------------------|---|---|
2. Duties on grain, wine, and spirits, levied at the barrier.
 3. Transfer duty on sale of immovable estates.
 4. Duty arising from the sale of buildings on loan farms.
 5. Public vendue duty.
 6. Fees received in the Secretary's office.
 7. Customs.
 8. Port fees.
 9. Postage of letters.
 10. Seizures, fines, and penalties.

11. Licences to retail wine, beer, and spirituous liquors.
12. Interest of the capital lent out through the loan bank.
13. Duty arising from stamped paper.

1. The revenue arising from the soil has been sufficiently explained in describing the tenures of land; but, in addition to the articles therein explained, may be mentioned the rents of some salt water lakes in the Cape district let out to the highest bidder for the purpose of collecting the salt formed in them during the summer season; as also some trifling rents of places for grazing cattle at certain seasons of the year, taken by the month.

2. The duties levied on grain, wine, and brandy at the barrier are as follows:

	<i>Rd.</i>	<i>£.</i>	<i>£.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
For 10 muids of wheat	2	6	4	or 11	4
— 10 muids of barley	1	2	4	5	4
— 10 muids of peas	4	0	0	16	0
— 10 muids of beans	5	0	0	20	0

On wine and brandy the duty is exactly the same, being 3 rix dollars for every legger, let the price or quality be what they may. This duty amounts to about 5 per cent. on common wine, and not to $\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. on Constantia.

3. The transfer duty on the sale of immovable estates is 4 per cent. on the purchase money, which must be paid to the receiver of the land revenues before a legal deed of conveyance can be passed,

passed, or, at least, before a sufficient title can be given to the estate.

4. The duty arising from the sale of buildings, plantations, and other conveniences on loan-lands, is $2\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. on the purchase money, and must be paid in the same manner as the last, on the property being transferred from the seller to the purchaser.

5. The duty on public vendues is 5 per cent. on moveable, and 2 per cent. on immoveable property; of the former, Government receives $3\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. and $1\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. of the latter. This is a very important branch of revenue.

6. Fees received in the Secretary's office are such as are paid on registering the transfer of property, and were formerly part of the emoluments of the colonial Secretary and assistants. They are very trifling.

7. The import and export duties at the Cape were formerly a perquisite of the Fiscal. At the surrender of the colony it was found expedient to make some new regulations with regard to this branch of revenue. All goods shipped in the British dominions, to the westward of the Cape, were allowed to be imported duty free; but others, not so shipped, were liable to a duty of 5 per cent. if brought in British bottoms, and 10 per cent. in foreign bottoms. And no goods nor merchandize of the growth, produce, or manufacture of countries to the eastward of the Cape were allowed to be imported into, or exported

ported from, the Cape of Good Hope, except as sea-stores, but by the East India Company, or by their licence.

The export duties vary according to the nature of the articles, but, on a general average, they amount to about 5 per cent. on commodities, the growth and produce of the Cape.

8. The port fees, or wharfage and harbour money, were formerly levied at a fixed sum on all ships dropping anchor at the Cape, whether they were large or small, but were afterwards altered to sixpence per ton upon their registered tonnage.

9. The postage of letters was a small charge made on the delivery of letters at the post office, more with a view to prevent improper correspondence during the war, than to raise a revenue, which, indeed, amounted to a mere trifle.

10. Seizures, fines, and penalties. The law respecting smuggling is very rigid at the Cape of Good Hope. Not only the actual shipping or landing of contraband goods is punishable, but the *attempt* to do it, if proved, is equally liable; and the penalty is confiscation of the goods, when found, together with a mulct amounting to three times their value; or, if not found, on sufficient evidence being produced, the delinquent is liable to forfeit four times their value. The case I alluded to in the second chapter, where the Court of Justice was severely censured, was an *attempt* to smuggle money out of the colony; and the penalty was levied upon the sum that it appeared, on evidence, the captain of the ship had, at one time, brought
clan-

clandestinely on board for that purpose ; as it was presumed that the intention was to convey it out of, though he afterwards disposed of it in, the colony. The sentence of the court was reversed in the Court of Appeals, and the money ordered to be restored ; but the captain, not satisfied with the decision of the Court of Appeals, without recovering, at the same time, large damages, intends to bring his action before a British Court in England.

Of all seizures and confiscations, and penalties for misdemeanors, the Fiscal receives one-third of the amount, the informer or prosecutor one-third, and the other third, which was formerly the share of the Governor, was directed by Lord Macartney to be always paid into the Government Treasury in aid of the revenue.

11. The licences granted for the retailing of wine, beer, and spirituous liquors, are farmed out in lots to the highest bidders ; and they produce a very considerable sum to Government, proportioned, however, to the strength of the garrison, the soldiers being their best customers. Sir James Craig, wishing to discourage, as much as possible, all monopolies, proposed to divide the retailing of wine among 32 persons, but fifteen only were found to take them out ; and these the following year refusing to renew, it became necessary to recur to the old method, to prevent the revenue from suffering, as well as the disorders that might be supposed to arise from an unrestrained liberty of sale. It was, however, found difficult to get any one after this to undertake the farm on the most moderate terms. Such is often the effect

effect of making sudden and violent changes, even where abuses are meant to be reformed, and a certain benefit procured for those who have long been suffering under them. Gradual alterations are usually the most acceptable, and, in the end, most effectual.

12. Interest of the capital lent out through the loan or Lombard bank arises from a sum of paper money issued by the Dutch Government as a loan to individuals, on mortgage of their lands and houses, with the additional security of two sufficient bondsmen. The sum thus lent out is about 660,000 rix dollars. The interest is 5 per cent., which is one per cent. less than the legal interest of the colony. Government receives a clear profit of 4 per cent., and the bank one per cent. for its trouble. The rule is never to lend a greater sum than half the value upon estates in town, nor more than two-thirds on estates in the country. The term for which the loan was made was not to exceed two years, and it rested with the directors to prolong the loan, or to call it in, at the expiration of that time.

The establishment of this bank, by the Dutch East India Company, was one of the many symptoms, that of late years had appeared, of the declining condition of their commercial credit, and of their political influence in their Indian possessions. Driven to the necessity of raising revenues, by direct or indirect means, to defray the contingent expences of the year and to keep together their numerous establishments, and of maintaining their existence by temporary expedients, their finances were reduced at length to such a state, that their capital was employed to pay

the interest of their debt. In order, therefore, to reform some abuses, and for the better regulation of their affairs in India, certain commissioners were appointed in 1792, under the name of Commissaries General, to proceed from Holland, without delay, upon this important office.

Finding, on their arrival at the Cape, that the resources of Government were nearly exhausted, the colony in most deplorable circumstances, and a general complaint among the inhabitants of the want of a circulating medium, they conceived it too favourable an occasion to let slip of converting the public distress into a temporary profit for the state; increasing, at the same time, the revenue of the latter, while they conferred a seeming favour on the former. They issued, through the Lombard bank, a loan of such sums of stamped paper money as might be required to satisfy the wants of those who could give the necessary securities; the whole amount being limited to the sum of one million rix dollars.

Thus, by this transaction, Government created for itself a net revenue of about 25,000 rix dollars a year, free of all deductions, without risk and without trouble, from a fictitious capital. It did more than this. Part of the original capital, which, at its highest point was about 680,000 rix dollars, was repaid by the inhabitants, and restored to Government; but, instead of cancelling such sums, as it should seem in honour bound to do, it applied them towards the payment of the public expences, suffering the whole of the original capital to continue in circulation.

The operation of such a loan, from the Government to the subject, so much the reverse of what generally takes place in other states, might be supposed to produce on the minds of the people a disposition of ill-will towards the Government; which, indeed, was assigned as one of the motives to shake off their dependence, and thus free themselves at once from a load of debt by the destruction of the creditor. These short-sighted people did not reflect that the whole amount of paper money issued through the bank was not half the amount of paper currency in circulation; that a much greater sum, of the same fabric, but made on a different occasion, had been borrowed by Government from the inhabitants, for which the only security was its credit and stability. The consequence of Suffrein's visit to the Cape, and the expences of throwing up the lines, and putting the works in repair, obliged the Dutch to borrow plate and silver money from the inhabitants for the exigencies of Government, which was promised to be repaid on the arrival of the ships then expected from Holland; and, in the mean time, stamped paper, in pieces bearing different values, was given and thrown into circulation, none of which has ever been redeemed by specie, nor, in all human probability, ever will. The balance of the paper lent by Government, and of the money borrowed from the people, is about 240,000 rix dollars in favour of the latter, so that they would gain little by destroying the credit of Government.

13. The duty arising from stamped paper was early introduced, but limited to such public writings as were issued from the offices of the Secretary of Government and of the Court of Justice;

Justice; and for acts signed by public notaries, until the arrival of the Commissaries General, when it was considerably extended. At present all bills of sale, receipts, petitions, and memorials, must be made out on stamped paper. The limits of the stamps are sixpence the lowest, and one hundred rix dollars or twenty pounds the highest.

The net proceeds of the colonial revenue for four successive years will appear from the following table:

Branches of the Public Revenue.	Year 1798.			Year 1799.			Year 1800.			Year 1801.			
	Rd.	sh.	fl.	Rd.	sh.	fl.	Rd.	sh.	fl.	Rd.	sh.	fl.	
1. Land Revenue	60,622	6	2	40,720	6	4	43,396	2	4	47,885	6	4	
2. Duties on grain and wine levied at the barrier	36,867	6	0	35,164	2	4	31,930	1	3	37,759	3	0	
3. Transfer duty on sales of immovable estates	33,211	4	2	66,843	3	3	45,576	1	3	67,483	7	0	
4. Duty arising from Sale of buildings on loan estates	5,441	5	4	5,677	1	3	5,939	1	3	5,247	5	1	
5. Public vendue duty	48,182	3	3	59,916	1	2	61,166	3	0	85,960	2	4	
6. Fees received in the Secretary's Office	1,654	0	0	1,365	6	0	1,193	2	0	1,312	7	0	
7. Customs	43,331	4	0	42,828	5	0	38,582	4	0	47,833	1	0	
8. Port fees	2,186	2	0	2,100	0	0	3,945	4	0	5,498	0	0	
9. Postage of letters	641	5	0	950	0	0	1,111	7	0	1,396	6	0	
10. Seizures, fines, and Penalties	10,182	0	1	7,585	0	2	26,572	0	0	5,533	3	0	
11. Licences to retail wine, beer, and spirituous liquors	36,255	0	4	51,133	2	4	65,191	5	2	93,200	0	0	
12. Interest of the capital lent out through the loan bank	25,532	6	1	25,678	4	1	26,240	2	3	25,957	0	1	
13. Duty arising from stamped paper	18,403	4	0	20,348	6	0	18,751	0	0	25,645	1	0	
Amount	R. D.	322,518	7	5	360,312	0	0	569,596	4	0	450,713	2	4
or £.	£.	64,502	11	11	72,062	8	0	73,919	6	0	90,142	13	4

These sums were applied to the payment of salaries on the civil establishment, the expences of the several departments, the repairs of Government buildings, and the contingencies and extraordinaries of the colony, to all which, by a prudent economy, they were much more than adequate; for, on closing the public accounts the year after the departure of Lord Macartney from his government, there was a balance in the Treasury, amounting to between two and three hundred thousand six dollars, after every expence of the year had been liquidated.

JURISPRUDENCE.

The outline of the constitution and practice of the Court of Justice at the Cape I have already had occasion to notice, and to observe that its members were chosen out of the burghers of the town, and were not professional men brought up in the study of the law. The Fiscal, who is the public accuser in criminal matters, and the Secretary of the Court, are the only persons possessed of legal knowledge. The jurisdiction of this Court extended to the trial of offences committed by the military; in all such cases, however, the Governor, as Commander in Chief, had the power of nominating two military officers, to sit on the trial and give their votes, with the ordinary members, upon the case. The members of the Court may be considered as a kind of special jury, who, having heard the evidence adduced by the parties, decide upon the facts, and the Secretary points out the law. Their decision, however, is carried by a majority of voices.

Two

Two of the members in turns form a monthly commission, before which written evidence is produced by the attornies of the parties, and every information collected against the full meeting of the Court, which is held once a fortnight. The doors are always shut; there is no oral pleading; and the parties are entirely excluded. Decision is pronounced upon the written and attested documents that appear before them, and which, indeed, have been read by each member in the interval between the days of session. Were this not practised, so great is the litigious disposition of the people, they would not be able to go through the ordinary business. Forty or fifty causes are sometimes dispatched in the Court in the course of one morning; and they hear none where the damages are not laid at a greater sum than 200 rix dollars or 40*l*. All suits, under this amount, are decided in an inferior Court called the *Court of Commissaries for trying petty causes*: in the country districts the Landroft and Hemraaden are empowered to give judgment in all cases where the damages to be recovered do not exceed 150 rix dollars or 30*l*.

This litigious spirit in the people, who are mostly related one way or another, and who always address each other by the name of *cousin*, is encouraged by the attornies, who, in the Cape, may truly be called a nest of vermin fattening on the credulity of the people. To become a *procureur* it is by no means necessary to study the law. Hence any bankrupt shopkeeper, or reduced officer, or clerk in any of the departments, may set up for an attorney. The business consists in taking down depositions in writing, and drawing up a state of the case for the

nation of the monthly commissioners, and afterwards to be laid before the full Court. As their charges, in some degree, depend upon the quantity of paper written, such papers are generally pretty voluminous. The expences of a single suit will sometimes amount to 400 *l.* or 500 *l.* sterling, when, at the same time, the object of litigation was not worth 100 *l.*

The office of Fiscal is one of the most important in the colony. As public accuser it is his duty to prosecute, in the Court of Justice, all high crimes and misdemeanors; and as Solicitor-General to the Crown he is to act in all cases where the interest of Government is concerned. As Chief Magistrate of the police, both within and without the town, he is authorized to inflict corporal punishment on slaves, Hottentots, and others, not being burghers, for petty offences, riotous behaviour, or other acts that cannot be considered as directly criminal. The Fiscal has also the power of imposing fines, and of accepting pecuniary composition for misdemeanors, insults, breach of contract in cases where the offender does not wish to risk a public trial. The sum, however, that in cases of compromise can be demanded by the Fiscal, was limited, under the British Government, to 200 rix dollars. For it appeared that, under former Fiscals, many and enormous abuses had been practised in the levying of fines, particularly in cases where the nature of the offence was such that the accused chose rather to pay a large sum of money than suffer his cause to be investigated before a full court. The Fiscal, being entitled to one-third of all such penalties, took care to lay them as heavy as he thought the cases would bear. What a temptation was here laid for frail mortal
man,

man, in his fiscal capacity, to be guilty of injustice and extortion, by leaving the power of fixing the penalty in the breast of the very man who was to reap the benefit of it! To the honour of the man be it spoken, who held this important but odious situation, during the government of Britain at the Cape, his most inveterate enemies, and he and every one who fills the office must daily make such, never accused him either of making an undue use of his authority, or of studying his own interest in this respect. The English found him and left him poor, but not without some, though not adequate, acknowledgment of his services.

The office of Fiscal consisted of the principal and a deputy, a clerk, two bailiffs, two jailors, eight constables, and nineteen blacks and Malays, usually called Kaffers. The whole expence to Government was under 10,000 rix dollars; the Court of Justice and Secretary's Office to the Court was about the same sum, so that the administration of justice cost the Government about 4000 *l.* sterling a year.

*The Court of Commissaries for trying petty suits, and for matrimonial affairs, consists of a President, a Vice-president, and four members, whose situations are merely honorary, and are biennial. The duties of the Court, as the name implies, are divided into two distinct classes: first, to decide in suits where the sum in litigation does not exceed 40 *l.*; and secondly, to grant licences of marriage where, on examination of the parties, there appears to be no legal impediment.*

In

In its first capacity it may be considered as a sort of Court of Conscience. The proneness of the people to litigation made it necessary, notwithstanding the scanty population, to establish this as a relief to the Superior Court, by taking off its hands the decision of a multiplicity of trifling suits, as well as, by a summary mode of proceeding, to prevent heavy costs. The process for the recovery of a debt is very simple. A summons is sent from the Secretary to the debtor, forty-eight hours before the meeting of the Court, which is every Saturday. The parties are heard, a decision taken, and sentence pronounced. An appeal lies to the Superior Court.

In order to obtain a licence for marriage, it is necessary for both persons to appear personally before the Court, to answer to such questions as may be put to them concerning their age, the consent of parents or guardians, their relationship, and such like; after which a certificate is given, and the banns are published thrice in the church. The consent of parents or guardians is necessary to be had by all who marry under the age of twenty-five years. If the consent of parents or guardians be refused to a minor, the removal of the objections is left to the discretion of the Court. If either of the parties has been married before, and has children, a certificate must be produced from the Secretary of the Orphan Chamber, or from the notary appointed to administer to the affairs of the children, that the laws of the colony relating to inheritance have been duly complied with.

The

The *Weeskammer*, or chamber for managing the effects of minors and orphans, is one of the original institutions of the colony, and is modelled on those establishments of a similar kind that are found in every city and town of the Mother Country. The nature of their laws of inheritance pointed out the expediency of public guardians to protect and manage the property of those who, during their minority, should be left in an orphan state. In this instance the Dutch have departed from the civil or Roman law on which their system of jurisprudence is chiefly grounded. By their laws of property the estates and moveables of two persons entering into wedlock become a joint stock, of which each party has an equal participation; and, on the death of either, the children are entitled to that half of the joint property which belonged to the deceased, unless it may have been otherwise disposed of by will; and here the legislature has wisely interfered to allow of such disposal only under certain restrictions and limitations. The Dutch laws, regarding property, are more inclinable to the interests of the children, than favourable to the extension of parental authority. To enable a man to disinherit a child, he must bring proof of his having committed one, at least, of the crimes of children against parents, which are enumerated in the Justinian code.

To guard against abuses in the management of the provision which the law has made for minors and orphans, and to secure the property to which they are entitled, are the duties of the Orphan Chamber. Its authority extends also to the administration of the effects, either of natives or strangers, who may die intestate. At the decease of either parent, where there are

children, an account of the joint property is taken by the Chamber, and in the event of the survivor intending to marry a second time, such survivor must pass a bond to secure the half share of the deceased to the children by the former marriage.

This excellent institution is managed by a president and four members, a secretary, and several clerks. Their emoluments arise from a per centage of $2\frac{1}{2}$ on the amount of all property that comes under their administration, and from sums of money accruing from the interest of unclaimed property, and the compound interest arising from the unexpended incomes of orphans during their minority. The Secretary, in addition to a fixed salary, has an allowance of 4 per cent. on the sale of orphan property, which almost always takes place in order to make a just distribution among the children. This is considered as an indemnification for his responsibility to the board for the payment of the property sold. The clerks divide among them one per cent., so that all orphan property, passing through the Chamber, suffers a reduction of $7\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. upon the capital, which is $2\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. less than when left to the administration of private executors, who have 5 per cent. for their trouble, and must pay 5 per cent. on the public vendue, from which the Orphan Chamber is exempt.

RELIGION.

Calvanism, or the Reformed Church as it has usually been called, is the established religion of the colony. Other sects were

were tolerated, but they were neither countenanced, nor paid, nor preferred by the Dutch. The Germans, who are equally numerous with the Dutch, and mostly Lutherans, had great difficulty in obtaining permission to build a church, in which, however, they at length succeeded; but they were neither suffered to erect a steeple nor to hang a bell. A Methodist chapel has also lately been built; and the Moravians have a church in the country; but the Malay Mahomedans, being refused a church, perform their public service in the stone quarries at the head of the town. Other sects have not yet found themselves sufficiently numerous or opulent to form a community.

The body of the clergy are in no part of the world more suitably provided for, or more generally respected, than in this country; a consequence of their being supported entirely by Government, and not by any tax or tythe laid upon the public. Their situation, it is true, leads not to affluence, but it places them beyond the apprehension of want or pecuniary embarrassments; and it secures to their widows a subsistence for life. The salaries and the emoluments, which all of them enjoy, both in the town and the country districts, are nearly on an equality. By their rank, which is next to that of the President of the Court of Justice in town, and of the Landroft in the country, they are entitled to seek connections with the first and wealthiest families in the colony. None would think of refusing his daughter's hand to the solicitations of a clergyman; and the lady usually considered the precedence at church as a full compensation for the loss of balls, cards, and other amusements

which her new situation obliged her to relinquish. Some changes, however, of such sentiments were said to have taken place, on the part of the ladies, with the change of their former Government, and that whatever might still be the opinion of the parents, they began to doubt whether the easy and unrestrained gaiety of a red coat might not be equally productive of happiness with the gravity of a black one.

But the introduction of new manners and new sentiments produced no direktion in the pious deportment of the clergy and their families; nor was there any change in the exterior marks of devotion among the laity. The former are scrupulously exact in the observance of the several duties of their office, and the latter equally so in their attendance of public worship. In the country the boors carry their devotion to an excess of inconvenience that looks very like hypocrisy. From some parts of the colony it requires a journey of a week or ten days to go to the nearest church, yet the whole family seldom fails in their attendance twice or thrice in a year.

The duties of the clergy are not very laborious, though pretty much the same as in Europe. They attend church twice on Sundays, visit the sick when sent for, and bestow one morning in the week to examine young persons in the confession of faith. They must also compose their sermon for Sunday, and learn it by heart. Their congregation would have little respect for their talents if it was read to them, though of their own composing. Nothing will do in a Dutch church but an extemporary

temporary rant; and they all go to church in expectation of some glance being made at the prevailing topic of the day, and return satisfied or displeas'd according as the preacher has coincided with or oppos'd their sentiments on the subject of his discourse.

The clergy have also the direction of the funds rais'd for the relief of the poor. These funds are established from weekly donations, made by all such as attend divine service, from legacies, and from the sums demanded by the church on the emancipation of slaves. The interest is applied towards the succour and support of those whom old age, infirmities, accident, or the common misfortunes of life, may have rendered incapable of assisting themselves. This class is not very numerous in the Cape, and is compos'd mostly of such as have been denied, in their early days, the means of making any provision against old age; chiefly emancipated slaves, whose best part of their life has been dedicated entirely to the service of their owners.

An unsuccessful attempt was made some years ago to establish a public grammar-school at the Cape, and the clergymen were nominated as *curators*. A fund for this purpose was intended to be rais'd by subscription, and every one was ready to put down his name, but very few came forwards with the money. After the purchase of a suitable house, they found there was nothing left to afford even a moderate salary for a Latin master; and the clergy of the Cape, who are the only fit persons to take upon them the important task of instructing youth, are already
too

too well provided for by Government to engage in so laborious an employ.

The amount of the funds belonging to the Reformed Church in Cape Town, in the year 1798, was, Rd. 110,842 1 2 or 22,168 *l.* 8 *s.* 8 *d.*, and the subsistence granted to the poor was Rd. 5564 2 or 1112 *l.* 17 *s.* The funds of the Lutheran Church were Rd. 74,148 2 2 or 14,829 *l.* 13 *s.* 2 *d.*, and the relief granted to the poor Rd. 972 2 2 or 194 *l.* 9 *s.* 2 *d.*

IMPROVEMENTS SUGGESTED.

Before any considerable degree of improvement can be expected in those parts of the country, not very distant from the Cape, it will be necessary, by some means or other, to increase the quantity and to reduce the present enormous price of labour. The most effectual way, perhaps, of doing this, would be the introduction of Chinese. Were about ten thousand of this industrious race of men distributed over the Cape district, and those divisions of Stellenbosch and Drakenstein which lie on the Cape side of the mountains, the face of the country would exhibit a very different appearance in the course of a few years; the markets would be better and more reasonably supplied, and an abundance of surplus produce acquired for exportation. It is not here meant that these Chinese should be placed under the farmers; a situation in which they might probably become, like the poor Hottentots, rather a load and an encumbrance on the

the colony, than a benefit to it. The poorest peasant in China, if a free man, acquires notions of property. After paying a certain proportion of his produce to the State, which is limited and defined, the rest is entirely his own; and though the Emperor is considered as the sole proprietary of the soil, the land is never taken from him so long as he continues to pay his proportion of produce to Government.

I should propose then, that all the pieces of ground intervening between the large farms and other waste lands should be granted to the Chinese on payment of a moderate rent after the first seven years. The British Government would find no difficulty in prevailing upon that, or a greater, number of these people to leave China; nor is the Government of that country so very strict or solicitous in preventing its subjects from leaving their native land as is usually supposed. The maxims of the State forbid it at a time when it was more politic to prevent emigrations than now, when an abundant population, occasionally above the level of the means of subsistence, subjects thousands to perish at home for want of the necessaries of life. Emigrations take place every year to Manilla, Batavia, Prince of Wales' Island, and to other parts of the eastern world.

In the distant parts of the colony, where there is waste land in the greatest abundance, it would be advisable to hold out the same encouragement to the Hottentots as they have met with from the *Hernhüters* at *Bavian's Kloof*, a measure that

I

would

would be equally beneficial to the boor and the Hottentot, and prevent the many horrid murders that disgrace humanity.

The next step to improvement would be to oblige all the Dutch landholders to enclose their estates, agreeably to the original plans which are deposited in the Secretary's Office. By planting hedge rows and trees, the grounds would not only be better sheltered, but the additional quantity of moisture that would be attracted from the air, would prevent the surface from being so much scorched in the summer months. The almond, as I have observed, grows rapidly in the driest and poorest soils, and so does the pomgranate, both of which would serve for hedges. The lemon-tree, planted thick, makes a profitable as well as an extremely beautiful and excellent hedge, but it requires to be planted on ground that is rather moist. The *keurboom* or *Sophora capensis* grows in hard dry soils, as will also two or three of the larger kind of proteas.

The vineyards, instead of being pruned down to the ground, so that the bunches of grapes frequently rest upon it, should be led up props or espaliers, or trailed, as in Madeira, along the surface of lattice work. The strong Spanish reed that grows abundantly in the colony is well suited for this purpose, which would not only free the grapes from the peculiar earthy taste that is always communicated to the wine, but would cause the same extent of vineyard to produce more than double the quantity of grapes. A family or two from the island of Madeira, to instruct them in the process of making wine, would be of essential use to the colony.

A better

A better system of tillage of the corn lands could not fail to be productive of a considerable increase in the returns of grain. The breed of horses has so much improved since the capture by the English, that these may soon be substituted for oxen in all the purposes of husbandry, and small English ploughs made to supersede their present unwieldy machines.

With respect to the country boors, it will require a long time before any effectual steps can be adopted for the improvement of their condition. One of the most eligible plans, perhaps, would be the establishment of fairs or markets at Algoa Bay, Plettenberg's Bay, Mossel Bay, and Saldanha Bay; to which, at certain fixed periods, once a month or quarter for instance, they might drive down their cattle, and bring their other articles of produce for sale.

This might immediately be effected by prohibiting the butchers from sending round their servants to collect cattle at the boors' houses; and by giving public notice of the times at which the markets would be held at the different places. At Algoa Bay a great variety of produce, besides sheep and horned cattle, might be exhibited together, not only from the boors, but also from the Kaffers and the Hottentots. These people would, no doubt, be very glad to give their ivory and skins of leopards and antelopes in exchange for iron, beads, and tobacco, and perhaps coarse cloths, provided they were allowed to take the advantage of a fair and open market. The honey that abounds in all the forests would be collected by the Hottentots and

brought to the market at Plettenberg's Bay, where the great plenty of timber might also lead to a very extensive commerce and furnish employment for numbers of this race of natives, who require only proper encouragement to become valuable members of society. An establishment of Moravian missionaries at this bay would prove of infinite benefit to the colony. It would be difficult to persuade the boor of this, and nothing would convince him of the truth of it, but the circumstance of his being able to procure as good a waggon for 150 or 200 rix dollars as he must now purchase at the rate of 400 dollars in Cape Town.

It would be no small advantage to the boors, who dwell some hundred miles from the sea-coast, to carry back in their waggons a quantity of salted fish, which might be prepared to any extent at all the bays; this article would not only furnish them with an agreeable variety to their present unremitting consumption of flesh meat three times a day, but would serve also, according to their own ideas, as a corrective to the superabundance of bile which the exclusive use of butchers' meat is supposed to engender. To cultivate the fisheries on the coast of Africa would afford the means of employment and an ample source of provision for a great number of Hottentot families.

At Mossel Bay, besides the fisheries, there are two articles, the natural produce of the country, in the collection and preparation of which the Hottentots might very advantageously be employed, both to themselves and to the community. These are

are aloes and barilla, the plant that produces the first growing in every part of the district that surrounds the bay, and that from the ashes of which the other is procured being equally abundant in the plain through which the Olifant River flows at no great distance from the bay. Here too the cultivation of grain and pulse might be greatly extended.

If the introduction of Chinese were effected, the markets of Cape Town and Saldanha Bay could not fail to be most abundantly supplied with wine, grain, pulse, fruit, and vegetables; probably to such a degree as not to be excelled in the world, either for price, quality, or quantity.

The consequence of such a system of establishing markets would be the immediate erection of villages at these places. To each village might be allowed a church, with a clergyman, who might act at the same time as village schoolmaster. The farmers' children put out to board would contribute to the speedy enlargement of the villages. The farmers would thus be excited to a sort of emulation, by seeing the produce of each other compared together, and prices offered for them proportionate to their quality, instead of their being delivered to the butcher, as they now are, good and bad together, at so much per head. The good effects produced by occasionally meeting in society would speedily be felt. The languor, the listlessness, and the heavy and vacant stare, that characterize the African peasant, would gradually wear off. The meeting together of the young people would promote the dance, the song, and gambols on

the village green, now totally unknown ; and cheerfulness and conversation would succeed to the present stupid lounging about the house, fullen silence, and torpid apathy. The acquaintance with new objects would beget new ideas, rousing the dormant powers of the mind to energy, and of the body to action. By degrees, as he became more civilized by social intercourse, humanity as well as his interest would teach him to give encouragement to the Hottentots in his employ to engage in useful labour, and to feel, like himself, the benefits arising from honest industry.

The establishment of villages in an extensive country thinly peopled may be considered as the first step to a higher state of civilization. A town or a village, like the heart in the animal frame, collects, receives, and disperses the most valuable products of the country of which it is the centre, giving life and energy and activity by the constant circulation which it promotes. Whereas while men continue to be thinly scattered over a country, although they may have within their reach all the necessaries of life in a superfluity, they will have very few of its comforts or even of its most ordinary conveniences. Without a mutual intercourse and assistance among men, life would be a constant succession of make-shifts and substitutions.

The good effects resulting from such measures are not to be expected as the work of a day, but they are such as might, in time, be brought about. It would not, however, be attended with much difficulty to bring the people closer together, and to furnish

furnish them with the means of suitable education for their children. To open them new markets for their produce, and, by frequent intercourse with one another, to make them feel the comforts and the conveniences of social life. Whether the Dutch will be able to succeed in doing this, or whether they will give themselves the trouble of making the experiment, is doubtful, but should it once again become a British settlement, these or similar regulations would be well deserving the attention of Government.

But, above all, the establishment of a proper public school in the capital, with masters from Europe qualified to undertake the different departments of literature, demands the first attention of the Government, whether it be Dutch or English. For as long as the fountain-head is suffered to remain troubled and muddy, the attempt would be vain to purify the streams that issue from it. It is painful to see so great a number of promising young men as are to be found in Cape Town, entirely ruined for want of a suitable education. The mind of a boy of fourteen cannot be supposed to remain in a state of inactivity, and if not employed in laying up a stock of useful knowledge, the chances are it will imbibe a taste for all the vices with which it is surrounded, and of which the catalogue in this colony is by no means deficient.

CONCLU-

CONCLUSION.

Having now taken a view of the importance and value of Cape of Good Hope, as a military and naval station, as a seat of commerce, as a central depôt for the Southern Whale Fishery, and as a territorial possession, I shall only add, by way of conclusion, that under the present implacable disposition of France towards this country, and the insatiable ambition of its Government, Great Britain never can relinquish the possession of this colony, for any length of time, without seriously endangering the safety of her Indian trade and the existence of her empire in the East; both of which were effectually secured, at least from external attack, by the occupation of this important outwork.

The facility it affords, at all times, of throwing into India a speedy reinforcement of well seasoned troops, which never can be supplied effectually from England how much so ever they may be required, must always stamp an indelible value on the Cape. How desirable would it be, at the present momentous crisis, to have the usual garrison there of 5000 effective men, to reinforce our small but active army in India, instead of sending troops from England, of whom, judging from past experience, two-thirds of those who may survive the voyage, will be totally unfit, on their arrival there, for any kind of service. It is to be hoped then, that the Directors of the East India Company are at length become sensible of their error with regard to this important colony

lony and, having seen it, that such measures have been suggested and solicited by them as may again put us in possession of that advance post, by which *their political and commercial interests in the East Indies will be secured and promoted*, and without which those interests will constantly be exposed to dangers that may not only threaten but finally terminate in a total subversion :—*Et vitam impendere vero.*

I N D E X.

A

	PAGE
<i>Abstract</i> account of imports and exports - - -	309
<i>Account's</i> of the Cape contradictory -	26
<i>Advantages</i> possessed by the Cape as a depôt of troops - -	161
<i>Africa</i> , probably a prior creation -	67
coasts of favourable for fishing -	320
<i>Algoa Bay</i> , notices and chart of -	86
consequences of its becoming a military station - - -	87
danger of an enemy landing at -	213
salt provisions might be prepared at importance of to the East India Company - - -	237 238
<i>Aloes</i> , an article of export - - -	303
extended use of this drug - - -	304
<i>Americans</i> , trade of at the Cape -	181
interested in the Cape not belonging to France - - -	183
carrying-trade of - - -	240
<i>American war</i> , difference between that and the present - - -	249
<i>Amsterdam battery</i> - - -	208
<i>Ammunition</i> delivered to the Dutch at the Cape - - -	219
<i>Amusements</i> of the inhabitants -	393
<i>Anchor</i> found on Table Mountain -	81
<i>Anchors</i> lost in Table Bay - - -	255

VOL. II.

PAGE

<i>Anquetil Duperron's</i> opinion of the Malabar coast - - -	187
<i>Antelopes</i> at Sweet Milk's Valley -	47
<i>Arborizations</i> in the stones of Table Mountain - - -	82
<i>Army</i> , what constitutes one - - -	158
<i>Articles</i> of instructions, curious ones proposed by a Dutch Landroft of export furnished by the Cape -	135 282
<i>Assessments</i> of the inhabitants - - -	398
<i>Attack</i> of the Cape, various modes of -	214
<i>Attornies</i> , bad character of - - -	421
<i>Authors</i> who have written on the Cape -	15
<i>Aya</i> , what - - - -	105

B

<i>Baird</i> , Major-General, carries a reinforcement of troops from the Cape to India - - -	166
<i>Baltic</i> , retreat of the sea in the -	67
<i>Bank</i> of L'Aguillas - - -	65
of government loans - - -	416
<i>Baroloss</i> , a tribe of Kaffers - - -	119
<i>Batteries</i> and block-houses erected by Sir J. Craig - - -	207
those of the Cape peninsula - - -	208

11

Batavia,

	PAGE		PAGE
<i>Batavia</i> , indolence of the Dutch in	29	<i>Brandy</i> —	
<i>Bay, Mossel</i> , notices and chart of	69	how made	71
Plettenberg, notices and chart of	75	<i>British</i> fleet, appearance of at the Cape	146
Chapman and Hout	211	islands, reflexions on	222
those of the Cape peninsula, no protection to shipping	253	<i>Brazil</i> trade to and from the Cape	278
Saldanha, advantages of	260	<i>Burgher</i> , observations of, on a whale	102
St. Helena	263	cavalry, conduct of	146
<i>Beduins</i> , Kaffers probably descended from	117	not likely to be called out	217
<i>Bills</i> on his Majesty's paymasters, premiums on	170	Senate, functions of	290
<i>Bonaparte</i> , little regard for his soldiers	195	<i>Burnet</i> , a thriving plant at the Cape	346
probable obstacles to his march to India	196	<i>Butter</i> salted, an article of export	300
apparent object in acquiring Egypt	199		
views against our commerce	252	C	
<i>Books</i> seldom seen in the Cape	393	<i>Callendar</i> , Mr., remarks of on the Knysna	76
<i>Boors</i> , conduct of, with a dragoon	34	house of, plundered by the boors	131
surrender themselves to Gen. Vandeleur	37	<i>Calvinism</i> , the established religion of the Cape	425
drunken party of	45	<i>Camp's Bay</i> batteries	208
horrid murder committed by	56	<i>Camtoos River</i> , appearance of the country near	85
propensity of for rambling	74	<i>Capitulation</i> for the surrender of the colony	146
idleness of	78	<i>Cape</i> district	339
trial for sedition	89	produce of	345
plundered by the Hottentots	94	<i>Cape of Good Hope</i> , imperfect accounts of	14
culpable and impolitic conduct of	96	authors on the subject of	15
instances of their inhuman cruelties	113	contradictory accounts of	26
a heavy and large race of men	113	how far valuable to England	30
plunder Mr. Callendar's house	131	peninsula of, considerations on	63
wives and children of, fall into the hands of Kaffers	132	peasantry of the settlement of	78
condition of	409	inhabitants of the town of	102
<i>Bosjuanas</i> , a tribe of Kaffers	114	their mode of life	104
<i>Bott</i> River	42	peopled chiefly by soldiers from German regiments	138
<i>Bounties</i> on fishing to be extended to the Cape	320	French influence at	140
<i>Brandy</i> of the Cape	291	importance of as a military station	144
		plans for the government of	148
			<i>Cape</i>

<i>Cape of Good Hope—</i>	PAGE	<i>Cape of Good Hope—</i>	PAGE
physical guarantee of British India	150	recovery of indispensably necessary	253
proposals respecting - - -	153	disadvantages of as a naval station	254
strange conduct of the East India Company - - -	155	danger of becoming a free port	269
advantages of its local position -	162	considered as an emporium of Eastern produce - -	274
as a depôt of troops -	163	consumption of grain in - -	287
healthiness of the climate of -	164	in wine and brandy -	288
cheapness of subsistence - -	169	value of the exports from - -	307
total expence of maintaining the garrison of - - -	174	— of imports from Britain and her colonies - -	308
probable expence of in time of peace	177	state of since the surrender -	311
public revenue of - - -	178	unimportance of in a commercial point of view - -	312
number of shipping cleared out in four years - - -	181	as a station for the Southern Whale Fishery - - -	319
importance of, to different nations	182	general description of - -	325
valuable to England as a point of security - - -	183	population, stock, and produce of -	378
danger of leaving it in the hands of France - - -	186	<i>Cape Town</i> , what determined the site of	205
opinion of M. de la Croix respecting it - - -	199	condition of the inhabitants of -	386
defences of stated - - -	204	consumption of - - -	343
modes of attack - - -	214	christenings, marriages, burials, &c. in - - -	344
Dutch garrison at - - -	216	police of - - -	390
deplorable condition of the inhabitants of - - -	219	<i>Capital</i> lent out by the Lombard bank	417
importance of, as a naval station	221	<i>Carrying-trade</i> precarious - -	224
necessary to the Dutch navigation to India - - -	226	<i>Cattle</i> , mode of killing in the Cape -	42
preferable to Rio de Janeiro or St. Helena - - -	229	<i>Cession</i> of the Cape, proposals for -	153
overtures for the purchase of -	233	<i>Ceylon</i> compared with the Cape -	250
importance of its geographical position - - -	242	<i>Chavonne</i> battery - - -	208
preferable to Ceylon in the eyes of France - - -	250	<i>Chapman's Bay</i> - - -	311
intention of the United Provinces respecting - - -	266	<i>Chart</i> of Table Bay - - -	255
and Ceylon compared - - -	250	of False Bay - - -	258
		of Mossel Bay - - -	69
		of Plettenberg's Bay - - -	75
		of the Knynna - - -	76
		of Algoa Bay - - -	86
		of the coast from Table to Saldanha Bay - - -	261
		of the present work, how constructed	23

<i>Chart</i> —	PAGE		PAGE
those of the Dutch incorrect -	69	<i>Court of Justice</i> , constitution and practice of -	89
<i>Charaër</i> , sanguinary, of the boors accounted for -	101	character of -	91
of the inhabitants of the town -	103	further account of -	420
<i>Cbina</i> , advantage of the French in -	13	of Commissaries for trying petty suits -	423
<i>Cbinese</i> , usefulness and activity of in Batavia -	29	<i>Craig</i> , Sir James, his account of the Hottentots -	49
introduction of into the Cape -	430	opinion of the defence of the Cape -	209
<i>Cbristian</i> , Sir Hugh, mistake of -	62	<i>Criminals</i> hung in chains -	41
<i>Cbumney</i> , Lieut., unfortunate fate of -	130	<i>Croix, de la</i> , opinion of respecting the Cape -	199
<i>Citadel</i> of the Cape -	206	<i>Current</i> on L'Aguilas Bank -	66
<i>Climate</i> , healthiness of that of the Cape some account of -	330	<i>Cyanella</i> , a curious plant -	95
<i>Clergy</i> of the Cape, provision for -	427		
<i>Coast</i> of South Africa, errors in the charts of -	18		
<i>Cocbin-Cbina</i> , remarkable attention of the king to a French missionary -	11	D	
<i>Cold</i> temperature explained -	331	<i>Damberger</i> , the imposition of -	22
<i>Colonies</i> of Dutch, why taken by England -	144	<i>Danes</i> , during the Northern confederacy called at the Cape -	139
<i>Commerœ</i> and colonies favourable to navigation -	223	<i>Danger</i> of the Cape being held by an enemy -	191
of America to India and China -	270	<i>Daniell</i> , Mr. S., intended publication of -	117
<i>Comparison</i> of French, Dutch, and English seamen -	224	<i>Defence</i> of the Cape peninsula -	204
<i>Confession</i> extorted by torture -	92	of the whole colony impracticable -	213
<i>Conclusion</i> -	438	<i>Description</i> , topographical and statistical -	324
<i>Congo</i> , a Kaffer chief, interview with -	111	<i>Deserters</i> shot by Van Roy -	99
<i>Condition</i> of the inhabitants of Cape Town -	385	<i>De la Croix</i> , observation of to Lord Malinbury -	249
<i>Consular</i> government, object of -	201	<i>Dimensions</i> of the Cape colony -	325
<i>Consumption</i> of the Cape in grain -	287	<i>Directors</i> of the East India Company, conduct of -	150
<i>Constantia</i> wine -	289	inconsistency of -	151
<i>Convoy</i> , convenience of assembling at the Cape -	236	mistaken with regard to the Cape -	234
<i>Corn</i> boors -	398	affected indifference of -	272
<i>Countess of Sutherland</i> Indiaman, distresses of -	235	<i>Disadvantages</i> of ceding the Cape -	245

Distance

	PAGE		PAGE
<i>Distance from a market, inconveniences of</i> - - -	302	<i>East India Company—</i>	
<i>District of the Cape</i> - - -	339	directors of disparage the Cape	- 150
of Stellenbosch and Drakenstein	- 347	indifference of with regard to the Cape	- 155
of Zwellendam	- 362	advantage of at the Cape	- 234
of Graaf Reynet	- 370	<i>Eckbergia</i> , name of a tree	- 82
<i>Divisions of the districts</i> - - -	337	<i>Edwards</i> , Captain, and son, melancholy fate of	- 257
<i>Dominion</i> , arbitrary and universal, the object of the Consular Government	- 201	<i>Egypt</i> , reflections on the French expedition against	- 197
<i>Dragoon</i> , British, spirited conduct of two drowned	- 34	marked as the spoil of the French	202
<i>Dryden's</i> translation of a passage in Ovid	- 81	<i>Emigrants</i> , French, conduct of	- 7
<i>Dutch</i> , character of in their colonies accustomed to scenes of cruelty	- 41	<i>Emporium</i> of eastern produce at the Cape	- 274
imprudent conduct of towards their slaves	- 109	<i>Endless River</i>	- 58
indifference of with regard to the Cape	- 155	<i>Errors</i> in the charts of the coast of Africa	- 19
garrison at the Cape	- 216	<i>Estates</i> often change hands	- 383
ships of war at the Cape	- 218	<i>Evidence</i> , how taken in the Court of Justice	- 91
converted into coffee ships	- 219	<i>Eutbanasia</i> of their High Mightinesses the United Provinces	- 141
seamen, character of	- 225	<i>Expence</i> of the Cape moderate in peace as a naval station trifling	- 241
views of at the Cape	- 231	<i>Expenditure</i> in the military department	172
practice of running ships on shore in Table Bay	- 258	<i>Expedition</i> by sea or land to India considered	- 194
jealous of the prosperity of the Cape	268	<i>Exports</i> furnished by the Cape	- 282
intention of with respect to the Cape	272	total value of in four years	- 307
their regulations at the Cape calculated to encourage smuggling	273		
<i>Duties</i> levied at the Cape	- 412	F	

E

<i>Earth</i> , changes on the surface of	- 68
<i>East India Company</i> , interests of secured	140. 274

<i>False Bay</i> , rock discovered in	- 253
chart of	- 258
<i>Felspar</i> , remarkable decomposition of	67
<i>Fiscal</i> , office of	- 422
<i>Fishing</i> company, experiment of	- 296
<i>Fishermen</i> the best seamen	- 313

Fybery

	PAGE		PAGE
<i>Fishery</i> at the Cape granted to a company at Amsterdam	- 297	<i>Gordon</i> , Colonel, his opinion of the extent of Kaffer-land	- 119
general advantages resulting from	314	<i>Government</i> saves by the rations at the Cape	- 169
<i>Food</i> , animal, reflexions on	- 113	and by other circumstances	- 172
<i>Foreigners</i> not displeas'd to see the Cape an English settlement	- 233	revenues of	- 411
<i>Forests</i> near the Knysna	- 76	<i>Graaf Reynel</i> , money circulated in by the troops	- 88
<i>Free port</i> , desire of the Dutch to make the Cape one	- 155	the district and divisions of	- 370
danger of such a measure	- 269	population and produce of	- 377
<i>French</i> , assiduity of in foreign countries	5	<i>Grain</i> , produce of at the Cape	- 283
progr'ess of in Cochin-China	- 11	<i>Gratuity</i> lands	- 381
advantages of over the English in China	- 13	<i>Graziers</i> , condition of	- 401
influence of at the Cape	- 140	singular instance of the inhumanity of	- 404
avoid any discussion about the Cape	185	<i>Greeks</i> , danger of giving liberty to at once	- 202
motives for overturning our Indian empire	- 200	<i>Greenland</i> fishery, how carried on	- 315
result of their aggrandizement	- 201	<i>Green Point</i> , observations on	- 65
averse to long voyages	- 225	<i>Greville</i> , Right Hon. Charles, encourages the South Sea Fishery	- 316
consider the Cape as preferable to Ceylon	- 251	<i>Grosvener</i> Indiaman, probable cause of the loss of	- 17
policy of keeping them out of India	253		
<i>Fruits</i> dried for exportation	- 297		
<i>Fuel</i> for working iron ores at Plettenberg's Bay	- 79		

G

<i>Gaika</i> , quarrel between and Congo	112
<i>Gardenia Tburbergia</i>	- 82
<i>Garrison</i> of the Cape, how embarrassed strength of the Dutch at the surrender	- 216
<i>Geographical</i> position of the Cape	- 242
<i>German</i> soldiers	- 101
<i>Gordon's Bay</i> , importance of	- 39

H

<i>Harbour</i> , no good one at the Cape	- 254
<i>Healthiness</i> of the Cape exemplified with regard to seamen	- 240
<i>Health</i> , appearance of at the Cape	- 27
<i>Hermann</i> , the Russian column of cut to pieces	- 160
<i>Hernbuters</i> , establishment of	- 47
<i>Hides</i> and skins, articles of export	- 394
<i>Hippopotamus</i> , a name ill applied to the animal	- 115
<i>Hotbam</i> , Captain, saves the Countess of Sutherland Indiaman	- 236
	<i>Hutjes</i>

	PAGE		PAGE
<i>Hoetjes Bay</i> , advantages of - -	259	<i>India</i> not favourable for training re-	
<i>Hogs</i> scarcely known as food in the		cruits - - -	161
Cape - - -	300	opinion respecting our empire in -	189
<i>Horses</i> , shod by a deaf and dumb person	84	as easily reached by Bonaparte as	
<i>Hot spring</i> of the Cardouw - - -	356	Alexander - - -	196
of Brandt Valley - - -	360	<i>Indian seas</i> commanded by the Cape	238
in Zwellendam - - -	364	<i>Ingenuity</i> , instance of in a deaf and	
of hepatized water in the Snowy		dumb person - - -	84
Mountains - - -	373	<i>Inhabitants</i> of Cape Town - - -	102
<i>Hottentots Holland's Kloof</i> - - -	39	condition of - - -	385
of the Moravian establishment -	47	<i>Jobnston</i> , Commodore, object of his ex-	
slaves preferred to by the colonists	49	pedition - - -	150
corps of, their character - - -	50	<i>Irisis</i> , a tall brawney people - - -	113
steady conduct of - - -	107	<i>Iron ores</i> near Plettenberg's Bay - -	79
retaliate on the boors - - -	95	native, iron masses of - - -	80
cruelties of the boors against -	96	<i>Isthmus</i> of the Cape, component parts	
gratitude of - - -	108	of - - -	64
murder of by a boor - - -	132	shells found on - - -	66
corps of refuse to take service with		of Suez, remark on - - -	68
the Dutch - - -	218	<i>Judicature</i> , Court of - - -	50
one of these people forced by the		<i>Jurisprudence</i> , system of - - -	420
boors to eat a piece of raw flesh		<i>Justice</i> , retributive, striking instance of	100
cut out of his thigh - - -	406	how administered between a white	
<i>Hout Bay</i> - - -	211	and a black - - -	110
		<i>Ivory</i> , an article of exportation - -	305

I

<i>Jacobinism</i> , principles of, embraced at			
the Cape - - -	145		
<i>Impediments</i> thrown in the way of the			
Cape - - -	267		
<i>Importance</i> first attached to the Cape	148		
as a military station - - -	164		
as a naval station - - -	221		
as a seat of commerce, &c. - - -	265		
<i>Imports</i> to the Cape - - -	308		
<i>Improvements</i> suggested - - -	430		

K

<i>Kaffer</i> chiefs, character of - - -	112		
figure of - - -	113		
probably of Arabic origin - - -	116		
extent of country occupied by -	118		
Baroloos, a tribe of - - -	119		
children and dogs of - - -	120		
marked with the small pox - - -	121		
attack the British troops - - -	126		
conduct of one shot through the body	128		

Kaffir

<i>Kaffer</i> —		PAGE
attack the English camp	- -	129
one broiled alive by the boors	- -	406
<i>Karoo</i> plains, what	- -	28
productive quality of when watered	ib.	
further notices of	- -	328
<i>Kiecherer</i> , missionary, remarkable zeal of		52
<i>Knyzna</i> , plan and remarks of	- -	76
a favourable station for the Southern Whale Fishery	- -	321
L		
<i>L'Agullas Bank</i> , once part of the continent	- - -	65
tremendous storms on	- -	235
a dangerous point for the India ships	- - -	247
<i>Land</i> , different tenures of	- -	378
<i>Landroft</i> of Graaf Reynet threatened by the boors	- -	35
<i>Lange Kloof</i>	- -	71
<i>Lascars</i> unfit for long voyages	- -	156
sickness in ships navigated by	- -	157
<i>Laying</i> of cattle, a Hottentot custom		42
<i>Leetakoo</i> , a city of northern Kaffers	- -	114
<i>Leucophaea</i> , a species of antelope	- -	47
<i>Lucern</i> thrives well at the Cape	- -	346
<i>Liancourt</i> , sentiments of	- -	7
<i>Lines</i> thrown up by the French	- -	206
<i>Lion's Rump</i> , importance of	- -	209
plan of Sir J. Craig respecting	- -	
objection started against it	- -	210
<i>Loan-lands</i>	- -	379
from Government to the subject	- -	418
<i>Local</i> information, advantages of	- -	5
<i>Lombard</i> bank, nature of	- -	416
<i>London</i> market injured by making the Cape an emporium	- -	276
M		
		PAGE
<i>Macao</i> , considerations on	- -	12
<i>Macartney</i> , Earl of, departure from the Cape	- - -	33
appointment of as Governor	- -	149
letter of to Mr. Dundas	- -	154
observations of respecting the Cape		251
<i>Madeira</i> wine supplied from the Cape to the West India islands	- -	285
<i>Madness</i> , canine, unknown in South Africa	- - -	120
<i>Madras</i> , best water near the beach of		63
<i>Malabar</i> coast, observations on	- -	188
<i>Malay</i> slaves preferred to Hottentots		48
<i>Malta</i> , in the hands of France	- -	191
<i>Manilla</i> , a dangerous point to the China trade	- - -	246
<i>Markets</i> , establishment of at the Cape		433
<i>Matrimonial</i> affairs, court of	- -	423
<i>Mead</i> , Doctor, his opinion of the small pox	- - -	132
<i>Melville</i> , Lord, plans of for governing the Cape	- - -	148
<i>Mediterranean</i> trade not equal to that of the East	- - -	192
<i>Milford</i> harbour, flourishing state of		316
<i>Military</i> station, importance of the Cape as	- - -	144
extent of the term	- -	158
department, expence of at the Cape		173
<i>Milk</i> , the food of the Kaffers	- -	114
<i>Missionaries</i> , different kinds of	- -	51
<i>Mode</i> of life in Cape Town	- -	104
<i>Moravian</i> missionaries, plan of	- -	47
<i>Mortality</i> among seamen at the Cape trifling	- - -	240
<i>Mooring-chains</i> in Table Bay	- -	255
		Moffet

I N D E X.

449

	PAGE
<i>Mossel Bay</i> , notices and chart of	- 69
<i>Motives</i> for the present work	- 3
<i>Mouilliz</i> battery	- 208
<i>Mountains</i> in South Africa, nature of	61
further notices of	- 336
<i>Muscles</i> in Mossel Bay	- 70
<i>Myfore</i> , effects of the conquest of	- 190

N

<i>Nations</i> commercial, advantage to by the Cape being English	- 182
<i>Navy</i> of Britain, importance of	- 202
<i>Naval</i> station, the Cape considered as	221
<i>Navigation</i> , encouraged by colonies	- 223
strength of the British empire	- 313
<i>Negro</i> , difference between him and a white	- 110
<i>New South Wales</i> , trade between and the Cape	- 280
<i>Nitre</i> , native in the Snowy Mountains	373
<i>Notions</i> , the name of an American cargo	- 181
<i>Nymphæa</i> , two species of	- 82

O

<i>Observation</i> of a Cape burgher on a whale	- 102
<i>Objections</i> against the Cape as an emporium	- 275
<i>Oil</i> and bone, articles of export	- 295
an indispensable article	- 314
<i>Oldenburg</i> , Danish ship of war, lost	- 257
<i>Opgaaff</i> list for the Cape district	- 342
for Stellenbosch	- 361

VOL. II.

	PAGE
<i>Opgaaff</i> list—	
for Zwellendam	- 369
for Graaf Reynet	- 377
<i>Opinions</i> with regard to India	- 188
with regard to the Cape various	- 3
<i>Ores</i> of iron at Plettenberg's Bay	- 79
<i>Orphan</i> Chamber	- 425
<i>Ossade</i> , a subject for the pencil of	- 46
<i>Ostrich</i> feathers, an article of export	295
<i>Ottoman</i> empire, destruction of aimed at by the French	- 202
<i>Overtures</i> for purchasing the Cape	- 233
<i>Oxen</i> , cruelties committed on	- 41
<i>Oysters</i> , found at Mossel Bay	- 70

P

<i>Palmiet River</i>	- 42
<i>Patrick</i> , Mr., unfortunate fate of	- <i>ib.</i>
<i>Paper</i> money, profit on to Government	173
<i>Paul</i> , Emperor, wild scheme of	- 194
<i>Peasantry</i> of the Cape, condition of	- 78
of what people composed	- 101
<i>Peninsula</i> of the Cape, observations on	63
<i>Perim</i> , island of	- 193
<i>Plan</i> , military, of the Cape peninsula	204
<i>Plans</i> for the government of the Cape	148
<i>Plettenberg's Bay</i> , crosses the mountains	
to	- 73
forests in the neighbourhood of	- 74
products of the country near	- 82
chart of	- 76
<i>Population</i> of the Cape district	- 337
of Stellenbosch	- 361
of Zwellendam	- 369
of Graaf Reynet	- 377
<i>Ports</i> , intermediate, necessary to most nations	- 225
least so to English seamen	- 227

3 M

Position,

	PAGE		PAGE
<i>Position</i> , geographical, of the Cape	- 179	<i>Reflections</i> on missionaries of the gospel	53
with respect to other countries	- 243	<i>Rejoicings</i> at the Cape, on the surren- der, not violent	- 139
favourable to commerce with the East	- 244	<i>Religion</i> of the Cape	- 426
<i>Powers</i> of Europe, danger that threatens them	- 201	<i>Retroat</i> of the sea partial	- 67
<i>Precedency</i> , struggle for between two ladies	- 106	<i>Revenue</i> , public, heads and amount of	411. 419
<i>Preneufe</i> , French frigate	- 86	<i>Rhinoceros</i> , African	- 125
<i>Priests</i> , emigrant, infamous conduct of	11	<i>Rice</i> , Lieutenant, surveys of	- 24
<i>Pringle</i> , Mr., his experiment in making wine	- 72	<i>Rieu</i> , Captain, map of	- 17
Admiral, opinion of respecting mooring-chains	- 255	<i>River</i> , <i>Endless</i>	- 58
<i>Privileges</i> granted to the East India Company	- 149	beds of sunk deep	- 60
<i>Produce</i> of the Cape for exportation	- 283	Canotoos appearance of the country near	- 85
<i>Property</i> frequently changes hands	- 384	those of the Cape enumerated	- 333
<i>Provisions</i> , moderate prices of	- 169	<i>Robben</i> Island	- 256
salt	- 237	<i>Robette</i> , <i>de la</i> , map of	- 17
<i>Punishment</i> inflicted on the boors	- 96	<i>Rock</i> in Falso Bay discovered	- 258
		<i>Rogge</i> Bay battery	- 208
		the best landing place	- 254

S

Q			
<i>Quit-rents</i> , what	- 382	<i>Saint Helena</i> , a dangerous point to our Indian trade	- 248
		inadequate to the supply of convoys	ib.
		<i>Saint Helena</i> Bay	- 263
		<i>Salt</i> , an inexhaustible fund of near Al- goa Bay	- 237
		provisions, cured at the Cape	- 299
		<i>Savages</i> , not always averse to labour	48
		<i>Sceptre</i> man of war, loss of	- 257
		<i>Sea</i> gaining on the land in South Africa	- 64
		voyages unfavourable to prompt action	- 160
		<i>Seamen</i> of France, Holland, and Eng- land	- 224

Seamen

INDEX.

451

	PAGE		PAGE
<i>Seamen</i> —		<i>Stellenbosch</i> —	
promotion of by fisheries	- 313	population and produce of	- 361
<i>Secretary</i> of governor Janfen's account		<i>Storms</i> on L'Agullas Bank	- 235
of the boors	- 404	<i>Strelitzia</i>	- 84
<i>Settlement</i> of the Cape not expensive	176	<i>Stuurman Klas</i> , a Hottentot chief	- 94
<i>Sheep</i> , broad-tailed	- 237	reasoning of on their present condition	- 110
<i>Shells</i> , no proof of the presence of the sea	- 66	<i>Suez</i> , remark concerning the isthmus of	68
<i>Shell-fish</i> , carried inland by birds	- 67	difficulties of sending an expedition from	- 193
<i>Ships</i> cleared out at the Cape in four years	- 181	<i>Suffrein</i> , advantages derived by at the Cape	- 152
of war belonging to the Dutch	- 218	maintained his ground in India by them	- 238
mortality of in those of the Dutch	226	<i>Sunda, Straits of</i> , dangerous to our trade	- 246
easily destroyed in the bays of the Cape	- 253	<i>Sweet Milk's Valley</i>	- 46
<i>Shoemaker's Howel</i> , description of	- 44		
<i>Simon's Bay</i>	- 258	T	
<i>Skins</i> , an article of export	- 294	<i>Table Mountain</i> , shells found on	- 67
<i>Slaves</i> , punishment of for murder	- 42	once skirted with trees	- 74
preferred to Hottentots	- 49	anchor found on	- 80
vices inseparable from the condition of	- 108	mineral productions on the side of	82
proportion of to whites	- 145	<i>Table Bay</i> , inconveniences of	- 255
<i>Small-pox</i> , whence derived	- 122	<i>Talleyrand</i> and his mistress	- 240
<i>Soap</i> , from train-oil	- 296	<i>Tamus Elephantipes</i>	- 83
and candles made at the Cape	- 301	<i>Taxes</i> of the inhabitants	- 388
<i>Soils</i> , nature of	- 327	<i>Tenures</i> of land	- 379
<i>Somerville and Trütir</i> , expedition of to the Booshuanas	- 55	<i>Theory</i> of springs in South Africa	- 61
<i>South America</i> , trade to from the Cape	278	<i>Tobacco</i> produced in the Cape	- 306
condition of the inhabitants of	- 279	<i>Topographical</i> description of the Cape	324
<i>South Sea</i> Fishery	- 317	<i>Torture</i> used by the Dutch	- 92
at the Cape	- 319	<i>Trade</i> of the Mediterranean	- 192
<i>Sparmannia</i> , near Plettenberg's Bay	82	to India and China	- 239
<i>Springs</i> , scarcity of explained	- 60	of the East India Company	- 276
<i>Squadron</i> , expenditure of at the Cape	241	<i>Traders</i> under British capitals	- 279
<i>State</i> of the Cape since the surrender	311	<i>Trees</i> , scarce in the Cape	- 43
<i>Statistical</i> sketch of the Cape colony	324		
<i>Stellenbosch</i> and <i>Drakenstein</i> , district of droesdy and divisions of	- 348		

	PAGE		PAGE
<i>Trial of seditious boors</i> - - -	93		
<i>Troops, necessity of training before embarkation</i> - - -	159		
sent from the Cape to Madras -	166		
sent from the Cape to the Red Sea	167		
<i>Truter, Mr., character of</i> - - -	56		
U			
<i>United Provinces, views of in forming a settlement at the Cape</i> -	266		
V			
<i>Vaillant, observations on the work of</i>	20		
<i>Vandeleur, Brigadier-General, expedition of</i> - - -	37		
<i>Van Rensen, journal of</i> - - -	17		
<i>Van Roy, shoots three deserters</i> -	59		
murders several Hottentots -	134		
<i>Van Vooren, a woman of extraordinary bulk</i> - - -	124		
<i>Vander Kemp's account of a horrid murder</i> - - -	133		
<i>Vegetation, rapidity of after rain</i> -	46		
<i>Vice-Admiralty Court, imposition on</i> -	92		
<i>Villages wanted at the Cape</i> -	435		
<i>Vines, easy culture of at the Cape</i> -	72		
<i>Volcanic products, no traces of at the Cape</i> - - -	329		
		W	
		<i>Water, scarcity of accounted for</i> -	61
		subterraneous stream of - - -	62
		remedy suggested for the want of at Saldanha Bay - - -	264
		<i>Wax, vegetable</i> - - -	303
		<i>Wees-kammer or Orphan Chamber, forgery on</i> - - -	34
		further notices on - - -	425
		<i>Whale, observations of a burgher on</i>	102
		<i>Whalers, practices of</i> - - -	279
		<i>Whale oil and bone</i> - - -	295
		<i>Wine, bad management in making of</i>	71
		experiment of Mr. Pringle -	72
		licence for felling farmed out -	170
		and brandy consumed and exported	288
		quality and price of - - -	292
		growers - - -	394
		<i>Winds at the Cape</i> - - -	156
		<i>Women of the Cape, manners of</i> -	105
		occupation of among the Kaffers	116
		<i>Woods of the Cape unknown to the inhabitants</i> - - -	263
		<i>Wool, an article of export</i> - - -	293
		Z	
		<i>Zwollendam, inhabitants of</i> - - -	137
		district and divisions of - - -	362
		population and produce of -	369

1
1
1
1
1
1
1

184 - Motivation

